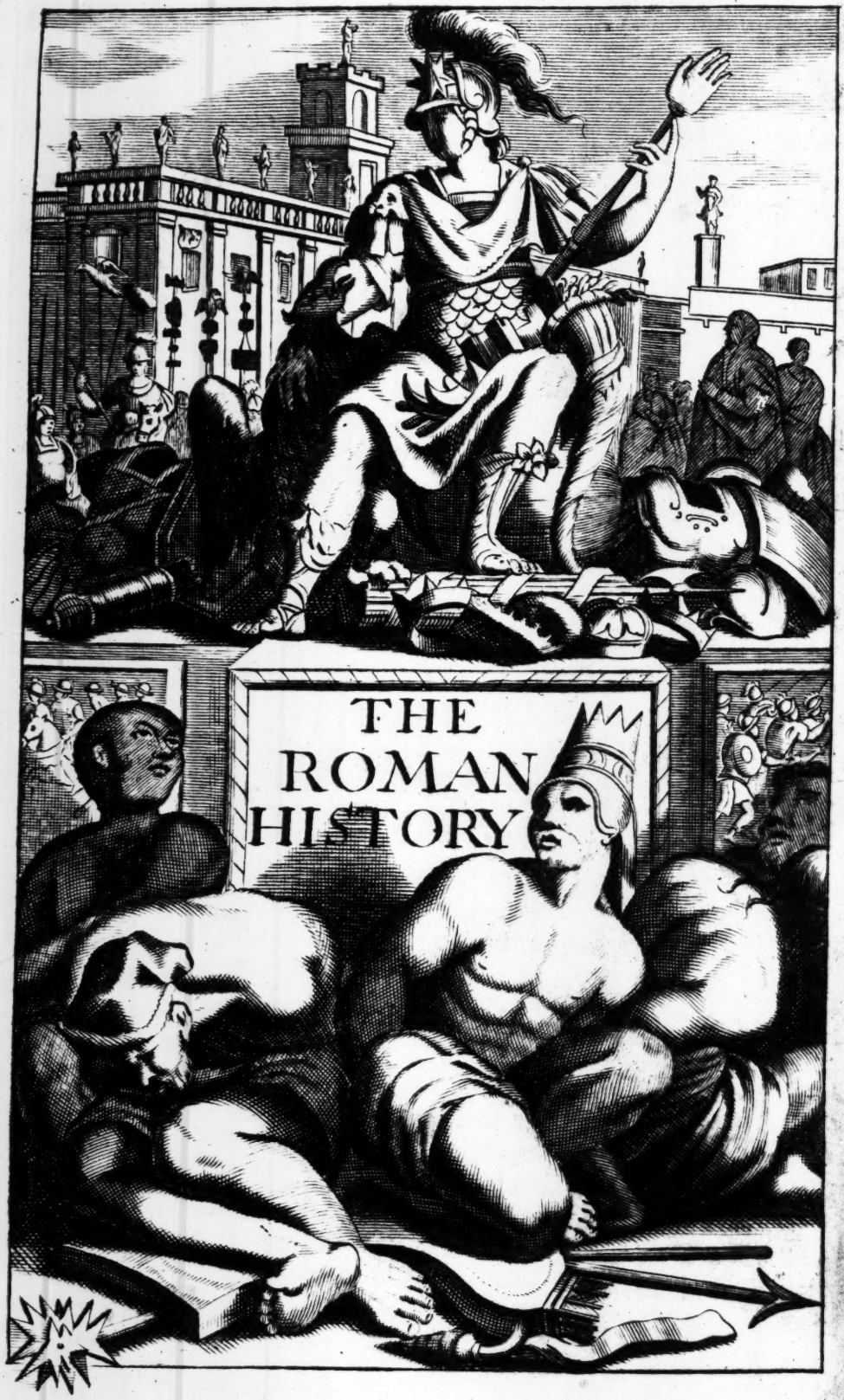

THE
ROMAN
HISTORY

291 929

THE

ROMAN HISTORY,

From the Reſtitution of the

EMPIRE

BY

Charles the Great,

To the Taking of

Conſtantinople by the *Turks.*

Containing the Space of 653 Years.

VOL. V. and Laſt.

By the Author of the Third and Fourth.

The SECOND EDITION.

Revis'd by *LAURENCE ECHARD*, A. M.
Being a further Continuation of his Hiſtory.

With a Compleat INDEX to the whole.

LONDON:
Printed for *Jacob Tonſon*, within *Grays-Inn* Gate,
next *Grays-Inn* Lane. 1707.


R III

THE PREFACE.

AT length the Reader is presented with the Fifth and Last Volume, of what we still call the Roman *History, which concludes with the Dissolution of the* Byzantine, *or Eastern Empire, the fatal Effects of which all* Christendom *feels to this Day. I thought the kind Reception the World gave the former Volumes a sufficient Encouragement for me to undergo the Difficulties I knew I had to contend with in the compiling of this, tho' I must confess they prov'd greater upon Trial, than they at first appear'd. The multiplicity of Authors I had to consult, their different Tempers, private Interests and Inclinations; the Prolixness of some, and affected Brevity of others, their manifest Contradictions, and the different Opinions they have severally met with from the learned World, convinc'd me of the great Care I was to take in the Performance, and how liable I was to Mistakes. 'Tis a just Observation* Cantacuzenus, *one of the best among 'em, has made himself in the Preface to his History,*

Αὐτοὶ δέ ὅπως ποτὲ ἔτυχον διακείμενοι περὶ ὧν διέλεγοντο, οὕτω δὴ καὶ τὴν δήλωσιν ἀπέδωκαν τῶν πραγμάτων, ἀρκεῖν αὐτοῖς ἡγούμενοι πρὸς Ἀντιμαχίαν τῶν πόνων, ἢ τὸν φιλούμενον ἐπαινέσαι, ἢ τὸν μισούμενον καθυβρίσαι, τῆς δ' ἀληθείας μηδὲν φροντίσαντες. They repreſented, *ſaith he*, the Matters they pretended to give an Hiſtorical Account of, in ſuch Colours as were moſt agreeable to their particular Tempers; without any Regard had to Truth, they thought their Buſineſs was immoderately to praiſe or condemn thoſe to whom, upon private Conſiderations, they were well or ill affected. *For this Reaſon I found it my Buſineſs to inquire into the Hiſtory of the Man, before I could depend upon that of the Author, and quickly perceiv'd, that Prejudice and Partiality were Vices, as Predominant in thoſe Ages as they are now; even they who pretended to be Eye-Witneſſes of what they writ, were often blinded by Paſſion, or miſs-led by Intereſt.*

I would premiſe this, by way of Apology, for whatever Errors ſhall be found in the following Sheets: The Ground was ſo ſlippery that I hope I may be pardon'd, if I have tripp'd ſometimes; when the Foundation is weak, 'tis unreaſonable to expect a Maſter-piece in the Superſtructure.

After all I hope it is not ſo bad, but the Reader will meet with ſomething in it worthy his Obſervation, and perceive it's no new thing

to

to hear the People cry out, The Temple of the Lord, the Temple of the Lord! *who very rarely frequent the Church, or to find Men contend for what they call the Purity of Worſhip, who in the mean time place all in a ſpecious Outſide, and having no more than the* Form of Godlineſs, *are no better than* tinkling Cymbals. *One thing the Reader will particularly obſerve of the* Greeks, *that when* Mahomet *was with a powerful Army at their Gates, and the Dangers, with which they were immediately threaten'd, requir'd the united Forces of a much ſtronger People to oppoſe 'em, that then they buſied themſelves in unſeaſonable Diſputes about Religion, 'till they had ſacrific'd even that, and all that was dear to 'em, in the Quarrel.*

The Reader perhaps may wonder why 'tis ſtill call'd the Roman *Hiſtory, ſince the People of whom it Treats bear ſo little a Reſemblance to thoſe Ancient* Romans, *who were the Subject of the former Volumes: The greateſt Reaſon is, that they always call themſelves ſo; their Authors call'd the People* Romans, *and their Princes the* Roman *Emperors, affecting the Title when they had loſt the Power, and ſo were laugh'd at by the reſt of the World for their Pains.*

In a Word, tho' it be not a Work ſo perfect and irreprovable, as might be wiſh'd, yet I hope it will not meet with a worſe Reception,

for the many Pamphlets that abound at this Day in the World, which oftner expoſe the Heat, than the Senſe of a Party, and ſerve only to widen the Breaches they pretend to heal. 'Tis the Sign of an ill Management in the Faculty, when ſo many ſet up for Phyſicians; and certainly we never had more Pretenders to Politicks, who leſs underſtood the Thing they preſume to teach; and 'tis well if ſome Means could be found to draw the World off from reading and encouraging ſuch Follies.

I hope the Errors of the Preſs (except ſome few that occur in the Margin) are ſo inconſiderable, that it will be needleſs to give the Reader the Trouble of an Errata, *only he is deſir'd to read* Conqueror *inſtead of* Emperor, *when he comes to the twenty fourth Line of the ninety ſecond Page.*

A TABLE OF THE EMPERORS.

Alexander, 81ſt Emp. Page 65 to 67
Alexius, 97th Emp. p. 210 to 261
Alexius II. 100th Emp. p. 289 to 296
Alexius Angelus, 103d Emp. p. 314 to 325
Alexius Angelus II. 104th Emp. p. 325 to 330
Andronicus, 101ſt Emp. p. 296 to 301
Andronicus II. 109th Emp. p. 367 to 390
Andronicus III. 110th Emp. p. 390 to 396
Baſilius, 79th Emp. p. 48 to 54
Baſilius II. 85th Emp. p. 116 to 139
Calo-Joannes, 98th Emp. p. 261 to 269
Conſtantine VI. 81ſt Emp. p. 67 to 88
Conſtantine VII. 85th Emp. p. 116 to 141
Conſtantinus Monomachus, 89th Emp. p. 160 to 177
Conſtantinus Ducas, 93d Emp. p. 186 to 190
Conſtant. Palæologus, 114th Emp. p. 415 ad fin.
John Ducas, 106th Emp. p. 342 to 350
John Palæologus, 111th Emp. p. 396 to 408
John VI. 113th Emp. p. 413 to 415
Irene, 72d Emp. p. 1 to 5

Iſaac

Iſaac Comnenus, 92d Emp. p. 180 to 186
Iſaacius Angelus, 102d Emp. p. 301 to 314
Leo IV. 75th Emp. p. 15 to 21
Leo V. 80th Emp. p. 54 to 64
Manuel Comnenus, 99th Emp. p. 269 to 289
Manuel Palæologus, 112th Emp. p. 408 to 413
Michael I. 74th Emp. p. 12 to 15
Michael II. 76th Emp. p. 21 to 31
Michael III. 78th Emp. p. 40 to 48
Michael IV. 87th Emp. p. 149 to 157
Michael V. 88th Emp. p. 157 to 160
Michael VI. 91ſt Emp. p. 178 to 180
Michael Ducas, 95th Emp. p. 197 to 202
Nicephorus, 73d Emp. p. 5 to 11
Nicephorus II. 83d Emp. p. 92 to 99
Nicephorus III. 96th Emp. p. 202 to 210
Palæologus, 108th Emp. p. 353 to 367
Romanus, 82d Emp. p. 88 to 92
Romanus II. 86th Emp. p. 141 to 149
Romanus III. 94th Emp. p. 190 to 197
Theodora, 90th Emp. p. 177 to 178
Theodorus Laſcaris, 105th Emp. p. 334 to 342
Theod. Laſcaris II. 107th Emp. p. 351 to 353
Theophilus, 77th Emp. p. 31 to 40
Zimiſces, 84th Emp. p. 99 to 116

THE

THE CONTENTS.

VOL. V.

FROM the Reſtitution of the Roman *Empire by* Charles *the Great, to the Taking of* Conſtantinople *by the* Turks; *containing the Space of* 653 *Years.*

CHAP. I.

From the Re-eſtabliſhment of the Empire in the Weſt, to the Death of Leo Philoſophus; *containing the Space of* 111 *Years.* Page 1

CHAP. II.

From the Death of Leo *the Philoſopher to that of* Baſilius II. *who ſubdu'd the* Bulgarians, *and made 'em Tributary to the Empire; containing the Space of* 114 *Years.* p. 65

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

From the Death of Baſilius *to the Reign of* Alexius Comnenus, *in whoſe Time the Weſtern Chriſtians firſt undertook their Expedition into the Holy Land; containing the Space of* 56 *Years.* p. 139

CHAP. IV.

From the Beginning of Alexius *his Reign, 'till the Weſtern Chriſtians expell'd the* Greeks *out of* Conſtantinople; *containing the Space of* 119 *Years.* p. 214

CHAP. V.

From the Expulſion of the Greek *Emperors out of* Conſtantinople, *'till their Reſtoration; containing the Space of* 60 *Years.* p. 334

CHAP. VI.

From the Reſtitution of the Empire to the Greeks, *'till the Total Subjection of it by the* Turks *under* Mahomet *the Great; containing the Space of* 193 *Years.* p. 360

THE

THE Roman History.

VOL. V.

From the Reſtitution of the Roman *Empire by* Charles *the Great, to the Taking of* Conſtantinople *by the* Turks.

Containing the Space of 653 Years.

CHAP. I.

From the Re-eſtabliſhment of the Empire in the Weſt, to the Death of Leo Philoſophus.

Containing the Space of 111 *Years.*

I. THE Laſt Volume concluded with the Re-eſtabliſhment of the Empire in the Weſt under *Charles* the Great; and tho' the exceeding Power, and Authority of this new Empire, the Extent of its Dominions, the Intrigues, Intereſts, and different Fortunes of his Succeſſors, the prevailing Greatneſs of the Popes, their private Artifices and pub-

lick Encroachments, the Ignorance of ſome, the Cruelty of others, and the Ambition of 'em all, ſeem to afford Materials more than ſufficient for this ſucceeding Volume, I ſhall no farther regard 'em than as they bear a Relation to the Affairs of the Eaſt: The Fortunes of which Empire I ſhall endeavour to purſue down to its Diſſolution, and preſent 'em to the Reader's View, in as clear and methodical a Narration as the Aſſiſtance left us by the Hiſtorians will admit of.

The *Byzantine* Empire was ſo far from being weaken'd by the Erection of a new Imperial Authority in the Weſt, that in all probability it would have receiv'd new Strength and Nouriſhment from it, as by a Line of Communication, had it not been broken by the Contrivances of ſome, who either preferr'd their private Intereſt to the publick Good, or were influenc'd by ſuch narrow Conſiderations as confin'd their Councils and Actions to the Age they themſelves liv'd in, without any Proſpect had towards the Times that were to follow. Men began to grow too opinionative Stateſmen, to be true Patriots, and the Art of Government was more aim'd at, than the End of it: However, as private Men are inſtructed by the Failings and Misfortunes of their Neighbours, ſo ſhould the Factions and Diſtempers of one Age be apply'd to heal the Breaches and Diviſions of another.

At the Time that *Charles* the Great was ſaluted Emperor by the Pope and all the *Roman* People, the Eaſtern Empire was engag'd in almoſt uninterrupted Wars with the *Saracens*, their irreconcilable Enemies; who, beſides the Hatred they bore 'em from Conſiderations Civil and Political, perſecuted them upon the Score of their Religion. *Aaron* their Caliph, and his Predeceſſors, had ſo effectually prevail'd againſt 'em, that hardly the Name of a Patriarch was heard of at *Antioch* or *Alexandria*; and that either becauſe no ſuch had been for ſome time appointed, or for that they who were choſen to the Office had not the Courage, in

that

that miſerable Age, to appear in the Execution of it; and 'tis an aſſured Sign they have loſt their Liberties, who have been forc'd to give up their Religion. Theſe Conſiderations, and the daily Progreſs of *Charles*'s Arms in the Weſt, his unweary'd Diligence, and warlike Preparations, which ſeem'd to promiſe him the abſolute Dominion of all *Italy* and of *Sicily*, mov'd *Irene* the Empreſs to ſend her Ambaſſadors to him with Propoſals of a firm and laſting Peace. *Charles* gave 'em a very free and generous Audience, and promis'd by Ambaſſadors of his own at *Conſtantinople* to treat of and agree to whatever ſhould be thought proper for the Good of both Empires. To theſe Ambaſſadors were join'd Legats from the Pope, and they were all honour'd with a very magnificent Reception at *Conſtantinople*. Thus far the Matter proceeded much to the Honour and Satisfaction of *Irene*, tho' in the Iſſue it prov'd her Dethronement and Deſtruction. Among their other Inſtructions, theſe Ambaſſadors were order'd to treat of a Marriage between *Charles* and the Empreſs, that the Two Empires might be once more happily united in their Perſons. Of this *Irene* is ſaid to have made the firſt Overtures to *Charles*, and therefore very readily enter'd into the Negotiation; but was as zealouſly oppos'd in it by *Ætius* an Eunuch, who being a diſtinguiſh'd Favourite rul'd with great Authority in the Palace, and was become Maſter of immenſe Treaſures. He had for a long time labour'd in ſecret to advance his Brother *Leo*, either as an Aſſociate to *Irene*, or her Succeſſor in the Empire, and he well knew all his Counſels and Contrivances would unavoidably be defeated by ſo unexpected a Treaty. Nor was *Ætius* the only Obſtacle to the Match propos'd, for *Nicephorus* the Patrician, a Man of great Intereſt and ambitious Deſigns, declar'd himſelf more openly againſt her. He had ſome Months before engag'd *Niceras* and ſeveral others of the leading Men among the Patricians to join with him, by repreſenting to 'em how

ſhameful and ignominious it was for Men like them to be Slaves to the Pride and Ambition of an imperious Woman; and now added freſh Weight to his former Remonſtrances, by ſhowing 'em the dangerous Conſequences of ſuch a Match, and the pernicious Deſign *Irene* had of transferring the Government of the Eaſt into the Hands of *Charles*, and thereby making them no other than a Province to the Weſtern Emperors. This produc'd a very ſudden Revolution, for the diſcontented Nobility being ſupported by their Clients and Dependants, went in a large Body tothe great Palace, where they got an eaſie Admittance; for telling the Guards it was *Irene*'s Pleaſure *Nicephorus* ſhould be declar'd Emperor, on purpoſe to obviate the Deſigns of *Ætius*, who in a very preſumptuous manner urg'd her to his Brother *Leo*'s Promotion; *Ætius* being a Man obnoxious to the Army, the Guards readily believ'd what the Conſpirators affirm'd, and declar'd for *Nicephorus*; who being thus admitted with his Friends, ſent his Emiſſaries about the City that Night, to prepare the People for the Execution of his Deſigns the Day following. As ſoon as it was Light, thoſe of his Party ſeiz'd forcibly on *Irene*, and ſhut her up in Priſon; after which they conducted their new Emperor to the great Church, where he was crown'd in a tumultuous manner, being ſaluted with the Curſes, rather than the Acclamations of the People.

Irene *depos'd*,

This was the end of *Irene*'s Power, and the beginning of her Miſeries. At firſt the Tyrant treated her with much Civility and Reſpect, he exclaim'd againſt the Violence of the People, who, out of a Diſaffection to her Perſon and Government, had forc'd him to accept of the Imperial Title. He knew ſhe had conceal'd an immenſe Treaſure, and being a Man of a ſordid covetous Temper he hop'd, by an inſinuating Complacency, to perſuade her to diſcover it. At firſt ſhe endeavour'd to evade his Sollicitations, but at length comply'd with his Requeſt, upon Condition ſhe might be

be ſuffer'd to live in a peaceable and honourable Reſtraint in the Palace of *Eleutherius*, which ſhe her ſelf had built. *Nicephorus*, by a ſolemn Promiſe, granted her Deſire, but having obtain'd his Ends he baniſh'd her to a Monaſtery in the *Prince's Iſland*, from whence he ſhortly after remov'd her to *Mitylene* in the Iſle of *Lesbos*, leſt the People, who hated him, ſhould reſtore her to her former Dignity, where ſhe dy'd of Grief. *and baniſh'd.*

Tho' *Irene* had from the beginning behav'd her ſelf like an arrogant, haughty and ambitious Princeſs, yet the People, whom ſhe had oblig'd by ſeveral popular Acts of Grace and Condeſcention, with unfeigned Sighs lamented her Deſtruction; and 'tis wonderful to conſider how the great Champions of the Papacy extol and admire her upon no other Account but for her Devotion to the See of *Rome*, and her blind Zeal for the Worſhip of Images; and tho' neither the Tongue of Men or Angels can reaſonably excuſe her unnatural Barbarity to her Son, they have prophanely preſum'd to vindicate it by Texts of Holy Scripture, and thereby in ſome meaſure made God himſelf, who is of purer Eyes than to behold Iniquity, the Author of an Act which all Ages muſt have in Execration; ſo ready are they, by a ſuperſtitious Logick, to join the greateſt Oppoſites, and turn Darkneſs into Light.

Tho' *Charles* his Ambaſſadors, who were Eye-witneſſes of this unexpected Revolution, could not but reſent theſe rebellious Proceedings, yet they readily made their Court to the new Prince, and continu'd their Negotiations. *Nicephorus*, who well knew how great a Support the Friendſhip of *Charles* would prove to him, entertain'd 'em very favourably, and promis'd to ſend 'em back with Ambaſſadors of his own, who the Year following concluded a Peace between the two Princes, by Virtue of which *Charles* was acknowledg'd Emperor of the Weſt, and his Empire comprehended all *Italy*, as far as the Rivers *Volturno* and *Olphanto*, NICEPHORUS. A. D. 802.

with *Bavaria*, *Hungary*, *Auſtria*, *Croatia*, *Dalmatia*, *Sclavonia*, all *Germany*, *France* and *Spain*, and that the reſt of *Italy*, except *Venice* and its Dependancies, which continu'd neuter, with the Eaſtern Parts of *Europe*, ſhould continue under the Dominion of *Nicephorus*; whoſe Ambaſſadors, having had all things tranſacted according to their own Deſires, return'd home very well ſatisfy'd with their Negotiation.

Tho' *Nicephorus* hop'd, upon his Friendſhip with *Charles*, and the Benefit of this Treaty, to render himſelf belov'd and reſpected by his People, yet was he univerſally deteſted, eſpecially by the Army. He was by Nature haughty, covetous and revengeful, which in ſome meaſure he conceal'd before his Promotion, but behav'd himſelf with little or no Reſerve after his Advancement. It is to be doubted whether he was more greedy of Blood or of Gold: He was a perfect Slave to his Appetites, and as ſuch could have no ſerious Taſte of Religion. Theſe pernicious Qualities, ſo unbecoming an Emperor in the very Entrance of his Reign, rais'd the general Murmurs of the People againſt him, and provok'd the Army in the Eaſt to renounce their Allegiance, and declare *Bardanes*, one of their Commanders, Emperor. *Bardanes* was at firſt ſupported by *Michael* and *Leo*, two Principal Officers, who ſucceeded *Nicephorus* in the Empire; but whether they found *Bardanes*, who fear'd the Effuſion of Chriſtian Blood, averſe to the Election of the Army; or that being of a meek peaceable Temper, he was unable to improve the Advantage Fortune had thrown into his Hands, they ſhortly after deſerted him, and went over to *Nicephorus*; ſo that *Bardanes*, being forſaken by his Friends, and terrify'd by the Predictions of a Monk, ſent a ſubmiſſive Meſſage to *Nicephorus*, and earneſtly ſu'd for a Pardon, which the Emperor readily promis'd, and order'd him to be ſhaven in the Monaſtery of *Heraclius* at *Catabolium*; but as if all this was not ſufficient for his Security, he ſhortly after commanded

Bardanes declar'd Emperor by the Army in the Eaſt.

manded his Eyes to be pluck'd out, as he was going upon a friendly Invitation from him to *Conſtantinople*. *Nicephorus* proceeded with great Severity againſt ſome others that had appear'd moſt forward in the late Commotions, and *Nicetas*, who had been ſo zealous for his Advancement, was poiſon'd about the ſame time, and ſome will have it by the Emperor's Order; who being thus ſecur'd from *Bardanes*, thought farther to confirm the Empire in his own Houſe by crowning his Son *Stauratius*, a Perſon as unfit for the Imperial Dignity as his Father, being deform'd in Body and Mind. This Solemnity being over, and having, as he thought, ſettled his Affairs at home, he march'd with a powerful Army againſt the *Arabians*, who had miſerably harraſs'd the Empire, and from whom he receiv'd a total Defeat the *Auguſt* following, and very narrowly eſcap'd with his Life; but the *Saracens* not thinking it ſufficient that they had repell'd *Nicephorus*, and, after he had loſt the greateſt part of his Army, forc'd him to return inglorious home, ſhortly after, under the Command of *Aaron* their Caliph, to the Number of three hundred thouſand Men, invaded the Empire, and proceeding as far as *Tyana*, the Metropolis of *Cappadocia Minor*, they took the City, and erected in it a *Mahometan* Moſch, after which the Caliph ſeiz'd on other fortify'd Towns, and having detach'd a Body of ſixty thouſand Men towards *Ancyra* in *Galatia*, they waſted the Country up as far as that City. This ſpeedy Progreſs of the Infidels awaken'd *Nicephorus*, who was buſying himſelf in Buildings, and other expenſive Amuſements. He rais'd as powerful an Army as the time would allow of, but finding himſelf unable to reſiſt the numerous Forces of his Enemies, he ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Aaron* with Propoſals for a Peace. The Caliph, who well knew the Neceſſities to which the Emperor was reduc'd, would give no ear to an Accommodation, but upon theſe Terms, that the Emperor ſhould pay the *Saracens* an early Tribute of thirty

A. D. 803.

Nicephorus *overthrown by the* Arabians.

A. D. 806.

thouſand Pieces of Gold, beſides three thouſand for his own Head, and as many for that of his Son; and that *Nicephorus* ſhould not for the future preſume to repair the Forts *Aaron* had taken and diſmantl'd. *Nicephorus* paid the Mony, but as ſoon as *Aaron* was retir'd he reſtor'd the Forts that had been demoliſh'd, and added new ones to 'em, at which the *Arabians* were ſo provok'd, that they return'd with a numerous Army, and rag'd with a greater Fury than they had done before. At the ſame time they arm'd a ſtrong Fleet againſt *Cyprus*, which they took, demoliſhing the Churches, killing or driving away the Inhabitants, and miſerably waſting the Iſland. The Year following they attempted the ſame thing againſt *Rhodes*, where a great number of the Inhabitants were taken Priſoners; but the Garriſon in the Caſtle made a very vigorous Reſiſtance, and the Fleet in their return ſuffer'd very much by a furious Storm, which ſome Writers have attributed to the Violence they offer'd the Relicks of St. *Nicholas* at *Myra*, a City in *Lycia*, where they touch'd as they were returning home.

The great Progreſs of the Saracens.

Baron. Annal. A. D. 807.

In the mean time *Nicephorus* was employ'd in ſeeking out an agreeable Match for his Son *Stauratius*; he had lately arm'd for an Expedition againſt the *Bulgarians*, his inveterate Enemies, but being arriv'd at *Adrianople*, the Army refus'd to march for want of their Pay, which forc'd him to return home with much Anger, and more Diſhonour. Being arriv'd at *Conſtantinople* he ſummon'd the moſt beautiful Virgins of the City to appear at Court, in order to chuſe from among 'em a Wife for his Son; but having conſulted with his Council he marry'd *Stauratius* to *Theophania*, one of the late Empreſs *Irene*'s Relations, tho' ſhe had been contracted before to another Man, and to add a Grace to the Nuptial he deflour'd two of the Virgins he had ſummon'd to attend him. This his brutiſh Behaviour threw the People into a general Diſcontent, and in time drew the Divine Vengeance down upon his Head,

Head. He was ſo univerſally hated, that almoſt every Day ſome Conſpiracy or other was form'd againſt him, which however by his extraordinary Diligence he always detected, and proceeded with exemplary Severity againſt the Conſpirators, ſparing neither Laymen nor Eccleſiaſticks, putting ſome to Death, baniſhing others, and confiſcating the Eſtates of the reſt. Whilſt he was wholly intent upon theſe bloody Inquiſitions, the *Bulgarians* defeated a Party of his Soldiers, taking from 'em eleven hundred Pounds of Gold, which he had aſſign'd for the Payment of his Army. The ſame Year before *Eaſter*, *Crumus*, King of *Bulgaria*, ſurpris'd *Sardica*, and put ſix thouſand Soldiers to the Sword. The Emperor made no other uſe of theſe Misfortunes, than with a more heavy Hand to oppreſs his diſtreſſed Subjects; ſuch of his Commanders as had the good Fortune to eſcape the Hands of *Crumus* he receiv'd ſo roughly, and terrify'd 'em with his Menaces, that he provok'd 'em to revolt, and ſide with the *Bulgarians*. He impos'd a new Tribute upon the City to repair *Sardica*, and omitted no Opportunity of exhauſting his Subjects, and ſwelling his own Coffers, which however were hardly ſufficient for his daily extravagant Expences. Some of the Wealth, rais'd by theſe violent Extortions, fell into the Hands of the *Saracens*, who, making an Inroad into the *Roman* Territories, overthrew *Leo*, one of his Generals, and, beſides the Slaughter of a great Multitude of his Men, took from him a great Quantity of Gold, with which he was going to pay the Army. To repair this Loſs he tax'd all Churches and Monaſtries, and laid an Impoſition of Eight Years upon the Houſes of the Nobility, commanding *Nicetas* the Patrician to levy it, whilſt he proceeded in another Expedition againſt the *Bulgarians*. Being by this time forſaken of God, and deteſted of Men, he had little reaſon to hope any good Succeſs would crown his Undertakings; however he collected into one Body moſt of the Forces throughout his Em-

Empire, and having conſtrain'd many poor Men to ſerve on Foot at their own Charges, arm'd with Slings and Staves, and following him with their Curſes, which were aggravated with thoſe of his whole Army, he enter'd *Bulgaria*: Of whoſe Approach when *Crumus*, who then lay at *Marcellæ*, was inform'd, being terrify'd at the Report of the Multitudes he brought with him, ſent and deſir'd Peace; but the obſtinate Emperor, blinded by his own Folly, and the Inſinuations of his Flatterers, arrogantly refus'd it, and with a cowardly Temerity, on the twentieth of *July*, when the Dog-ſtar rag'd o'er the Plains, he invaded the Country, often repeating theſe Words, *Who ſhall go and deceive* Ahab? *What God or Devil is it that draws me on thus againſt my own Will?* by which he ſeem'd ſenſible of that Fate which his Foreknowledge could not avoid. Whilſt he was on his March, *Byzantius*, his beloved Favourite, forſook him, and fled with the Imperial Robe, and an Hundred Pounds of Gold, to *Crumus*, which was re-
A. D. 811. ceiv'd as an unlucky Omen by ſome about him. For three Days together he ſeem'd to have the Advantage, but aſcrib'd his Succeſs not to the Mercy of God, but the Conduct and good Fortune of his Son *Stauratius*.

Nicephorus *rages with great Fury in* Bulgaria; He exceedingly threaten'd all the *Bulgarian* Officers that oppos'd his Progreſs, extended his Fury to Brutes, to Infants, and Perſons of both Sexes, all Ages and Conditions, denying the Right of Burial to thoſe who were Slain, and with a greedy Eye and rapacious Hand ſeiz'd on whatever was able to ſatisfie either his Pride or his Avarice, puniſhing thoſe Chriſtians with the loſs of their Ears and other Members, who were found embezzling any part of the Booty. *Crumus* being ſenſibly afflicted at the Calamities of his Subjects, ſent again an humble ſubmiſſive Meſſage to him, offering him all he could demand on Condition he would quit the Country; but he, deaf to the Name of Peace, receiv'd the Meſſengers with Scorn, and diſmiſs'd 'em with Indignation. Whereupon *Crumus*, agitated by Deſpair

Deſpair and the Thirſt of Revenge, fortify'd and ſecur'd all the Paſſes the Emperor had broken thro', and ſhut him up ſo cloſe in the Bowels of his Country, that *Nicephorus*, when he had obſerv'd it, cry'd out with great Aſtoniſhment to thoſe that were near him, *That tho' they all had Wings they never could eſcape the Deſtruction which ſo nearly threaten'd them.* Two Days after this *Crumus* ſet upon his Camp, and took it by Storm, in which fell the Emperor himſelf, with moſt of the Patricians and general Officers. *Stauratius* receiv'd a Mortal Wound in his Neck, and eſcap'd in a Litter to *Adrianople*. All the Arms and Baggage fell into the Enemy's Hands; and *Crumus* having found *Nicephorus* his Corps, cut off his Head, and having fix'd it on a high Pole, expos'd it for ſome time to the view of his Soldiers, after which he enclos'd his Skull in Silver, and in an inſulting manner made his Nobility drink out of it. *where at length he is ſlain.*

The many Fatherleſs Children and Widows which that Day's Deſtruction made, would have forc'd 'em to curſe the Remembrance of it, had they not been comforted with this Thought, that the Tyrant periſh'd in it. His Government was ſo inſupportable, that he exceeded all the Monſters who ever reign'd before him, in Ambition, Luxury, and unheard of Barbarities; he was ſtrongly inclin'd to the Sect of the *Manichees*, and commanded his Officers to uſe Eccleſiaſticks no other than as Slaves. He deny'd Providence, and affirm'd no Power was greater than that of the Emperor, if he had but the Art of Government, for which reaſon he condemn'd all his Predeceſſors as ignorant and unskilful. He fell in the ninth Year of his Reign, the Eleventh of *Charles* the Great, *A. D.* 811. Theophan.

II. *Stauratius*, as we obſerv'd before, eſcap'd wounded to *Adrianople*, where ſome of the Officers took Care to have him ſaluted and declar'd Emperor, to which the People were ſo little conſenting, that they did not more

more rejoice at the Death of the Father, than they griev'd that the Son ſurviv'd him. Being ſenſible of his weak Condition, and the publick Hatred to which he was expos'd, he reſolv'd to confirm his Wife *Theophania* in the Empire. The chief of the Army, and the Principal among the Nobility, who deteſted the MICHAEL. Memory of *Nicephorus*, had fix'd their Eyes on *Michael Curopalates*, who had marry'd *Procopia*, the late Emperor's Daughter, as a Perſon fitteſt for the Dignity. *Michael*, in regard of the Oaths he had given to *Nicephorus* and his Son, at firſt very zealouſly declin'd it; but being inform'd that *Stauratius*, the better to ſecure the Empire to his Wife, in Diſtruſt of him and the great Affection the Nobility bore him, deſign'd to pluck out his Eyes, he accepted of the Offer, and was declar'd Emperor: Upon which *Stauratius* forſook the Place, and retir'd with his Wife into a Monaſtery, where he took the Habit, and dy'd ſhortly after, having acted as Emperor but two Months and ten Days.

Michael was crown'd with great Solemnity by *Nicephorus* the Patriarch, after he had by a publick Writing oblig'd himſelf to maintain the Privileges of the Church, and abſtain from Chriſtian Blood. Shortly after he declar'd his Wife *Procopia* Empreſs, and had her crown'd together with his Son *Theophylact*, and then apply'd himſelf with great Care to heal the Wounds of the State. He made a Proviſion for the Widows and Children of ſuch Soldiers as fell in the late Wars: He ſettled an honourable Penſion upon *Theophania*, *Stauratius*'s Widow: He preſented the Patriarch with Fifty Pounds of Gold, and gave the Clergy Five and Twenty, which was afterwards follow'd by more conſiderable Preſents to them and the Senate; endeavouring to eaſe and reſtore thoſe Families that had ſuffer'd under the Tyranny of the laſt Reign: And having in the beſt manner he could ſettled the Affairs of the Empire at home, he took care to enter into ſuch Alliances as were neceſſary for the Security of it abroad.

broad. Among the reſt he ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Charles* the Great, with Orders to renew and confirm the Peace, and propoſe a Match between his Son *Theophylact* and *Charles*'s Daughter. 'Tis not unlikely but *Charles* would willingly have liſten'd to ſuch a Propoſal, had the Temper of thoſe Times permitted it, but *Michael* was retir'd to a private State before a Matter of that Conſequence could maturely be conſider'd. The ſmall Account we have of him from Hiſtory repreſents him to us a Prince like ſome of his Predeceſſors, too good for the Age he liv'd in. He was zealous for the Honour of Chriſtianity, and no leſs for the Safety of the Empire; but the Difficulties he had to contend withal were too great, and he found little other Satisfaction in his Undertakings than what reſulted from his honeſt Intentions. He was hardly veſted in the Imperial Purple, before he found himſelf engag'd in War almoſt on every ſide: The *Saracens* continu'd their uſual Inroads into the Empire, which they depopulated by their daily Devaſtations; and the *Bulgarians* could not forget their ancient Animoſities. Againſt the firſt *Michael* ſent *Leo*, the Governor of thoſe Parts, who watch'd his Opportunity ſo well, that A. D. 813. he overthrew two thouſand of their Men, and return'd with many Horſes and a rich Booty. The War with the *Bulgarians* prov'd more fatal to the Emperor, which ſome attribute to his own Diffidence and Puſillanimity, others to the Treachery of *Leo* who ſucceeded him. In the beginning of this Emperor's Reign there appear'd a better Underſtanding between the two Nations than had been formerly; for ſeveral of the *Bulgarians* had, upon a Permiſſion obtain'd from *Michael*, ſettled themſelves in the *Roman* Territories, and a mutual Friendſhip ſeem'd to be cultivated on each ſide: But it happen'd that ſome of the Emperor's Subjects, who had been taken Captive in the former Wars, broke their Priſons, and return'd home: Of theſe *Crumus* demanded an immediate Reſtitution, threatning to reſent

reſent a Refuſal in the moſt hoſtile manner imaginable. The Emperor, who was naturally averſe to War, and a few others, were of Opinion that *Crumus* ought to be gratify'd, but the Majority carry'd it againſt 'em; whereupon the *Bulgarians* fell upon the Weſtern Parts of the Empire, waſting all with Fire and Sword. *Michael* prepar'd with all Expedition to oppoſe 'em, and march'd at the Head of his Army into *Thrace*, where he ſuffer'd his unruly Soldiers to commit ſo many Diſorders, that the Inhabitants began to deſpiſe him as a Man ignorant, or careleſs of Military Diſcipline. *Crumus* encamp'd himſelf near *Adrianople*, and after ſeveral ſlight Skirmiſhes both Armies came to an Engagement, in which the Imperialiſts were entirely defeated and put to Flight. *Michael* was ſo ſenſibly affected with this Misfortune, that he grew weary of the Imperial Purple, which requir'd a Man of a more warlike Genius, and therefore reſolv'd to reſign that Honour, which lay continually expos'd to the Hazards of War, and the Licentiouſneſs of an Army. Thus is the Matter related by *Theophanes*, a Writer, who liv'd in that Age, and was a Sharer in the Tranſactions of thoſe Times, who adds, that *Michael* earneſtly preſs'd *Leo* to accept of the Empire, and ſuffer him to retire into a Cloyſter, but that *Leo* for a long time refus'd it, being a Man uncorrupted in his Loyalty, and ſenſible of the dangerous State of Affairs, and the daily Incurſions of the Barbarians, 'till obſerving *Michael* reſolv'd upon his Reſignation, and that the Enemy approach'd the Imperial City, then with much difficulty he went attended by the Magiſtrates and Soldiers to the Tribunal, where he was unanimouſly declar'd Emperor. Thus have we the Matter related by *Theophanes*, if at leaſt the latter part of that Hiſtory be genuin; for
Cedrenus. ſome, upon good Grounds, have affirm'd, that he concluded it with the Reign of *Nicephorus*, and that the Reſidue was added by ſome other Hand: The other Hiſtorians that writ of that Age vary from *Theophanes*

in

in ſome Particulars. They ſay *Michael* at firſt had the Advantage of the *Bulgarians*, 'till *Leo*, the General of the Eaſt, who aim'd at the Empire, drew off in the Heat of the Battel with the Forces under his Command, by which means the Imperialiſts were ſo much weaken'd, that the *Bulgarians* recover'd the Day; whereupon *Michael* relinquiſh'd the Government, and left *Leo* by his Valour to defend that Crown his Treachery had ſo inevitably expos'd. They add, that *Michael* withdrew not by any voluntary Abdication, but was forced to it by the ambitious Practices of *Leo*, who being left behind in *Thrace* to protect the Country, and reſtrain the Incurſions of the Barbarians, took the Advantage of the Emperor's Abſence, and by ſome of his intimate Friends inſinuated into the Minds of the Soldiers *Michael*'s Ignorance and Inactivity, and the great Experience and Integrity of *Leo*. Theſe Intrigues were manag'd with ſo much Art, that *Leo* was forc'd publickly by the Army to accept of thoſe Honours which his Ambition in private had ſo earneſtly courted. When *Michael* was inform'd at *Conſtantinople* of what the Army had done, ſome of his Friends advis'd him to aſſert his Title, and prepare for a vigorous Reſiſtance: Among the reſt his Wife *Procopia*, a Princeſs of a maſculine ambitious Spirit, declar'd it became him rather to die than deſert the Imperial Throne. But *Michael* being of a meek peaceable Diſpoſition, affirm'd he was ready to part not only with his Crown but his Life, to ſave the Effuſion of Chriſtian Blood, and accordingly ſent the Imperial Enſigns to *Leo*, who was thereupon univerſally acknowledg'd Emperor. LEO IV.

By whatever Artifices *Leo* obtain'd the Purple, he made it appear in the Courſe of his Reign that he well deſerv'd it; and thoſe Perſons that were his avow'd Enemies upon the Account of Religion, were forc'd to allow him to have been an active vigilant Prince. *Michael* immediately upon his Reſignation had withdrawn himſelf with his Wife and Children into a Monaſtery

at

at *Conſtantinople*, but *Leo* thought it highly conſiſted with his Safety to have 'em ſeparated, and therefore confin'd the Father to a Monaſtery on the Iſland *Prota*, and baniſh'd *Procopia* and her Children, having firſt cruelly caſtrated *Theophylact* the Eldeſt, and, as ſome will have it, his Brother *Ignatius*, who notwithſtanding was afterwards Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. After this he promoted ſuch of his Friends as he thought he could with moſt ſafety confide in, eſpecially his Fellow-Servants, *Thomas* and *Michael Balbus*, of whom mention will be made in its proper place. The Empire had exceedingly ſuffer'd by the *Bulgarians* during the Reigns of his Predeceſſors; he found the Army much weaken'd, and was ſenſible how difficult a matter it was to fill it up with new Levies. In the mean time the Barbarians, animated by their late Victories, continu'd their Incurſions, and pierc'd into the very Bowels of *Thrace*, which they depopulated without control. *Leo* endeavour'd at firſt to reſtrain 'em by fair means, and for that purpoſe ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Crumus*, whoſe frequent Advantages againſt them had drawn into ſuch a Contempt of his Enemies, that he refus'd to liſten to any amicable Overtures, and ſent 'em back without granting 'em an Audience; whereupon the Emperor found himſelf oblig'd to Arm, and being ſtrengthen'd with all the Forces he could draw together he offer'd the *Bulgarians* Battel. The Diſpute was very obſtinate, and great Multitudes of Men fell on both ſides, 'till at length *Crumus*, who was ſuperior in Numbers, prevail'd, and routed the *Romans*, who fled at firſt in great Diſorder; but *Leo*, who beheld all from an adjacent Eminence, obſerving that the *Bulgarians*, inſtead of purſuing their Enemies, were buſied in pillaging their Camp, rally'd his Forces, and with a Reſerve of Troops that continu'd unbroken fell with great Fury upon the *Bulgarians*, renew'd the Fight, and obtain'd an entire Victory; great Numbers of the Enemy were taken Priſoners, and more found dead in the Field,

A great Battel in Thrace,

where the Bulgarians *were beaten*

Field, among whom ſome reckon the King himſelf, who was ſlain by the Emperor's own Hand; others ſay he very narrowly eſcap'd with his Life, having receiv'd a Wound by an Arrow, and been beaten off his Horſe. The *Bulgarians* were ſo weaken'd by this Overthrow, that they were forc'd to ſit at home in Peace for a long time after.

The Reputation of this Victory, and the Vigilance of the Emperor, reſtrain'd the Incurſions of the *Saracens* in the Eaſt during his Reign; and tho' he was a warlike active Prince he choſe rather to enjoy the Calm of an honourable Peace than truſt to the Accidents of War; for which reaſon he took care to maintain a good Intelligence with his Neighbours. So that being, in a great meaſure, at Peace even with thoſe Nations who had ſworn an irreconcilable Enmity to the Empire, he was at leiſure to reflect on the unhappy Diſputes that divided the Church. The proſperous Courſe of his Affairs render'd him free and independant, and therefore he had an Opportunity of entring into the Merit of the Cauſe, without the neceſſity of founding his Authority upon the Intereſt either of the one or the other Party. They who had aſſerted the Worſhip of Images in the Church continu'd to maintain the Diſpute with much Heat and Animoſity, and had purſu'd the Argument ſo far, that they were ſcarce eſteem'd Chriſtians, who had not adher'd to their Opinion. The Novelty of the Doctrine, and the Abſurdity of it too, together with a Conſideration of the private Deſigns, or Neceſſities of Thoſe among his Predeceſſors who eſpous'd it, and the undutiful Behaviour They met withal from the See of *Rome*, who had the Courage to oppoſe it, could not but raiſe in *Leo* an utter Averſion to it. There are many things indifferent in themſelves which either the Artifice of ſome, or the Ignorance of others draw into pernicious Conſequences: The Repreſentation of Jeſus Chriſt in the ſeveral Paſſages of his Life, together with that of the

Saints and Martyrs, may ſerve to enliven the Affections of the truly devout Chriſtians; but when the Adoration of thoſe Images is enforc'd as a neceſſary part of our Religion, inſtead of a lively Remembrance, and a grateful Commemoration; when thoſe Honours are requir'd to be paid to the Work of Mens Hands, which are only due to the everliving God; 'tis time then to pluck up that Tree by the Roots which produces ſuch venomous Fruit. So that without offering at thoſe frivolous Motives *Baronius* hath cited from his infallible Authors, we may allow *Leo* had juſt reaſon to uſe his Authority, as he did, with ſo much Vigor to reſtrain ſo peſtilent an Innovation. He enforc'd the Obſervance of the Council celebrated at *Conſtantinople* in the Year 754, under *Conſtantinus Copronymus*, and publiſh'd an Edict, wherein he abſolutely prohibited the Divine Worſhip that had been paid to Images, and commanded 'em to be remov'd out of the Church, threatning thoſe with Exile who diſobey'd his Ordonnance. Accordingly *Nicephorus* the Patriarch was baniſh'd, and *Theodotus* the Monk, who is ſaid to have encourag'd the Emperor in theſe Proceedings, was ſubſtituted in his room; with *Nicephorus* likewiſe were baniſh'd *Nicetas* a Patrician, and one of the Empreſs *Irene*'s Relations, together with *Theodorus* an Abbot, and *Theophanes* the Hiſtorian; tho' we are told by *Baronius* that all the reſt but *Nicephorus*, who dy'd in Exile in the Year 828, were ſhortly after reſtor'd by the Emperor, who, partly by fair Promiſes, and partly by Menaces, had perſuaded 'em to comply.

Leo oppoſes the Worſhip of Images.

A. D. 815.

Theſe Proceedings entertain'd the Emperor the remaining part of his Reign, 'till the Behaviour of *Michael Balbus* forc'd him to provide for his own Security; this *Michael* had formerly ſerv'd as his Companion in the Wars, for which reaſon, when he came to be Emperor, he advanc'd him conſiderably in the Government, which he imputed not ſo much to *Leo*'s Favour

vour as his own Deſerts: Among other Vices with which he was incumber'd, he had a moſt buſie laviſh Tongue, and would frequently, in common Diſcourſe, reflect on the Emperor, threatning to depoſe him, and by force marry the Empreſs. Tho' *Leo* was frequently inform'd of *Michael*'s Preſumption, yet, being averſe both to Jealouſie and Cruelty, his want of Caution procur'd his Ruin; knowing his talkative Diſtemper he imputed it to that, 'till repeated Provocations, and an apparent Conviction made him reſolve to puniſh him. He had great Reaſon to think that what *Michael* had ſo freely utter'd proceeded rather from ſome wicked Deſign form'd between him and his Accomplices, as it afterwards appear'd when it was too late, than his uſual vein of talking; wherefore he order'd him to be apprehended, and brought immediately to his Trial, where the Evidence being found direct againſt him he was condemn'd, and ſentenc'd to be burnt alive. The Trial was on *Chriſtmas* Eve, and as the Officers were leading him up to Execution *Theodoſia*, the Empreſs, ran with an intemperate Fury to her Husband, whom ſhe call'd Tyrant, and prophane, in that he could not abſtain from Blood at a time when he was about to partake of the Holy Sacrament. *Leo* being touch'd with the Senſe of what ſhe utter'd, and fearing to offend God, conſented to a Reprieve, but commanded his Legs to be loaden with Irons of which he kept the Keys himſelf, and committed him to the Cuſtody of *Papia*, a Perſon whom he had highly oblig'd, and in whom therefore he thought he could with greateſt ſafety confide; after which he upbraided his Wife for her unſeaſonable Paſſion, and told her *he had comply'd with her Deſires, tho' he knew it would end in the Deſtruction of her and her Children.*

The Apprehenſions of *Michael*'s Deſigns ſunk ſo deep in the Emperor's Mind that he cou'd not reſt, but roſe in great Conſternation the Night following, and reſolv'd to ſecure himſelf from the Traitor; accord-

ingly he broke that Inſtant into *Papia*'s Houſe, where he found the Priſoner lodg'd in a very rich Bed faſt a-ſleep, and his Goaler reſting on the Floor with equal Security by him. The diſtracted Emperor was ſo amaz'd at this unexpected ſight that he retir'd without any noiſe, reſolving to puniſh both the one and the other. This Midnight Viſit was not made with ſo much Privacy but the Emperor was diſcover'd by one of the Watch, who inform'd *Papia* of what he had obſerv'd, and by that means put both him and *Michael* upon their Guard. They could not but be ſenſible of the Danger they were in, and therefore reſolv'd to provide for their own Safety by giving the firſt Blow. *Michael* had requeſted that ſome religious Perſon might be admitted to confer with him, which, out of reſpect to his Soul's Safety, the Emperor readily granted; this Man *Michael* ſent to the Conſpirators, and threaten'd, that unleſs by ſome ſpeedy Blow they procur'd his Releaſe, he would diſcover 'em all to *Leo*. The Conſpirators being alarm'd at this Meſſage, and ſenſible of the great Danger they were in, reſolv'd to loſe no time, and mingled themſelves with thoſe who aſſiſted at Divine Service in the Emperor's Chappel, and having hid their Daggers under their Habits, were early in the Morning admitted with them into the Palace; at firſt they diſpos'd of themſelves in a private Corner of the Chappel, 'till the Emperor came to his Devotions, and then at a certain Signal they fell upon him in the midſt of Divine Service, and moſt barbarouſly murder'd him. At firſt they miſtook the Dean of the Chappel for *Leo*, 'till he diſcover'd to 'em his bald Head, which ſecur'd his Life. *Leo*, foreſeeing their Deſign, retir'd in the mean time to the Altar, where he defended himſelf for ſome time with great Bravery, 'till being at length overcome by the Numbers of his Enemies, who, without any regard to that ſacred Place, were reſolv'd to compleat what they had begun; he firſt loſt his Hand in the Diſpute, and

Leo murder'd.

at

at laſt his Head. This was the unhappy End of *Leo*, who deſerv'd a better Fate, after he had govern'd the Empire with much Prudence and Reputation upwards of ſeven Years and a half. He was Slain in the ſeventh Year of *Lewis* the *Debonnaire*, the Fourth of Pope *Paſchal*, *An. Dom.* 820.

The Fury of the Conſpirators did not terminate in the Death of *Leo*; they ran with great Violence from the Chappel to the Court, where they ſeiz'd on the Empreſs *Theodoſia*, and ſhut her up in a Monaſtery, and forc'd her four Sons into the Iſland *Prota*, where by *Michael*'s Order they were afterwards caſtrated, in which cruel Operation the younger loſt his Life, and the elder his Speech. In the mean time *Michael*, being now releas'd from his Priſon, was conducted in a tumultuous manner to the Imperial Throne, where he was ſaluted Emperor with the Shackles ſtill on his Feet, for the Key was no where to be found, ſo that at laſt they were forc'd to knock the Bolts off with a Hammer, after which he was crown'd in the great Church by the Hands of the Patriarch. MICHAEL II.

Tho' the Death of *Leo* was very much regretted by the generality of the People, who eſteem'd him as a prudent, moderate and valiant Emperor, yet the great Patrons of Images exclaim'd againſt him in the moſt bitter Terms imaginable, comparing him to *Ahab*, *Julian* the Apoſtate, and other Monſters in Hiſtory; and at the ſame time loaded his Succeſſor, who had caus'd him to be aſſaſſinated, with the higheſt Encomiums, calling him *the promis'd of God*, *a ſecond* David, *another* Joſias, *the King of Peace*, and the like: But this good Humour did not continue long towards him; for when they found he had entertain'd the ſame Averſion to Image-Worſhip his Predeceſſor had done before him, then they very induſtriouſly enquir'd into all his ill Qualities, and would allow him to be Maſter of none that were good.

At firſt he recall'd great Numbers of Biſhops and Monks that had been baniſh'd by *Leo*, and ſummon'd them to a Council to be held at *Conſtantinople*, together with thoſe that differ'd from 'em in Opinion, there to diſpute the Point in queſtion; but the Champions refus'd to enter into any Conference with their Adverſaries, declaring that what they maintain'd was built upon ſuch firm Foundations of Truth, that it could admit of no Diſpute. Tho' 'tis very likely they declin'd to enter the Liſt upon no other Account, but becauſe they knew themſelves unable to ſupport their Cauſe by the Authority of the Holy Scriptures, and the Writings of the Fathers. However it were, this Obſtinacy very much diſpleas'd the Emperor, who was once inclinable, in ſome meaſure, to gratifie them; notwithſtanding which he proceeded with no Rigor againſt them, but indulg'd 'em the uſe of Images, provided it was without the Imperial City. In the mean time the Emperor himſelf entertain'd very abſurd Notions in Religion. He was born at *Amorium*, a City of *Phrygia*, which was inhabited chiefly by *Jews*, and ſuch Chriſtians who for their Heretical Opinions had been driven from their Native Habitations, between whom aroſe a medly in Religion, with which *Michael* was infected in his Youth, and carry'd the Infection with him to his Grave; among other Abſurdities he kept the *Jewiſh* Sabbath, and deny'd the Reſurrection of the Dead. Upon this Account it's no wonder if his whole Reign was infeſted with Wars and Troubles, and the Infidels abridg'd him both of his Honour and his Empire.

A Civil War rais'd by Thomas,

The firſt Diſturbance he met with in the beginning of his Reign was from a Civil War, bloody and expenſive, rais'd by *Thomas*, a Man of great Power in the Eaſt, of whom mention was made before; as ſoon as he heard that *Leo*, his great Benefactor, was murder'd by *Michael* he took Arms, and in a ſhort time rais'd a very conſiderable Army, compos'd of ſome

who

who follow'd him out of Love to his Perſon, others out of a Diſaffection to *Michael*, and of the reſt whom the hopes of Plunder had allur'd into the Field. *Thomas* was naturally ambitious, but was withal Maſter of many good Qualities, which ſeem'd to favour his Ambition; the Gravity of his Aſpect commanded an Eſteem from all that beheld him, at the ſame time that his Eloquence and Affability made him be belov'd by all that heard him, a Quality which render'd him exceeding grateful to the Soldiers, who beſides admir'd him for his vaſt Strength and admirable Courage.

Theſe Advantages ſoon made him Maſter of moſt of the Eaſtern Provinces, where he ſeiz'd on the Publick Revenue, and having waſted *Aſia* in a moſt miſerable manner he took the whole Region, except a few Provinces whom their Affection to the Emperor, and the valiant Conduct of *Olbianus* and *Catacelas*, two of *Michael*'s Commanders, had maintain'd againſt him.

Theſe Civil Embroilments encourag'd the *Saracens* to take Arms, and with their uſual Fury break into the Territories of the Empire, at which *Thomas* was extreamly affected, for he was afraid leſt his Men would deſert him, and return to the Defence of their own Poſſeſſions; at firſt therefore he reſtrain'd the Incurſions of the Barbarians by a ſudden Onſet, and then charm'd 'em with a Promiſe that he would fight in their behalf, and ſubmit ſuch Territories of the Empire, as he ſhould conquer, to their Command. Having, by this means, diverted a Storm that hung over him he aſſum'd the Imperial Authority, and in every reſpect acted as Emperor. He ſtrengthen'd his Army by new Levies drawn not only out of the adjacent Parts, but from among the *Egyptians*, *Indians*, *Perſians*, and other Nations moſt remote. At the ſame time he chang'd his Name for that of *Conſtantine*, and omitted nothing requiſite to the Support of that Title he had uſurp'd. By this time he was grown ſtrong enough to make Head againſt the Forces the Emperor had ſent to ſur-

prize him, and was ſo fortunate in an Engagement with them that he gave them a total Defeat; and very induſtriouſly purſuing the Courſe of his Fortunes he fitted out a ſtrong Fleet, with which he maſter'd the Emperor's Navy, and marching at the Head of eighty thouſand Men appointed *Lesbos* for the Place of general Rendezvous. *Michael*, who beheld the prodigious Progreſs he made againſt him, reinforc'd all his Garriſons, and endeavour'd to confirm the Soldiers by fair Words and bountiful Preſents, notwithſtanding which he was no ſooner return'd back to *Conſtantinople*, and *Thomas* by the Opportunity of a dark Night got over into *Thrace*, before they revolted, and follow'd the Uſurper to the Siege of the Imperial City. *Thomas*, like a Torrent, bearing down all before him both by Sea and Land, had promis'd himſelf that the Inhabitants of *Conſtantinople* would open their Gates to him at his firſt Approach, but, on the contrary, was much ſurpriz'd when he ſaw they receiv'd him with a very vigorous Oppoſition, and moſt opprobrious Language. This Union and Reſolution in the Inhabitants very much diſtracted him, and tho' he had been twice repuls'd he was reſolv'd to try his Fortune once more, and to ſtorm the City both by Sea and Land. Accordingly he diſpers'd his Orders with much Caution and Sagacity, and omitted nothing that might ſtrike Terror into the Inhabitants, and force 'em to ſurrender, when on a ſudden a violent Storm aroſe, which diſſipated his Ships by Sea, and render'd his battering Engines uſeleſs and ungovernable. This Diſappointment, and ſome ſucceſsful Sallies of the Beſieg'd, together with the Approach of Winter, fore'd him to raiſe his Siege with a Reſolution to return again in the beginning of the Spring; but Fortune, which had hitherto attended him with Succeſs in all his Undertakings, began now to forſake him. *Michael* had time, during this Receſs, to furniſh himſelf with a Fleet, and a Land Army, ſo that the Tyrant, at his Return,

Return, met with greater Oppoſition than he had done before.

Thomas had an experienc'd Commander in his Army call'd *Gregory*, who being nearly related to *Leo*, the late Emperor, had been baniſh'd by *Michael* into the Iſland *Scirus*, one of the *Cyclades*, for which Reaſon, at the beginning of the War, he declar'd for the Uſurper, who put a great Confidence in him; but now, obſerving how the Face of Affairs began to change, he liſten'd to the Emperor's Sollicitations, and reſolv'd to make his Peace with *Michael*, and the rather becauſe his Wife and Children were in his Hands. This Negotiation was not carry'd on ſo privately but *Thomas* had timely Notice of it; he knew his Deſign was to deſert to the Emperor with that part of the Army which he commanded; but as he was marching away, and before the Emperor could receive the News of his Revolt, he left a ſufficient Number of his Troops to maintain the Siege, and with the reſt fell upon *Gregory*, defeated his whole Party, and took him alive, but put him inſtantly to Death, and then return'd in great Triumph back to the Siege, where as great Rejoicings were made as if he had obtain'd a mighty Victory, which was more than over-ballanc'd by the Loſs of his beſt Ships, which were burnt, ſunk, or taken by the Emperor's Fleet.

In the mean time *Mortagon*, King of the *Bulgarians*, had been inform'd that *Michael* was block'd up by his own Subjects in the Capital of his Empire, and, pitying rather the Dignity than Perſon of the Emperor, ſent private Meſſengers to him, who encourag'd him with Promiſes of a ſpeedy Relief from their Maſter, who accordingly march'd againſt *Thomas*, tho' the Emperor had endeavour'd to diſſuade him from the Expedition, either for that he was unwilling to have his Country waſted by another Army, or that a Reward anſwerable to ſo ſeaſonable and friendly an Aſſiſtance would too much exhauſt his Treaſury, in the improving

ing

ing of which he equall'd, if not exceeded, the moſt covetous of his Predeceſſors. When *Thomas* heard of the *Bulgarians* Approach he was uncertain what Meaſures to take; he knew himſelf unable to oppoſe them and at the ſame time continue the Siege, and which of the two Expedients was the beſt he could not eaſily determine; at length he reſolv'd to fight the *Bulgarians*, by whom he was overthrown, loſing his Camp and all his Equipage. After this his Party declin'd every Day. When his Fleet, which lay before *Conſtantinople*, had receiv'd News of his Defeat it deſerted to the Emperor, and the Reſidue of his Army watch'd all Opportunities of forſaking him. At firſt he pretended to continue the Siege, but when he found all his Attempts ineffectual he rais'd it, and encamp'd at a Place call'd *Diabaſis*, ſome Furlongs diſtant from the City, from whence he waſted all the Country round about. His Retreat from the City, and the Havock he made in the Territories of it, at once encourag'd and provok'd the Emperor to ſend an Army out againſt him, which he receiv'd with great Bravery, but was overthrown rather by the Treachery of his own Soldiers, than the Valour of his Enemies. The Fortune of this Battel drove him to *Adrianople*, where, with ſuch as had Courage and Fidelity enough to follow him, he was block'd up by the Emperor's Forces, 'till at length his own People, after they had endur'd unſpeakable Hardſhips, deliver'd him up bound to the Emperor, who cut off his Hands and Legs, and then ſhow'd him upon an Aſs to all the Camp. *Michael* had a great Mind to know from him, if any of his own Servants or Officers underhand favour'd the Rebellion, had not *John Exabulius*, the Patrician, adviſ'd him not to truſt an Enemy with the Accuſation of his Friends; ſo that *Thomas* dy'd of his Torments without being ſuffer'd to impeach any one, which it's thought he was very ready to have done. The War did not end immediately with the Death of *Thomas*, ſome Cities

who is overthrown by the Bulgarians,

and Slain.

ties and Caſtles, which had either been ſeiz'd by him, or declar'd for him, continu'd to hold out for ſome time; but at length they were all reduc'd either by Force, Treachery, or ſome other Accident, and the Civil War was extinguiſh'd on every ſide. A. D. 822.

As this War was fierce and bloody in it ſelf, ſo was it attended with ſeveral publick Calamities, as well in *Europe* as *Aſia*; nothing was more frequent than unexpected Fires, ſudden and deſtructive Earth-quakes, civil Broils, Deſtruction of Cities, Signs in the Heavens, Deſolations on the Earth, with whatever elſe God in his Anger inflicts on the Sons of Men, all which is attributed by *Cedrenus* to the Contempt of Images. And as if the Empire ſuffer'd not enough at home, it was at the ſame time aſſaulted by a dangerous Enemy from abroad, who lopp'd off a conſiderable Member from it. The *Saracens* were now grown ſo numerous in *Spain*, that they began to look on the Country as too narrow for 'em: Wherefore obſerving the diſtracted Condition of the Empire, and that *Michael* was ſo cloſely preſs'd by *Thomas*, that he was hardly at leiſure to defend a Part, when he was in danger of loſing the whole, they ſail'd under the Conduct of their Prince in ſearch of ſome fruitful Iſland belonging to the Emperor, which might encourage 'em to plant a Colony in it. They ravag'd with an inſolent Barbarity moſt of the Iſlands in the *Mediterranean*, and at length touch'd upon that of *Crete*, meeting with no Oppoſition, for all the Ships and Garriſons were gone off to aſſiſt *Thomas*. The Prince was taken with the Pleaſantneſs and Fertility of *Crete*, ſo that he return'd the Spring following with a Fleet conſiſting of forty Ships well furniſh'd with Soldiers, and landed upon the Iſland; he encamp'd on the Promontory *Charax*, and from thence ſent Spies out to diſcover the Country, and in the mean time ſet Fire to all his Ships, to take from his Followers any Thoughts of a Return.

The

The Emperor, being advertis'd of this Descent, sent a sufficient Number of Troops, under the Command of *Damianus*, to drive the *Saracens* out of the Island. *Damianus*, being join'd with *Photinus*, Præfect of the East, gave the *Saracens* Battel, who at the first Onset kill'd *Damianus*, and routed the whole Army; after which they met with none to oppose 'em, but having built a City near a Commodious Port, which they call'd *Candia*, and which, in a great Measure, commanded the whole Island, they by degrees took in the rest of the Towns, and carefully intruded their Superstitions where-ever they planted their Arms. Thus *Crete* at once lost her Liberty, and her ancient Name, for her new Masters call'd the whole Island *Candia*, after the Name of the City before-mention'd.

The Saracens *settle in* Crete.

Michael, having put an end to the Civil Wars, thought it would be a great Blemish to his Reign, if he suffer'd the *Saracens* to settle in *Crete*; whereupon he sent away *Craterus* with a considerable Fleet to recover the Island. *Craterus* landed his Men without any Opposition, and fell very briskly upon the Enemy, who receiv'd him with an equal Resolution. The Fight continu'd from Day break 'till Noon, and as yet no Discovery could be made on which side the Victory inclin'd, but towards the Evening the *Romans* had visibly the Advantage, and the *Saracens*, many of whom were Slain and others taken Prisoners, fled away in great Disorder. Had the *Romans* pursu'd their Point the City it self had fallen into their Hands, but they thinking it time enough the next Day to put an end to the War, which they already judg'd to be in a great measure concluded, spent the Night in Riot and Drunkenness, not so much as setting a Watch to observe the Enemy's Motions; who, tho' very much broken and fatigu'd by the Labours of the preceding Day, would not omit an Opportunity which the Indiscretion of their Enemies had so favourably presented 'em; they fell upon 'em with great Fury, as they lay in

in their Camp fetter'd with Wine and Sleep, and cut 'em all off, hardly ſuffering one to eſcape to give the Emperor an Account of their Expedition, except the General himſelf, who, getting on Board a Merchantman, eſcap'd to the Iſle of *Coos*, where notwithſtanding he was ſhortly after ſurpriz'd, and nail'd to a Croſs by the *Saracens*. After this Defeat the Emperor contented himſelf with reſtraining the inſolent Piracies of theſe *Saracens*, who continu'd in Poſſeſſion of the Iſland till the Year 897, at which time it was recover'd by *Baſilius* the Emperor, as it will be made appear in its proper place. A. D. 827.

Notwithſtanding theſe ſevere Calamities, which fill'd up every Hour of this unfortunate Emperor's Reign, he led a looſe diſſolute Life without any regard to Religion, or the Laws. Having lately bury'd his Wife he had a great Deſire to Marry again, and that it might be thought to be done at the Requeſt, and for the Benefit of his People, he prevail'd with ſome of the leading Men in the Senate to Petition him to it, as a thing highly conducing to the Safety of the State; and having caſt his Eyes on *Euphroſyna*, one of *Conſtantine* the Son of *Irene*'s Daughters, he forc'd her out of a Convent, where, from her Infancy, ſhe had led a recluſe Life, and marry'd her. This Action prov'd of very dangerous Conſequence to the Empire, for *Euphemius*, a Man of great Intereſt and Authority in the Army, falling in Love, after the Example of his Maſter, with another of theſe devoted Virgins, forc'd her out of her Monaſtery, and debauch'd her. Her Brothers, as ſoon as they heard of this Irreligious Outrage, loudly complain'd of it to the Emperor, who commanded the Governor of *Sicily*, where the Fact was committed, to examine into the Matter, and if he found what was alledg'd againſt him true, then to cut off the Offender's Noſe. *Euphemius*, who little expected to have been proceeded againſt with ſo much Severity, drew ſeveral other of the Officers into a Con-

Euphemius *declar'd Emperor by the* Saracens.

Conſpiracy with him, and eaſily repuls'd the Governor when he came to execute his Orders; after which he fled into *Africk*, where he promis'd the *Saracen* Governor of that Place to betray *Sicily* into his Hands, and pay him a large Tribute, provided he would declare him Emperor, and aſſiſt him with Forces ſufficient to make good his Title. To this the *Saracen* readily conſented, and having ſupply'd him with a good Number of Troops he declar'd him Emperor, and ſent him back to make good his Promiſe. With theſe Forces he landed in *Sicily*, and travers'd round the Iſland in order to perſuade the Inhabitants to receive him for their Prince; but when he came toward *Syracuſe* he endeavour'd, in a flattering Speech, to perſuade the Inhabitants, who ſtood on the Walls, to declare for him. Among the reſt he obſerv'd two Brothers, who were Men of great Authority in the City, that ſeem'd to pay him more Reſpect, and hear him with more Attention than the reſt; at which being highly pleas'd he call'd 'em to him, and advanc'd from the reſt of his Company to ſalute the foremoſt of them, who caught him by the Hair of his Head whilſt the other cut it off. Tho' *Euphemius* had thus miſcarry'd in his own Deſigns, the *Saracens* would not quit the Advantage he had put into their Hands; for being thus introduc'd by him, they got Poſſeſſion not only of that Iſland, but of *Calabria*, and other adjacent Parts, waſting all with Fire and Sword.

and is murder'd.

Such as theſe were the moſt remarkable Tranſactions during this Emperor's Reign, which makes the Report of thoſe, who affirm he dy'd of Madneſs, the more credible: He was undoubtedly a very unfortunate Prince, happy only in this, that his Son ſucceeded him in the Empire, a thing which had not been obſerv'd for a long time before. He was more Valiant than Wiſe, and in every reſpect fitter for the Camp than the Court, tho' he was fitter to obey than command in either. He dy'd on the Firſt of *October*, *An. Dom.*

Michael *dies.*

Dom. 829, after he had reign'd Eight Years and Six Months. A. D. 829.

THEOPHILUS *succeeds him.*

So ſoon as *Michael* was dead, *Theophilus*, his Son, was univerſally declar'd and acknowledg'd Emperor, the Heir at once of his Father's Honours, and Enmity to Images: His very Enemies allow him to have been a ſtrict Obſerver of Juſtice, and a ſevere Aſſerter of the Laws of the Empire. He was ſo far from approving the Murder of *Leo*, tho' his Father ow'd both his Life and Dignity to it, that he reſolv'd to puniſh all thoſe who had been Accompliſes in it; to which purpoſe, by a publick Edict, he ſummon'd the chief of the Nobility, and great Officers of the Empire, to wait on him in the Palace call'd *Magnaura*, or *Pentapyrgium*; where, when they were aſſembled, he told 'em with a ſedate Air, *That his Father had deſign'd, in his Lifetime, to diſtinguiſh thoſe with particular Marks of his Favour, who had been inſtrumental in his Promotion; and ſince Death had prevented him he was oblig'd, as his Executor, to pay the Debt; For which reaſon he deſir'd them to withdraw from the reſt into a peculiar Place, where he would examine the particular Merit of each Perſon, and reward 'em accordingly.* Hereupon they who had been concern'd in the Death of *Leo* diſcover'd themſelves with great Chearfulneſs, and were all, by the Emperor's Order, puniſh'd as Murderers. After this he ſent *Euphroſyna* back to the Monaſtery from whence his Father had taken her, and apply'd himſelf with great Diligence to the Government of the State. His Wars with the *Saracens* we e many, and carry'd on with various Succeſs: And tho' in the end the Fortune of the Infidels prevail'd, he made it appear, by the happy Choice of his Captains, that he could diſtinguiſh, and knew how to prefer Men of Worth and Conduct. *Alexius Moſeles*, or *Armenian* by Birth, had marry'd one of his Daughters. This Man was beautiful in his Perſon, and of a ſolid Judgment, upon which Account he advanc'd him to the higheſt

Offices

Offices in the Empire; and having as yet no Son to ſucceed him he at laſt created him *Cæſar*, and ſent him, at the Head of a numerous Army, againſt the *Saracens*, who rag'd with great Fury in *Italy*. *Alexius* his Conduct in that Employment was highly approv'd by all but thoſe who repin'd at his good Fortune, who repreſented him as an ambitious Perſon, and one who had a Deſign upon the Empire. Theſe their Suggeſtions they endeavour'd to ſtrengthen with an old Prophecy, which intimated that A. *ſhould depoſe* Th. Tho' this Emperor is thought by ſome to have been too much addicted himſelf to the Art of foretelling, yet he gave no Ear to thoſe Inſinuations, but continu'd *Alexius* in his Favour: And when *Alexius*, being inform'd of what had been practis'd againſt him, deſir'd leave to retire to a Monaſtick Life, the Emperor refus'd his Requeſt; and commanded him to retain the Rank and Power he had in the Empire, and that as well becauſe he would not ſo far injure his Daughter, as becauſe he did not believe what had been alledged againſt him. However *Theophilus* having a Son ſhortly after, and his Daughter dying much about the ſame time, he very unwillingly conſented to the repeated Importunities of *Alexius*, and appointed him ſuch Places as he thought would be moſt convenient for his Retirement.

This generous Confidence and Magnanimity in *Theophilus* made him belov'd by all the Men of Worth in his Empire, ſo that his Armies were generally ſupply'd with experienc'd Commanders, tho' none appear'd ſo eminent in his Service as *Manuel* and *Theophobus*, the Variety of whoſe Fortunes make not the leaſt Figure in this Emperor's Reign. *Manuel* had ſerv'd in very eminent Poſts under former Emperors, and *Theophobus* was the baſe Son of a *Perſian* Ambaſſador, deſcended from the Blood Royal of that Nation, who, dying in his Embaſſy, left him an Infant at *Conſtantinople*, where he was entertain'd in the Imperial Palace, and educated after the manner of the *Romans*. The continual Wars

between

between the *Saracens* and the *Perſians* had driven away, or deſtroy'd, all thoſe of the Royal Houſe in *Perſia*, for which reaſon the few *Perſians* that ſurviv'd the Calamities of their Country ſent to the Emperor, and deſir'd *Theophobus* for their King; which *Theophilus* refus'd, chuſing rather to make him a Patrician, and marry him to one of his Siſters. At the ſame time he gave his Subjects leave to marry with the *Perſians*, which brought many of that Nation over, who liſted themſelves into his Army, and were form'd into one Body, call'd the *Perſian* Legion; from whence the Emperor promis'd himſelf no ſmall Service in the Expedition he was preparing againſt the *Saracens*, who had lately invaded and waſted the Territories of the Empire, for which reaſon the Emperor reſolv'd to chaſtiſe 'em. When both Armies came within view of each other, and the Enemy were conſulting whether it was adviſable to fight, *Manuel* advis'd the Emperor not to engage in Perſon, affirming it to be below his Dignity to contend with one ſo much inferior to him as was the General of the *Saracens*. This was oppos'd by *Theophobus*, to whom the Emperor inclin'd, and the next Morning both Armies came to a Battel, which laſted very long, 'till at length the *Roman* Legions gave Ground and fled, leaving the Emperor with his Guard, two thouſand *Perſians*, and *Theophobus* upon an Hill, where they were ſurrounded by the *Saracens*, who labour'd hard to take him Priſoner, and his own Men were as reſolute to defend him. Night coming on put an end to the Contention, and when it was dark the Soldiers, by *Theophobus* his Order, fill'd the Air with loud Acclamations, and made ſo great a Noiſe with their Trumpets, and other warlike Inſtruments, that the *Saracens*, deceiv'd by the Stratagem, concluded they had receiv'd ſome Relief, and retreated to a great diſtance for fear of being ſurrounded, by which means the Emperor eſcap'd to the reſt of the Army. This ſeaſonable Stratagem very much rais'd *Theophobus* his Reputation, which endear'd him more than ever to

The Emperor in great Danger.

his Countrymen, and made 'em Petition the Emperor that they might act againſt the *Saracens* in a ſeparate Body under his Conduct, and ſo far prevail'd that the Emperor would ſuffer no one elſe to command 'em.

The ill Succeſs of this Expedition ſerv'd only to make the Emperor more vigorous in Preparations for
A.D. the next Campaign, in which his Armies were crown'd
833. with a glorious Succeſs: For he gain'd an entire Victory over the Infidels, kill'd great Numbers upon the Spot, and took above twenty thouſand Priſoners, whom he carry'd in great Triumph to *Conſtantinople*. This encourag'd him to make another Attempt the Spring following; but his Army was defeated by the *Saracens*, and he himſelf in great Danger of being taken Priſoner; for in the Heat of the Action he advanc'd, with a Body of his Troops, too far into the Enemies Ranks; when *Manuel*, conſidering what a Diſgrace it would be to the *Roman* Name and Empire to have the Emperor taken Priſoner, broke through to him, and found him weary'd and in Deſpair. *Manuel* entreated the Emperor to follow him, whilſt he open'd his way through the thickeſt of his Enemies, which *Theophilus* declin'd, alledging he ſhould diſcourage his Army by his Flight; which when *Manuel*, who was advanc'd forward in order to open his way for him, perceiv'd, he return'd back, and with his Sword directed at him threaten'd to kill him unleſs he follow'd, declaring *the State would ſuffer more in his Captivity than his Death*, by which Loyal Menace he brought him off. *Manuel*, upon this, was eſteem'd his Deliverer, and the Emperor had a juſt Senſe of the Service he had done him, but unhappily gave Ear to thoſe who envy'd his Reputation, and, like other Princes, inclin'd to depreſs him, whom he was not able to reward according to his Deſerts. Some of *Theophilus* his Flatterers had repreſented *Manuel* to the Emperor, as one who was preparing for an Uſurpation, whereupon it was privately determin'd to deprive him of his Sight; of which when *Manuel* was by a faithful Friend inform'd, he

fled,

fled over to the *Saracens*, and upon Condition he should not be constrain'd to renounce his Religion, he enter'd himself into their Service. The Reception the *Saracens* gave *Manuel* makes it evident how much a Man of Worth is esteem'd, even by his Enemies. They advanc'd him to the highest Rank of Honour and Command, entrusted him with the Conduct of their Armies against their Neighbours with whom they were at War, and did nothing without the Advice and Apppobation of *Manuel*, who no way wrong'd the high Trust repos'd in him, but in all Respects acquitted himself with Honour and Reputation.

The Fame of his great Authority, and greater Services among the *Saracens*, quickly flew to *Constantinople*, and made the Emperor lament the Loss of a faithful Servant that had been the Support, and an Ornament to the State, and deserv'd better Usage from him. He was sensible that all the Honours he receiv'd from his Enemies blacken'd him with Ingratitude, and that it became him, as a Prince and Christian, to recover him from the Infidels. To this Purpose he entrusted one of those Itinerant Monks, who frequently rov'd about the World in those Days, with a Message to him, *Manuel* himself, tho' adorn'd with all the Favours the *Saracens* could confer upon him, consider'd himself as no other than a glorious Exile, and still retain'd an invincible Love to his Native Country, from whence the Jealousie of his Master, enflam'd by the Artifices of his Enemies, had unjustly driven him, so that he lent a ready Ear to the Message of the Monk, who presented him with Letters from the Emperor strengthen'd with a Seal of Gold and a Cross. *Manuel* was extreamly pleas'd with the Invitation the Emperor had made him, and waited only for an Opportunity that might favour his Return, which was effected after this manner. He desir'd leave of *Ishmael*, at that time Prince of the *Saracens*, to march against the *Romans* into *Cappadocia*, where, he said, he should have an occasion of revenging himself upon those who had

unjuſtly accus'd him to the Emperor. The *Saracens*, who hitherto could never prevail with him to fight againſt his Countrymen, were glad of the Overture, and ſent him away at the Head of a compleat Army, attended by the young Prince *Iſhmael*'s Son. The Governor of *Cappadocia* had before-hand been prepar'd to receive him, ſo that being arriv'd at the Place deſir'd, and having withdrawn at a convenient diſtance from the Army, under a Pretence of Hunting, he adviſ'd the young Prince, who accompany'd him, to retire back to the *Saracens*, and acquaint them with the Reſolution he had taken of returning home. Being arriv'd at *Conſtantinople* he was receiv'd with great Solemnity by the Emperor, who conferr'd on him the higheſt Honours of the Empire, and made him ſtand as God-father to his Son *Michael*, whom he ſhortly after inveſted with the Imperial Purple. The *Saracens* were no leſs offended than the Emperor was pleas'd at his Return, ſo that they prepar'd to expreſs their Reſentments the Spring following, in which however nothing memorable was tranſacted on either ſide, for both Armies were ſeiz'd with a Panick Fear, and concluded the Campaign without coming to an Engagement.

The Year following *Theophilus* invaded *Syria*, which he waſted as he march'd along, and having made himſelf Maſter of ſome of their ſtrongeſt Forts, and taken a great Number of Priſoners, he return'd to *Conſtantinople*; leaving *Theophobus* to maintain his new Conquеſts, and command the Army. But now the *Perſians*, who were encreas'd to thirty thouſand Men, began to diſdain a Subjection to any Prince but one of their own Nation, and therefore in a mutinous manner ſeiz'd on *Theophobus* at *Sinope*, and declar'd him Emperor. At firſt he us'd all the Arguments and Entreaties he could to divert 'em from it, but when he found it was to no purpoſe, he outwardly ſeem'd to accept of the Honour, but privately gave *Theophilus* an Aſſurance of his Averſeneſs to it, and eſcap'd with the firſt

The Perſians Mutiny.

Oppor-

Opportunity to *Conſtantinople*, where he was careſs'd in an high degree by the Emperor, who continu'd all his Honours to him. The *Perſians*, being thus diſappointed of their Prince, begg'd Pardon of *Theophilus*, who receiv'd 'em into Favour; but, to prevent the like Attempts for the future, he diſpers'd 'em, by two thouſand in a Body, into ſeveral remote Provinces, under their proper Officers.

Theophilus, in the late Ravage he had made in *Syria*, had, contrary to the earneſt Requeſt of the Prince of the *Saracens*, deſtroy'd *Sozopetra*, the Place of his Nativity; at which he was ſo enrag'd, that breathing nothing but Revenge, he rais'd a mighty Army compos'd of many Nations, as well of *Africk* as in the Eaſt, and having commanded every Soldier to impreſs on his Target the Wood *Amorium*, the Birth-place of *Theophilus*, he reſolv'd never to ſheath his Sword 'till he had deſtroy'd it. The Emperor, being inform'd of theſe mighty Preparations, march'd with what Forces he could raiſe to *Dorylæum*, a Town in *Phrygia major*, about three Days Journey from *Amorium*. There having call'd a Council of War, he was adviſ'd, by ſeveral of his Officers, to decline an Engagement with the *Saracens*, whoſe Army exceeded his in Numbers, and tranſlate the Inhabitants of *Amorium* to ſome other Place. The Emperor, imagining ſuch a Proceeding would reflect upon his Honour, reſolv'd to venture all in the Defence and Protection of it, and accordingly ſent *Ætius*, General of the Eaſt, with a ſtrong Party to command in it. The Prince of the *Saracens* had muſter'd all his Forces at *Tarſus*, where he reſolv'd not to march on directly to *Amorium*, but to ſend his Son with part of the Army to try the Strength of the Emperor's Forces, and take ſuch Meaſures afterwards as ſhould be ſuitable to the Succeſs of that Attempt. The young Prince march'd at the Head of ten thouſand *Turks*, and a ſtrong Party of *Armenians*, to a Place call'd *Dazymenum*, where both

Armies came to an Engagement. At first the Fortune of the Day seem'd to incline to the *Romans*, but in the Pursuit they were so exceedingly gaul'd by the Arrows of the *Turks*, that they who just before seem'd secure of the Victory turn'd back in great Confusion, and left the Emperor to the Defence of the *Persians*, who encompass'd him round, and with much Courage labour'd to preserve him. However he had infallibly been lost had not Night come upon 'em, and some Rain fallen, which render'd the *Turkish* Bow-string of no use, and gave the Imperialists an Opportunity to Retreat. *Manuel*, who had the Command of the Watch, observ'd the *Persians* discoursing in their own Language with the *Saracens* about betraying the *Roman* Army, and returning into their own Country. Of this he immediately inform'd the Emperor, and advis'd him to consult his own Safety, who accordingly retreated to *Chiliocomum*.

The Romans *overthrown by the* Saracens.

In the mean time the Prince of the *Saracens*, being inform'd of his Son's Success, march'd directly to *Amorium*, and, being join'd by the young Prince in his March, he laid close Siege to it. The Defendants supported themselves with a resolute Bravery, but the Emperor, doubtful of the Event, and earnestly desiring to preserve the City, sent a Messenger with very rich Presents to the *Saracen*, desiring him to desist. But the Prince, instead of being diverted from his Design, order'd the Messenger to be secur'd that he might be a Witness of the Issue, and attack'd the Place more vigorously than before. Notwithstanding which the Defendants made a very obstinate Resistance, and had they not been betray'd by some among themselves the Town had not so easily been taken. But *Badiates*, one of the Inhabitants, having upon some Discontent abjur'd the Christian Religion, embrac'd an advantagious Offer made him by the Infidels, inform'd 'em in which Part the Walls were weakest, and might be most commodiously attack'd, whereupon ensu'd a

Who Besiege Amorium,

Miser-

miſerable Slaughter of the Garriſon and Inhabitants; for the *Saracens*, being enrag'd at their reſolute Oppoſition, and the Loſs they had ſuſtain'd in the Siege, behav'd themſelves with the utmoſt Cruelty. Moſt of the Men were put to the Sword, and all the Women and Children led into Captivity. The City, the moſt beautiful of all the Eaſt, and the Capital of *Cilicia*, was levell'd with the Ground, after which the Emperor's Meſſenger was in an inſulting manner diſmiſs'd, with an Account of what had paſs'd, to his Maſter. *which is taken and deſtroy'd.*

Theophilus was ſo ſenſibly touch'd with the Deſtruction of this Place, that he was ſeiz'd with an exceſſive Melancholy. However he reſolv'd, if poſſible, to be reveng'd upon the Infidels, and ſent *Theodoſius*, a Patrician, into *France* to crave the Aſſiſtance of that Nation. But *Theodoſius* dy'd by the way, and, in all probability, had he arriv'd at the *French* Court his Negotiation would have been inſucceſsful; for the *French* at that time were too much embroil'd among themſelves to be able to ſend any Aſſiſtance into the Eaſt. In the mean time *Theophilus* grew ſo dejected as to abſtain from Nouriſhment, drinking nothing but Snow-Water, which threw him into a Dyſentery that ended his Days. Finding the weak Condition he was in he was carry'd in a Litter to *Magnaura*, where, having ſummon'd the Senate and chief Officers of the Empire to meet him, he exhorted 'em, in a moſt moving Speech, to continue faithful to his Wife and Son, and protect 'em from Treachery. They heard him with the greateſt Sorrow, and vow'd to ſpend their Lives and Fortunes in the Service and Defence of his Family. After which, ſinking under the Oppreſſion of his Mind, and Diſtemper of his Body, he quitted this Life, having reign'd twelve Years, and almoſt four Months. Before his Death ſome about him, Enemies to the Worth of *Theophilus*, perſuaded the Emperor that the late Revolt of the *Perſians* was contriv'd *The Death of* Theophilus. A. D. 842.

by him the better to favour his Ambitious Designs, and that if he had any regard to his Posterity he ought not to survive him; whereupon the infirm diffident Prince commanded his Head to be struck off, and brought to him, which the Moment he was expiring he touch'd with his Hand, and breath'd out his last with these Words, *Thou art now no longer* Theophobus, *nor I* Theophilus.

His Character. This was the End of a Prince, who in many things was to be admir'd, in few to be reprehended, unless his Enmity to the Worship of Images was a Fault in him. They who tax him with that allow him to have been an exact Observer of Justice, and utter Enemy to Covetousness, and all sumptuous Superfluities, of which *Cedrenus* gives us a remarkable Instance. He saith, that observing from his Palace Wall a Ship of great Burden, and richly laden, entring the Port at *Constantinople*, he ask'd to whom the Cargo belong'd; and when he was inform'd that his Empress *Theodora* was Mistress of it, he commanded both Ship and Cargo to be burnt, declaring, *he would have his Wife know he was an Emperor, and no Merchant.* He was a great Benefactor to the City of *Constantinople*, which he beautify'd with many magnificent Buildings, strengthen'd with new Walls, and purg'd from a great Company of Curtisans that practis'd daily in it. He dy'd in the second Year of *Lothaire* the Emperor, and fifteenth of *Gregory*, the Fourth Pope of *Rome*, *A. D.* 842.

Theophilus, at his Death, had constituted *Manuel* and *Theoctistus* Tutors to his Son, who was then but six Years of Age; but the Regency was vested in his Mother *Theodora*, who being an active ambitious Princess, and willing to perpetuate her Authority, took care to associate such with her Son as would humour him in his youthful Inclinations, encourage him in his Pleasures, and keep him insensible of the Pleasures of Power and Dominion, all which, in the issue, brought un-

unſpeakable Calamities to the State. Nor was this the only thing in which ſhe reſembled *Irene*, but in her Zeal for Images. Women naturally are inclinable to Superſtition, which gave Birth to thoſe many Errors that crept into the Church. She expell'd *John*, the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, who ſhe thought would oppoſe her Deſigns, and eſtabliſh'd *Methodius*, a Monk, in his Place; after which ſhe induſtriouſly apply'd her ſelf to the Reſtauration of Images, enforc'd the Obſervance of the Second Council of *Nice*, and rais'd a grievous Perſecution againſt the *Manichees* in the Eaſt, which created an horrible Combuſtion in the Empire. The Officers ſhe employ'd in the Inquiſition acted with the greateſt Cruelty, nailing ſome to Croſſes, and making others die under unſpeakable Torments. No leſs than an hundred thouſand Perſons were by theſe means deſtroy'd, which drove the reſt into an obſtinate Rebellion. For *Carbeas*, a Commander in the Eaſt, and a zealous *Manichee*, hearing how his Father had been ignominiouſly crucify'd, fled with four thouſand Men of the ſame Perſuaſion over to the *Saracens*, to whom they open'd a Paſſage into the Eaſt, where, without Intermiſſion, they committed all manner of Hoſtilities. *Baronius* his Account of this great Revolution in Matters relating to Religion, which he hath built upon the Authority of his infallible Authors, is too fabulous to deſerve any room here. The reclaiming of thoſe he calls Hereticks, was attended with no leſs Miracles than the Converſion of the *Jews* and *Gentiles* to Chriſtianity in the early Days of the Goſpel. *Theodora* ſpent the whole time of her Adminiſtration, which continu'd for fourteen Years, in theſe Affairs of the Church, in the mean time permitting the Enemies of the Empire to deſtroy whole Provinces, and ſuffering her Son to indulge himſelf in all the diſſolute Pleaſures his unreſtrain'd Youth could prompt him to, or a luxurious Court afford. Notwithſtanding which unhappy Artifice, the young Emperor, as he encreas'd in

Years,

Years, ſo did he begin to be touch'd with a Deſire to Rule, in which he was encourag'd by *Bardas*, *Theodora*'s Brother, who thought he had not a ſufficient Authority under his Siſter's Adminiſtration, and promis'd himſelf mighty Advantages from a Turn of Affairs. He knew it impoſſible for him to ſucceed in his Deſigns ſo long as *Manuel* and *Theoctiſtus* continu'd near the Emperor's Perſon. It happen'd very unluckily that ſome Miſunderſtanding aroſe between thoſe two Great Men, which *Bardas*, with much Dexterity, ſo artfully manag'd, that *Manuel* quitted the Court, and retir'd to a private Life, and this open'd a way to *Theoctiſtus* his Ruin. *Bardas*'s chief Inſtrument, was the Emperor's School-Maſter, a very covetous, ſtubborn, arrogant Perſon, who had entertain'd an irreconcilable Averſion to *Theoctiſtus*, for that he oppos'd the young Prince, who had a Deſire to prefer his unworthy Maſter to an Office, for which he was in no meaſure qualify'd; ſo that the School-Maſter, animated by Revenge, and ſupported by *Bardas*, continually allarm'd the Emperor with the Dangers he was to apprehend from *Theoctiſtus*, who had no leſs a Deſign than to marry either the Empreſs her ſelf, or one of her Daughters, and pluck out his Eyes, thereby to make him incapable of the Empire. The young Prince eaſily believ'd whatever was offer'd againſt a Man, whom he fear'd rather than lov'd, and therefore reſolv'd to deſtroy him. Accordingly he was ſeiz'd not long after by the Emperor's Order, and committed to Priſon, in which, within a few Days, by Virtue of the ſame Authority, he was put to Death.

A. D. 855. *Theodora* reſented this Murder with a moſt extravagant Paſſion; ſhe ran up and down the Court with her Hair looſe about her Shoulders, fill'd the Air with her Shrieks and Cries, curs'd both her Brother and her Son, and wiſh'd them an End equally as unfortunate. Theſe Reproaches ſerv'd only to incenſe *Bardas* and the young Prince againſt her, ſo that they reſolv'd to finiſh what they

hey had begun, in removing her. She, being ſenſible of their Deſign, was willing to ſpare 'em the Crime of ſhedding more Blood, and prepar'd to ſubmit without any Reſiſtance; to which purpoſe ſhe ſummon'd the Senate, to whom ſhe gave an Account of what Condition the Treaſury was in, told 'em what a frugal Miſtreſs ſhe had been, and what immenſe Riches ſhe left to her Son. After which ſhe reſign'd her Power, and departed from the Court to the no ſmall Satisfaction of *Michael*, who now found himſelf abſolute, being freed from the diſagreeable Reſtraint of a Mother and a Guardian. However, for fear ſhe ſhould attempt once more to reaſſume that Authority ſhe had ſo eaſily quitted, by *Bardas* his Advice, he order'd her to be ſhaven, and thruſt into a Nunnery, an Indignity ſhe did not long ſurvive. *The Empreſs quits the Court.*

Michael made uſe of his unlimited Authority to the Deſtruction of the State, and the Profuſion of thoſe Treaſures his Mother's Frugality had hoarded up. He took a great Pride in imitating *Nero*, and was mighty ambitious of exceeding the reſt of the World in the Excellency of driving a Chariot, in Singing, and playing upon all ſorts of muſical Inſtruments; and copy'd that Original Monſter ſo well as to be mighty skilful in all manner of Debaucheries, admitting none near his Perſon, but ſuch as could ſhare with him in his ſcandalous Exerciſes and Diverſions, and thoſe he preferr'd to the higheſt Employments; among the reſt he made choice of one *Theophilus*, the moſt ſcandalous of 'em all, whom he made Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. This new Prelate, attended by a parcel of Prieſts, that were like himſelf, would in broad Day-light walk as in Proceſſion through the Streets, expoſing himſelf in a thouſand Buffoonries, and committing ſuch Inſolencies as appear'd horrible to the ſober and diſcreet part of the Inhabitants. In the mean time *Ignatius*, the legal Patriarch, who, upon the Death of *Methodius*, had been Elected in the Year 847, continu'd to exerciſe his Patriarchal Michael *a degenerate Prince.*

triarchal Function, being very much belov'd by the People, and highly ſcandaliz'd at the Indignities offer'd the Church.

In a ſhort time the diſſolute Prince had waſted all his Treaſures, and was reduc'd even to an infamous Neceſſity, in which he was forc'd to ſell or pawn whatever was of value in the Imperial Palace. Among the reſt he melted down thoſe famous Trees of Gold, which, according to my Author, were made by a learned Biſhop call'd *Leo*, in the late Emperor's Time, and were the Admiration of all that beheld 'em; for among the Branches were diſpers'd a number of Golden Birds, which, by the help of an Engine, ſung very delightfully, to the great Surprize of the Spectators, who were no leſs agreeably frighten'd at the Roar of ſome Golden Lions effected by the ſame Artifice. Whilſt the Emperor was thus waſting the Treaſures of the Empire, *Bardas* rul'd in it as he pleas'd, being, as a Reward for his eminent Services, made Steward of the Houſhold, and General of the Armies. Having rais'd a powerful Army he ſet out upon an Expedition againſt the *Saracens*, in which the Emperor accompany'd him, and after he had waſted a great part of *Armenia minor*, he ſate down before one of the ſtrongeſt Towns upon the *Euphrates*. The *Saracens* appear'd ſeldom upon the Walls, and made few or no Sallies; by theſe means giving the *Romans* reaſon to imagine the Garriſon was very thin, upon which Preſumption they grew ſecure and careleſs; but as they were at their Devotions on the Lord's Day the Infidels ſally'd out upon 'em, and made ſo good a uſe of their Advantage, that the whole Army was routed, the Camp and all their Baggage taken, and the Emperor himſelf with much difficulty eſcap'd. This Defeat, which *Manuel* receiv'd in his Enemy's Dominions, was follow'd not long after by another in his own; for the *Saracens* being, upon all Occaſions, aſſiſted by *Charbeas* and his *Manichees*, pierc'd with an Army, conſiſting of thirty thouſand Men,

Glicas.

Bardas *his great Power.*

The Romans *overthrown by the* Saracens.

Men, into the *Roman* Territories; and tho' the Emperor oppos'd 'em with no fewer than forty thouſand *Thracians* and *Macedonians*, yet the *Saracens*, watching their Advantage, fell upon him unawares, and put his whole Army to Flight.

Theſe Calamities threw the Empire into the greateſt Conſternation imaginable, eſpecially when ſome time after News was brought to Court that the Infidels were preparing for another Invaſion. The Emperor order'd his Uncle *Petronas* to march with an Army of *Thracians* againſt them; for *Bardas*, diſcourag'd with the late Overthrows, or for that he had Buſineſs of greater Conſequence to purſue at home, declin'd taking the Field in Perſon, and truſted all to the Conduct of his Brother. *Petronas* his good Fortune in this Campaign repair'd, in ſome meaſure, the Loſſes ſuſtain'd in the former Engagements, for he ſurrounded the *Saracens*, cut off the Caliph himſelf, and his whole Army; and having taken his Son Priſoner, as he was retiring in great haſte to *Melitena*, he return'd in Triumph to *Conſtantinople*, where the Emperor made him Captain of his Guards, and permitted *Bardas* to aſſume the Title and Dignity of *Cæſar*; which as it was what he had been long aiming at, ſo did he conclude he had but one Step more to the Throne, with the Hopes of which he daily flatter'd his Ambition. His unbounded Power made him arbitrary in all his Actions, for he not only Divorc'd himſelf from his Wife, againſt whom he alledg'd nothing that was able to juſtifie ſuch a Proceeding, but marry'd his own Daughter-in-Law: At which the good Patriarch, *Ignatius*, was ſo offended, that he refus'd to communicate with him as it was cuſtomary upon the Feaſt of the *Epiphany*; with which *Bardas* was ſo provok'd, that in a Synod, he had order'd to be held at *Conſtantinople*, he ſuborn'd ſeveral falſe Witneſſes, who accus'd *Ignatius* of having murder'd his Predeceſſor *Methodius*, whoſe Memory was had in great Veneration by the People; whereupon he

A. D. 858. Bardas *created* Cæſar,

he was depos'd, and clapp'd up into Priſon, and *Photius* was elected in his Place, which gave occaſion to a very dangerous Sedition in *Conſtantinople*.

All this while the degenerate Emperor continu'd in his ſcandalous way of living, ſpending his Time in Races, and other ridiculous Amuſements, conſorting with none but the moſt profligate Wretches in his Dominions. Among theſe was one *Gryllus*, whom the Emperor, in his Frolicks, would call Patriarch, and having adorn'd him with the Patriarchal Habit, ſent once for his Mother, who was not yet dead, to meet him, and as the unhappy Lady, who miſtook him for the real Patriarch, fell on her Knees to crave his Bleſſing, the Villain diſcover'd himſelf, and with filthy obſcene Geſtures derided the deluded Princeſs, and was highly applauded for it by the Emperor. He was ſo extreamly addicted to Races that he interdicted the uſe of Beacons, at that time ſo neceſſary to inform the People of the Incurſions of the *Saracens*, becauſe, as he was once beginning his Race, a Beacon was ſet on Fire, at which he was extreamly afflicted leſt the People, upon an Apprehenſion of the Danger, ſhould be diverted from obſerving his great Dexterity in Riding. His Mother, before her Death, frequently adviſ'd him to beware of *Baſilius*, who was his Succeſſor, as of one who would be the Ruin of his Family; notwithſtanding which he continu'd him in his Favour, advanc'd him to the greateſt Employments of Honour and Profit, and at laſt declar'd him *Cæſar*, and his Companion in the Empire, having at firſt made way for his Advancement by the Murder of *Bardas*, who, as yet, govern'd in every reſpect without Control.

A.D. 866. The *Saracens* that had ſettled in *Crete*, as was before obſerv'd, extreamly infeſted the Coaſts of the Empire, and having made a Deſcent they pierc'd into *Thrace*, where they committed many Outrages. *Bardas* thought he ſhould do the State an extraordinary piece of Service, if he could reſtrain the Inſolence of thoſe Infidels,

dels, and drive 'em out of *Crete*. To this end he rais'd a very powerful Army, and perſuaded the Emperor to honour the Expedition with his Preſence. The Army encamp'd in *Phrygia*, near the Banks of the River *Mæander*, where *Bardas* his Servants, either out of Deſign, or unadviſedly, pitch'd their Maſter's Tent upon a Hill over-looking that of the Emperor, which was plac'd below. This the Enemies of *Cæſar* took care to improve to his Prejudice, and eaſily perſuaded the Emperor how much reaſon he had to be jealous of ſo inſolent aſpiring a Favourite. Whereupon *Baſilius* and the reſt had Orders to murder him, which they executed on the firſt of *April*. The Soldiers were ſo offended at the Loſs of their General that a great Mutiny aroſe in the Army, and the Emperor eſcap'd with ſome Danger to *Conſtantinople*, where the thoughts of the *Cretan* Expedition were wholly laid aſide, and the uſual Entertainments of that luxurious Court reſtor'd. *Bardas* his Ruin introduc'd the Advancement of *Baſilius*, whom *Michael* declar'd *Cæſar*, and his Aſſociate in the Empire on the twenty ſixth of *May* following. *Baſilius*, tho' born in *Macedonia*, was an *Armenian* by Deſcent, and tho' *Cedrenus* gives him a noble Pedigree, yet the generality affirm he was born of very mean obſcure Parents. At the ſacking of *Adrianople* by *Crumus*, King of *Bulgaria*, *Baſilius*, being then a Child, was led with his Parents into Captivity, where he continu'd 'till a Peace was concluded, at which time he was exchang'd among other Priſoners. His firſt Office in Court was Maſter of the Horſe, to which he was preferr'd by *Bardas*, who, when he obſerv'd how profuſe the Emperor grew in his Favours to him, began to repent of what he had done, and apprehended a Rival in the Perſon of his Creature, and therefore he contriv'd his Deſtruction, which however was anticipated by his own. *Baſilius*, being advanc'd by *Michael* to the Imperial Dignity, apply'd himſelf, with great Induſtry, to the Management of Affairs.

and is murder'd.

Baſilius *declar'd Cæſar and the Emperor's Collegue;*

Affairs, and behaving himſelf, in every reſpect, with much Modeſty and Meekneſs, he endeavour'd, in all his Diſcourſes, to divert the Emperor from his diſſolute Courſes. But the unworthy Prince was ſo far from liſtning to his wholeſome Counſels, that he contracted an Enmity to him, and prepar'd to deſtroy that Building he had juſt then rais'd, which haſten'd on his own Ruin; for *Baſilius*, being inform'd of what the Emperor and his impudent Paraſites were deſigning againſt him, thought the readier way to ſecure his own Safety was to ſtrike firſt, and therefore watching his Opportunity, one Day when the Emperor was in his Cups, he kill'd him, when he had reign'd upwards of five and twenty Years, in the Twelfth Year of *Lewis* II. Emperor of the Weſt, and Tenth of *Nicholas*, Pope of *Rome*, *An. Dom.* 867.

and murders Michael.

A. D. 867.

BASILIUS.

Baſilius, upon the Death of *Michael*, was acknowledg'd ſole Emperor by the ready Conſent of the Senate and the People. Knowing how profuſe his Predeceſſors had been in diſpoſing of the Publick Treaſure, he made a ſevere Examination into the Accounts of the Revenue, and by Act of Senate it was ordain'd, That they who had been rewarded for frivolous and diſhoneſt Services ſhould refund all to the Treaſury. Which Act, tho' very juſt in its ſelf, he prudently mitigated, and was contented with a Reſtitution of half, which enabled him to make great Largeſſes to the People, whereby he grew exceedingly popular, and gain'd an extraordinary Reputation for the Care he took in the Adminiſtring of Juſtice. It's reported of him that he once wept for Joy, and gave God Thanks, for that, upon a diligent Inquiry, no Perſon was found throughout the City, who had occaſion to Petition againſt his Officers, or complain of Oppreſſion. And as he was very diligent in the Management of the State, ſo was he no leſs ſollicitous for the well ordering of his own Family. He had four Sons, and as many Daughters; three of his Sons he created *Ceſars*,

sars, the fourth he design'd for the Church, and made all his Daughters Nuns.

Basilius breaks the Power of the Manichees.

The *Manichees* had, from the beginning of the late Reign, done innumerable Mischiefs to the Empire. They were Masters of many strong Holds in the East, from whence they made their Inroads at Discretion, and never return'd without a considerable Booty. These People *Basilius* thought it his Duty to chastise, and, if possible, to disarm 'em. To that purpose he rais'd the best Army he could, and proceeded in an Expedition against them, which was attended with Honour and Success, for in a few Years he broke the Heart of that People, wasted all their Country, seiz'd on their fortify'd Towns and Castles, and either kill'd or took their most experienc'd and resolute Officers; for which extraordinary Services he triumph'd in great Pomp at *Constantinople*, where some Conspiracies, form'd against him, were prevented by a seasonable Discovery, and the Conspirators justly punish'd. After this he invaded *Syria*, being attended in this Expedition by his eldest Son *Constantine*, and having taken *Cæsarea*, the Metropolis of *Cappadocia*, he struck such a Terror in the *Saracens*, that many of their Governors were forc'd to submit, and assist him in the War against their own Nation. He took so many Prisoners in this Expedition that their Numbers grew dangerous, upon which Consideration he commanded a Multitude of 'em to be slain. The greatest part of his Reign was spent in these Wars against the *Saracens*, in which, for the most part, he had the Advantage; for he recover'd *Crete* from them, destroy'd their whole Navy, and so far humbled them, that they were contented to sit quiet at home, not daring to attempt any thing against the *Romans*. The same was his Fortune in *Cilicia*, and in the West, where he reliev'd *Capua* closely Besieg'd by the Infidels, and in a great measure drove 'em out of *Italy*. These his extraordinary Advantages made him belov'd at home, and fear'd and respected abroad.

Notwithſtanding which the *African Saracens* hop'd, by ſome worthy Exploit, to redeem the Honour of their Nation, and accordingly fitted out a Fleet conſiſting of ſixty Sail, with which they did great Miſchief in the *Ionian* Sea.

Againſt theſe the Emperor ſent *Naſar* his Admiral, who ſet Sail with a very ſtrong Fleet to *Methona*, where his Men deſerted in ſuch great Numbers that he was afraid to venture an Engagement, and ſent the Emperor an Account of the Condition he was in, and how ill his Ships were mann'd. The Emperor, concern'd at ſo unexpected an Accident, had recourſe to this Stratagem; he took thirty *Saracens* at that time Priſoners in *Conſtantinople*, and having ſo diſguis'd 'em, as to have 'em thought to be ſome of his own Subjects, he commanded 'em to be whipp'd publickly in the *Circus*, and from thence ſent 'em into *Peloponneſus*, where they were nail'd to Croſſes, as if they had been the principal Authors of the Deſertion. This Stratagem had the Effect deſir'd, for it not only confirm'd ſuch in their Duty as had continu'd in the Service, but ſo terrify'd thoſe that had deſerted, that they return'd to their Duty, and deſir'd to be led againſt the Enemy. In the mean time the *Saracens* were much elevated at this Delay in the *Romans*, and having, in full Security, quitted their Ships, they were buſied in plundering a-ſhore, when *Naſar* fell unexpectedly by Night on their Fleet, and either ſunk, burnt, or took all their Veſſels.

A ſucceſsful Stratagem.

The Saracen Fleet deſtroy'd.

The Satisfaction the Emperor receiv'd from theſe frequent Advantages was ſomething allay'd by the Loſs of *Syracuſe*, which was beſieg'd and taken by the *Carthaginian Saracens*, tho' the Emperor had mann'd out a ſtrong Fleet to relieve it: For *Adrian*, the Patrician, who was ſent to command it, arriv'd not time enough to its Aſſiſtance, for which Reaſon he was baniſh'd by the Emperor at his Return to *Conſtantinople*.

Baſilius

Baſilius, at ſuch times as he was releas'd from the Cares of War, buſied himſelf in building and repairing Churches, and beautifying the Imperial Palaces, which he did at a prodigious Expence. Some have reflected upon him for building and dedicating ſo many Churches to the Honour of St. *Michael*, as if he had been prompted to it by the Stings of his Conſcience, thereby to expiate the Murder of his Predeceſſor *Michael*, his great Patron and Benefactor. 'Tis certain, that towards the latter end of his Reign, he grew diffident and ſuperſtitious, addicting himſelf to the Converſation of Monks, who impos'd on him by their legendary Fables and ſelfiſh Intrigues. His eldeſt Son *Conſtantine* being dead he lamented his Loſs with a very unbecoming Paſſion, and was inconſolable, ſaith *Zonaras*, 'till by the Aſſiſtance of a Monk call'd *Theodorus Santabarenus*, reputed a Negromancer and Magician, he beheld a *Spectrum*, cloath'd in his Son's Shape, which met him on Horſeback, and, after the Emperor had kiſs'd and embrac'd it, vaniſh'd in an Inſtant. This, or ſome other extraordinary pieces of Service, render'd the Monk very powerful with the Emperor, who ſeldom did any thing without his Advice or Approbation, but ſuffer'd himſelf to be moſt groſly abus'd and deluded by him, which gave Ground to many unhappy Diviſions in the Court.

Conſtantine being dead, the Eyes of all were fix'd on *Leo*, the Emperor's Second Son, who, being a generous wary Prince, was much offended at the Power *Theodorus* and his Accomplices had by their Arts obtain'd over the Emperor; of which the jealous Monk was quickly ſenſible, and therefore he reſolv'd by ſome Artifice to deſtroy him. The Cuſtom being for the Prince, when he attended his Father abroad, to go unarm'd; the Monk alarm'd him with the Dangers to which he pretended the Emperor lay expos'd, through the Practices of ſome deſigning Courtiers, eſpecially whilſt he was in the Field a Hunting, in

which the Emperor took an uncommon Delight, for which Reaſon he adviſ'd him to arm himſelf privately, with ſome of his Followers, and be ready to oppoſe any Treaſon ſhould be attempted againſt him. Theſe Jealouſies the Monk inſtill'd with ſo much Cunning into the Pious Prince, that he readily inclin'd to his Advice, and the next time he attended his Father abroad he arm'd himſelf, and ſome of his moſt intimate Friends. In the mean time the Monk haſten'd to the Emperor, and in great Conſternation told him *what manifeſt Danger attended him*, that *his Son had a Deſign againſt his Life, and was prepar'd, the next time he went out to Hunt, to kill him in the Field, and that, if he took care to have him ſearch'd, he would find him arm'd accordingly.* The jealous Emperor receiv'd, with an eaſie Credulity, what the Monk had affirm'd with ſo much Confidence; and therefore having caus'd his Son to be ſearch'd, and finding the Proofs viſible againſt him, he committed him to cloſe Priſon, whither the Malice of the implacable Monk purſu'd him; for the Emperor, at his Inſtigation, had commanded his Eyes to be pluck'd out, had not the Patriarch, and the Principal among the Nobility, interpos'd in his Behalf. All the honeſt Courtiers, and thoſe who had a juſt Regard to the Welfare of the State, were highly concern'd at theſe Domeſtick Quarrels, and labour'd very earneſtly for the Prince his Releaſe; to which the Emperor would by no means condeſcend, 'till he had receiv'd undeniable Arguments of his Innocence, after which he reſtor'd him to his former Dignity, and continu'd him always near his Perſon. For *Baſilius*, finding his End approaching, took care to inſtil into his Son ſuch Rules of Government as might make him anſwer the Expectations of his People, and the high Dignity to which he was call'd. The *Greek* Hiſtorians commend him highly for his Care in this Particular, his Acts of Piety, and impartial Adminiſtration of Juſtice. The ſame Authors aſcribe *Leo*'s Releaſe

The dangerous Craft of a Monk.

Releaſe to the ſeaſonable Mimickry of a Parret, which being caſually taught his Leſſon by the repeated Condolements of ſome, who daily lamented the young Prince his Condition in a Room where the Bird hung conſtantly up in a Cage, cry'd out, with reiterated Complaints, at a time when the Emperor was entertaining ſome of the Nobility at a publick Collation in the ſame Apartment, *Alas, my Lord* Leo! which Accident added freſh weight to the former Applications his Friends had made in his Behalf. *Baſilius* did not live long after his Son's Releaſe, but dy'd of a Diarrhæa, according to ſome (tho' others affirm he was kill'd caſually by a Stag) in the nineteenth Year of his Reign, the Fifth of *Charles* the Groſs, and Second of *Stephen* the Fifth Pope of *Rome*, *A. D.* 886. Baſilius *dies.*

They who pretend that *Leo*, tho' receiv'd and eſteem'd as the Son of *Baſilius*, was in reality the Son of *Michael*, have no other Ground for their Aſſertion, but the Severity of his Reſtraint, which will have no weight, if we conſider the juſt Provocations the Emperor thought he had to proceed with ſo much Rigour againſt him; how notwithſtanding he releas'd him before his Death, and deſign'd him for his Succeſſor, which it is not likely he would have done had he not been his own Son, ſince he had others to ſucceed him. Nor is it to be ſuppos'd his extraordinary Reſpect for the Memory of his Predeceſſor *Michael* could prevail with him to act ſo much to the Prejudice of his own Family; 'tis a Maxim altogether new, and unheard of among Princes, how juſt and generous ſoever they may be in their own Natures. Zonaras.

Baſilius was a Man of a Spirit and Capacity much above his Birth and Education, which he made appear in many remarkable Inſtances throughout his Reign. He cautiouſly declin'd engaging himſelf in the Diſputes of Religion, and thereby kept fair with the contending Parties, though he diligently labour'd to promote the Peace of the Church. His Care was in nothing *His Character.*

more conſpicuous than in his reforming and new modelling the Laws of the Empire, which had loſt much of their Authority ſince the Days of *Juſtinian*, as well in the Eaſtern Empire, where the uſe of the *Latin* Tongue, in which they were compil'd, by degrees grew diſcontinu'd, as in the Weſt, where they were ſuppreſs'd or reſtrain'd by the barbarous Nations, who had conquer'd *Italy*, and introduc'd their own particular Laws and native Cuſtoms. In ſhort, it may be ſaid of *Baſilius*, that if he had obtain'd the Empire with as much Innocence as he govern'd it with Prudence and Moderation, he had deſerv'd to have been remember'd among the beſt Emperors.

LEO V. *Baſilius* being dead, *Leo* was univerſally acknowledg'd Emperor. He had been declar'd ſuch by his Father in the thirteenth Year of his Reign, immediately upon the Death of his elder Brother *Conſtantine*, and profited ſo much from his own private Readings, and his Father's Inſtructions, that he deſervedly acquir'd the Sirname of *Philoſophus*. His firſt Care was to puniſh *Theodorus* the Monk, who had been the Author of ſo many Miſchiefs towards the latter end of his Father's Reign. He firſt order'd him to be whipp'd in an ignominious manner, after which he ſent him to *Athens*, from whence, after he had order'd his Eyes to be pluck'd out, he baniſh'd him into the Eaſt. He proceeded with equal Severity againſt *Photius*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, who had not only declar'd openly in Favour of *Theodorus*, and given a beginning to ſeveral Conteſts betwixt the Eaſtern and Weſtern Church, but was accus'd of having conſulted with *Theodorus* how to advance one of his own Kinſmen to the Throne. Hereupon *Photius* was depos'd, and baniſh'd into *Armenia*, and the Emperor's own Brother *Stephen* was advanc'd to the Patriarchal Dignity. At the ſame time he recall'd thoſe Biſhops, and other Eccleſiaſticks, that had been baniſh'd by the Contrivance or Authority of *Photius*, and reſtor'd 'em to their former Dignities, and endea-

A. D. 886.

endeavour'd, as much as he was able, to obliterate the Memory of his Father's Ingratitude to *Michael*, whoſe Relicks he remov'd from the Monaſtery wherein they were repos'd, and convey'd 'em in ſolemn Pomp to the Imperial City. The beginning of this Emperor's Reign was render'd unhappily remarkable for a ſudden Irruption of the *Saracens*, and a Fire which deſtroy'd great Numbers of Houſes, together with ſeveral Publick Buildings at *Conſtantinople*. This was follow'd by freſh Commotions in *Italy*, occaſion'd by the Treachery of *Ajo*, or *Angæus*, Duke of *Beneventum*, who, hearing of *Baſilius* his Death, fell ſuddenly upon the Emperor's Lieutenant, who commanded in thoſe Parts that continu'd ſubject to the *Byzantine* Empire, and having overthrown him in two or three Engagements, forc'd the Inhabitants to renounce their Allegiance to the Emperor, and declare for him. As ſoon as *Leo* was inform'd of this Revolt he ſent *Conſtantine*, the Patrician, with a ſtrong Army into *Italy*, where he receiv'd an abſolute Defeat, and was conſtrain'd to return from whence he came. *New Troubles in Italy.*

The Year following there happen'd ſuch an Eclipſe of the Sun that the Stars appear'd at Noon Day, and this was attended with ſuch terrible Thunders and Lightning as threw the Inhabitants of *Conſtantinople*, where ſeveral were deſtroy'd, into a general Conſternation. *Leo* had been marry'd in the Year 879 to *Theophania*, the Daughter of *Martinacius*, a Lady of a moſt exemplary Piety, for which reaſon *Leo* had her canoniz'd, and erected a Temple in Honour of her Memory after her Death; tho' whilſt ſhe was alive, and ſometime after his Advancement to the Throne, he forc'd *Zoe*, the greateſt Beauty of that Age, from the Arms of one to whom ſhe had been marry'd, and us'd her as his Concubine, conferring new and unheard of Honours upon her Father; who, abuſing the Power he had with the Emperor, gave a beginning to the War between the *Romans* and *Bulgarians*. There

had been a great Trade carry'd on between the two Nations for a conſiderable time, and the Publick Mart was kept at *Conſtantinople*, from whence ſome of the *Greek* Merchants perſuaded *Zantzas*, the Father of *Zoe*, to remove it, by Virtue of the Authority he had in the Court, to *Theſſalonica*; where the Officers, who were employ'd to collect the Emperor's Cuſtoms, acted with an unuſual Vigour, and oppreſs'd the *Bulgarians* with unlawful Impoſitions: Of which when Complaint was made to *Simeon*, the Prince of that Nation, who had long wanted a Pretence for a Rupture, he requir'd, by his Ambaſſadors, immediate Satisfaction from the Emperor; who, depending too much upon *Zantzas* his Suggeſtions, refus'd to redreſs thoſe who had been ſo unjuſtly oppreſs'd, and by that means ſupply'd *Simeon* with a fair Opportunity of declaring War againſt him. In the firſt Engagement, which happen'd in *Macedonia*, the *Romans* receiv'd a total Defeat, great Numbers of 'em were ſlain upon the Place, and more taken Priſoners, who were us'd in a barbarous manner by the inſolent Conqueror, for he firſt led 'em in Triumph round his Camp, after which he cut off their Noſes, and ſent 'em to *Conſtantinople*, where they fill'd the Inhabitants at once with Shame, Anger and Amazement. *Leo* was highly provok'd at this Indignity, and therefore prevail'd with the *Hungarians* to Invade *Simeon* on one ſide, whilſt he aſſaulted him on the other. The *Hungarians*, being encourag'd by the rich Preſents they had receiv'd from the Emperor, were eaſily perſuaded to undertake the Expedition, and therefore prepar'd in great Numbers to break into *Bulgaria*. *Leo* on the other Hand fitted out a ſtrong Fleet, and having rais'd a new Army, he committed it to the Conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, a Patrician, and Captain of the Guards; but being ſtill more deſirous of Peace than the continuance of a War, to which he had given an unhappy beginning, at the ſame time that the Army began to march, he ſent an Ambaſſador to *Simeon* with Propo-

A War with the Bulgarians.

Propoſals for an Accommodation. *Simeon*, who obſerv'd the Powers that were drawing down on each ſide againſt him, thought this a Trick of the Emperor's on purpoſe to amuſe and circumvent him, ſo that having thrown the Ambaſſador into Priſon he march'd in Perſon againſt the *Hungarians*, who had paſs'd the *Iſter*, and were deſtroying *Bulgaria* with Fire and Sword. The *Hungarians* receiv'd him with great Courage, and, after an hot Diſpute on both ſides, totally overthrew him. The Flower of all his Army was cut off, and he eſcap'd with great Hazard to *Driſta*, whilſt the *Hungarians* purſu'd thoſe of his Forces that fled, of whom they took great Multitudes Priſoners, and ſold 'em for a good Sum of Mony to the Emperor. This Misfortune had taught *Simeon* to act with a little more Moderation, for obſerving that the Emperor's Forces, under the Conduct of *Nicephorus*, were approaching, he ſent and earneſtly deſir'd Peace from *Leo*, who as readily granted it, and gave Orders for his Fleet and Army to return home.

Simeon, *King of* Bulgaria, *beaten by the* Hungarians.

Simeon no ſooner found the Danger remov'd but he threw *Leo*'s Ambaſſadors into Priſon, and fell with an unexpected Fury upon the *Hungarians*, whom he defeated, and in a barbarous manner ravag'd all their Country; and when the Emperor, who was unable to aſſiſt his Confederates upon ſo ſhort a Warning, complain'd of this Proceeding, and demanded a Ratification of the Treaty, he arrogantly declar'd he would by no means condeſcend to a Peace 'till all the *Bulgarians*, who had been taken Priſoners, were releas'd; this the Emperor, after ſome Heſitation, conſented to, notwithſtanding which *Simeon* would not conſent to lay down his Arms, but inſiſted on new Demands more unreaſonable than the former; at which *Leo* was ſo incens'd that he reſolv'd to fall upon him with the whole Power of the Empire, and, if poſſible, to deſtroy him. Some Miſunderſtanding between the General Officers, occaſion'd by the Intrigues of *Zantzas*,

Zantzas, who govern'd with too unlimited an Authority in the Court, deſtroy'd the hopes of this Expedition; for *Simeon* fell upon the *Romans* whilſt they were at Variance among themſelves, and obtain'd an entire Victory over 'em, which conſtrain'd the Emperor at length to conſent to a Peace upon the beſt Terms he could obtain, which however was obſerv'd no longer than it was judg'd beneficial either to the one ſide or the other, and the War was carry'd on with various Succeſs between both Nations during all this Emperor's Reign. For notwithſtanding all his great Care and Vigilance, the *Bulgarians* watch'd all Opportunities of inſulting the Empire.

Whilſt *Leo* was engag'd in theſe Wars abroad, ſeveral Deſigns were form'd againſt his Perſon at home, which however were ſeaſonably diſcover'd, and the Traitors deſervedly puniſh'd, tho' once he eſcap'd with great Hazard of his Life. For going in a ſolemn Proceſſion to Church on *Whitſunday*, as it was cuſtomary upon that Feſtival, a Fellow watch'd his Opportunity, and gave him ſo great a Blow on his Head, that all about him deſpair'd of his Life. The Fellow was immediately ſeiz'd and tortur'd, in order to force him to a Diſcovery, but all they could do could extort nothing from him; 'tis true he was look'd on as diſtemper'd in his Brain, which it's thought put an end to any further Scrutiny. Indeed *Alexander*, the Emperor's Brother, was miſtruſted to have given Life to all theſe Conſpiracies, notwithſtanding which *Leo* made no Enquiry againſt him, either for that he had then no Son of his own to ſucceed him, or becauſe, being a Man of no Merit or Eſteem, he thought it beneath his Worth to apprehend any Danger from him.

A. D. 901.

Several Conſpiracies diſcover'd.

Leo marries Zoe his Concubine.

Some time before this, *Leo*, having bury'd his Empreſs *Theophania* with much Pomp, marry'd *Zoe* his beautiful Concubine, and put the Imperial Crown on her Head. She enjoy'd not thoſe Honours long, but dy'd within two Years after her Advancement, and

was

was ſucceeded by a Woman of a Beauty equal to her own, nam'd *Eudocia*, who dying in Child-bed not very long after, left the Emperor once more a Widower. As yet he had no Son to ſucceed him, at which he was very uneaſie, but being, according to the Cuſtom of thoſe Times, addicted to Aſtrology, he was aſſur'd he ſhould ſtill be the Father of a Succeſſor, which encourag'd him to look out for another Wife, and was eaſily perſuaded to marry a ſecond *Zoe*, by whom he had a ſon call'd *Conſtantine*. The fourth Marriage, which was then held unlawful, gave Ground to ſeveral unhappy Diviſions in the Eaſtern Church. For as ſoon as *Leo* had declar'd *Zoe* Empreſs, which was not 'till her ſon *Conſtantine* was born, *Nicholaus Myſticus*, at that time Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, not only declar'd himſelf reſolutely againſt it, but excommunicated the Emperor, who when he obſtinately refus'd, upon *Leo*'s earneſt Application, to reſtore him to the Church, he depos'd him from his Office, and ſubſtituted *Euthymius* in his Place. *Nicholaus* would not have carry'd himſelf with ſo much Obſtinacy, if he had not been ſupported by the Opinions, and Declarations of ſeveral other Biſhops his Sufragans, who adhered ſtedfaſtly to him in his Expulſion, whereas others, who were of a more peaceable Temper, approv'd of the new Patriarch's Diſpenſation in the Emperor's Behalf, whereupon a Schiſm enſu'd in the Church. *A Schiſm in the Eaſtern Church*

The Nuptial Ceremonies were hardly over before the Emperor was alarm'd by the Motions of the *Saracens*, who, encourag'd at the Hoſtilities and Succeſs of the *Bulgarians*, firſt mann'd out a Fleet, with which they took *Taurominium* in *Sicily*, and having ſlain a great Multitude of the *Romans* they conquer'd *Lemnos*, from whence they led away an incredible Number of Captives. After this they did great Miſchiefs without control upon the Coaſts under the Conduct of a Renegado, call'd *Leo Attaleus*, who put the Imperial City it ſelf into a great Conſternation. The Emperor *The Saracens infeſt the Empire.*

ror prepar'd all the Strength he had at Sea to oppoſ 'em, but his Admirals finding 'em always ſuperior in Number, return'd without attempting any thing a-gainſt 'em, and left 'em to Beſiege *Theſſalonica*, which they took and plunder'd, and had deſtroy'd the City had they not been bought off with a vaſt Sum of Gold. *Leo*, after theſe Diſgraces at Sea, where he found himſelf unable to contend with the Infidels, thought it not improper to make ſome Repriſals upon 'em by Land; and having rais'd a very powerful Army he gain'd ſeveral Victories againſt 'em in the Eaſt, under the Conduct of *Euſtathius Argyrus*, and *Andronicus Ducas*: And had not ſome fatal Diſſentions put a ſtop to the Progreſs of his Arms, he had infallibly obtain'd as great or greater Advantages againſt 'em than any of his Predeceſſors. *Samonas*, a *Saracen* by Birth, having diſcover'd ſome dangerous Deſigns form'd a-gainſt the Emperor, was, by Advice of the Senate, as well as by *Leo*'s particular Inclinations to his Perſon, advanc'd to Employments of the higheſt Truſt and Profit. He made an outward formal Profeſſion of Chriſtianity, but inwardly nouriſh'd the Poiſon with which he was infected at his Birth, and having in a prodigious manner enrich'd himſelf, he attempted to eſcape with all his Wealth into his own Country; but after ſeveral Accidents upon the Road was ſtopp'd, and brought back to *Conſtantinople* by *Conſtantinus Ducas*, the Son of the General *Andronicus*. The Emperor, notwithſtanding his intended Defection, reſtor'd him upon a ſpecious Submiſſion to his Favour, and, continuing him in his Offices, left it in his Power to revenge himſelf upon thoſe who had forc'd him back. Shortly after this Accident *Himerius* and *Andronicus Ducas* were declar'd Generals againſt the *Saracens*; and *Samonas* having conceiv'd an implacable Hatred to *Andronicus*, upon the Account of his Son *Conſtantine*, prevail'd with one of the Generals, his moſt intimate Friend, to adviſe him by Letter *by no means to join with* Himerius

The cunning Intrigues of a Saracen *Favourite.*

in

n any Enterprize against the Saracens, *for that* Hime-rius *had Orders from the Emperor to put out his Eyes as ſoon as he could get him into his Power.* *Andronicus* un-happily liſten'd to theſe Inſinuations, and ſuffer'd *Hime-rius* to engage without him, notwithſtanding which he *Saracens* were totally defeated. This Succeſs a-gainſt the Infidels at once reminded *Andronicus* of his Duty, and the Error he had committed; ſo deſpair-ng of a Pardon from the Emperor he ſeiz'd on a Ca-ſtle near *Iconium*, where he prepar'd for a Revolt, whilſt *Samonas* was uſing all the Power he had at Court to his Deſtruction, repreſenting to *Leo*, with all he Force his Malice was Maſter of, *How contumaci-uſly he refus'd to join with* Himerius *in the Expedition, nd was now ripe for a Rebellion.* Tho' *Leo* was unwil-ing to believe any thing to the Prejudice of *Andronicus*, who had hitherto ſerv'd him with much Honour and ntegrity, yet being ignorant of *Samonas* his wicked Artifice, and reflecting on the General's late Behaviour, e commanded a ſtrong Army to be ſent againſt him, whereupon *Andronicus* fled with all he had to the *Sa-acens*, by whom he was receiv'd with all imaginable Kindneſs and Reſpect.

Leo, as ſoon as the heat of his Reſentment was over, egan to reflect on what he had done. He could not e ignorant of the Reaſons *Samonas* had to act with ſo much Vigour againſt *Andronicus*, and regretted at once he good Subject his Credulity had loſt, and what an Enemy he had rais'd up in his ſtead, and reſolv'd, if poſſible, to recal him. Accordingly he releas'd a *Sa-acen* Captive, on Condition he would carry ſome Let-ers from him to *Andronicus*; the *Saracen* readily un-dertook the Service, but being brib'd by *Samonas*, in-ſtead of conveying 'em to *Andronicus*, he deliver'd the Letters to the Caliph, wherein he invited him home, promis'd to reſtore him to his former Dignity and E-ſtate, and gave him all imaginable aſſurance of freſh Encouragement. The Caliph having read the Letters immedi-

immediately threw *Andronicus* and his Friends into Priſon, where they were treated with all imaginable Severity, under which *Andronicus* miſerably periſh'd; others abjur'd their Religion for the ſake of their Liberty, to which, after many Hardſhips, they were reſtor'd; and the reſt, with exceeding difficulty, eſcap'd to *Conſtantinople*, with *Conſtantine*, *Andronicus* his Son, of whom the Reader may expect a farther Account hereafter.

Leo's cauſleſs Jealouſies.

Whatever Grounds *Leo* had for his Proceedings againſt *Andronicus*, it doth not appear, but the Jealouſie he had conceiv'd againſt *Euſtathius Argyrus* was even more unwarrantable. *Euſtathius* had given the Emperor, and ſeveral of his Predeceſſors, frequent Inſtances of his great Integrity and Conduct in many Services both by Sea and Land, notwithſtanding which, without any apparent Crime urg'd againſt him, he was turn'd out of all his Employments on a ſudden, and was not ſuffer'd long to enjoy the Sweetneſs of a private Life, being ſhortly after taken off by Poiſon, to the great Diſſatisfaction as well of the Seamen as the Soldiers, by whom he was univerſally belov'd. The Behaviour of *Leo*, in theſe Particulars, ſhows us how unhappy ſome Princes are in the Choice of their Favourites. And 'twas equally as difficult for any one to find out a Reaſon for the Misfortune of theſe two Great Men, as for the extraordinary Favours, notwithſtanding all his Perfidious Intrigues, continu'd to *Samonas*, who was grown into ſo great a Credit with the Emperor, that he ſent for the Favourite's Father, entertain'd him in the Imperial Palace, and out of a religious, but dangerous Vanity, ſhow'd him all the rich Furniture and Treaſure of the Church. The old Man was ſo charm'd at the Power and Authority with which he ſaw his Son govern in *Conſtantinople*, that he would willingly have ſtaid there, and been Partaker with him in it, had not *Samonas* perſuaded him to continue ſted-

faſt

faſt in his Religion, which he never had renounc'd from his Heart, and return into his own Country, whither he intended to follow him with the firſt Opportunity. The Father being gone, the Emperor grew every Day more profuſe in his Favours to his Son, till by degrees he grew, as it were, intoxicated with too much Power, and by that means procur'd his own Ruin. *Samonas* had recommended a young Gentleman, call'd *Conſtantine*, by Birth a *Paphlagonian*, to wait on the Empreſs, who was ſo much taken with him, that ſhe made uſe of all her Intereſt to promote him, which adminiſter'd great Cauſe of Diſtruſt to *Samonas*, who began to fear he might be ſupplanted. At firſt he endeavour'd, by the ſtrength of his Authority, to remove him, but when he found that could not be effected, he arrogantly accus'd the Empreſs of too much familiarity with him, and proceeded ſo far as to publiſh a Scurrilous Libel againſt the Emperor himſelf; who, finding him to be the Author of it, grew at length ſenſible of his Perfidiouſneſs, and after he had order'd him to be ſhaven he confin'd him to a Monaſtery, and preferr'd the new Favourite to be Chamberlain of the Houſhold in his ſtead. *Samonas in Diſgrace.*

Leo did not long ſurvive this piece of Juſtice, but dy'd of the Cholick on the eleventh of *May*, or *June*, as ſome will have it, in the ſecond Year of *Anaſtaſius* the Third Pope of *Rome*, the laſt of *Lewis* the Fourth Emperor of *Germany*, and twenty fifth of his own Reign, by the Conſent of moſt Authors, tho' ſome others vary from it, *An. Dom.* 911. *Leo dies.* A. D. 911.

Leo is generally allow'd to have been a vigilant and prudent Prince, a Man of great Learning and Capacity in the Adminiſtration of Affairs, tho' there can be no one but muſt allow him in many things to be blamable. Undoubtedly his extraordinary Learning render'd him a Favourite among Men of Letters, eſpecially the Church-Men, who compare him to the moſt vigi- *His Character.*

lant

lant of their Biſhops in his Care of the Church, expreſs'd in his Circular Letter, and other of his Writings. His prudent Management towards the *Italian* Princes, by which he won ſeveral of 'em off from their Alliances with the *Saracens*, who were grown very powerful in the Weſt, and uniting 'em into a joint Confederacy againſt 'em, ſhows him to be an able Stateſman and provident Guardian of the Chriſtians. His Son being little more than five Years old at his Death, he declar'd *Alexander*, his Brother, his Succeſſor, adjuring him, by all the Ties of Gratitude and Nature, to be careful of the young Prince his Education, and appoint him to ſucceed in the Empire, which, in all appearance, he would hardly have done, had *Alexander* been then no more than twenty Years of Age, as ſome of the *Greek* Writers have affirm'd; tho' *Curopalates*, from whom the reſt have borrow'd, and by that means fell into the ſame Error with him, forgot his former Account, in which he tells us that *Baſilius* the Emperor, in the third Year of his Reign, created his third Son *Alexander Cæſar*, which being true, it follows of neceſſity that he could not be leſs than forty Years of Age at *Leo*'s Death.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

From the Death of Leo *the Philoſopher, to that of* Baſilius *the Second, who ſubdu'd the* Bulgarians, *and made 'em Tributary to the Empire.*

Containing the Space of 114 *Years.*

I. IT was very happy for the State that the Reign of *Alexander*, whom *Leo* had appointed his Succeſſor, was ſo ſhort; in which however he had time enough to give the World a terrible Idea of a wicked diſſolute Prince; and tho' he was quick in his Courſe, yet, like a malignant Planet, he ſhed his poiſonous Influence as he roll'd along. He was ſcarce confirm'd in the Empire before he recall'd *Nicolaus Myſticus*, whom his Brother had baniſh'd, and in a publick Aſſembly, ſummon'd for that purpoſe, formally depos'd *Euthymius*, the Patriarch; who was no ſooner degraded but ſome Hot-headed Prieſts of *Nicolaus* his Faction fell violently upon the helpleſs Old Man, and, in a moſt outrageous manner, inſulted him, pulling him by his hoary Beard, buffetting him with their Fiſts, and committing ſuch barbarous Indignities upon his Sacred Perſon, as would ſcarce be allow'd even in a Repreſentation upon the Stage, and at which the Ambaſſadors of the *Saracens* themſelves, who were then preſent, to the great Scandal of Chriſtianity, were highly offended. *Euthymius* did not long ſurvive this Barbarity, but dy'd ſhortly after in Exile. ALEXANDER.

Alexander having, as he thought, by this Action ſettled the Affairs of the Church, apply'd himſelf, with equal Prudence, to the Management of the State, out of which he thruſt all thoſe whoſe Honour and In-

tegrity had render'd them unwelcome to him, advancing ſuch in their room as would countenance, and ſhare with him in his libidinous Courſes. He was ſenſible that theſe Proceedings had render'd him odious to the People, whoſe Eyes and Wiſhes were fix'd on his Nephew *Conſtantine*, whom therefore he deſign'd to caſtrate, and thereby render him incapable of the Succeſſion, which he propos'd to ſettle on a *Debauchee*, call'd *Baſilitzas*, a Fellow of obſcure Birth and Fortune, 'till enobled by him for being his Companion in all his abominable Extravagancies. Thoſe who were near his Perſon, and bore any Reſpect to the Memory of *Leo*, perſuaded him to ſuſpend the Execution of his Deſign for ſome time, in Conſideration that the Child was young and ſickly, and would ſhortly, in all probability, be call'd out of the way by a natural Death, which would ſave him the Expence of ſo unpopular an Attempt. The hopes of that, and an aſſurance that the Prince was yet too young to raiſe any Diſturbances againſt him, reſtrain'd him for the preſent from his bloody Purpoſe.

Zoe, the Mother of *Conſtantine*, had, from the Death of *Leo*, very vigorouſly endeavour'd to oppoſe *Alexander*, at which being provok'd, by the Advice of his new Miniſters, he baniſh'd her from the Court, where none were ſuffer'd but thoſe who were of as brutiſh Appetites as himſelf. And that his Tranſactions abroad might bear a Reſemblance to thoſe at home, he diſmiſs'd, in an ignominious manner, the Ambaſſadors of the *Bulgarians*, who were come to renew the League formerly concluded, whereupon the War broke out afreſh beteewn both Nations, and prov'd, in the Iſſue, very unfortunate to the *Romans*.

Thus had this unfortunate Prince, in leſs than a Year's time, reduc'd the State to the laſt Extremity; being hated at home, where he was ſerv'd by none but ſuch as were Slaves to his ſenſual Pleaſures; and deſpis'd abroad, where his Enemies, juſtly provok'd a-

gainſt

gainſt him, were arming for his Deſtruction. All thoſe, who were able or willing to ſerve their Country in ſo dangerous a Conjuncture, were diſgrac'd and baniſh'd, and the ſole Management of Affairs committed to the Hands of thoſe who ſeem'd to deſire its Deſtruction. All this while he purſu'd with great Application his diſſolute Courſes, laughing at the Sacred Orders of the Church, blaſpheming God, and oppreſſing Man; 'till Death, haſten'd on by his Intemperance, releas'd the State from ſo pernicious a Monſter, and took him off in the midſt of his Debaucheries. Having one Day exercis'd himſelf at Tennis, after a great fit of Gluttony, he play'd with ſo much violence, that he broke ſome of the Veſſels, and continu'd to bleed inwardly 'till he dy'd. Before his Death he declar'd his Nephew *Conſtantine* his Succeſſor, but appointed thoſe for his Governors, during his Minority, as had in his Life-time been his moſt darling Companions, all which however were ſhortly after remov'd by *Zoe*, the young Emperor's Mother, whom they were forc'd, much againſt their Wills, to recal to Court.

Alexander dies. A. D. 912

CONSTANTINE VI.

Alexander's ſudden Death, and the Contempt the generality of the People had for thoſe who were aſſign'd for the young Prince his Governors, encourag'd ſome, who were Friends to *Conſtantine Ducas*, the Son of *Andronicus*, to aim at an Innovation. *Ducas* was at that time abſent, but was quickly advertis'd by his Friends of *Alexander*'s Death. They *reminded him of the dangerous Condition the State was in, threaten'd from abroad, and divided at home, that in the mean time the Empire wanted a Head to govern and protect it, that it would infallibly be diſſolv'd if he did not appear in its behalf, and by a timely Defence prevent the Ruin that attended it, there being no Man living fit to govern but himſelf.* *Leo*, the late Emperor, is ſaid to have admoniſh'd *Ducas* of his Duty upon his Return to *Conſtantinople*, which was before obſerv'd; *And to*

have adviſ'd him, notwithſtanding the Encouragement he might receive from his Name, never to aim at the Sovereignty; That *if he contented himſelf with a private State, in which he was born, he might live long and happy; but if ever he attempted the Imperial Dignity, that very Place, where now he was Treated with ſo much Honour and Magnificence, would inevitably be the Scene of his Deſtruction.* *Conſtantinus Ducas* either had forgot this friendly Admonition, or diſregarded it. He gave a ready Ear to the dangerous Invitations of his unhappy Friends, and haſten'd by Night, with a ſelect Body of Men, to *Conſtantinople*, and being got into the Caſtle ſummon'd all his Friends to attend him. Many there were of great Power and Authority in the City that anſwer'd his Summons, and repair'd to the Caſtle; from whence, after a few Hours ſpent in ſome previous Conſultations, they went in a great Multitude, with Torches in their Hands, before it was Light, to the publick *Circus*, and with joyful Acclamations ſaluted him Emperor.

Conſtantinus Ducas *ſets up for himſelf.*

The young Emperor's Governors had quickly an Account of this dangerous Tumult, and ſent *John*, who was one of the Number, at the Head of ſome Seamen, and ſuch others, as were the moſt forward to defend the Prince, with Orders to oppoſe the Uſurper, who met with little or no Oppoſition 'till he got to the Court of Guard, where the Soldiers, being encourag'd by *John*'s Approach, made a very vigorous Reſiſtance. *Gregory*, the Son of *Ducas*, and ſome others of his moſt intimate Friends were ſlain at the firſt Onſet; and ſhortly after *Ducas* himſelf, being thrown from his Horſe as he was encouraging his Men, who began to give Ground, was ſeiz'd by ſome of the Imperial Guards, who cut off his Head, and preſented it to the Emperor. With *Ducas* fell the Life and Hopes of all his Party, the Principal of whom were puniſh'd either by Death or Baniſhment. This unexpected Inſurrection, ſo happily cruſh'd in its Birth,

and is ſlain.

gave

gave the young Prince his Governors a fair Pretence of calling ſuch of the Senators to an Account, who were too honeſt to approve of their Behaviour in their Authority; and 'tis thought many of that Rank, tho' innocent, had ſuffer'd, had not one of the Judges, more courageous than the reſt, boldly ask'd 'em, *How they durſt attempt things of ſo high a Nature during the Emperor's Minority?*

In the midſt of theſe Domeſtick Diſtractions *Simeon*, King of *Bulgaria*, being juſtly provok'd at the Indignities put upon his Ambaſſadors by *Alexander*, had, with a very powerful Army, invaded the Empire, and was by this time advanc'd ſo near to *Conſtantinople*, that he had great hopes of taking it; but met with ſo vigorous a Reception from the Inhabitants, who truſted not ſo much to their Walls, tho' they were very ſtrong, as their own Courage, that after ſeveral unſucceſsful Attempts he was forc'd to retire, and offer ſome Overtures for a Treaty, which were very willingly embrac'd by the Governors, and the matter was carry'd on ſo far, that *Simeon* was admitted to dine with the Emperor, who receiv'd him very honourably, and diſmiſs'd him laden with rich Preſents. Notwithſtanding which the Treaty was either broken before it could be brought to an happy Concluſion, or the Peace violated ſoon after. For by that time the Empreſs *Zoe* had been recall'd to Court, and confirm'd in her Authority, *Simeon* broke once more into *Thrace*, and deſtroy'd all with Fire and Sword, continuing long in no Place 'till he arriv'd at *Adrianople*, which he reſolv'd to take either by Force of Arms, or the Power of his Preſents. The latter prov'd the more prevalent, for it was betray'd to him by one *Pancratucas*, an *Armenian*, who had been corrupted by Gold to that purpoſe, and was afterwards, by the ſame means, recover'd to the Emperor.

The Bulgarians *invade the Empire,*

Whilſt *Zoe* was thus attack'd on one Side by the *Bulgarians*, the *Saracens* from *Tyre* infeſted the Mari-

and the Saracens.

tine Parts of the Empire on the other; whereupon ſhe conſulted with the Senate what was to be done in ſuch an Extremity; in which it was reſolv'd to make Peace, if poſſible, with the *Saracens*, and direct the whole Power of the Empire againſt the *Bulgarians*. The *Saracens*, being divided among themſelves at home, and ſatisfy'd for the preſent with their late Depredations, readily agreed to an Accommodation; ſo that *Zoe*, being now diſintangled from them, ſent *Leo Phocas* at the Head of a very gallant Army againſt the *Bulgarians*. *Leo* muſter'd his Army at *Diabaſis*, being a capacious Plain, and fit for ſuch a purpoſe. He found the Troops in as good a Condition as he could deſire, very well Diſciplin'd, and eager to be led againſt the Enemy, to which they had been encourag'd by a late Donative from the Empreſs. Here the great Chaplain of the Palace, having firſt made 'em all kneel down, and ſwear to fight it out to the laſt, in a ſolemn manner gave him his Benediction. The General Officers were Men moſt of 'em eminent for their former Services and great Experience in the War, ſo that *Leo*, with great reaſon, promis'd himſelf Succeſs in his Expedition. Both Armies engag'd on the ſixth of *Auguſt*, and the Battel was fought with great Reſolution on both Sides, 'till at length the Valour of the *Romans* prevail'd, and the *Bulgarians*, after a great Loſs, were put to Flight. It happen'd that *Leo*, grown faint and thirſty through the great Fatigues of Battel, in which he had equall'd the Labour of the moſt ordinary Soldier, alighted at a Fountain to refreſh himſelf during the Purſuit, and whilſt he ſtoop'd down to drink, the Horſe, eas'd of his Rider, brook looſe and ran in among the Ranks of the Army; where being known by the Soldiers they all concluded their General was ſlain, whereupon moſt of 'em, in a diſorderly manner, turn'd their Purſuit into a Flight. The Diſorder this unhappy Miſtake had created in the *Roman* Army was quickly perceiv'd by *Simeon*, who, having re-

A. D. 917. *The* Romans *are defeated by the* Bulgarians.

retreated in an orderly manner, immediately rally'd his Forces, and turn'd the Fortune of the Day.

To this Miſtake ſome attribute the Miſcarriage of the Imperial Army, tho' others aſſign a more weighty Reaſon for it. They ſay that whilſt *Leo* was buſily employ'd in Purſuit of the Enemy, he receiv'd Intelligence that *Romanus Lacapenus*, a Man of great Authority in the Empire, and Admiral of the Fleet, which had Orders to hover about the Sea-Coaſts, and aſſiſt *Leo* if need requir'd, was return'd back to *Conſtantinople* with a Deſign to uſurp the Imperial Power, whilſt moſt of the Great Men were abſent from the City; at which *Leo*, who had the ſame Deſign in view, was ſo nearly concern'd, that he return'd on a ſudden into the Camp, the better to be inform'd of the Truth; and by that means the Soldiers, who imagin'd it to be done out of Fear, were ſo diſcourag'd that they turn'd their Backs, and gave a new Turn to the Fortune of the Day. This ſeems to be the moſt probable Account, if we conſider the Actions both of the one and the other ſhortly after.

Leo was deſcended from ſome of the former Emperors; he was a Man of great Perſonal Merit, and many conſiderable Employments, beſides his Intereſt at Court was very ſtrong by the means of *Conſtantine* the Chamberlain, his Wife's Brother. Depending therefore too much upon his own Strength, and the Emperor's Minority, he grew ſo confident of raiſing himſelf one Day to his projected Greatneſs, that he openly declar'd his Title to the Imperial Dignity. *Romanus*, on the other Hand, had ingratiated himſelf by a long Series of Services render'd to the Emperor and his Father, tho' it appear'd afterwards that all his Deſigns in private were to the Advancement of himſelf and Family. *Theodore*, the Emperor's School-Maſter, had diligently examin'd into *Leo*'s Actions, and, upon good Grounds, foreſaw the Danger his Pupil was in, and perſuaded him to ſtrengthen himſelf againſt him by the Aſſiſtance

of *Romanus*, whom he adviſ'd him to chuſe for his Protector. *Romanus* at firſt, with great Obſtinacy, refuſ'd to accept the Charge, 'till he was invited to it by the Emperor's own Letters, and *Leo*'s ambitious Practices, whom he would not ſuffer to haſten with more ſpeed to the Sovereignty than himſelf, ſo that at laſt he privately undertook to fruſtrate the Attempts of *Leo* and his Adherents.

Theſe Negotiations were not manag'd with ſo much Secreſie, but *Conſtantine* the Chamberlain had Intimation of it. Notwithſtanding which he preſum'd ſo much upon his Power, that he ventur'd to go ſhortly after to the Fleet with the Treaſure aſſign'd for the Payment of the Seamen, where *Romanus*, by a plauſible Carriage having gotten him into the Snare, immediately ſeiz'd and confin'd him. This Accident made ſo great a Noiſe in the City, that nothing leſs than a Revolt was expected; and when *Zoe* ſent to know the meaning of theſe Proceedings, and to require the Chamberlain to be ſet at Liberty, ſhe receiv'd no other Anſwer than that all was owing to *Leo*'s ill Management in the Army, and *Conſtantine* the Chamberlain's Behaviour at Court.

Zoe, the Emperor's Mother, remov'd from the Government.

Shortly after this the Emperor recall'd the Patriarch, and ſome others, whom his Mother, at the beginning of her Adminiſtration, had remov'd; and tho' ſhe very importunately deſir'd the contrary, remov'd her from the Management, and ſo more openly expos'd himſelf to the Deſigns of thoſe who were preparing to oppreſs him. *Leo* was turn'd out of all his Employments, together with all ſuch as were related to him. Whereat being juſtly alarm'd, and dreading what might follow, he went privately to *Romanus*, and in a moſt moving manner lamented the Straits to which he was reduc'd. *Romanus*, being ſenſible how conſiderable a Man *Leo* was, as well in regard of his perſonal Intereſt as powerful Alliances, choſe rather to ſoften and encourage him with fair Promiſes for the preſent, than offend and exaſperate

exaſperate him before his own Deſigns were ripe for Execution. Upon which Conſideration he receiv'd him with a great deal of outward Reſpect, and a League of Friendſhip was contracted between 'em, which was to be ſtrengthen'd by an intended Inter-Marriage of their Children.

Romanus having thus, in a great meaſure, as he thought, diſarm'd *Leo*, and purg'd the Court of ſuch as were averſe to his Proceedings, he went thither himſelf to anſwer, as he pretended, the Crimes that had been urg'd againſt him, and to prove that he had done nothing but what conſiſted with the Safety of the State, and the Security of the Emperor, which had been ſo apparently threaten'd by *Leo*'s Faction; when that was done he ſolemnly oblig'd himſelf, under the moſt dreadful Imprecations, never to attempt any thing againſt the Emperor's Perſon or Dignity, but hazard his Life for the Preſervation of both. *Romanus* behav'd himſelf in all theſe Tranſactions with ſo much outward Integrity, that the young Prince was eaſily perſuaded to marry his Daughter *Helena*, and confer on him the Title of Father to the Emperor; after which he made his Son *Chriſtopher* Commander in chief of the Aſſociates, which at that time was eſteem'd one of the higheſt Dignities in the Empire.

Conſtantine *marries* Romanus *his Daughter.*

Theſe extraordinary Favours to *Romanus* provok'd *Leo*, who had for a long time been a Male-content, to break out into an open Rebellion, which it was the Favourite's Intereſt as well as Duty to cruſh in its Birth. *Leo*, being aſſiſted by the Chamberlain, and ſome others of great Intereſt in the State, gave out in his publick Declarations, that what he did was in behalf of the Emperor, whom he endeavour'd to free from the Power and Authority of *Romanus*; which plauſible Pretence ſeduc'd many to declare for him, and had not *Romanus* taken Care to have the Emperor's Letters, wherein he acknowledg'd *Romanus* his Father, and declar'd *Leo* a Traitor, and an Enemy to him and his Family, produc'd in the Camp, he had, in all probability,

created

created great Troubles in the Empire. But when the Chief Officers, and others that were with *Leo*, found the Letters ſign'd by the Emperor himſelf, and ſeal'd with his own Seal, they withdrew from *Leo*, and return'd to their Duty. They were ſhortly after follow'd by the reſt of the Army, ſo that *Leo* was forc'd to fly and ſecure himſelf in a Caſtle call'd *Atcas*, where he was ſhortly after taken Priſoner, and had his Eyes pluck'd out, whereby he was render'd incapable of any further Innovations.

Romanus had hardly remov'd the Dangers that were threaten'd him by an open Rebellion, before he had like to have been taken off by a private Conſpiracy, carry'd on by ſome who under-hand had favour'd *Leo*'s Attempts; but having declin'd declaring publickly for him they eſcap'd the Puniſhment, tho' they ſtill preſerv'd the Spirit of the Party. Among theſe were *Michael*, the Maſter of the Ordonance, who had purſuaded ſeveral young Men to attempt to kill him as he went out to Hunt. Tho' the Conſpirators thought the thing was manag'd with all imaginable Privacy, yet was it happily diſcover'd to *Romanus*, who, having pluck'd out all their Eyes, led 'em in an ignominious manner about, having order'd *Leo* to be expos'd with them as a Companion, as well in their Crime as Puniſhment. *Romanus* his Jealouſies were ſo alarm'd by theſe Attempts, that he proceeded in a ſevere manner againſt all thoſe on whom he could fix the leaſt Suſpicion. Among the reſt *Zoe* the Empreſs was ſhaven, and thruſt into a Monaſtery, and even *Theodore*, the Emperor's School-Maſter, who had ſo eminently contributed to his Advancement, was ſent into Exile.

Κωνσταντίνος τὸν Μαγδάνων

Zoe the Empreſs forc'd into a Monaſtery

A. D. 919. *Romanus crown'd Emperor.*

Theſe Proceedings having, in a ſhort time, remov'd all his Competitors out of the way, he was declar'd *Cæſar*, and afterwards crown'd Emperor in a moſt ſolemn manner by the Hands of the Patriarch. *Conſtantine* all the while ſilently permitting, rather than openly allowing of what was done, whilſt *Romanus*, in

Breach

Breach of his former Oath, at once invaded the Dignity, and inſulted the Perſon of the Emperor; for not long after having caus'd his Wife *Theodora*, and Son *Chriſtopher* to be crown'd, he commanded that he himſelf ſhould be eſteem'd and nam'd Emperor in the firſt place, and that *Conſtantine* ſhould be contented with the ſecond. This he pretended was the only way to prevent Conſpiracies, with which he was continually alarm'd. For notwithſtanding all his Care and Caution to the contrary, there were ſtill remaining ſeveral generous reſolute Spirits, who, diſdaining the Dominion of an Upſtart Favourite, attempted to releaſe the helpleſs young Emperor out of his arrogant Control, and reſtore the Imperial Authority to its proper Channel. Several Projects were ſet on Foot to that purpoſe, and the Uſurper was frequently in Danger of his Life. However his good Fortune prevail'd, and they were all ſeaſonably diſcover'd before any could be brought to Execution.

In the midſt of theſe Plots and Contrivances againſt him, he ſought to ſtrengthen and ſupport himſelf by ſome powerful Alliances, and marry'd his Daughter *Agatha* to *Leo*, the Son of *Argyrus*, a Man nobly deſcended, and of a Soul and Body excellently well qualify'd; at the ſame time he preferr'd others of that Family to the moſt conſiderable Employments of the Empire.

Romanus had hardly ſecur'd himſelf from the Attempts of his Enemies at home, before he was threaten'd with more imminent Dangers from abroad: For the *Bulgarians*, taking an Advantage from the Diſtractions of the State, made an Irruption into the Empire, and meeting with no Reſiſtance in their Courſe, they threaten'd *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, as formerly they had frequently done. Againſt theſe *Romanus* ſent his Son-in-Law *Leo*, and his Brother *Pothus Argyrus*, together with one *John*, who, running away in a great Fright at the firſt Onſet, gave occaſion to a Defeat, which

The Bulgarians *Invade the Empire.* A. D. 922.

was

was attended by a miſerable Slaughter of the *Romans*. After this the War was carry'd on for ſeveral Years with various Succeſs, tho' the *Bulgarians*, for the moſt part, prevail'd, burning and deſtroying all before 'em. At length *Simeon*, encourag'd by his Courſe of good Fortune in the Wars, march'd at the Head of as powerful an Army as he was able to raiſe, with an Intent to Beſiege *Conſtantinople* it ſelf. In his Paſſage he waſted all *Thrace* and *Macedonia*, putting ſufficient Garriſons into ſuch Places as were defenſible, and levelling the reſt with the Ground. Having encamp'd his Army at *Blacherna*, by a Meſſenger he demanded the Patriarch and ſome others might be ſent out of the City to Treat of a Peace, with which *Romanus* readily comply'd, and Hoſtages were exchang'd on both ſides accordingly. After ſome time ſpent in the Conference *Simeon* requir'd an Interview between himſelf and *Romanus*, *whom*, he ſaid, *he eſteem'd a prudent and upright Man*, to which *Romanus* willingly condeſcended. When all things were prepar'd on both ſides for the meeting *Romanus* went firſt, attended by the Principal of the Nobility, to the Place of Conference, whither *Simeon* follow'd ſhortly after; to whom *Romanus* addreſs'd himſelf in theſe Terms. *You are reputed a Chriſtian, and a Servant to the ſame God whom we adore, but your Actions in no meaſure agree with that Character. If you are in reality, what you outwardly profeſs, a ſincere Chriſtian, put a ſtop at length to theſe cruel Devaſtations. Behold us the Profeſſors of the ſame Faith with your ſelf; let not therefore the Thirſt of Ambition any longer divide thoſe whom our Holy Faith has united. You are a Man ſubject to the ſame Infirmities of Nature with us; as ſuch you muſt live in a daily Expectation of Death, and a firm Aſſurance of a Reſurrection, when you will be call'd to give a juſt Account of all your Actions, as a Man, a Prince, and a Chriſtian. Let theſe Thoughts teach you to act with Moderation, and to ſheath your Sword, already polluted with*

Romanus *his Speech to the King of* Bulgaria.

the

the Effuſion of too much Chriſtian Blood. If what has been done proceeds from a Covetous Mind, and the Deſire of Riches, the Treaſures of the Empire ſhall be open'd to bribe you to your Duty. Let us no longer, by our unnatural Wars, give the Infidels an Occaſion to triumph over us, but rather ſtudy to cultivate a Peace between both Nations, as the God of Peace has enjoin'd us.

It is more than probable that *Simeon* met *Romanus* with Thoughts quite different from the pretended Intent of that Interview, becauſe, during the Preparations for it, he ſent a Body of Soldiers to burn the Church of *our Lady at the Fountain*, which had been built by the Emperor *Juſtinian*, by which he made it appear, that he was no ways inclin'd to Peace. Notwithſtanding which he was ſo nearly touch'd with *Romanus* his Speech, that he apply'd himſelf in good earneſt to it, and having ſign'd the Treaty he return'd home richly laden with Preſents from the Emperor.

A Peace concluded between Simeon *and the* Romans.

Whilſt the *Bulgarians* were thus buſy'd in aſſaulting the Empire by Land, the *Saracens*, with a ſtrong Fleet, invaded the Sea-Coaſts and Iſlands. At firſt they met with no Oppoſition from the *Romans*, which made 'em act with more Confidence and Security. But *John*, the Admiral, fell ſuddenly upon 'em whilſt they lay at *Lemnos*, and attack'd 'em with ſo much Execution that very few eſcap'd. This Succeſs againſt the *Saracens*, and the Peace lately concluded with the *Bulgarians*, which was ſolely attributed to *Romanus* his prudent Management, ſerv'd very much to augment his Power and Reputation with the People, ſo that with the general Acclamations of all he caus'd his Sons, *Stephen* and *Conſtantine*, to be crown'd Emperors: The Emperor *Conſtantine* ſitting all this while as an Idle Spectator, enjoying only the Shadow of that Power which his Rival poſſeſs'd in reality. About the ſame time *Thrace*, which had ſuffer'd ſo much in the late *Bulgarian* Wars, was viſited by moſt horrible Earthquakes, which overturn'd ſeveral Chrches

A. D. 928.

Great Earthquakes in Thrace.

Churches, and ſwallow'd up great Numbers of Men and Houſes.

Tho' *Simeon*, the King of *Bulgaria*, had concluded a Peace with the Emperor, yet, being a reſtleſs turbulent Prince, he did not long enjoy the Fruits of it; for he ſhortly after pick'd a Quarrel with ſome of his Neighbours, and loſt his Life in the Diſpute, which introduc'd new Troubles in *Bulgaria*. For the neighbouring Nations, who had been provok'd by his unjuſt Invaſions, prepar'd to fall upon the *Bulgarians*, at the ſame time that they labour'd under a grievous Famine at home. *Peter*, who ſucceeded his Father in the Kingdom, was directed by the Councils of *George Suſurbulus*, his Mother's Brother, who, fearing the *Romans* would be encourag'd by their preſent Calamities to fall ſuddenly upon 'em, advis'd the young Prince to Invade them firſt, which perhaps might make way for an advantageous Treaty. Accordingly *Peter* made an Inroad into *Macedonia*, where, when he was inform'd that *Romanus* the Emperor was marching at the Head of a great Army againſt him, his Uncle advis'd him to offer ſome Propoſals for a Peace, which was to be ſtrengthen'd by a ſtricter Alliance, if the Emperor thought fit to give him his Daughter in Marriage. The Overture was very acceptable to *Romanus*, ſo that after ſeveral Internegotiations, during which *George*, the King's Uncle, and ſeveral others the moſt Eminent among the *Bulgarians*, were entertain'd with great reſpect at *Conſtantinople*, *Romanus* went in Perſon to receive the young King at the Caſtle of *Blacherna*, where the Nuptials were celebrated with much Solemnity. Here, by *Romanus* his Artifices, the *Bulgarians* ſeem'd highly to reſent that *Conſtantine*, the true and lawful Emperor, ſhould be ſuffer'd to take Place of *Chriſtopher*, who was the Son of ſo active and vigilant a Prince. Whereupon *Romanus*, with a ſeeming reluctancy, was prevail'd upon to let his Son *Chriſtopher* have the upper Hand, endeavouring thus by degrees

Simeon dies.

His Succeſſor Invades Macedonia,

but concludes a Peace, and marries Romanus *his Daughter.*

degrees to raiſe all his Family above him, who was once his Lord and Maſter.

In the mean time, whilſt *Romanus* was thus employ'd with his Sons at home, *John Curcuas*, his General in *Syria*, acted with ſo much Succeſs againſt the *Saracens* in thoſe Parts, that having laid Siege to the City of *Melitena*, and taken it, he ſubjected the whole Country to the Emperor, who reduc'd it to the Form of a Province, and by that means improv'd the publick Revenues to a great degree. The Joy conceiv'd at *Conſtantinople* from the Recovery of ſo conſiderable a Branch to the Empire, was interrupted by a Plague which rag'd with the utmoſt Violence in that populous City. That Calamity was ſucceeded by another no leſs terrible, for a Fire broke out near the *Forum* of the bleſſed Virgin, which deſtroy'd a great Number of their faireſt Buildings. And on the fourth Day of *Auguſt*, that ſame Year, *Chriſtopher*, *Romanus* his eldeſt Son, dy'd, to the great Affliction of his Father, who ſuſpected him to be taken off by Treachery.

Whilſt *Romanus* was lamenting the Loſs of his Son, *Baſilius*, a *Macedonian*, pretending himſelf to be *Conſtantinus Ducas*, who was ſlain in the beginning of this Emperor's Reign, gave a beginning to freſh Diſturbances in the Empire. *Romanus* had met with many Difficulties to contend with during his Uſurpation of the Imperial Power, tho' hardly any that gave him more Trouble than this. *Baſilius* was a bold cunning Man, ready to improve whatever Advantages Fortune or his own Induſtry preſented him with. He had taken Care not to declare himſelf 'till the Diſtempers of the State had given him a fair Opportunity for it. He knew *Romanus* was fear'd rather than belov'd, even by thoſe who pretended to be the moſt faithful to him, and that he was ſo paſſionately hated by many others, that they would lay hold on all Occaſions to undo him. It is hard to be believ'd how readily the People receiv'd whatever *Baſilius* at his firſt Appearance affirm'd,

New Diſturbances.

affirm'd, ſo that *Romanus*, who knew how much it conſiſted with his Intereſt to ſuppreſs him, try'd all ways to get him into his Power, which at length he effected by a Captain in the Army, who, having ſeiz'd him by a Stratagem, carry'd him to *Conſtantinople*, where *Romanus* commanded one of his Hands to be cut off, and then, thinking him uncapable of giving him any further Diſturbance, turn'd him looſe for freſh Adventures. *Baſilius*, having got a Braſs Hand to ſupply the room of that he had loſt, return'd to his former Artifices, and in a ſhort time got ſuch a Multitude of credulous People together, that he ſeiz'd on a ſtrong Caſtle, from whence he iſſu'd out in Parties, and waſted all the Country round about. The Obſtinacy of *Baſilius* very much alarm'd *Romanus*, who thought he never could have perſiſted with ſo much Conſtancy in his Deſigns, had he not been privately ſupported by ſome of the great Men at Court; for which reaſon, after he had with much Trouble got him once more into his Power, he endeavour'd, by Torture, to diſcover who of the Nobility had been acceſſary to his Crime; but when he found he could draw no Confeſſion from him, he order'd him to be burnt alive. After this the Affairs of the Empire ſeem'd to put on a new Face, for the *Ruſſi*, Inhabitants of *Podolia* in *Poland*, with no leſs than ten or fifteen thouſand Veſſels, having infeſted the Coaſts of the Empire, receiv'd ſo abſolute a Defeat through the Vigilance of *Theophanes* the Admiral, that very few eſcap'd home with the News of their Misfortunes. About the ſame time the whole Strength of the *Saracen* Army was broken by *Theophilus*, the Governor of *Meſopotamia*, who in ſeveral ſucceſsful Engagements deſtroy'd great Multitudes of 'em. During theſe Publick Felicities *Romanus* confirm'd an honourable Alliance with *Hugh*, the King of *Italy*, whoſe Daughter was marry'd to *Romanus* his Grandſon, the Son of *Conſtantine* the Sixth; in purſuance of this Alliance the Emperor aſſiſted the *Italians*

The Ruſſi *defeated by the* Romans.

Italians with a ſtrong Fleet, with which they deſtroy'd the Navy of the *Saracens*.

Theſe Publick Felicities were follow'd ſhortly after by ſuch a Revolution as prov'd fatal to *Romanus* and his Family. Being, as he thought, arriv'd to the height of all Human Greatneſs, and having nothing to apprehend either at home or abroad, he endeavour'd to ingratiate himſelf with the People, and in ſome meaſure expiate his Uſurpation by ſeveral Acts of Charity and Devotion, which however could not divert the Divine Vengeance that was ready to overtake him. For the Mony he diſpos'd of, as *Zonaras* obſerves, was none of his own, but belong'd to the Sovereign Power which he had unjuſtly uſurp'd, and defrauded another of his Right, enjoying all the Imperial Wealth by Virtue of his Uſurpation; what Merit then had he if he conferr'd a ſmall part of it on the needy? like him who, having kill'd his Neighbour's Ox, preſumes he has made a ſufficient Reparation, if reſerving the reſt to his own uſe, he gives the Feet to the Poor.

All this while *Conſtantine*, the legal Emperor, liv'd without Authority or Reſpect, and had been little better than an Imperial Priſoner for almoſt twenty ſix Years together, and, as ſome will have it, was reduc'd to ſo low a Neceſſity as to be forc'd to work for his own Maintenance. 'Tis highly probable the great Contempt *Romanus* had of his Perſon and Capacity, made him attempt nothing againſt his Life during his Uſurpation, but the Event ſhow'd that the greateſt Danger often ariſes from thoſe, at whoſe Hands it is leaſt expected. Tho' *Conſtantine* had endeavour'd to conceal his Indignation, and had by that means betray'd the Uſurper into a fatal Security, yet he ſecretly attended the firſt Opportunity of recovering his former Dignity. *Romanus*, in all outward Appearance, was the Favourite of Fortune, and yet was he very unhappy in his own Family. He had loſt his eldeſt Son *Chriſtopher*, as has been before obſerv'd, and had been

ſeveral times highly provok'd by the undutiful Carriage of *Stephen* the youngeſt. *Conſtantine* had privately gain'd over to his Intereſt ſome Perſons that were in great Eſteem with *Romanus* and his Sons; among theſe were *Baſilius Volucer*, a Man of a ready Wit, and long Experience in Affairs of State; and *Marianus* a Monk, the Son of *Leo Argyrus*. Theſe Perſons, preſuming upon the Credit of their Friendſhip, repreſented to *Stephen, How unworthy it was for a Man of his Age, Intereſt and Capacity, to ſuffer the weight of Empire to hang on the decrepid Shoulders of his aged Father, and not to take the Reins into his own Hands. They reminded him how unkind his Father had been to him, and what mighty things he was, in all probability, likely to do in behalf of his eldeſt Brother* Conſtantine, *and to his Prejudice.* They ſtrengthen'd all with the Promiſe *of a ready Aſſiſtance from his Brother-in-Law* Conſtantine *the Emperor, who would gladly ſhare the Empire with him, but was offended to ſee it divided among ſo many.*

A. D. 944. *Stephen* was a Man fiery and ambitious, but of a very weak Underſtanding, ſo that he greedily ſwallow'd the Bait they had laid for him, and joining in Council with them, reſolv'd to remove his Father, which they knew was the firſt Step towards the Re-eſtabliſhment of *Conſtantine*. Accordingly he order'd his Father, by their Aſſiſtance, to be ſeiz'd on the ſixteenth of *December*, and carry'd into the Iſland *Prota*, where he was ſhaven, and thruſt into a Monaſtery. This was the deſerved End of *Romanus* his Uſurpation, who ow'd his Advancement to his own Diſloyalty, and his Deſtruction to his Son's Diſobedience.

Romanus depos'd by his own Son.

Conſtantine, the Brother of *Stephen*, having in no meaſure been conſenting to his Father's Dethronement, entertain'd an implacable Malice to *Stephen*, who expreſs'd as ſmall a Regard for him. Of this Miſunderſtanding between the two Brothers, *Conſtantine* the Emperor, and his Friends, endeavour'd to make their Advantage. Being thus divided as they were into Factions,

ons, they were the more eaſily to be oppreſs'd, eſpecially at a time when the Diſgrace of the Father had ſubjected the whole Family to the Contempt and Indignation of the People, who are naturally fond of a Change. *Conſtantine*, pretending to deſire a Reconciliation between the two Brothers, invited 'em to an Entertainment, whither they readily came without any Suſpicion of what had been contriv'd againſt them. But in the midſt of their Jollity they were both ſeiz'd by the Emperor's Order, and being baniſh'd, they were, by Virtue of the ſame Authority, ſhaven and made Clerks. *Stephen* out-liv'd his Misfortunes many Years, and dy'd at *Lesbos*; but his Brother grew ſo impatient under his Afflictions, that having kill'd one of his Keepers in *Samothracia*, who prevented him, as he was attempting his Eſcape, the reſt fell in great Rage upon him, and ſlew him.

Conſtantine reſtor'd to his former Dignity.

Thus, by the Deſtruction of *Romanus* and his Family, *Conſtantine* once more recover'd his former Dignity, and became ſole Emperor. His firſt Care was to reward thoſe who had been inſtrumental in his Reſtoration, and prevent any future Deſigns that might be form'd againſt him. Accordingly he promoted *Baſilius Volucer* to the Command of the Aſſociates, *Marianus Argyrus* he made Maſter of the Horſe, and advanc'd the reſt of his Friends to ſuch Preferments as he thought their late Services had ſufficiently deſerv'd. Shortly after, on *Eaſter*-Day, he crown'd his Son *Romanus*, and at the ſame time having gelded *Romanus*, the Son of *Stephen*, he oblig'd him and the reſt of his Relations to enter into Orders. His Son *Romanus*, whom he had by *Helena*, the Uſurper's Daughter, had formerly been marry'd to *Bertha*, the Daughter of *Hugh*, King of *France*, who being dead, the Emperor thought it highly neceſſary to marry him again, and, after ſome Deliberation, beſtow'd on him *Theophania*, a Woman of moſt admirable Beauty, but deſcended of very ſordid Parentage, therein chuſing to comply

with his amorous Desires, rather than consult the Reputation of his Family, or the Interest of the State.

We meet with little more, during the rest of this Emperor's Reign, worthy our Observation. He is justly condemn'd by most Authors for his great Remissness in the Administration of Affairs, for addicting himself too much to Wine, and other sensual Entertainments; he committed the Management of all to his Wife *Helena*, and *Basilius* his Favourite, who made a Market of the most considerable Employments in the Empire, and conferr'd the Places of greatest Trust and Profit on those who were able to give the most for 'em. Notwithstanding this his great Negligence, he is on the other Hand worthily to be commended for his Encouragement shown to Learned Men, and his restoring of Learning to *Greece*, where it had lain languishing for a long time before. His want of Care in the Administration encourag'd *Theophanes* the Chamberlain, and several others of great Quality, to endeavour the Restoration of *Romanus*, or his Son *Stephen*, and to reestablish one or both of them in the Government; the thing was so well concerted, and carry'd on with so much Secrecy, that *Romanus*, old as he was, entertain'd great Hopes of recovering his former Dignity; but a Contention arising between some of the Conspirators, the Plot was discover'd, whereupon *Theophanes* and his Accomplices were banish'd. *Romanus* dy'd not long after, but his Son *Stephen* surviv'd to Administer fresh Distrusts to this Emperor and his Successors.

A Conspiracy detected.

Nor were these Attempts at home the only Difficulties *Constantine* had to contend withal, for the *Saracens*, not forgetting their ancient Animosities, made frequent Inroads into the Empire; so that during all the Delights and Entertainments of the Court the War was continu'd on both sides, and was committed to the Management of *Bardas Phocas*, and his two Sons, *Nicephorus* and *Leo*. *Bardas* did nothing himself that was answera-

New Wars with the Saracens.

anſwerable to the high Character he bore, entruſting all to the Care of his Lieutenants, eſpecially his Sons, who ſignaliz'd themſelves by their many extraordinary Services; nor were they more remarkable for their Valour and Conduct, by which they were render'd terrible to their Enemies, than their Care and Affection to thoſe who ſerv'd under 'em, which made 'em the Delight of the Soldiers. *Leo* had, in a pitch'd Battel, overthrown the *Saracens*, and taken *Apoluſemus*, nearly related to the Prince of that Nation, and a Man of great Authority among them. The Priſoner was ſent to *Conſtantinople* by Order from the Emperor, who led him about in Triumph, and in an inſulting manner trod upon his Neck. This Indignity highly provok'd the Caliph, who having taken *Conſtantine*, *Bardas* his younger Son, endeavour'd by all means to make him abjure his Religion, and when he found nothing would force him to turn Apoſtate, he treated him after a moſt barbarous manner, and at length poiſon'd him; at which *Phocas* was ſo enrag'd that he murder'd all the Relations of the Caliph, who had the Misfortune to fall into his Hands, whereupon the *Saracens* invaded the Empire with a greater Force than they had done any time before. The Caliph carry'd with him *Nicetas*, a Patrician, and ſeveral other Perſons of Quality that were his Priſoners, with an Intent to kill 'em in ſight of the *Roman* Army. *Nicetas* was a Man of an inſinuating Temper, by which means he wonderfully wrought himſelf into the good Opinion of the Caliph, who, through a ſtrange Credulity, made him acquainted with all his Deſigns, which he immediately communicated to *Phocas*, who lay in Ambuſh for him in a narrow Paſs, and cut off the greateſt part of his Army; the Caliph himſelf eſcap'd with a very ſmall Retinue, but before his Flight kill'd all the Priſoners he had in his Cuſtody, except *Nicetas*, who having corrupted his Keepers, got away at the beginning of the Engagement.

These frequent Inroads, and the continual Losses his Subjects sustain'd, especially from those who had once more settled in *Crete*, from whence they had formerly been driven by *Basilius*, very much afflicted the Emperor, who therefore mann'd out a very considerable Fleet, on Board of which a strong Army embark'd, with Orders to try all means possible to expel 'em.

Had their Design been as manfully executed, as it was prudently laid, the Expedition had ended much to the Reputation and Safety of the Empire. But the Emperor made choice of *Constantinus Gongylas*, one of the Bed-Chamber, for his General; who having had the greatest part of his Education in the Court, was an utter Stranger to the Arts of War, and entirely incapable of so considerable an Employment. Having landed his Army without any Opposition from the *Saracens*, who were altogether unprovided for so sudden a Descent, he neither took Care to fortifie himself by any Works, nor sent out his Spies to gain Intelligence of the Enemy's Motions, who observing as well the Negligence as Ignorance of the General, fell suddenly on the *Romans*, and totally defeated 'em. After a very great Slaughter, they took their Camp with all their Ammunition and Baggage, and had not some of the General's Guards defended him with an invincible Courage, he had undoubtedly fallen into their Hands. These Misfortunes, and the great Advantages the *Saracens* obtain'd on every side, were imputed by *Romanus*, the Emperor's Son, to the Age and Insufficiency of his Father; for which reason his Wife *Theophania*, who eagerly desir'd to be Absolute, easily persuaded him to Conspire against him, and prevail'd with *Nicetas*, an Officer, who attended at the Table, to attempt his Life by Poison, which he administred to him instead of a purging Potion the Physicians had prescrib'd him. The Emperor, as he was about to drink it, either casually, or by Design, stumbled, and spilt the greatest part of it, so that it had not the

Constantine in great Danger by his Son's Practices.

A. D. 960.

the deſir'd Effect, tho' he never after had the full Enjoyment of his Health.

The *September* following, being uneaſie in his Mind, and diſtemper'd in his Body, he took an unſeaſonable Journey to the Mountain of *Olympus*, to entreat, as it was given out, the Prayers of the Monks for Succeſs in an Expedition he was then meditating againſt the *Saracens* in *Syria*, tho' his true Deſign was to conſult with *Theodorus*, Biſhop of *Cyzicus*, reſiding there, how to expel *Polyeuctus*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; who, having too openly reſented the Injuries done to *Romanus* and his Family, had incurr'd the Emperor's Diſpleaſure. Whilſt he was there he fell violently ſick, either thro' the ill Habit of his Body, or for that his Son had proceeded further in his Practices upon him; ſo that perceiving the ill Condition he was in, he order'd himſelf to be carry'd back in a Litter to *Conſtantinople*, where he dy'd on the ninth of *November*, before he could execute what he had deſign'd againſt *Polyeuctus*, his inveterate Hatred to whom he carry'd with him to his Grave. *Curopalates* tells us, that ſome time before his Death ſeveral Stones fell with an unuſual Violence from above into his Apartment. He, thinking they were thrown down from the upper Rooms, by ſome who had a Deſign upon his Life, order'd a Watch every Night, for the thing was often repeated to the great Amazement of all that were about him, to try if they could diſcover the Offenders; but to no purpoſe, ſaith this Author, for they were ſent down by a Divine Power, and not directed againſt him by any Human Contrivance. *He dies.*

We obſerv'd before how much this Prince was addicted to Wine, and how careleſs in what related to the Government of the State. He is likewiſe condemn'd for his great Severity even towards the ſmalleſt Offenders, and the unhappy Choice of his Magiſtrates, which redounded much to his Diſhonour, and the Detriment of the Publick. On the other Hand, being himſelf well ſkill'd in Arithmetick, Aſtronomy, Geometry, and all *His Character.*

the Parts of Philoſophy, as well Natural as Moral, he was a great Benefactor to Learned Men, whom he ſent for from all Parts, and gave 'em unuſual Encouragements. He was conſtant and ſincere in his Devotions, ſeldom going to the Temple without adorning the Altar with Preſents worthy an Emperor, and a true Lover of Jeſus Chriſt. He advis'd his Son, before he dy'd, never to marry with any of the barbarous Nations, which he founded upon a Precept left by *Conſtantine* the Great, and the Canons of the Church. In this Emperor's Reign *Luitprandus* the Hiſtorian flouriſh'd, who ſo deſervedly taxes the Biſhops of thoſe times with Pride and Ambition. *Conſtantine* dy'd in the fifty fifth Year of his Age, and fiftieth Year of his Reign, the fifth of *John* the Pope of *Rome*, and twenty fifth of *Otho* the Great Emperor of *Germany*, who is deſervedly renown'd for his great Actions.

His Advice to his Son.

ROMANUS. *Conſtantine* being dead, *Romanus* ſucceeded him without any Oppoſition in the Empire. He was Sirnam'd *the Boy*, to diſtinguiſh him from the other *Romanus* his Grandfather. They who had the Care of this Prince his Education in his Youth, indulg'd him in all the Licentiouſneſs of a luxurious Court, which in the End prov'd very pernicious to the State; for tho' by Nature he ſeem'd capable of governing with Prudence and Moderation, yet they who were near his Perſon at his Advancement to the Imperial Dignity, took care ſo to entangle him in his Pleaſures, to which Cuſtom had too much inclin'd him, that the Management of Affairs might be left ſolely to them. Theſe Practices quickly introduc'd a new Diſpoſition in the Court, for *Romanus* not only recall'd ſuch as had been baniſh'd by *Conſtantine* for their many Villanies, but preferr'd 'em to Poſts of Profit and Honour. This was done at the Inſtigation of *Joſeph* his Chamberlain, who being a Perſon of no real Merit, and for that reaſon diſlik'd and deſpis'd by thoſe that were, he endeavour'd to ſtrengthen his Intereſt by the Friendſhip of ſuch as were as unworthy as himſelf,

himſelf. Whilſt this Man was thus carrying on his Intrigues, the Emperor wallow'd in all manner of Debaucheries, aſſociating himſelf with none of either Sex, but ſuch as were able to gratifie him in his Filthineſs. Theſe Courſes not only ſhorten'd his own Days, but had like to have prov'd deſtructive in the Iſſue to his whole Family. He had two Sons, the eldeſt of which, nam'd *Baſilius*, he order'd to be crown'd by the Patriarch on *Eaſter*-Day, and imagining he had by that Act confirm'd to his Poſterity what he enjoy'd in Perſon, he reſign'd himſelf up without any further Care to his Debaucheries, committing the ſole Management of Affairs at home to *Joſeph*, and the Care of his Forces abroad to the Conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, whom his Father in his Life-time had declar'd his General.

Nicephorus *his Exploits againſt the* Saracens.

Nicephorus was a Perſon of extraordinary Merit, ſignaliz'd by his many Services to the State, and was now ſent to command in an Expedition againſt the *Saracens* in *Crete*. Thoſe of the Enemy that endeavour'd to oppoſe his Landing were eaſily defeated, after which he encamp'd himſelf, and ſecur'd his Ships in the Harbour. The *Saracens* came down with all the Forces of the Iſland againſt him, notwithſtanding which in ſeven Months time he took almoſt all their ſtrong Towns and Forts, and had undoubtedly recover'd the whole Iſland, had not *Joſeph*, who grew jealous of his Succeſs, perſuaded the Emperor to recal him, by ſuggeſting to him that there was a Tradition conſtantly receiv'd, *That he who conquer'd* Crete *would in time be Maſter of the* Roman *Empire.*

Whilſt *Nicephorus* was thus prevailing againſt the *Saracens* in *Crete*, his Brother *Leo* fought againſt 'em with equal Succeſs in the Eaſt, where they propos'd to make a Deſcent, on purpoſe to divert the *Romans* from their Deſigns againſt *Crete*. *Leo* engag'd 'em at the Head of a ſmall but reſolute Army, and gave 'em ſuch an Overthrow, that great Multitudes of them were kill'd upon the Place, and the reſt ſent Priſoners in great Droves to

Con-

Constantinople, where all the Houſes were fill'd with Slaves. After this *Leo* triumph'd, as he deſerv'd, in the Imperial City, where he receiv'd Rewards proportionable to his Service done in the Expedition; but his Brother *Nicephorus*, tho' he had deſerv'd as much as any Man, yet was he not permitted to come to Court, but was order'd to march with all his Forces into the Eaſt, where the *Saracen* General having recruited his Army after his late Defeat, was preparing for freſh Hoſtilities. *Nicephorus* march'd with ſo much Expedition againſt him, that he arriv'd in *Syria*, and offer'd him Battel before he had time to do any Miſchief to the Subjects of the Empire. The Fight was manag'd with a great deal of Obſtinacy on both Sides, but at length the Fortune of the *Romans* prevail'd, and the *Saracens*, after a great Slaughter, were put to a ſhameful Flight. The City of *Berrhæa*, as a Conſequence of the Victory, fell into the Conqueror's Hands, and *Nicephorus* found in it much Wealth, and many Priſoners, beſides a Multitude of Chriſtian Captives, who by this means were releas'd.

Nicephorus his Valour and Conduct had render'd him exceeding grateful to all, eſpecially to *Theophania* the Empreſs, who being diſguſted at the leud Behaviour of *Romanus*, had entertain'd an extraordinary Eſteem for *Nicephorus*. Of this *Joſeph* was not ignorant, and therefore juſtly apprehending the Conſequence of ſuch a Diſpoſition in the Empreſs, he endeavour'd, by all Arts imaginable, to prevent the General's Return to *Conſtantinople*. This he might, in all probability, very eaſily have effected, had not the Death of *Romanus* prevented him, who dy'd on the fifteenth Day of *March*, in the twenty fifth Year of his Age, and the third of his Reign. Some ſay he was poiſon'd, and that by the Procurement of the Empreſs her ſelf; others impute his Death to his great Intemperance, and his immoderate Uſe of Wine and Women.

A. D. 963. Romanus *dies.*

The

The Death of *Romanus* introduc'd a new Face of Affairs in the Court and Empire. The late Emperor had left behind him two Sons, *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine*, who being very young, the Empreſs was declared Regent, who immediately commanded *Nicephorus* to return to *Conſtantinople*, where he triumph'd in the *Circus*, and gratify'd the People with the ſight of the rich Spoils he had taken in *Crete*, and at *Berrhœa*: *Joſeph*, who very much ſuſpected his ambitious Deſigns, in vain oppoſing it. *Nicephorus*, during his Stay at *Conſtantinople*, endeavour'd, by a religious Artifice, to remove the Suſpicions of the Prime Miniſter. In a private Conference he had obtain'd from him at his own Houſe, he told him very gravely, how deſirous he had been for a long time to retire from the World, and the Vanities that abounded in it, but had been all the while prevented by the Kindneſs of his ſeveral Maſters, who forc'd Employments of the greateſt Truſt upon him. At the ſame time, as an Inſtance of his great Devotion, he ſhow'd him a Hair Shirt, which he pretended he wore conſtantly next his Skin. *Joſeph*, ſurpriz'd at his Behaviour, and the ſight of his Shirt, fell at his Feet, and with Tears in his Eyes begg'd his Pardon, declaring, that for the future he would believe nothing that ſhould be urg'd againſt him.

Nicephorus *triumphs at* Conſtantinople.

After this *Nicephorus*, by *Joſeph*'s Advice, was ſent with freſh Power into the Eaſt, where the Motions of the *Saracens* ſeem'd to require his Preſence. *Nicephorus* his Arms were crown'd with his uſual Succeſs, which ingratiated him every Day more and more with the Soldiers and the People; but at the ſame time it reviv'd the Jealouſies of *Joſeph*, who began to repent that he had let him eſcape out of his Hands, and ſeriouſly conſider'd which was the readieſt way to deſtroy him. *Joſeph* was ſo imprudent as to commit the Execution of his Deſigns to two of the Principal Commanders in the Eaſt, promiſing to make one of 'em General in Chief of the Imperial Forces in the Eaſt, and the other

ther of thoſe in the Weſt, provided they would, by ſome means or other, remove *Nicephorus* out of the way. Theſe Perſons were Men of great Intereſt and Authority in the Army, and ow'd their Advancement, in a great meaſure, to *Nicephorus* his Friendſhip, to whom they deliver'd the Letters they had receiv'd from *Joſeph*, and advis'd him to provide for his own Safety, by taking upon himſelf the Imperial Dignity. This he oppos'd at firſt with a ſeeming Bravery, but having receiv'd great Encouragement from the Empreſs, with whom he entertain'd a conſtant Correſpondence, he ſuffer'd the Towns of the Eaſt to ſalute him Emperor, and prepar'd with great Diligence to make good his Title.

NICEPHORUS.

Nicephorus was not more belov'd and eſteem'd by the People for his Valour and Affability, than *Joſeph* was contemn'd by 'em for his Pride and Arrogance, ſo that the Citizens of *Conſtantinople* receiv'd the News of theſe Proceedings in the Eaſt with the greateſt Demonſtrations of Joy imaginable. *Joſeph*'s Houſe, with all thoſe of his Party, were levell'd with the Ground by the tumultuous Rabble, and the Streets rebounded with joyful Acclamations to *Nicephorus Callinicus*, or *the Brave Emperor*. *Bardas*, the Father of *Nicephorus*, upon the firſt Report of his Son's Promotion, had taken Sanctuary in the great Church; but when he obſerv'd that the People, with a general Concurrence, declar'd in his Favour, he came out, and in the Emperor's Pinnace, which was follow'd by the reſt of the Fleet, he ſail'd down to *Chryſopolis*, whither the Army had by this time conducted their new Prince. From *Chryſopolis* he was brought up to the *Hebdomus*, where he was met by the People, who accompany'd him with much Solemnity into the City, where he was crown'd on the ſixteenth of *Auguſt*, by the Hands of *Polyeuctus* the Patriarch.

Nicephorus *crown'd Emperor at* Conſtantinople.

Nicephorus, being thus acknowledg'd and crown'd Emperor, baniſh'd *Joſeph* into *Paphlagonia*, where he ended

A. D. 963.

ended his Life two Years after in a Monaſtery. *Bardas*, the Emperor's Father, was declar'd *Cæſar*, and *Nicephorus*, thinking he might now with great Safety throw off the Mask, marry'd the Empreſs *Theophania*; in which he was at firſt oppos'd by the Patriarch, for that he had been marry'd before, and becauſe it was reported that he once ſtood God-father to one of *Theophania*'s Children, which ſhe had by her former Huſband, and that Spiritual Alliance in thoſe Days was thought a juſt Matrimonial Impediment. *Polyeuctus* proceeded ſo far as to Excommunicate the Emperor, but when in a Synod ſummon'd at *Conſtantinople* the Matter was examin'd, the Patriarch concurr'd with the reſt of the Biſhops, and reſtor'd him to the Church, tho' the Emperor never forgave him the Affront as long as he liv'd. The *Saracens* that inhabited *Sicily* had, even ſince the Reign of *Baſilius Macedo*, exacted a Tribute from the Weſtern Provinces of the Empire, which they had been forc'd to pay either through the Ignorance or Knavery of thoſe who had been ſent to Command in thoſe Parts. The Payment of this Tribute *Nicephorus* thought highly Detrimental to the Honour and Reputation of the Empire, and for that Reaſon he undertook a War againſt them.

The Romans defeated by the Saracens in Sicily.

Accordingly having rais'd a very powerful Army he committed it to the Conduct of *Manuel*, his Uncle *Leo*'s baſe Son. *Manuel* was a young hot-headed Patrician, ſo fond of his own Notions, that he was deaf to the wholeſome Advice of thoſe to whoſe Councils he ought to have inclin'd, and by that means loſt both himſelf and his Army; for the *Saracens*, having drawn him into the moſt craggy and unpaſſable Parts of *Sicily*, with great eaſe cut him off. The Senſe of this Diſgrace was, in a great meaſure, alleviated by *John Zimiſces* his Succeſs in *Cilicia*, where having defeated a great Number of the *Saracens*, about five thouſand of 'em quitted their Horſes, and gain'd an advantageous Hill, where they reſolv'd to defend themſelves

ſelves to the laſt, depending much upon the Situation of the Place, which they judg'd inacceſſible. *Zimiſces*, obſerving their Reſolution, judg'd it proper to follow 'em their own way, ſo that quitting his Horſe he march'd himſelf at the Head of his Foot, and with an irreſiſtible Courage fell upon them. The *Saracens* receiv'd him with an obſtinate Bravery, and fought with ſo much Reſolution, that not one of 'em turn'd his Back, but they were all ſlain upon the Spot, and ſuch Streams of Blood iſſu'd from their Bodies, and roll'd down into the Plain, that the Hill, where the Action was perform'd, was from that time forward call'd the *Bloody Hill.*

A. D. 964. Nicephorus *his Expedition.*

The Year following, being the ſecond of his Reign, *Nicephorus* ſent an Army againſt the *Saracens* in *Cyprus*, which he recover'd from 'em, and reannext it to the Dominions of the Empire. In the Month of *July*, the ſame Year, taking his Wife and Children with him, he march'd himſelf into *Cilicia* at the Head of a gallant Army, conſiſting partly of his own Subjects, and partly of his Aſſociates. There he took three of their ſtrongeſt Cities from the *Saracens*, beſides ſeveral Caſtles; and having left a ſtrong Guard to ſecure his Conqueſts, he winter'd with the reſt of his Army in *Cappadocia*. *Tarſus* and *Mopſueſtia* were Places too conſiderable to be attempted at that time of the Year, when the Seaſon was ſo far advanc'd; and therefore returning in the Spring he divided his Forces into two Parts, and gave his Brother *Leo* Orders to fall upon *Tarſus* with one, whilſt he led the other in Perſon againſt *Mopſueſtia*. The Inhabitants of *Mopſueſtia* defended themſelves for a conſiderable time, 'till being weaken'd, as well by Famine as the Sword, the City was taken, and the moſt forward among the Defendants put to Death. The Fate of *Mopſueſtia* very much diſhearten'd the Beſieg'd in *Tarſus*, ſo that they ſurrender'd the City three Days before a Fleet from *Egypt* arriv'd to their Aſſiſtance. The Soldiers on Board

Board the Fleet attempted to Land, but meeting with a Repulse they prepar'd to return home, when a Storm overtook 'em, which destroy'd a great Number of their Ships, and most of the rest fell into the Hands of the *Romans*.

The Saracen Fleet destroy'd.

After this he Invaded *Syria*, where having conquer'd all the Towns and Forts that had the Courage to resist him, and made 'em Tributary to the Empire, he march'd forward and sat down before *Antioch*. The Town was well supply'd with a numerous Garrison, and great plenty of Provision, whereas the Emperor's Army began to stand in need of many Necessaries, so that Winter drawing on he thought it best to raise his Siege, and return to *Constantinople*. Some affirm he might easily have taken the City, but declin'd it by reason of a Prophecy, which declar'd that *whatever Emperor took that City he would not be long liv'd after it*. 'Tis certain that when *Burtzas*, the Lieutenant-General, whom the Emperor had left behind to secure his Conquests in those Parts, and who lay with a Body of his Forces near that Place, watching an Opportunity, surpriz'd the City in the Emperor's Absence, and thereby did the Empire a considerable piece of Service; *Nicephorus*, instead of rewarding him as he deserv'd, turn'd him out of his Employment, and forbad him the Court, which provok'd *Burtzas* to join himself with *Zimisces*, who in the end depriv'd *Nicephorus* both of Empire and Life. Had *Nicephorus* behav'd himself with as much Prudence and Moderation at home, as he fought with Valour and Success abroad, his Reign might have been long and glorious; but he is a strong Instance to us of the Unhappiness of that Prince that does not endeavour to reign in the Hearts of his People. The Dominions of the Empire were very much enlarg'd during his Reign, but his Subjects receiv'd no other Benefit from his Conquests than to be oppress'd with an heavier Hand. He indulg'd the Soldiers in all manner

Antioch recover'd from the Saracens.

Nicephorus *his Management at home.*

ner of Licentiouſneſs, and at the ſame time us'd the Citizens with the utmoſt Severity. The Senators, the Biſhops, the Patriarch himſelf met with the ſame Treatment from him, being no better diſpos'd to them than to the meaneſt of the People. He ſtopp'd ſuch Penſions as the Senators us'd to receive out of the Treaſury, and forbad the Payment of ſuch Exhibitions as had been aſſign'd by his Predeceſſors towards the Maintenance of Churches, Monaſteries, and to other Pious Uſes; and made a Law, whereby it was prohibited to give any more Lands to the Church. At the ſame time he challeng'd to himſelf the Right of Preſentation to vacant Biſhopricks; and having, with a thrifty Hand, defray'd the Expence of a Funeral, he ſent his Officers to ſeize on the reſt of the Revenue belonging to the deceas'd. Under a Pretence of the extraordinary Sums that were requir'd to carry on his Wars, he laid new Impoſitions upon his Subjects; ſo that all Parts of his Dominions ſwarm'd with Collectors and Informers, who often ſeiz'd on all, and ruin'd whole Families at once: And that nothing might be wanting to incenſe the Multitude againſt him, he debas'd the Coin, cauſing ſome of leſs Value to be made than what at that time was current, and exacted all Payments to himſelf to be made in the greater Sort, and all Iſſues out of the Treaſury to be made in the leſs, and inhanc'd the Price of his own Coins above thoſe of his Predeceſſors, tho' they were the ſame as to their Intrinſick Value; all which Practices prov'd extreamly prejudicial to Trade, and conſequently rais'd the Price of all Commodities. Whilſt the People were thus inrag'd againſt him, he began, at a great Expence, to fortifie the Imperial Palace, pulling down ſeveral beautiful Buildings, belonging to private Perſons, that ſtood adjoining to it, to make room for a Cittadel erected for its Security, in which he built Granaries and Store-houſes ſupply'd with all manner of Proviſions. Shortly after a grievous Famine aroſe, occaſion'd

ſion'd by the ſcorching Winds that had blaſted the Corn. His Behaviour to the People confirm'd the implacable Hatred they had conceiv'd againſt him; for having his own Magazines, during that Scarcity, ſufficiently ſtor'd, he ſold Wheat to the People at more than a double Price; ſo that an old Man came to the Emperor, whilſt he was muſtering his Soldiers, and deſir'd to be enroll'd among 'em; and when *Nicephorus* demanded, *Why he, who was ſo aged, and conſequently infirm, ſhould deſire to undergo the Fatigues of War?* The Man reply'd, *He found himſelf ſtronger now than he had been in his Youth, for he was able to carry as much Corn now upon his Back, as he then us'd to load upon two Aſſes.*

The general Temper of the People, and their vow'd Averſion towards him, encourag'd *Zimiſces* and ſeveral others to Conſpire againſt him. *Zimiſces* had render'd him ſeveral important Services, and ſo had *Burtzas* the Patrician, notwithſtanding which they had both been diſmiſs'd with Diſgrace; and *Theophania* the Empreſs, tho' ſhe had formerly labour'd ſo earneſtly for his Advancement, was now engag'd with thoſe that ſought his Deſtruction. Several Reaſons are aſſign'd for this Change in her, ſome alledging that ſhe apprehended his Deſign was to Geld her Sons *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine*, and declare his Brother *Leo* his Succeſſor; others affirm, that he was too Chaſte a Bed-fellow for a Woman of her Conſtitution, being wont to ſleep on the Ground, to which he had been accuſtom'd from his Youth. The Deſcription of his Perſon, which we meet with in *Baronius* and others, ſeems to confirm this Suggeſtion, and makes us wonder not ſo much how ſhe came to loath him now, as for what Reaſon ſhe could love him at firſt; unleſs it be that ſome Women are often touch'd with the Reputation of Valour and Bravery, but are of too delicate a Taſte to be long affected with it. Some ſay that ten Days before his Death a Writing was left in his Chamber, in which he was ad-* Ad Ann. 968.

vis'd to provide for his own Safety, and take Care of *Zimiſces*; and that he, imagining the Paper contain'd ſome Petition, let it lye on his Table without opening it. Others add, that he did open and read it, but that his Fate preſſing hard upon him he took no Warning from it, tho' he is ſaid to have ſent Orders to his Brother *Leo*, the Night before he was kill'd, to come ſtrongly arm'd to his Defence; and that *Leo* being engag'd at Cheſs, a Game he greatly delighted in, when the Letter was brought, he deferr'd opening it 'till it was too late. *Zimiſces* had been confin'd to his own Houſe in the Country, by expreſs Order from the Emperor, yet the Empreſs procur'd his Enlargement, and not only got him to be convey'd ſecretly to *Conſtantinople*, tho' *Nicephorus* had poſitively forbidden it, but had him and his Accomplices drawn up by Night in a Basket into the Palace, where they found the unhappy Emperor a-ſleep in a Bear-skin upon the Ground, as his Cuſtom was, and in no manner prepar'd for ſuch an Encounter. *Zimiſces* firſt kick'd him with his Foot to awaken him, and as he was endeavouring to riſe, *Leo Abalantius* gave him a Mortal Wound on his Head, whilſt he ſaid no more than *Lord have Mercy upon me, the Mother of God help me!* The Guards by this time had receiv'd the Alarm, and were preparing, with all Diligence, to relieve him, which, when the Conſpirators obſerv'd, they cut off his Head, and ſhow'd it the Soldiers out at the Window; who obſerving the Buſineſs was already over, and therefore not to be prevented, retir'd ſomething appeas'd, expecting what farther Deſigns the Conſpirators had in view.

Nicephorus ſlain.

This was the unhappy End of *Nicephorus* the Emperor, who being from his Youth inur'd to the Wars, examin'd the Meaſure of Good and Evil by that Standard. In the beginning of his Reign he was ſucceſsful in moſt, or all his Attempts againſt the Infidels; but *Baronius* obſerves, that when once he invaded with a Sacrilegious Hand what belong'd to the Church, he

His Character.

not

not only loſt the Eſteem and Affection of all good Men, but God himſelf, from a Protector, became a ſevere Avenger, and ſuffer'd him to fall by the Hands of Traitors. Undoubtedly he knew better how to Command in War than Rule in Peace, for he recover'd *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greateſt part of *Aſia* Minor from the Dominion of the *Saracens*; but his Ignorance in Affairs of State, and abominable Covetouſneſs, defac'd the Honour he had acquir'd in Arms, and procur'd his Ruin. He was murder'd in the ſeventh Year of his Reign, the thirty fourth of *Otto* the Great, and the fifth of *John* the Thirteenth Pope of *Rome*, and the fifty eighth of his Age, *A. D.* 969.

Nicephorus being murder'd, *Johannes Zimiſces* ſeiz'd on the Empire, aſſuming *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine* for his Collegues. Before he would permit himſelf to be Crown'd he remov'd ſuch as he thought had been Favourers to *Nicephorus* from all Employments in the State and the Army; and having confin'd *Leo*, *Nicephorus* his Brother, to the Iſle of *Lesbos*, he recall'd all thoſe his Predeceſſor had baniſh'd, eſpecially ſuch of the Eccleſiaſticks as had been driven away for oppoſing him in Matters relating to the Church. Having, as he thought, by theſe means clear'd his Way for his Coronation, he went to receive the Crown from the Hands of the Patriarch in the Great Church; but *Polyeuctus*, with an unexpected Severity, oppos'd his Entrance into that Place, which was not to be prophan'd with the Preſence of one, who had embru'd his Hands in the Blood of his Soveraign, for which Satisfaction was to be made before he could be admitted. Whether this Matter had been concerted privately before-hand between *Zimiſces* and the Patriarch, on purpoſe to obtain a plauſible Pretence for removing the Empreſs *Theophania*, or that *Zimiſces* was unwilling, at that Conjuncture, to contend with the Church, he receiv'd the Reprehenſion with a great Submiſſiveneſs, promiſing a Performance of any thing that in Reaſon

A. D. 969. ZIMISCES.

might be enjoin'd him, and alledg'd, at the ſame time, in his own Defence, that he was not perſonally guilty of the late Emperor's Death, but that *Abalantius* murder'd him by Command of the Empreſs. Hereupon the Patriarch requir'd that ſhe and the Murderers might be baniſh'd, and the Edict made by *Nicephorus*, relating to the Church, might be cancell'd, to all which *Zimiſces* readily comply'd. *Theophania* was ſhut up cloſe in a Monaſtery in the Province of *Armenia*, being juſtly excluded from the World, and the ſenſual Enjoyments of it, to which ſhe had been too much addicted. *Zimiſces*, at the ſame time, promis'd to aſſign all his own private Eſtate to the uſe of the Poor, whereupon *Polyeuctus* admitted him into the Church, where he was Crown'd by him on *Chriſtmaſs*-Day.

Zimiſces *Crown'd Emperor.*

It is often obſervable, that Revolutions at home give Birth to new Commotions abroad, which *Zimiſces* found true at the Beginning of his Reign; for the Cities his Predeceſſor had taken from the *Saracens* in the Eaſt were grown ripe for a Revolt; to favour which, and recover their Reputation, all the Nations of that Religion engag'd themſelves in a ſtrict League and Alliance, and having collected prodigious Forces together, the Command of the whole Army was, by general Conſent, given to the *Carthaginians* as the moſt capable, and beſt experienc'd in War both by Sea and Land. This Command the *Carthaginians* transferr'd upon *Zochares*, whom they declar'd Generaliſſimo. Having muſter'd their Forces they ſate down before *Antioch*, which they beſieg'd very cloſely, hoping to be Maſters of it before the Beſieg'd could receive any Relief from the Emperor; but the Garriſon, being aſſiſted by the Inhabitants, perform'd their Duty ſo well, that *Nicholas*, an Eunuch, who was declar'd General by the Emperor, fell upon 'em with all the Forces he could raiſe in *Meſopotamia*, and the neighbouring Provinces gave 'em Battel, forc'd 'em to raiſe the Siege, and return in a diſorderly manner home, and by that means

The Saracens *defeated before* Antioch.

means confirm'd the Capital Cities of thoſe Parts in their Obedience.

Whilſt the Emperor's Arms proſper'd with ſo much Succeſs in the Eaſt, the Territories of the Empire were threaten'd by the Incurſions of the *Ruſſi*, who had over-run all *Bulgaria*, into which they had formerly been invited by *Nicephorus Phocas*, upon a Quarrel betwixt him and *Peter*, Prince of *Bulgaria*. *Nicephorus* had engag'd 'em to plunder, but not poſſeſs the Country; but they, finding it much more pleaſant and fertile than their own, reſolv'd, contrary to their Articles with *Nicephorus*, to ſettle themſelves in it. *Calocyrus*, a *Roman* Fugitive, was then in their Camp, and oblig'd himſelf to reſign *Bulgaria* up to 'em, provided he might be made Emperor by their Aſſiſtance. The *Ruſſi*, who had been inform'd of the late Revolutions at *Conſtantinople*, thought it no very difficult matter to effect what *Calocyrus* had with ſo much Confidence propos'd, ſo that challenging *Bulgaria* for their own, as having acquir'd it by Virtue of their Swords, and being in Poſſeſſion of it, they inſolently rejected the Ambaſſadors *Zimiſces* had ſent with Offers to confirm whatever had been concluded betwixt them and *Nicephorus*. To make good their Pretenſions they united to 'em as many of the conquer'd *Bulgarians* as they thought they might ſafely truſt, and being join'd by a Body of the *Hungarians* they muſter'd an Army of three hundred and eight thouſand Men, with which having paſs'd the *Hamus*, they waſted all *Thrace*, and ſate down before *Adrianople*.

Zimiſces, provok'd at their Inſolence to his Ambaſſadors, had order'd all the Forces could be drawn together to march Weſtward under the Conduct of *Bardas Sclerus*, or the *Hardy*, his Wife's Brother, reſolving, when the Spring came on, to be in Perſon at the Head of his Army. *Bardas* perceiving he ſhould have to do with Numbers ſo far ſuperior to his, for he was not able to Muſter above twelve or thirteen thouſand Men,

thought it beſt to contend with 'em by Stratagems, and therefore ſuffer'd 'em to ravage *Thrace*, whilſt he ſhut himſelf up in *Adrianople* before they could approach it. The Barbarians endeavour'd, by all Methods imaginable, to provoke him to Fight, and he with equal Care, and much ſeeming Diffidence, declin'd it. This Behaviour in the *Roman* General created a Contempt and Negligence in the Enemy, who, being ſecure of their Prey, obſerv'd no Diſcipline, but grew negligent in their Watches, and regardleſs of Orders.

The Event anſwer'd *Bardas Sclerus* his Expectations, for *John*, a Patrician, having by the General's Order drawn a great Body of the preſumptuous Enemy into an Ambuſcade, they purſu'd him with an undiſciplin'd Fury as he fled deſignedly from 'em, 'till they fell unadviſedly upon a ſtronger Party planted there for that purpoſe, and commanded by *Bardas* himſelf, who cut every Man of the Barbarians in pieces. After this he fell with a Courage quicken'd with his late Succeſs upon the reſt, who fought for ſome time like Men animated with Deſpair, but in the end receiv'd an abſolute Defeat, which was chiefly to be aſcrib'd to the Valour of *Bardas* the General, and his Brother *Conſtantine*. Had not Night befriended 'em none of the Enemy had eſcap'd; great Multitudes were taken Priſoners, and few among 'em were obſerv'd to be unwounded, tho' ſome Writers affirm the *Romans* loſt not above five and twenty Men in both Engagements.

A great Victory obtain'd by the Romans.

The Emperor was ſo far from being puff'd up with this extraordinary Succeſs againſt the Enemies of the Empire, that it rather made him more humble and merciful, as he made it appear ſhortly after this Victory. For *Bardas Phocas*, the late Emperor's Nephew, who had been baniſh'd into *Amaſia*, having receiv'd ſome Encouragement from his Friends and Acquaintance at *Conſtantinople*, withdrew on a ſudden out of *Amaſia*, and ſeiz'd on *Caſarea* in *Cappadocia*; where being join'd by

by ſeveral conſiderable Men in the Empire, who had not concurr'd in the late Revolution, and who had brought a ſtrong Body of Forces along with them, he aſſum'd the Imperial Ornaments, and declar'd himſelf Emperor. At the ſame time *Leo*, the Father of *Phocas*, who had been confin'd to the Iſle of *Lesbos*, having ſeduc'd ſeveral by large Gifts, and larger Promiſes, in which the Biſhop of *Abydos* did him ſignal Service, prepar'd to ſteal from thence with his Son *Nicephorus*, and appear at the Head of his Party in *Thrace*. But ſome of the Emperor's Officers having apprehended the Biſhop he was examin'd, and diſcover'd the whole Deſign, whereupon *Leo* and *Nicephorus* were condemn'd to Death, which Sentence the merciful Emperor mitigated to the loſing of their Eyes; and, as if that Puniſhment was too ſevere and cruel for his Capital Enemies, ſome add further, that the Executioners, by his Order, made ſhow only of blinding 'em, and gave out that they ſpar'd their Sight not in Obedience to any Commands they had receiv'd from the Emperor, but out of meer Pity to thoſe unfortunate Princes. And yet thoſe very Men ſhortly after rais'd another Rebellion, whilſt the Emperor was buſied in his Wars with the *Ruſſians*, for which that very Puniſhment was deſervedly inflicted upon 'em. In the mean time *Bardas* the General was, by an Order from the Emperor, who had charg'd him to ſhed no more Blood than was neceſſary, marching againſt *Phocas*, and was got as far as *Dorylaus*, the Capital of *Phrygia*, where he endeavour'd firſt by fair Offers, and an Aſſurance of Mercy from *Zimiſces*, to reduce *Phocas* and his Accomplices; but when he found they perſiſted obſtinately in their Rebellion he left *Dorylaus*, and proceeded on to *Caſarea*. Here thoſe who had chiefly promoted *Phocas* in his Uſurpation, and had appear'd the moſt forward to ſupport him, conſidering what fair Promiſes they had receiv'd from *Bardas*, and how deſperate their Condition would be ſhould they miſcarry, privately

Bardas Phocas Uſurps.

agreed among themſelves, and withdrew with all their Forces from *Phocas*, who by that means had no other Attendance left him than of his own Servants, ſo that he was forc'd to fly, and ſhut himſelf up in a ſtrong Caſtle call'd *Cyropæum*, which at firſt he reſolv'd to defend to the laſt Extremity; but when *Bardas* came up, and by repeated Meſſages urg'd him to a Surrender, promiſing him all imaginable Kindneſs on his part, and undertaking to obtain his Pardon from the Emperor, he generouſly threw himſelf into his Protection, and was confin'd to the Iſland *Chios*, where he enter'd into Orders; for the Emperor being willing to make good what *Bardas* had promis'd, thought fit to proceed no farther againſt him, tho' we ſhall find him recall'd in the following Reign to Command an Army againſt this *Bardas*, who had now ſuppreſs'd him.

and is ſuppreſs'd.

Theſe Eminent Services to the Empire contributed much to the Reputation of *Sclerus*, who was ſent for to *Conſtantinople*, where *Zimiſces* was marry'd ſhortly after in great Solemnity to *Theodora*, the Siſter of the late Emperor *Romanus*, according to ſome, tho' others affirm ſhe was his Daughter by *Theophania* the Empreſs, and conſequently the Siſter of *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine*, the Collegues of this preſent Emperor.

A. D. 971. The late Defeat of the *Ruſſians* had not ſo much weaken'd and diſcourag'd 'em, but they prepar'd to give the Emperor new Troubles; whereupon *Zimiſces* reſolv'd to march in Perſon againſt 'em, and, if poſſible, totally to ſubdue 'em. Accordingly he endeavour'd by his obliging Carriage, and generous Preſents, to win the Hearts of his Army, which he ſupply'd with the moſt prudent and valiant Officers, who had Orders to Exerciſe their Soldiers every Day, and eſtabliſh a good Diſcipline among them. At the ſame time he took Care to lay in great Stores of Ammunition and Proviſion; and when he had, with great Application, ſufficiently provided for his Land Forces, he rigg'd out a ſtrong Fleet, which prov'd very ſerviceable to him in the Courſe

The Ruſſian *War breaks out again.*

Courſe of his Expedition. Before he ſet forward he committed the Adminiſtration of Affairs at home to the Hands of thoſe in whom he thought he had the greateſt reaſon to confide; and having finiſh'd his Devotions, in which he appear'd moſt exemplary, he began his March in the beginning of the Spring at the Head of an Army, remarkable as well for the Courage and Chearfulneſs of the Soldiers, as the Care and Experience of their Commanders. At a Place call'd *Redeſtus* he was met by two Perſons, who pretending themſelves to be Ambaſſadors, made loud Complaints of the great Injuries offer'd the Nation of the *Scythians*. *Zimiſces*, who knew they were ſent as Spies from the Enemy, made 'em take a view of all his Forces, and then order'd 'em to return with a Report of what they had obſerv'd to their Maſters, after which, without any other Anſwer, he diſmiſs'd 'em. When this was done he drew out five thouſand Foot and four thouſand Horſe, with which he himſelf march'd with great Expedition over the Mountain *Hæmus*, and laid Siege to *Perſthlaba*, the Principal City of *Bulgaria*, ordering the reſt of his Forces to follow after, under the Conduct of *Baſilius* the Preſident. *Calocyrus*, of whom mention has already been made, was then in the City, where the Inhabitants were ſeiz'd with the greateſt Conſternation, ſo that the Fugitive ſecretly withdrew into the *Ruſſian* Camp, which he fill'd with almoſt an equal Aſtoniſhment. Hereupon the General of the *Ruſſians* having, in the beſt manner he could, encourag'd his deſponding Soldiers, encamp'd nearer the City, hoping, by his Preſence, to animate the Defendants. But as a Party of his Troops, conſiſting of eight thouſand Men, were detach'd from the reſt of the Army, either to be exercis'd near the City Walls, or ſhow themſelves to their Friends within, who were prepar'd to receive them; *Zimiſces* fell with great Reſolution upon 'em, and having intercepted their Retreat to their Camp, he either kill'd

Zimiſces *his Expedition.*

His Succeſs

kill'd or took moſt of 'em; among the latter was *Sphagellus*, a Man in Authority next to their General.

Zimiſces his Soldiers were extreamly animated by this Action, which ſeem'd to give 'em an Earneſt of their future Succeſs, ſo that they fell immediately with great Bravery upon the City, and were rather drawn off by the Approach of the Night, than repuls'd by the Courage of the beſieg'd. The next Morning *Baſilius* appear'd with the reſt of the Army upon the Top of an Hill, no leſs to the Joy of the Emperor than the Terror of the Inhabitants, who notwithſtanding refus'd to ſurrender, tho', the better to induce 'em to it, they had receiv'd very advantageous Conditions from the Emperor; and he, being provok'd at their Obſtinacy, gave Orders for a general Attack. Tho' the Enemy's Reſolution appear'd as great as their Obſtinacy had done before, yet the Valour of the *Romans* at length prevail'd, and all Parts of the City, which was taken by Storm, were fill'd with Slaughter. Whilſt ſome of the *Romans* were buſied in Scaling the Walls, and open'd the Gates to their Fellows, eight thouſand *Scythians*, part of the Garriſon that had been left for the Defence of the Place, ſeiz'd on the Caſtle, from whence they did great Miſchief upon the Imperialiſts, before they were well ſenſible by whom, or from what Part they were aſſaulted. *Zimiſces*, who thought the Buſineſs had been over, when once he got in Poſſeſſion of the City, found the greateſt Danger remain'd ſtill behind; and obſerving his Men declin'd the Aſſault, not ſo much from an Apprehenſion of their Enemy's Courage, as the Situation of the Place, which they judg'd impregnable, advanc'd in Perſon at the Head of 'em with Sword in Hand, and ſeem'd, by his own Courage, to upbraid 'em of Cowardice; the Senſe of which wrought ſo effectually upon 'em, that they all ſtrove who ſhould firſt thruſt himſelf betwixt their Prince and the Danger that threaten'd him, and ſo, after a terrible Slaughter on both Sides, they became Maſters of the Caſtle.

Thoſe

Thoſe of the *Scythians* that were not kill'd in the Aſſault, were either driven down the Rocks and Precipices, or intercepted by the Fire, which prevail'd on every ſide, ſo that very few or none of 'em eſcap'd. Thus was *Zimiſces* become Maſter of the City and Caſtle in the Space of two Days; all thoſe that were found upon their Arms were kill'd, and the Women and Children, together with ſuch as yielded themſelves after the firſt Fury was over, were made Priſoners; among whom was *Boriſes*, King of the *Bulgarians*, who being conducted to the Emperor in his Royal Robes, was receiv'd by him as a King, and after a magnificent Entertainment releas'd with his Wife and Children, and all the *Bulgarians*, *Zimiſces* declaring he had an Enmity to none but the *Ruſſi*. The City, whom the Heat of the Soldiers had almoſt deſtroy'd, was repair'd at the Emperor's Charge, and call'd after his own Name, *Joannopolis*. Here he kept his *Eaſter*, and having left a ſufficient Garriſon in it, and furniſh'd it with all manner of Proviſions, he march'd from thence towards *Doroſtorum*, or *Diſtra*, ſeated on the *Iſter*, and one of the chief Towns the *Ruſſians* had in this Country, which their General was very ſollicitous to preſerve. He encamp'd with his numerous Army, conſiſting in all of 330000 Men, within twelve Miles of that City, where it was unanimouſly reſolv'd to wait the Emperor's coming, and give him Battel; having firſt put three hundred *Bulgarians* to Death, of whom they had entertain'd ſome Suſpicion. The *Ruſſians* did not ſo much exceed the *Romans* in Numbers, as the *Romans*, encourag'd by their late Victories, ſurpaſs'd them in Courage, upon which Account the Succeſs continu'd doubtful for a long time on both ſides. Fortune ſeem'd no leſs than twelve times to ſhift Parties; but, as Night approach'd, the Left Wing of the *Ruſſians* began to give Ground; and before the Enemy had leiſure to recruit it the Emperor led on a reſerv'd Party with ſo much Reſolution, that his Soldiers, receiving new Life from his

his Example, bore on with an invincible Courage upon the Barbarians, and carry'd the Day. The *Ruſſians* fled with their broken Troops to *Diſtra*, not ſo much for the Defence of the City, as their own Security; and thither the Emperor, after he had return'd Publick Thanks for the Victory, follow'd 'em, and laid cloſe Siege to the Place, but made no Attempt upon it 'till the Arrival of his Fleet, which prevented the Defendants eſcaping by the River.

The Siege of Diſtra.

This Siege prov'd as remarkable as any that Age produc'd, not ſo much for the Length of it, as the Reſoluteneſs of the beſieg'd, the Valour of the Aſſailants, and the Conſequences of it; for it brought both Armies to a general Battel, and that introduc'd a Treaty, which ended in a Truce or Peace between both Nations. The *Ruſſians* had hitherto forborn the uſe of Horſes, but now, contrary to their former Cuſtom, they mounted ſeveral Companies, and ſally'd out briskly at two ſeveral Gates towards the Evening, when the *Romans* were diſperſs'd at Supper, little prepar'd for the Company of ſuch Gueſts, ſo that the two Quarters, where the Onſet was made, were at firſt ſeiz'd with a general Conſternation; but having, by degrees, taken to their Arms, a ſharp Engagement happen'd, in which, at length, the *Romans* had the Advantage, and forc'd the Enemy back, with a great Slaughter, into the City, which was fill'd with hideous Cries and Howlings for the Loſs they had ſuſtain'd, by which the Garriſon was extreamly weaken'd, ſo that the General was forc'd to ſend for all his Countrymen which were poſted in the Adjacent Towns and Forts, having ſome time before committed to Cuſtody twenty thouſand *Bulgarians* for fear they ſhould revolt, or raiſe a Mutiny in the Garriſon. *Zimiſces*, obſerving the Reſolution with which the General behav'd himſelf, and dreading the Fatigues of a long Siege, drew his Army out into the adjoining Plain, and offer'd him Battel, which he refus'd, reſolving to maintain himſelf to the laſt Extremity

mity within the Walls. Notwithſtanding which, being ſtrengthen'd with freſh Supplies, they iſſu'd out one Night at all their Gates at once, and made a great Sally upon the Beſiegers at a time when they little expected 'em. At firſt, the *Romans* being unprepar'd to receive 'em, they had the Advantage; but *Phagellus*, who had been exchang'd, and now commanded 'em, being Slain, they grew diſhearten'd, and fought with leſs Alacrity; however they kept the Field all that Night, and 'till Noon the Day following, when perceiving a Party was got between them and the Town, they began to ſhift every one for himſelf, and being intercepted by the *Romans* in their Way back, they ſtraggled in ſmall Parties through the Country, where moſt of them were ſlain. This Loſs oblig'd *Sphendoſthlabus* their General more ſtrongly to fortifie the Place, ſo that he drew a Trench about the Walls, and with ſeveral Works ſecur'd it. Finding his Proviſions began to fall ſhort, and that all Parts towards the Land were block'd up, he took the Advantage of a dark rainy Night, and paſs'd with two thouſand Men in Boats down the River, and got Corn and other Neceſſaries for the Garriſon without being obſerv'd or diſtruſted by the Beſiegers, 'till at his Return he kill'd many of thoſe that had been ſent out to Forage, and got out of Danger before the reſt could eſcape with the News of their Defeat to the Emperor; who, being highly incens'd at it, threaten'd the Commanders of his Fleet with Death, if they ſuffer'd the like for the future; and being unwilling to ſpend any more time in fruitleſs Hoſtilities, he ſecur'd all the Avenues leading to the Town, and reſolv'd to ſtarve 'em out of it. The Beſieg'd, beginning once more to be ſtraighten'd in their Proviſions, reſolv'd to make a general Sally upon the Enemy, under the Conduct of *Fernor*, who was the ſecond in Reputation among 'em. The Diſpute for ſome time was very obſtinate on both ſides, 'till *Anemas*, the Son of the *Ameras*, or Caliph of *Crete*, who had been entertain'd

Another Sally.

tain'd in the Emperor's Guards, ſingl'd out *Farnor*, and after a ſhort Combat ſlew him, at which the Beſieg'd retir'd back in great Confuſion, and ſuffer'd more from the ſtraitneſs of the Ways, whereby they trampl'd upon another, than the Swords of the Purſuers. *Sphendoſthlabus* himſelf got, with much difficulty, into the Town, where he at laſt began to conſider in what a melancholy Condition his Affairs ſtood. His Countrymen, that were either able or willing to relieve him, were at too great diſtance, and the neighbouring Nations were aw'd by the Emperor, who was too powerful for 'em both by Sea and Land. The Beſieg'd labour'd under the greateſt Difficulties, their Numbers were conſiderably diminiſh'd, and the want of all things neceſſary for their Subſiſtance grew every Day more and more upon 'em, whilſt the Emperor, on the other ſide, receiv'd continual Supplies of Men and Proviſions. Hereupon a Council of War was ſummon'd, wherein, tho' they ſeverally differ'd in the Method, yet they generally agreed in this, that the War muſt be brought to a Concluſion. Some were for flying away by Night, others for Capitulating, and a few mov'd for a pitch'd Battel, affirming any other Methods would expoſe 'em to the Deriſion of their Neighbours, and concluded that a glorious Death was preferable to an ignominious Life. To this Opinion the General himſelf adher'd, ſo that they all agreed unanimouſly to quit the City the next Day, and, that their Men might fight with a more deſperate Courage, they reſolv'd to make faſt the Gates of the City, and cut off all hopes of a Retreat.

As this Battel concluded the War, ſo was it the moſt remarkable of any that happen'd in it. The Seaſon of the Year was very hot, which exceedingly diſtreſs'd the *Romans*, who were not ſo much accuſtom'd to the Inconveniencies of the Weather, ſo that the indulgent Emperor carefully reliev'd 'em with Bottles of Wine and Water mix'd together; beſides, the Ways where the Fight began were too narrow for 'em to draw up in

a

a regular Body, of which he being ſenſible, commanded his Officers to retire by degrees 'till they came into the open Plain, and then to fall on again with their uſual Alacrity. The Enemy, thinking they fled, with an indiſcreet Courage purſu'd 'em, 'till the *Romans*, having attain'd the Place appointed, charg'd 'em afreſh and renew'd the Fight. *Zimiſces*, obſerving that the *Ruſſians*, notwithſtanding this Advantage, fought with more Courage than ever, commiſerated the Condition of his Men; and, to prevent the Effuſion of more Blood, ſent and challeng'd their General to decide the Quarrel by a ſingle Combat between 'em. *Sphendoſthlabus* as arrogantly rejected the Offer, and return'd Anſwer, *That he knew how to put a better Value upon his Life, and that if the Emperor was weary of his, there was room enough for him in the Field to diſpoſe of it.* Hereupon *Zimiſces* reſolv'd, with this one Day's Action, to finiſh both the War and the Siege, and therefore having ſent *Sclerus* with his Troops to cut off their Communication with the Town, he commanded *Romanus*, the Son of *Conſtantine Caſar*, and Grandſon of *Romanus* the elder, together with *Peter*, another great Commander in the Army, to give a freſh Charge with their reſerv'd Forces; notwithſtanding which the Succeſs continu'd ſtill uncertain, 'till *Sphendoſthlabus* was in the end beat off his Horſe by *Anemas*, who, whilſt he was endeavouring to kill him, was himſelf cut to pieces. The *Ruſſians*, who before the Fight were half ſtarv'd, began now to grow weary and diſhearten'd; on the other ſide the *Romans*, obſerving the Confuſion and Diſorder they were in, continu'd the Fight with great Alacrity, 'till the *Ruſſians* gave way, and fled with great Precipitation over the Plain, where the Slaughter was continu'd by the victorious Purſuers; an innumerable Multitude of 'em fell in the Fight, and hardly any eſcap'd without being wounded. When the *Romans* came to ſtrip the Slain, they found great Numbers of Women among 'em, who had accompany'd their Husbands in Mens Cloths, and fought

The Ruſſians *entirely defeated.*

fought with a Maſculine Courage. And 'twas obſervable, that during this whole War, the Women, for their Numbers, had been as ſerviceable as the Men; ſo reſolute were theſe People to maintain and defend, to the laſt Extremity, what they thought their own by Right of Conqueſt.

A. D. 971. *Sphendoſthlabus*, having ſecur'd himſelf with the reſt by Flight for the preſent, conſulted what farther was to be done. He conſider'd he had acted hitherto in every thing as became a prudent Man, and a Lover of his Country, and that Fortune had ſtill oppos'd him in all his Deſigns, ſo that there was nothing more left him to do, but to obtain the beſt Terms he could from the Emperor, of whom he requir'd more than he thought *Zimiſces* would grant, or than he himſelf could expect, propoſing to abate and govern himſelf according to the Anſwer he ſhould receive from the Emperor; for he demanded no leſs than "To be receiv'd on the publick "Faith as a Friend and Allie of the Empire; that he and "his Countrymen ſhould be conducted in Safety home, "and that a free Commerce ſhould be ſettled betwixt "both Nations. Tho' *Sphendoſthlabus* would willingly have relinquiſh'd part of theſe Demands, yet the Emperor, who was either grown weary of the War, or thought it imprudent or dangerous to provoke a deſperate Enemy, who had given him ſuch undeniable Inſtances of his Courage and Reſolution, generouſly granted all he ask'd, alledging, in his Defence, the Cuſtom of the Ancient *Romans*, who choſe rather to overcome their Enemies by their Kindneſs and Generoſity, than by the Force of their Arms. The Articles of the Treaty being ſettled, *Sphendoſthlabus* deſir'd he might have an Interview with the Emperor, which, being readily granted, he was receiv'd and entertain'd with great Magnificence. At this Interview it was agreed between 'em, that the *Patzinacæ* ſhould be compriz'd in the League, which was thought would induce 'em to grant the *Ruſſians* liberty to return through their Terri-

Territories into their own Country. The *Patzinacæ* appear'd willing to be comprehended in the Treaty, but refus'd a free Paſſage to the *Ruſſians*, who, if they found them obſtinate, were oblig'd, in the Condition they were in, to force their Way through; of which the *Patzinacæ* being inform'd, they thought it not Prudence openly to oppoſe 'em, but, laying Ambuſhes for 'em, they cut off the General and all his Men; that fierce People thinking it a Crime ſufficient that he had enter'd into a League with the *Romans*.

Thus ended the *Ruſſian* War, not more to the Honour and Safety of the Empire, than the Reputation of *Zimiſces*, who aſcrib'd his Succeſs rather to the Divine Protection than the Force of his Arms: For beſides that, during the late Battel, the Wind blew the Rain with great Violence full againſt the Barbarians, which extreamly diſorder'd 'em, and made 'em unable to manage the Fight as they at firſt intended: Some related, that a Man on a White Horſe was obſerv'd by the whole Army at the beginning of the Fight, who fought at the Head of the Battel, and with his ſingle Valour repuls'd and broke the Enemy's Ranks, and foraſmuch as none had ſeen him either before or afterwards, they believ'd him to be St. *Theodore* the Martyr, on whoſe Anniverſary the Victory was obtain'd, and the Emperor himſelf (who, ſaith my Author, never fought without the immediate Protection and Aſſiſtance of thoſe Heavenly Auxiliaries) according to the Superſtitions of thoſe Times, either really did, or at leaſt pretended ſo far to believe it, that he repair'd a Church dedicated to him, and chang'd the Name of the Town, wherein it ſtood, from *Euchaneia* to *Theodoropolis*. Baron An. 911.

The Treaty being ſign'd, the Emperor fortify'd all the Towns and Forts that ſtood upon the River, and then return'd to *Conſtantinople*, where he was receiv'd with all Expreſſions of Joy imaginable. The Patriarch, the Clergy, the Senate, and the People met him with Crowns, and a triumphant Chariot drawn by four Zimiſces *his Triumph at* Conſtantinople.

Horſes moſt ſplendidly capariſon'd; he refuſing to enter the City in the Chariot mounted a white Horſe, and having put the Royal Veſtments of the *Bulgarian* Princes into the Chariot, and over them the Image of the Virgin *Mary*, as Protectreſs of the City, he follow'd it in a ſolemn Proceſſion, and in the *Forum* receiv'd the Acclamations of the People.

The Solemnity being over, and he in a manner releas'd from the Toils of War, he apply'd himſelf, with great Diligence, to the Affairs of State. He eas'd his Subjects of ſome Taxes, and was the firſt that commanded the Image of our Saviour to be impreſs'd upon the Coins with this Impreſſion, *Jeſus Chriſt, the King of Kings*, which Cuſtom was ever after obſerv'd by his Succeſſors. But whilſt he was thus employ'd in his Management at home, ſeveral of thoſe Cities in the Eaſt, that had been reduc'd by his Predeceſſor *Nicephorus*, revolted from the Empire, and took up Arms againſt it, ſo that *Zimiſces* ſaw himſelf oblig'd to undertake another Expedition to recover 'em to their Obedience. And having proceeded as far as *Damaſcus*, he reduc'd ſome by fair Words, and others by force of Arms. Here he reſided for ſome time to ſettle the Affairs of the Province in thoſe Parts. In this Expedition having obſerv'd ſeveral pleaſant Towns and Palaces, with large and fruitful Territories adjoining to 'em, and being delighted with it, he ask'd to whom they belong'd; and when he was anſwer'd that *Baſilius*, the Preſident, was in Poſſeſſion of 'em all, tho' ſome of 'em had been acquir'd by the Arms of *Nicephorus*, others by other Generals, and not a few by himſelf, he broke out with a Sigh into this Expreſſion, *How miſerable, my Companions, is the preſent Condition of the* Roman *Empire, whoſe beſt Blood and Treaſure is ſacrific'd to the Pride and Ambition of an aſpiring Eunuch? Baſilius* had ſerv'd ſeveral of the former Emperors in their Wars againſt the *Saracens*, and in Negotiations of the greateſt Importance. Being a Man of great Authority in the Empire

Empire he appear'd very inſtrumental in the Promotion of *Nicephorus*, who, upon that Conſideration, made him his prime Miniſter, in which Poſt he was continu'd by *Zimiſces*, out of Reſpect to his reputed Integrity, and great Knowledge, and Experience in the Affairs of State, which he knew how to manage with the greateſt Dexterity, tho', like moſt other Stateſmen, he took care to enrich himſelf; and indeed they, who watch with an uncorrupted Eye for the Safety of the State, are in ſome meaſure worthy of their Hire. *Baſilius* was quickly inform'd of the Emperor's Reflection, and, apprehending the Conſequences of it, if not prevented in time, he reſolv'd to build his own Security upon the Deſtruction of the Emperor. Accordingly he prevail'd with his Cup-bearer to give him a Poiſon, and ſuch a one as ſhould work by degrees, and in a languiſhing manner diſpatch him. The Cup-bearer being encourag'd by large Preſents in Hand, and larger Promiſes, readily undertook it. The Poiſon work'd ſo effectually upon the Emperor, that he dy'd before he could reach *Conſtantinople*. It broke out in large Carbuncles upon his Shoulders, and made him void great quantities of Blood at his Eyes. Whether he miſtruſted the Treaſon had been acted againſt him, or judg'd it a natural Diſtemper, he forbore any Inquiſition about it, and ſpent the time he had to live in his Devotions.

Zimiſces *poiſon'd.*

This was the End of an Emperor, whoſe Virtues and fortunate Reign deſerv'd a better Concluſion. For he muſt, on all Hands, be allow'd to have been an excellent Prince, tho' they, who raiſe themſelves up to the Government by violent means, as he did, are not always known to execute it with Juſtice and Moderation. The ambitious Thirſt after Sovereignty was not reputed ſo great a Crime in thoſe Days, as it is deſervedly eſteem'd now; and that Conſideration may, in a great meaſure, plead in his Behalf. He was as renown'd for his Devotion as his Courage, and was a viſible Exam-

A. D. 976.

Horſes moſt ſplendidly capariſon'd; he refuſing to enter the City in the Chariot mounted a white Horſe, and having put the Royal Veſtments of the *Bulgarian* Princes into the Chariot, and over them the Image of the Virgin *Mary*, as Protectreſs of the City, he follow'd it in a ſolemn Proceſſion, and in the *Forum* receiv'd the Acclamations of the People.

The Solemnity being over, and he in a manner releas'd from the Toils of War, he apply'd himſelf, with great Diligence, to the Affairs of State. He eas'd his Subjects of ſome Taxes, and was the firſt that commanded the Image of our Saviour to be impreſs'd upon the Coins with this Impreſſion, *Jeſus Chriſt, the King of Kings*, which Cuſtom was ever after obſerv'd by his Succeſſors. But whilſt he was thus employ'd in his Management at home, ſeveral of thoſe Cities in the Eaſt, that had been reduc'd by his Predeceſſor *Nicephorus*, revolted from the Empire, and took up Arms againſt it, ſo that *Zimiſces* ſaw himſelf oblig'd to undertake another Expedition to recover 'em to their Obedience. And having proceeded as far as *Damaſcus*, he reduc'd ſome by fair Words, and others by force of Arms. Here he reſided for ſome time to ſettle the Affairs of the Province in thoſe Parts. In this Expedition having obſerv'd ſeveral pleaſant Towns and Palaces, with large and fruitful Territories adjoining to 'em, and being delighted with it, he ask'd to whom they belong'd; and when he was anſwer'd that *Baſilius*, the Preſident, was in Poſſeſſion of 'em all, tho' ſome of 'em had been acquir'd by the Arms of *Nicephorus*, others by other Generals, and not a few by himſelf, he broke out with a Sigh into this Expreſſion, *How miſerable, my Companions, is the preſent Condition of the* Roman *Empire, whoſe beſt Blood and Treaſure is ſacrific'd to the Pride and Ambition of an aſpiring Eunuch?* *Baſilius* had ſerv'd ſeveral of the former Emperors in their Wars againſt the *Saracens*, and in Negotiations of the greateſt Importance. Being a Man of great Authority in the Empire

Empire he appear'd very inſtrumental in the Promotion of *Nicephorus*, who, upon that Conſideration, made him his prime Miniſter, in which Poſt he was continu'd by *Zimiſces*, out of Reſpect to his reputed Integrity, and great Knowledge, and Experience in the Affairs of State, which he knew how to manage with the greateſt Dexterity, tho', like moſt other Stateſmen, he took care to enrich himſelf; and indeed they, who watch with an uncorrupted Eye for the Safety of the State, are in ſome meaſure worthy of their Hire. *Baſilius* was quickly inform'd of the Emperor's Reflection, and, apprehending the Conſequences of it, if not prevented in time, he reſolv'd to build his own Security upon the Deſtruction of the Emperor. Accordingly he prevail'd with his Cup-bearer to give him a Poiſon, and ſuch a one as ſhould work by degrees, and in a languiſhing manner diſpatch him. The Cup-bearer being encourag'd by large Preſents in Hand, and larger Promiſes, readily undertook it. The Poiſon work'd ſo effectually upon the Emperor, that he dy'd before he could reach *Conſtantinople*. It broke out in large Carbuncles upon his Shoulders, and made him void great quantities of Blood at his Eyes. Whether he miſtruſted the Treaſon had been acted againſt him, or judg'd it a natural Diſtemper, he forbore any Inquiſition about it, and ſpent the time he had to live in his Devotions.

Zimiſces *poiſon'd.*

This was the End of an Emperor, whoſe Virtues and fortunate Reign deſerv'd a better Concluſion. For he muſt, on all Hands, be allow'd to have been an excellent Prince, tho' they, who raiſe themſelves up to the Government by violent means, as he did, are not always known to execute it with Juſtice and Moderation. The ambitious Thirſt after Sovereignty was not reputed ſo great a Crime in thoſe Days, as it is deſervedly eſteem'd now; and that Conſideration may, in a great meaſure, plead in his Behalf. He was as renown'd for his Devotion as his Courage, and was a viſible Exam-

A. D. 976.

ple of both to all his Subjects, tho' he excell'd in no Chriſtian Virtue ſo much as in that of Mercy and Forgiveneſs. As he was vigorous and active in enlarging the Territories of the Empire, ſo was he equally vigilant in protecting and ſecuring them. A Comet was ſeen ſome time before his Death, and continu'd to appear for ſeveral Months after it, foreſhowing, as it was afterwards thought, not only the Fall of this Emperor, but thoſe fatal Diſtempers in which the State, by reaſon of the Civil Wars that rag'd within its Bowels, was afterwards involv'd. The Years of *Zimiſces* his Reign, and that wherein he dy'd, are differently computed by different Authors; the moſt probable Account is, that he reign'd ſix Years and as many Months, and that he dy'd in the fourth Year of *Otto*, Emperor of *Germany*; the ſecond of *Benedict* the ſeventh Pope of *Rome*, *A. D.* 976.

BASILIUS II. CONSTANTINE VII.

Zimiſces, before his Death, deſign'd *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine*, the Sons of *Romanus*, his Succeſſors, who in his Life-time had been his Collegues in the Empire. Theſe two Princes, the eldeſt of which was about twenty, and the other ſeventeen Years of Age, bore the Name of Emperors, but the Imperial Power lodg'd ſolely in *Baſilius* the Preſident, who, the better to preſerve himſelf in the Authority he had ſo long enjoy'd, recall'd *Theophania*, the young Prince's Mother, who had been baniſh'd by *Zimiſces*; by which Act he confirm'd himſelf in the good Opinion of the Sons, and reconcil'd himſelf to the Mother, who had before been highly offended at him.

A. D. 976.

The beginning of this Reign was attended with extraordinary Commotions in the State, occaſion'd chiefly by the Minority of the two Princes, and the over great Jealouſie of the Prime Miniſter, who, to prevent any Uſurpations that might ariſe, took care firſt to reſtrain the almoſt unlimited Power of *Bardas Sclerus*. *Sclerus* his great Command in the Army, and his Intereſt in the Soldiers, among whom he had been bred up from his

his Youth, had encourag'd him to ſome ambitious Attempts in the late Reign, for which he narrowly eſcap'd the Loſs of his Eyes. *Zimiſces*, being a Prince of a forgiving Temper, reſtor'd him in a ſhort time to his Favour, and left him at his Death Commander in Chief of all the Forces in the Eaſt, which gave him an opportunity of inclining the Soldiers to whatever Deſigns it was his Intereſt to promote. Upon theſe Conſiderations *Baſilius* took from him his Command in the Eaſt, and ſent him Governor into *Meſopotamia*, with Orders to reſtrain the Incurſions of the *Saracens*. *Sclerus* at firſt diſputed theſe Orders, and broke out into bitter Invectives againſt *Baſilius*, who, unmov'd at his Reproaches, threaten'd to ſtrip him of all his Employments, and confine him to his own Houſe, unleſs he inſtantly obey'd. Hereupon he thought it prudent to depart into the Province that had been aſſign'd him, carrying with him a fix'd Reſolution of revenging himſelf upon the Prime Miniſter with the firſt Opportunity, and aſſerting his own Right. Accordingly he acquainted the Chief Officers of the Army with his Deſign, who either out of Hatred to *Baſilius*, or knowing that all the Soldiers were at *Sclerus* his Devotion, promis'd faithfully to adhere to him, and advis'd him openly to declare againſt the Government, and ſet up for himſelf. *Romanus*, the Son of *Sclerus*, was at that time in *Conſtantinople*, ſo that he dar'd attempt nothing 'till he had recover'd him from thence, which being done in a ſhort time after, he then openly aſſum'd the Habit, and was ſaluted Emperor by the whole Army. Sclerus *Uſurps.*

The better to maintain himſelf in his uſurp'd Authority he ſeiz'd on the Publick Revenues, and rais'd large Contributions from ſuch as were rich and able to pay him. By this means he collected immenſe Sums of Mony, which enabled him to ſupport the Charge of the War, and ſecur'd the Friendſhip of the *Saracens* his Neighbours, who, obſerving the promiſing Face of his Affairs, enter'd into a Treaty with him, which was

ſtrengthen'd by cloſer Alliances of Marriage, by Virtue of which he receiv'd from 'em great Supplies of Mony and Horſe. With theſe Preparations he ſet forward, in the beginning of Spring, towards *Conſtantinople*, to the great Terror and Conſternation of thoſe who were well-affected to the preſent Government, and dreaded the Conſequences of an Innovation. All Means were try'd to divert the impending Storm: *Baſilius* ſent Orders to *Peter*, who had ſucceeded *Sclerus* in the Command of the Eaſt, to raiſe all the Forces he could, and Muſter the whole Army at *Cæſarea*. At the ſame time *Syncellus*, Biſhop of *Nicomedia*, was ſent to try if by his prevailing Eloquence, for which he was highly eſteem'd, he could perſuade *Bardas* to quit his unjuſt Pretenſions, and ſubmit to the Government. The Uſurper, adorn'd with the Imperial Ornaments, heard him with Patience, but anſwer'd him in ſhort, That *having once worn the Purple he would never quit it, but with his Life*; That *he was the lawful* Roman *Emperor, and would oblige thoſe by Force to ſubmit to his Authority, who now inadviſedly preſum'd to oppoſe it.* As ſoon as the Court had receiv'd this Anſwer *Peter* was order'd to ſecure all the Paſſages, and make the beſt Defence he could if he ſhould be attack'd, but by no means to begin the War himſelf. Hereupon he poſted Parties in all the Paſſes, which *Sclerus* endeavour'd by ſlight Skirmiſhes to gain, but to no purpoſe, 'till at length, after ſeveral Marches and Countermarches, they came to encamp one againſt the other: *Sclerus* ſate ſtill for ſome time, and ſeem'd deſirous to decline fighting, 'till ſome of his Friends repreſented to him how dangerous Delays would prove to him, and how much he would ſuffer in his Reputation, unleſs he enter'd immediately upon Action. Awaken'd by theſe Remonſtrances he immediately diſlodg'd, and march'd into *Cappadocia*, whither *Peter* follow'd him Night and Day, and at laſt came cloſe up to him. Here both the Generals diſcover'd the ſame Averſeneſs to fighting as they had

had done before, endeavouring to circumvent each other by Stratagems, in which *Sclerus* prov'd the better Maſter. One Day he order'd Proviſions to be prepar'd with a more ſuperficial Care than uſual, as if the whole Army was going to take a Refreſhment, tho' at the ſame time he order'd all his Men to ſtand to their Arms, and be ready for the Word. This being obſerv'd by *Peter*, who, for the moſt part, had been upon the Defenſive, he concluded there would be no Engagement that Day, and therefore order'd his Soldiers to fill their Bellies, and take their Eaſe. Whilſt they were thus employ'd *Sclerus* fell upon 'em in a regular Order, and tho' ſuch of 'em as could take to their Arms made a reſolute Reſiſtance, yet in the end they were overpower'd and put to Flight. *Sclerus* took their Camp, and all their Baggage, in which he found much Treaſure. This Succeſs ſeem'd, in a great meaſure, to confirm *Sclerus* in his uſurp'd Authority; for many Perſons of great Reputation in the Army, and Intereſt in the Provinces, renounc'd their Allegiance, and declar'd for him: The Inhabitants of *Attala* laid hold of *Michael Curticas*, the Emperor's Admiral, and carry'd the Fleet over to *Sclerus*, who order'd 'em to make War with it againſt the *Cibyrræotæ*.

Sclerus *beats the Emperor's Forces.*

When the News of this Defeat was brought to *Conſtantinople*, it was entertain'd there with the greateſt Conſternation imaginable. *Leo* was choſen to act with an unlimited Authority againſt *Sclerus*, like the Dictators of old under the Common-wealth; and *John*, a Patrician, a Man of great Eloquence and Experience, was join'd in the Commiſſion with him to Counſel and Aſſiſt him. *Leo*, having join'd *Peter* in *Phrygia*, try'd firſt, by gentle Means and fair Promiſes, to draw the Uſurper's Adherents off from him; but when he found all his Attempts that way were ineffectual, he broke up ſuddenly, and march'd with great Expedition towards the Eaſt; at which *Sclerus* and his Aſſociates were exceedingly perplex'd, becauſe all the Treaſure, and moſt

of their Relations had been left in those Parts; the Consideration of which wrought so wonderfully upon some of the Principal among 'em, that they left the Usurper, and fled over to *Leo*. *Sclerus* found himself so weaken'd by such an unexpected Defection, that he began to despair of Success, and grew fearful lest all his Forces would, by degrees, draw off and disperse themselves. The only Remedy left, in such a Conjuncture, was to send a Body of Men, under the Command of such Officers as he could entirely confide in, who should endeavour to stop *Leo*'s Progress. They were order'd to intercept the Provisions for the Army, and by repeated Alarms, and sudden Onsets, continually incommode him, but by no means suffer it to be brought to a general Engagement. They for some time carefully observ'd their Orders, but were at last forc'd to venture a set Battel. For the Soldiers hearing the *Saracens* of *Berrhæa* were shortly to pass between both Armies, with the annual Tribute, in their way to *Constantinople*, would not be restrain'd; but, knowing they who were strongest in the Field would, in all probability, be Masters of that Treasure, they fell on with an intemperate Heat, whereupon a general Engagement follow'd, in which *Leo* had the Advantage. Many of *Sclerus* his Men were slain, especially of the *Armenians*, to whom no Quarter would be allow'd, because they were the first that had revolted to him. But *Leo*, with much Caution and Discretion, declin'd fighting; for he knew, and found by Experience, that his Strength encreas'd daily by the Accession of such, who, in that melancholy Condition of his Affairs, deserted the Usurper. Had he persisted in that Resolution, he had, in all probability, put an end to the War at once; but he had some Hot-headed, Vainglorious young Men in his Army, who condemn'd him of too much Diffidence, and never gave over 'till they had persuaded him, contrary to his former Intentions,

Sclerus *his Generals Defeated,*

and

and much against his Will, to engage. *Sclerus* had much the Advantage of *Leo* in his Cavalry, which, being plac'd at each Wing of his Army, made their Enemies give Ground at the first Onset, which occasion'd a total Defeat. The Action was very hot for the time it lasted; on *Leo*'s side, *John* his Coadjutor, and *Peter*, and several other Persons of eminent Quality, were slain: *Leo* himself was taken Prisoner, together with a great many more of distinguish'd Rank in the Army. This remarkable Victory was obtain'd with little or no Loss on the side of *Sclerus*, who digg'd out the Eyes of some of his Prisoners at the Head of his Army, because, in Breach of their Oaths to him, they had fallen off to *Leo*. *Leo* and some others he treated with more Humanity, and only kept 'em in an honourable Restraint.

but he again routs the Imperialists.

Tho' the Usurper seem'd, by this last Advantage, to have the whole Empire at his Devotion, and thought himself by this time above all Competition, yet *Basilius* the President omitted nothing of his usual Care for the Safety of the Empire, and Preservation of the Princes. Observing what Mischief *Sclerus* his Ships did at Sea, that having wasted all the Islands in the *Hellespont* they threaten'd *Abydos*, which would bring *Constantinople* it self into manifest Danger, he fitted out a strong Fleet, with which *Theodorus Carentenus*, a Patrician, who commanded it, engag'd the Enemy at *Phocæa*, and destroy'd or took most of their Vessels, by which means the Seas were clear'd, and the Coasts secur'd. At the same time *Basilius* recruited his Land Forces, and finding the Usurper had a Design upon *Nice*, the Metropolis of *Bithynia*, he sent away *Manuel Eroticus* with a good Body of Forces to command in it. *Sclerus*, being animated by his late Success, fell with great Violence upon the Place, thinking to carry it with little or no Opposition; but met with so vigorous a Repulse, that he thought it the safest and most effectual way to starve him out. *Manuel*, who was sensible

ſenſible of the great Neceſſities to which the Inhabitants and Garriſon muſt in time be reduc'd, fill'd the empty Granaries of the City with Sand, over which he ſtrow'd what Corn was left ſo thick, that the Sand could not be diſcover'd by an incurious Eye. Having ſtor'd the Granaries in this manner he ſhow'd 'em to ſome Priſoners he had taken, to whom he repreſented how difficult a thing it would be for *Sclerus* to force a Place by Famine, that was provided with ſo much Plenty. He added, that conſidering the doubtful Events of War, he was willing to ſurrender the Town upon certain Conditions; ſome of which were, That the Garriſon might have leave to depart with their Arms and Baggage, and paſs unmoleſted to *Conſtantinople*. *Sclerus* embrac'd the Proposal with a ready Conſent, and ſo became Maſter of *Nice* by a Compliance, of which he was afterwards aſham'd. However this Progreſs of his Arms, which began to extend themſelves on every ſide, added much to the Reputation of his Cauſe, and confirm'd his Party. He now threaten'd to march to *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, where ſeveral, that ſecretly wiſh'd him well, expected him with great Impatience, and were prepar'd to declare openly for him at his firſt Appearance. *Baſilius*, the Preſident, being ſenſible of the Danger, and with what an experienc'd, as well as powerful Enemy he had to contend, recall'd *Bardas Phocas* from Exile, and made him General of the War againſt *Sclerus*, thinking him the only Man in the Empire able to contend with him. *Phocas*, having receiv'd full Inſtructions, got with great Expedition to *Cæſarea*, where *Euſtathius Malenius*, and *Michael Burtzas*, who had hitherto adher'd to *Sclerus*, being inform'd of *Phocas* his Arrival, quitted the Uſurper, and came to join with *Phocas*; who, having muſter'd all the Forces he could collect at *Cæſarea*, march'd on to *Amorium*, whither he was immediately follow'd by *Sclerus*, who thought it now no time to be idle, having to contend with ſo celebrated an Enemy. Here

He takes Nice.

Phocas *declar'd General againſt him,*

it

it appear'd evident, that neither the Courage, Reputation, or Experience of a General can infuse a generous Resolution into the Minds of those whom former Defeats have dispirited; for both Armies coming to an Engagement *Phocas* his Forces were defeated, and driven out of the Field; tho' in this, and another Engagement that follow'd soon after, in which he was again worsted, *Phocas* discharg'd all the Offices of a valiant Soldier, and experienc'd Commander.

and is beaten by Sclerus;

These two Actions had considerably impair'd *Phocas* his Army, which therefore he took care to recruit, whilst *Sclerus* went to encamp on a large Plain call'd *Pancalea*, lying upon the River *Halys* in *Cappadocia*. *Phocas*, having obtain'd Supplies out of *Iberia* and other Places, march'd in quest of his Enemy, to whom, as soon he had found him, he offer'd Battel a third time, which at the beginning inclin'd, as it had done in the former Engagements, and declar'd for *Sclerus*. *Phocas*, asham'd to be thus ignominiously beaten thrice together, having observ'd *Sclerus* at the Head of his Troops, ran with great Fury upon him, and resolv'd to conquer or perish. *Sclerus*, aware of his Design, gave the first stroke directed at his Adversary's Head, which missing he cut off one of his Horse's Ears, whilst *Phocas* directed his Sword with a more steady Hand, and gave him such a Wound that he sunk down upon his Horse's Neck, and *Phocas* rode up to a Hill with a Design to restrain the Flight of his Soldiers, who were by this time all in Confusion. *Sclerus* his Servants concluding, that notwithstanding this desperate Attempt of *Phocas*, both he and his Cause were absolutely lost, conducted their fainting Master to a Fountain, there to refresh him and wash his Wound; and either forgetting, or having never heard what had formerly happen'd upon the like Occasion, suffer'd his Horse, whose Mane was all bloody, to run in among the Soldiers, who immediately concluding the General

ral was ſlain, quitted the Purſuit, and fled away themſelves with ſo much haſte, that many of them fell down vaſt Precipices, and others took the River, wherein they were drown'd; which fatal Miſtake turn'd the Fortune of the Day, and gave the Victory to *Phocas*. So cautious ought Men to be in all the Circumſtances of Life, more eſpecially in the Field of Battel, where Courage is neceſſary, but Preſumption dangerous.

who is at laſt overthrown.

This unexpected, but deciſive Victory, entirely broke the Party of *Sclerus*, who eſcap'd with a few to *Martyropolis*, and from thence to *Babylon*, where he implor'd the Friendſhip and Aſſiſtance of *Choſroes*, Sultan of the Place. The Emperor *Baſilius*, being inform'd of *Phocas* his Succeſs, and that *Sclerus* was fled to *Babylon*, ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Choſroes*, who repreſented to him of what dangerous Conſequence it would be for a Prince to favour and protect thoſe whom Diſloyalty and Rebellion had driven from home. At the ſame time he ſent Letters to *Sclerus*, and thoſe that were with him, in which he offer'd 'em a full Pardon for what was paſs'd, if they would renounce their Pretenſions and return home. Of this *Choſroes* being informed, he was enrag'd at the double Errand of the Ambaſſadors, and clapp'd both them and *Sclerus* in Priſon, from whence we ſhall ſee Fortune will, in a ſhort time, releaſe him to create new Diſturbances in the Empire.

Flying to Babylon *he is clap'd up in Priſon.*

Thus was this firſt Civil War fortunately ſuppreſs'd at the Expence of much Blood and Treaſure; and *Baſilius* the Emperor, who, during *Sclerus* his Rebellion, had receiv'd ſufficient Provocations from the reſtleſs Spirits of the *Bulgarians*, thought himſelf now at leiſure to chaſtiſe 'em. Hitherto hardly any thing, relating either to Peace or War, had been undertaken without the Knowledge and Approbation of the Preſident; but now the Emperor began to reflect upon his own Power,

Power, and judg'd himself capable to manage this War without his Interposition, and so resolv'd to march in Person against 'em. This was undertaken with the Participation of a very few; neither *Phocas* the General, nor any of the other Captains in the East, being acquainted with it. The Emperor enter'd *Bulgaria* thro' the Country lying near *Rhodoptes*, and the River *Eurus*, leaving *Leo Melissenus* to secure the *Straits* behind him, whilst he prepar'd to lay Siege to *Sardica*. This Expedition had, in all probability, succeeded according to his Desire and Expectation, had not some unhappy Divisions between his Chief Officers frustrated his Designs. As he was vigorously preparing for the Siege, *Stephen*, the Commander of the Western Forces, and profess'd Enemy to *Leo Melissenus*, came to him in the dead of Night, which added to the Horror of what he was to unfold, and earnestly conjur'd him to lay all other Designs whatsoever aside, and break up immediately for *Constantinople*, because *Leo* intended to usurp the Imperial Authority, and was accordingly marching with all Expedition to the City. This was urg'd by *Stephen* with so plausible an Air, that the young Emperor, who, besides the Danger he apprehended from a Competitor in the State, was afraid least, *Melissenus* having deserted his Post, he might be intercepted in his Retreat, in a great Fright gave Orders for the Army to march; which *Samuel*, the Prince of the *Bulgarians*, observing, he watch'd his Opportunity, and fell upon 'em as they were making a disorderly Retreat, and turn'd it into a shameful Flight. The Emperor escap'd with great Difficulty to *Philippopolis*, where he found *Leo* carefully attending his Duty at the Station had been assign'd him, which made him sensible how insolently he had been affronted and abus'd, how infamous and ridiculous this Expedition would appear, and how much *Stephen* had deserv'd to be punish'd by him. *Stephen*'s invincible Hatred to *Leo* made him with great Confidence defend what he had done, which provok'd the Emperor

Basilius *the Emperor enters* Bulgaria,

but returns with Dishonour.

Emperor to leap from his Seat, and catching faſt hold of him by his Locks and Beard to drag him down to the Ground. So dangerous is it for Princes to make Choice of ſuch for their Miniſters, who being implacable Enemies to each other, are not like to unite in their Councils for the Service of their Maſter: For few Men are found ſo good Patriots as to ſacrifice their private Intereſt, Pride, or Revenge, to the good of the Publick.

A. D. 987. This *Bulgarian* Expedition was not more ill concerted in the Beginning, or ignominious in the Concluſion, than it was miſchevious in its Conſequences. *Phocas* the General was highly affronted, for that the Emperor ſhould dare to undertake a thing ſo conſiderable without his Participation, and judg'd that, being a young and vigorous Prince, he would act for the future without any regard had to his Council or Authority. Theſe Suggeſtions he endeavour'd to inſinuate into the other General Officers of the Army, and they very readily entertain'd 'em: So that meeting at the Houſe of *Euſtathius Malenius*, a proud factious Man, they unanimouſly proclaim'd *Phocas* Emperor, and inveſted him with the Imperial Ornaments. At the ſame time that the Court receiv'd News of this Revolt, Advice was brought that *Sclerus*, being deliver'd out of Priſon, was returning into the Empire. They who were well affected to the Emperors, *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine*, judg'd this a favourable Conjuncture, ſince it was eaſier to ſuppreſs two Pretenders than oppoſe one.

Phocas *proclaim'd Emperor by the Male-contents.*

Sclerus ow'd his Releaſe to the Dangers which at that time threaten'd the *Saracen* State. The *Perſians*, who had by degrees been ſubdu'd, and were entirely Slaves to that Nation, obſerving the Imprudence and Inactivity of *Choſroes* their preſent Sultan, bore the Yoke with much Reluctancy; watching therefore their Opportunity they aroſe ſuddenly, and maſſacred all the *Saracens* they met. *Choſroes* made the beſt Defence he was able againſt ſo ſudden and dangerous an Inſurrection, but

but was so often defeated by 'em, that at length the very Name of a *Persian* sounded terrible to the Ears of a *Saracen*. In this Extremity he cast his Eyes upon the *Romans* his Prisoners; he consider'd 'em as unfortunate Heroes, who had deserv'd a better Fate than what they endur'd; that if *Sclerus* had not been a Man of Worth, Conduct, and Prudence, he never had been able to raise so considerable a Party in the Empire, and dispute the Imperial Title with the Emperor himself. Upon these Considerations he consented to release him, provided he would undertake the War against the *Persians*. *Sclerus* at first declin'd the Imployment, but being highly encourag'd by *Chosroes*, who promis'd him extraordinary Advantages, he chearfully engag'd himself in it, but refusing to command any of *Chosroes*'s own Subjects in the Service, he persuaded him to open all the Prisons, and arm the Captive *Romans*, who, making a Body of about three thousand Men, fell suddenly on the *Persians*, who being unus'd to their manner of Fighting, and over-power'd with their Courage, receiv'd a total Defeat. *Sclerus*, finding himself at the Head of so gallant a Body of Men, thought himself once more in a Capacity of renewing his former Pretensions, and therefore having put an end to the *Persian* War almost as soon as undertaken, he return'd with his victorious Army into the Territories of the Empire; whether with *Chosroes*'s Consent, or against it, or rather after his Death, as it is very uncertain, so is it not worthy our Consideration. Being enter'd into the Dominions of the Empire, he was inform'd of *Phocas* his Usurpation, which in a great measure blasted his Hopes, and seem'd very prejudicial to the present Posture of his Affairs; for he found himself unable to oppose both, nor did he judge it safe or honourable for him to join himself with either. At length he resolv'd to carry himself as fair as he could with both, and so ingratiate himself with one, that the other should think he had no reason to be offended; and therefore the same time that he sent to

Sclerus *returns into the Empire.*

Phocas,

Phocas, and offer'd to aſſiſt him in the Suppreſſion of *Baſilius*, and ſhare the Empire with him, his Son *Romanus* left him by his own Conſent, and under the Pretence of a Revolt went to *Baſilius* at *Conſtantinople*. By this means, if *Phocas* prevail'd, the Father thought he ſhould have Intereſt enough to procure the Son's Peace; and, if *Baſilius* had the better, he hop'd his Son would be able to obtain his Pardon from the Emperor. Some time before *Romanus* his Arrival, *Baſilius* the Preſident was fallen into Diſgrace, for the Emperor thought himſelf old enough to govern without a Director, and the Preſident thought he had a juſt Right to the Management, and made uſe of all the Artifices an old Courtier is capable of to continue himſelf in it. But *Baſilius* was firmly reſolv'd totally to ſhake him off, and confin'd him firſt to his own Houſe, where, when he found the reſtleſs old Man was forming new Deſigns, he ſtripp'd him of all his vaſt Eſtate at once, at which he was ſo ſenſibly afflicted that he dy'd ſhortly after. Immediately upon this *Romanus* arriv'd, and the Emperor knowing him to be a prudent Man, and experienc'd Soldier, took him into his Favour, and preferr'd him to Employments of the higheſt Importance.

Tho' *Baſilius* receiv'd *Romanus* with a generous Confidence, and made him his chief Favourite, the crafty *Phocas* behav'd himſelf with more Circumſpection to *Sclerus*. At firſt he enter'd into a very formal Agreement with him, and pretended the Empire ſhould be divided between 'em: *Sclerus* was to have for his Share *Antioch*, *Phœnicia*, *Paleſtine*, *Cœloſyria*, *Meſopotamia* and *Egypt*; and *Conſtantinople*, with the reſt of the Provinces, was allotted to *Phocas*. This Agreement was ratify'd and confirm'd by Oaths on both ſides, after which *Sclerus* made no difficulty of joining his Forces with thoſe of *Bardas*; and in *Cappadocia* a Council of War was held how to proceed with the beſt Advantage. *Phocas*, having by theſe means drawn the old Man into a ſenſeleſs Security, watch'd his Opportuni-

ty,

ty, and then seiz'd upon him, stripp'd him of his Imperial Ornaments, and committed him to Custody; after which he found it no difficult matter to prevail with his Troops to fight under him. By this time he thought he had sufficiently secur'd his own Interest, and therefore sent *Calocyrus Delphinus* with part of his Army to *Chrysopolis*, whilst he remov'd with the rest to *Abydos*, intending to block up *Constantinople*. Upon the first notice of these Motions, *Basilius* the Emperor sent *Cyriacus* his Admiral for the Defence of *Abydos*, and he himself, passing over the *Straits* by Night, fell suddenly upon *Delphinus*, and routed him. *Delphinus* was taken Prisoner, with several others of great Note in the Army, who were all instantly nail'd up to several Posts, as an Example of Terror to the rest. *Phocas* met with a greater Resistance than he expected at *Abydos*, the Inhabitants of which Place were very much strengthen'd and encourag'd by the Arrival of the Imperial Fleet, which in a short time was follow'd by the Emperor *Constantine*, as he was immediately after by his Brother *Basilius*. *Phocas*, either in Contempt of the young Princes, or for that he thought it the safest way to fight before any more Forces could arrive to support 'em, left part of his Army to continue the Siege, and with the residue offer'd Battel to the Emperors. As he observ'd *Basilius* riding up and down to view his Troops, and encourage his Men, he prepar'd to single him out in the beginning of the Battel, and by his Death put an end to the Quarrel at once; for he look'd on *Constantine* as a weak intemperate Prince, who, if his Brother should be remov'd, would never be able to make Head against him. Accordingly he made towards him with all his Force, but Death stopp'd him in the midst of his Career. The manner of it is differently related: Some report his Horse threw him, others that some of the Emperor's Party gave him a Mortal Wound in his Passage; and the Emperor *Constantine* affirm'd, that he slew him with his own Hand; but the most receiv'd Opini-

A. D. 989. *who dies of Poison:*

on is, that he was poiſon'd by one *Simeon*, a Servant, in whom he repos'd an entire Truſt, and that it was done at the Inſtigation of *Baſilius*. However it was, the Death of *Phocas* purchas'd the Emperors an eaſie and compleat Victory; for it was no ſooner ſpread abroad in the Army, but his Men fled in all the Diſorder imaginable. Moſt of the Principal among the Rebels were taken, and puniſh'd according to their Deſerts; ſome ſav'd themſelves by a voluntary Exile, and others, who had been the leaſt active, were pardon'd.

Whereupon Sclerus *is once more ſet at Liberty.*

However there were ſtill ſome remaining who preſerv'd the Spirit of the Party after the Death of their Leader; theſe Men got *Sclerus* to be ſet at Liberty, and encourag'd him to purſue his Title, and valiantly aſſert his Right. *Baſilius*, who had flatter'd himſelf that the Death of *Phocas* would put an end to the Civil Wars, obſerv'd a new Cloud gathering againſt him, which hung with a direful Aſpect over the State. Before he thought fit to make uſe of violent means, he endeavour'd to reduce him by friendly Expoſtulations, and repreſented to him *how unworthy it was for a Man of his Age and Profeſſion to embroil the Empire with Blood; he promis'd an Indemnity for what was paſt, and his Favour and Protection for the future.* To theſe Remonſtrances *Romanus* added his earneſt Perſuaſions; he repreſented to his Father *how well he had been receiv'd at Court, where he might promiſe himſelf the higheſt Preferments; that he was now old, and had not Forces ſufficient to obtain his Ends; and that it would therefore more become him to enjoy the few Days he had yet in ſtore in Honour, Peace and Tranquility.* By theſe Perſuaſions *Sclerus* was induc'd to lay down his Pretenſions. An Act of Indemnity was paſs'd, and *Sclerus*, being declar'd great Steward of the Houſhold, was introduc'd to the Emperor, who could hardly reſtrain himſelf from laughing when he beheld him, of whom he had been for ſo long a time ſo much in fear. He was an exceeding decrepid old Man, ſupported by two of his Domeſticks, who

and is reconcil'd to the Emperor.

were

were forc'd to lead him by reason of his great Age and Corpulency. The Emperor receiv'd him with great Civility, made him eat with him at his own Table, confirm'd him in his Office of great Steward, and suffer'd such of his Followers, as had enjoy'd any Offices of Honour and Profit under him, to be continu'd in 'em, or preferr'd to others of equal Value and Authority.

Basilius having, by this Agreement, put an end to the Civil Wars, and secur'd himself from any farther Usurpations, consulted how he might best restrain and chastise the turbulent and unconquer'd Spirit of the *Bulgarians*, and such others who, having form'd themselves into a League with their Neighbours, had taken their Advantage during the late Trouble, and infested the Borders of the Empire. He first took a Progress into *Thrace* and *Macedonia*, and having left a strong Party at *Thessalonica* to restrain the Inroads of *Samuel*, the King of *Bulgaria*, he shortly after march'd into *Iberia*, and from thence into *Phœnicia*, receiving Hostages from the *Saracens* of those Parts for their quiet Behaviour for the future. In his Passage through *Cappadocia*, *Eustathius Melenius*, a Commander in those Parts, entertain'd him and his whole Army; with which expensive Hospitality the Emperor seem'd outwardly to be very much pleas'd, but was inwardly concern'd to find any one Subject should be Master of so much Wealth, which could enable him to shake and endanger the Peace of the Empire. For this Reason, under a specious Pretext of a peculiar Esteem for him, he took him with him to *Constantinople*, from whence he would never after suffer him to return, but after his Death seiz'd on his vast Estate. A just Caution to those, who endeavour to grow too wealthy and powerful for Subjects, by which means they generally become the Object of their Prince's Jealousie, and frequently of his Indignation.

Basilius *his Wars with the* Bulgarians.

Samuel hearing of the Garrison *Basilius* had left in *Thessalonica*, and being sensible how much the Possession of that Place would conduce to the Conquest of the whole

Country, at which he aim'd, he plac'd part of his Army in Ambuſh at a convenient diſtance from the Town, and order'd the reſt to face it. The Governor was ſo far deluded by this Device, that he ſent his Son out againſt him, who, being eaſily drawn into the Snare, was taken Priſoner, and his Father ſlain, as he was ſallying out to his Aſſiſtance. Immediately upon this *Theſſalonica* fell into the Hands of *Samuel*, who grew inſolent upon his Succeſs; and croſſing the River *Peneus* made Inroads into *Theſſaly*, *Bœotia*, *Attica*, and the very Heart of *Peloponneſus*. *Nicephorus Uranus*, the Commander in Chief of the Weſtern Forces, was ſent with a ſtrong Army againſt him. *Uranus*, obſerving the Diſpoſition of *Samuel*'s Forces, left his Baggage at *Lariſſa*; and having, by long Marches, paſs'd the *Pharſalian* Plains, and the River *Apidanus*, he encamp'd his whole Army on the Banks of *Spercheius*, directly oppoſite to *Samuel*. The River was at that time ſwoln ſo high with the great Rains, that *Samuel* thought it impoſſible for the *Romans* to paſs it, and therefore lay with the greater Security on t'other ſide. But *Uranus*, after a long ſearch, found out a Ford, and paſſing the River in the dead of Night, fell with great Fury upon the *Bulgarians* as they lay aſleep, and made great Havock among 'em. *Samuel* and his Son were both dangerouſly wounded, and had unavoidably been taken had they not lurk'd that Day among the Slain; the Night following they ſtole away to the Mountains of *Ætolia*, and from thence they eſcap'd with much difficulty into *Bulgaria*, where *Samuel* was forc'd to marry the Captive Son of the late Governor of *Theſſalonica* to his only Daughter, who was ſo deſperately in Love with him, that ſhe declar'd ſhe would deſtroy her ſelf unleſs her Father would permit her to be marry'd to him. The Nuptial Solemnity being over, his new Son-in-Law was ſent to reſide with his Wife at *Dyrrachium*, of which Place *Samuel* appointed him Governor: But he had not been long there before he found an Opportunity

tunity of returning to *Constantinople*, where both he and his Wife, who readily attended him thither, were honourably receiv'd, and preferr'd by the Emperor.

After this *Samuel*'s Affairs continu'd to be in a declining Condition 'till his Death, and the Emperor gain'd some considerable Advantage in every Expedition he undertook against him. He took *Vidina* from him by Storm; and having routed his Army, which lay with great Careleſsneſs upon the Banks of the River *Axius*, he had the City *Scopi*, one of the ſtrongeſt in thoſe Parts, deliver'd up to him by *Simeon* the Governor, whom the Emperor rewarded with the Dignity of a Patrician. *Samuel* was ſo far diſpirited by theſe frequent Defeats, that he durſt no more venture his Fortune in the open Field, but endeavour'd to circumvent *Baſilius* by Stratagem, and had cut him off with the greateſt part of his Forces in the *Straits* of *Cimba Longus*, where he had plac'd a ſtrong Guard, had not *Nicephorus Xiphias*, Governor of *Philippopolis*, with the Troops under his Command, gain'd a Hill, which lay towards the South, from whence he fell upon the Enemy's Rear, and gave *Baſilius* an eaſie Entrance into the *Straits*; immediately upon which the *Bulgarians* turn'd their Backs, and fled away in the greateſt Confuſion. Many of 'em were kill'd in the Chace, and *Samuel* very narrowly eſcap'd thro' the Valour and Conduct of his Son, who, with much difficulty, carry'd him off into the Caſtle of *Prilapus*, or *Prailaba* in *Valachia*. *Baſilius* caus'd the Eyes of all his Priſoners, of whom he had many Thouſands, to be pluck'd out; and to every hundred he aſſign'd a Man, who had one Eye left, who had Orders to conduct 'em to *Samuel*. *Samuel*, being already broken with Age, and weary'd out by his Misfortunes, was not able to ſtand the Shock of ſo terrible a Spectacle, but fell down in a Swoon; and tho' thoſe about him reſtor'd him to himſelf, by the helps of ſome ſtrong Spirits, for the preſent, yet he dy'd within two Days after.

A. D. 1001. *His Succeſs.*

Tho' *Basilius* promis'd himself, from the Death of *Samuel*, no less than an entire Subjection of all *Bulgaria*, which he afterwards effected, yet at first he met with many Difficulties, and receiv'd great Opposition from the Obstinacy of some and Perfidiousness of others. *Gabriel*, the Son of *Samuel*, succeeded his Father as Prince of the Country; but being a Man of a mean Capacity, though remarkable for his prodigious Strength, he was shortly after murder'd by the Procurement of *John Bladisthlabus*, a Person nearly related to him, and whose Life he had formerly preserv'd. *Basilius*, after his late Victory, had pursu'd his Conquests, and reduc'd several of the strong Castles and fortify'd Towns in the Country, in one of which he took some of the Principal Men among the *Bulgarians*, whom he kept with him as Instruments to facilitate his future Attempts. Here he receiv'd Letters from *John*, in which he inform'd him, that *Gabriel* being dead the *Bulgarian* Kingdom was his, and promis'd to behave himself as the Emperor's Subject and Vassal. These Letters were follow'd shortly after with others from the *Bulgarians*, who own'd themselves Subjects to the Empire, and acknowledg'd a Submission accordingly. *Basilius* receiv'd the Messengers very graciously, and promis'd them his Favour and Protection; but being shortly after assur'd, that *John* had engag'd for more than ever he intended to perform, he return'd the Year following into *Bulgaria*, and resolv'd never to give over 'till he had entirely subdu'd it. For having invaded it so often in Person, he thought his Honour would never suffer him to be at rest 'till he had effected a final Conquest of it. Tho' the Emperor had most of the strong Holds of the Country in his Hands, and the Strength of the *Bulgarian* Army was broken in a great measure by the late Wars, yet he found it a thing highly difficult to subdue a People animated with the love of Liberty, which they maintain'd to the last Gasp, and defended their Country as others do single Towns, losing it

The Bulgarians *submit themselves to the Emperor.*

it by Piece-meal. But *John* being ſlain, after he had worn the Title of King, and defended it with great Valour for two Years and about five Months, the *Bulgarians* at laſt ſent their Deputies to the Emperor with Offers of a total and unfeigned Subjection. *Baſilius* receiv'd 'em with his uſual Condeſcenſion, and conferr'd the Title of Patrician on all thoſe that ſeem'd the moſt forward to comply, and ſurrender'd up their Caſtles to him. At *Achridus*, or *Achris*, one of the chief Cities of the Country, he was ſaluted with the general Acclamations of the People. There he ſeiz'd on the vaſt Treaſure of the *Bulgarian* Princes, among which were ſeveral rich Crowns adorn'd with Pearl, and a great quantity of Gold, which he diſtributed as a Donative among his Soldiers. Shortly after this, being return'd to his Camp, the late King's Widow, attended by three of her Sons, and ſix Daughters, together with other Princes of the Blood, came up to him, and did him Homage. She had three other Sons by *John*, who at firſt fled up into the Mountains; but hearing how courteouſly the Emperor had receiv'd their Brethren, they voluntarily came down and ſubmitted.

There now remain'd but one Man in all the Country capable of raiſing any Troubles, who had not ſubmitted to *Baſilius*: This was *Ibatzes*, a Man ally'd to the Royal Family, and one, who, during the late Wars, had given the World ſeveral Inſtances of his great Courage and Conſtancy. This Man refuſing to ſubmit to Neceſſity, or comply with the preſent poſture of Affairs, ſeiz'd on a Mountain moſt difficult of Acceſs, where he reſolv'd to defend himſelf to the laſt extremity. This Obſtinacy ſeem'd to put a dangerous ſtop to the Progreſs of the Emperor's Arms, and very much perplex'd him. He ſollicited him earneſtly by Letter, to conſider how raſhly he had undertaken what in the end would draw inevitable Deſtruction down upon his Head, and concluded with large Promiſes of the mighty Advantages he had to expect from his Submiſſion.

Ibatzes continuing unmov'd with all the Emperor could ſuggeſt, *Euſtathius Daphnomelus*, whom *Baſilius* had lately made Governor of *Achris*, undertook a thing no leſs dangerous in the Attempt, than extraordinary in the Execution. *Ibatzes* was known to have a particular regard for the Feaſt of the Aſſumption, to the Celebration of which Strangers, as well as Neighbours, were invited; and *Daphnomelus*, tho' not invited, ventur'd to be one among 'em. Being diſcover'd by the Sentinels, he declar'd openly who he was, and deſir'd 'em to inform their Maſter that he was come to be his Gueſt at the Feſtival. *Ibatzes*, ſurpriz'd at his Boldneſs, who had thus unadviſedly thrown himſelf into an Enemy's Hands, receiv'd him very kindly; and, Morning-Prayer being over, follow'd him, at his Requeſt, into a remote Place convenient for *Daphnomelus* his Deſign, where he pretended he had Matters of the higheſt Importance to communicate to him. Here *Daphnomelus*, who had two Men attending at ſome diſtance, and with whom he had concerted the Matter before, watch'd his Opportunity, and threw him ſuddenly to the Ground; the ſame Inſtant his Men came up, and thruſting their Cloaths violently into his Mouth, forc'd both his Eyes out of his Head. When that was done they all three drew their Swords, and got into one of the higheſt Chambers in the Caſtle, being prepar'd for the worſt that could befal 'em. As ſoon as the Fact was known great Multitudes ran with a lamentable Outcry to the Caſtle, threat'ning the Villains, for ſo they call'd 'em, with the cruelleſt Death. *Daphnomelus*, having firſt encourag'd his Men to defend themſelves to the utmoſt, and by the Motion of his Hand from the Window obtain'd Silence from the incens'd Mob, told 'em, That *what was done proceeded not from any ill Will to the Perſon of* Ibatzes, *but a juſt Regard to the Emperor's Orders, who had commanded him to do it*; That *therefore they ought to conſider him as no other than the Inſtrument of the Emperor's Pleaſure, who had both*

A deſperate Attempt.

the

the Power and the Will to vindicate his own Authority, and revenge whatever they should think fit upon that occasion to act against him and his two Servants; That *for their Parts they were resolv'd to sell their Lives as dear as they could, and should die with this Satisfaction, That being oppress'd with Multitudes it would be uncertain, whether they should receive more Honour, or their Enemies Disgace, in their Fall.* The Multitude were so affected with a Speech spoken with such Resolution, that the most timerous among 'em withdrew immediately; and a few that were wiser than the rest congratulated *Daphnomelus* upon his Success, and promis'd an implicit Obedience to the Emperor for the future. *Daphnomelus* being thus deliver'd from the Danger that so eminently threaten'd him, led *Ibatzes* off without any Opposition to *Basilius*, who rewarded him with the Government of *Dyrrachium*, and all the rich Moveables of his Prisoner.

Basilius, having thus reduc'd *Ibatzes*, endeavour'd, in the best manner he could, to compose and settle the distracted Affairs of that Country; after which he return'd with his Prisoners, and several Hostages to *Constantinople*, where the People receiv'd him with a Joy and Satisfaction answerable to his Success. A. D. 1019.

After the Conclusion of this War, which took up a great part of this Emperor's Reign, we meet with little memorable 'till his Death. The Nations adjoining to the *Bulgarians*, being less powerful, follow'd the same Fate, and did Homage to the Emperor. Some time before his Death, *Xiphias*, and *Nicephorus* the Son of *Bardas Phocas*, rais'd a Rebellion against him, taking the Advantage of the Emperor's Absence in an Expedition into *Iberia*: But *Basilius*, by his cunning Management, so far wrought upon them, that *Xiphias* circumvented *Nicephorus*, and slew him, by that means putting a stop to a Rebellion to which he had first given Life. *Basilius* proceeded with great Severity against all those that had engag'd themselves in this Rebellion, sparing none

who

who appear'd in the leaſt affected to it. As he declin'd in Years he grew more jealous and remorſeleſs; his great Succeſs in his Wars made him arrogant and untractable, and yet he was fear'd and eſteem'd by his Subjects, who had conceiv'd a mean Opinion of his Brother *Conſtantine*, upon the Account of his diſſolute unactive Life. *Baſilius*, notwithſtanding his great Age, lov'd ſtill to be at the Head of his Armies in Action; and being inform'd that the *Saracens* in *Sicily* committed great Inſolencies upon the Subjects of the Empire, and infeſted the Sea Coaſts, he rais'd a powerful Army with an intent to reſtrain and chaſtiſe 'em. Accordingly he ſent a ſtrong Body of his Forces before, under the Conduct of *Oreſtes* his Favourite Eunuch, and intended to follow in Perſon ſhortly after, but was prevented by Death in the Month of *December*, *A. D.* 1025, after he had liv'd ſeventy Years, and reign'd fifty.

A.D. 1025.

Baſilius *dies.*

His Character. This Emperor's Reign was long, and full of Action, throughout which he choſe rather to be fear'd than belov'd by his Subjects. He affected a great Command over his Paſſions, which however very often got the Aſcendant over him upon the ſmalleſt Provocations. Tho' from his Youth he was much addicted to the Wars, yet he took little or no care to ingratiate himſelf with the Soldiers, who notwithſtanding reſpected his Perſon, and obey'd him chearfully. He had little or no Eſteem for Learning, or learned Men, tho' in other reſpects he frequently appear'd deſirous of Fame, and was often guilty of Oſtentation. He took a great Delight in keeping his Coffers full, and had collected vaſt quantities of Pearls, and rich Jewels, with which he never appear'd but upon great Feſtivals, and when he gave Audience to Foreign Ambaſſadors. However he was highly eſteem'd by the generality of his Subjects for his diligent Application to publick Affairs, and his fortunate Succeſs in all his Undertakings. 'Tis much to his Reputation, that he at length effected an abſolute Conqueſt over the *Bulgarians*, which had for a long

long time been in vain attempted by ſo many of his Predeceſſors. *Baſilius* dy'd in the ſecond Year of *Conrade* the Firſt Emperor of *Germany*, and of *John* the Nineteenth Pope of *Rome*, and ſixth of *Ferdinand* the Firſt King of *Caſtile*.

CHAP. III.

From the Death of Baſilius *to the Reign of* Alexius Comnenus, *in whoſe Time the Weſtern Chriſtians undertook their Expedition into the Holy Land.*

Containing the Space of Fifty Six Years.

I. THO' *Conſtantine* had born the Name of Emperor in Conjunction with his Brother, and might be thought, as well from his Age as Experience, to be juſtly qualify'd for that Supream Dignity, yet in every reſpect he behav'd himſelf altogether unworthy of it; and it too viſibly appear'd after *Baſilius* his Death, that it was happy for the State he did not die before. For *Conſtantine* being a diſſolute, vicious Prince in his own Nature, employ'd none about him but Perſons as infamous as himſelf, preferring 'em to the moſt conſiderable Employments in the Government. Theſe Men, that they might anſwer the Ends for which they were advanc'd, oppreſs'd the Provinces, and burden'd the People, ſo that the State may be ſaid to ſuffer more under the ſhort Reign of this Emperor, than it had proſper'd under thoſe of *Nicephorus*, *Zimiſces* and *Baſilius*, who had ſeverally contributed ſo exceedingly to the Strength and Advancement of it. Beſides, *Conſtantine* appear'd no leſs zealous in the Oppreſſion and Ruin of good and worthy Men, eſpecially ſuch as he imagin'd had formerly been forward to diſcover his vicious

A. D. 1026.

Conſtantine's *Management of his Affairs.*

cious Practices to his Brother; ſo that a Day hardly paſs'd that was not made infamous by the Fall of ſome Great Man, whoſe Virtues were his only Crimes. Amongſt the reſt *Nicephorus Comnanus* was as remarkable for his Diſgrace as he was renown'd for his Virtues. *Nicephorus* had for ſome time commanded a Body of the Imperial Forces upon the Borders againſt the *Saracens*; and having obſerv'd that his Soldiers by degrees grew wanton and effeminate, he labour'd to reeſtabliſh the ancient Diſcipline amongſt 'em, and after he had, by frequent Exhortations, reminded 'em of their Duty, he bound 'em all, by a voluntary Oath, never to forſake him, but oppoſe the Enemy to the laſt extremity. When the Report of this honourable Aſſociation was brought to *Conſtantinople*, the Emperor's cowardly effeminate Miniſters repreſented the thing to be of ſo dangerous a Conſequence to his Safety, that they eaſily prevail'd with him to have *Nicephorus* depriv'd of his Command, and ſhortly after to have his Eyes pluck'd out. He proceeded with the ſame Severity and Injuſtice againſt *Bardas* the Son of the late famous *Phocas*, whoſe extraordinary Merit had render'd him ſuſpected, or envy'd by the unworthy Emperor; for which reaſon he ſuborn'd Witneſſes, who accus'd him of Conſpiring againſt *Conſtantine*, who gave an open Ear to their Accuſations, and puniſh'd him accordingly. Theſe Proceedings againſt Men of the greateſt Reputation in the Empire rais'd a general Diſcontent among the People, and that gave a Beginning to ſeveral Mutinies and Inſurrections, which however were all happily ſuppreſs'd, and the Emperor's chief Care was to puniſh thoſe who had leaſt deſerv'd it. For all thoſe of any Power in the State, who were too good to be his Favourites, and diſlik'd the Management of Affairs, were by ſubtle colluſive Arguments prov'd guilty, and remov'd to make way for others more agreeable to the preſent Temper of the Court. Theſe his Proceeedings at home expos'd him

to the Contempt of the Nations abroad, ſo that ſeveral Irruptions were made into the Territories of the Empire, but were, with much ado, reſtrain'd by the great Diligence of thoſe who commanded on the Borders. At length *Conſtantine*, being declin'd in Years, and enervated by his ſenſual Pleaſures, fell dangerouſly ill, and was given over by his Phyſicians. He had three Daughters by *Helena*, the Daughter of *Alynius* the Patrician, but never a Son, ſo that the whole Court was divided into ſeveral Cabals upon Deſignation of a Succeſſor. Some propos'd *Conſtantinus Delaſſenus*, who at that time commanded the Forces in *Armenia*; and others labour'd with great Earneſtneſs for *Romanus Argyrus*, a Man of an ancient Family, and nearly ally'd to the Emperor. It was concluded, that whoever ſucceeded ſhould marry one of the Emperor's Daughters, which at firſt ſeem'd much to oppoſe thoſe who were for the Promotion of *Romanus*, who was already marry'd; but they, having the greateſt Intereſt in *Conſtantine*, prevail'd with him to ſend for *Romanus*, and propoſe to him either to loſe his Eyes, or marry one of the Emperor's Daughters, and be created *Cæſar*. *Romanus* continu'd for ſome time undetermin'd, 'till his Wife, hearing of the Conditions, and fearing leſt his Conſtancy would coſt him his Eyes, voluntarily ſhav'd her ſelf, and turn'd Nun: By this means ſhe made room for *Zoe* the Emperor's ſecond Daughter, to whom he was ſhortly after marry'd, and created *Cæſar*. Upon the third Day after the Nuptials *Conſtantine* dy'd, after he had liv'd ſomething more than Seventy Years, and had been Emperor without a Collegue almoſt three, *A. D.* 1028.

ROMANUS II.

Romanus, being thus beyond Expectation rais'd to the Imperial Dignity, at firſt behav'd himſelf like an active careful Prince. He releas'd the People of many Taxes, with which ſeveral of his Predeceſſors, eſpecially *Conſtantine*, had burden'd 'em, and recommended himſelf by ſeveral Acts of Grace and Royal Favours. His Liberality to the Church was extraordinary, as was likewiſe

Romanus *his firſt Actions.*

wiſe his Indulgence to thoſe who had been taken Priſoners in the late Wars, and were detain'd in Captivity; for he generouſly releas'd 'em at his own Expence, and gave thoſe, who were in Neceſſity, a comfortable Subſiſtance at their Return home: During the whole Reign of his Predeceſſor, the Empire was infeſted with a moſt grievous Drought; but now, as if Divine Providence had been aton'd by theſe Acts of Charity, the Earth was again refreſh'd by ſeaſonable Rains, which produc'd an abundance of all Fruits, eſpecially of Oil.

The Affairs in the Eaſt. But whilſt the People at *Conſtantinople* were congratulating their new Emperor for his auſpicious Reign, the *Roman* Intereſt receiv'd a great Blow from the Arms of the *Saracens* in the Eaſt, which was chiefly owing to the Indiſcretion of *Spondyles*, whom *Conſtantine* had made Governor of *Antioch*. The Emperor *Nicephorus*, as has been obſerv'd before, very much enlarg'd the Borders of the Empire in *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, where he recover'd moſt of the Cities, and his Succeſſor *Zimiſces* purſu'd the Conqueſt as far as *Damaſcus*. The Beginning of *Baſilius* his Reign was buſied in the Civil Wars, and they were ſucceeded by that with the *Bulgarians*, in which he was ſo wholly employ'd, that the Eaſtern Parts lay neglected, which encourag'd the *Saracens* to prepare for ſome Action, tho' they attempted nothing whilſt that Emperor liv'd; but under the diſſolute Government of his Succeſſor they openly declar'd themſelves, whereupon the chief Cities in the Eaſt threw off the Yoke, and, aſſerting their Liberty, maſſacred all the Soldiers that were Garriſon'd among 'em. None appear'd more active in this Revolution than the Governor or Caliph of *Berraa*, who by his continu'd Incurſions grievouſly infeſted *Antioch*, and the adjacent Country. *Spondyles* endeavour'd in ſeveral Engagements to reſtrain him, but being conſtantly worſted by him, he return'd with much Diſhonour into the City, where he was over-reach'd by the Subtilty of *Aſaraptius*, a Captive *Arabian*, who, perceiving his Vanity

The Saracens *revolt.*

Vanity and Indiſcretion, undertook to perform mighty Matters againſt the *Saracens*, if he might but be ſet at Liberty, and particularly ſhow'd *Spondyles* a Plat of Ground, whereon if he might be permitted to build a Fort, he promis'd to make it eminently ſerviceable to the Emperor. *Spondyles* readily believ'd what the *Arabian* had advanc'd; and having given him his Liberty committed the Building of the Fort to his Care; and when it was finiſh'd Garriſon'd it with a thouſand Men under the Command of *Aſaraptius*, who, having thus accompliſh'd his Ends, maintain'd a Correſpondence with the General of the *Saracens*, who ſent him a Body of Men to whom he ſurrender'd the Caſtle, having firſt, by their Aſſiſtance, put all the Garriſon to the Sword.

The Emperor's Expedition againſt 'em.

Hereupon the Emperor, having remov'd *Spondyles* from his Command, reſolv'd upon an Expedition in Perſon againſt the Infidels, with a purpoſe to redeem, if poſſible, ſo much Loſs and Diſgrace, and proſecute the War with Vigour. But before he was advanc'd far on his Way the *Saracens*, upon a Report of his mighty Preparations, ſent their Meſſengers with Preſents from *Berraa* to ask Pardon for what was paſt, and promiſe to return to their former Obedience, and faithfully pay their uſual Tribute for the future. Thoſe of moſt Experience in the Army advis'd *Romanus* to accept of their Submiſſion, and proceed no farther, alledging, among other Reaſons, that in the Summer time *Syria* ſtood much in want of Water; that the *Saracens*, being accuſtom'd to it, could endure both Heat and Thirſt; but that the *Romans*, being loaden with their heavy Armour, could ſupport themſelves under neither. *Romanus* had done wiſely had he liſten'd to theſe Remonſtrances, but being poſſeſs'd with a Vanity of the great Honour he ſhould acquire, he rejected the Meſſengers with Diſdain, and proceeded on in his Expedition. Being enter'd into *Syria* he detach'd a Party, who were to obſerve the Motions of the Enemy, and diſcover where-

abouts

abouts the Army might moſt commodiouſly encamp. This Party fell unhappily into an Ambuſcade laid deſignedly for 'em, and were all cut off; with which Succeſs the *Saracens* were ſo encourag'd, that they intercepted thoſe of the *Romans* that were ſent out to Forage; and knowing well enough in what their greateſt Want conſiſted, cut off their Supplies of Water, by which means the Army was in time reduc'd to the laſt Extremity. *Conſtantinus Delaſſenus*, who had lately before been nam'd by ſome to ſucceed *Conſtantine* the late Emperor, was ſent out with a ſufficient Power to reſtrain the *Saracens*, and cover the Foragers; but he being a Man of a weak cowardly Spirit, ran back in great Confuſion at the firſt Appearance of the Enemy, and ſtruck the reſt of the Army with ſuch Conſternation, that every Man conſider'd how he might beſt ſecure himſelf, and in a Council of War it was reſolv'd to decamp, and march to *Antioch*. Accordingly, as ſoon as it was Light, the whole Army broke up, and in a weak and ſickly Condition began to march. The *Arabians*, who were very well inform'd of the State they were in, Way-laid 'em; and having drawn 'em into a Place convenient for their purpoſe, fell with great Violence upon 'em, whilſt the *Romans*, ready to expire without the Aſſiſtance of an Enemy, ran ſhamefully away, and were either taken or kill'd by the Purſuers, or born down and trodden to pieces by their Fellows. The Emperor himſelf, being courageouſly defended by his own Guards, eſcap'd with much difficulty to *Antioch*, where he found time to reflect on the ill Succeſs of his raſh and unfortunate Undertaking. The Enemy got all the Emperor's Baggage, which they might have carry'd off without any Oppoſition, had they not been over-reach'd by a Stratagem of their own deviſing. *George Maniaces*, a *Macedonian*, was at that time Governor of a ſmall Province, and a Town of no little Importance for the Emperor in thoſe Parts; hither eight hundred of the *Saracens*, loaden with the rich Plunder of the Emperor's Camp, came, after

The Roman Army deſtroy'd.

after the Purſuit was over, and ſummon'd *Maniaces* to ſurrender, affirming that the Emperor himſelf was taken, his Army totally defeated, and that it was impoſſible for him to hold out againſt the reſolute Conquerors; to confirm what they with ſo much Confidence had alledg'd, they ſhow'd him their rich Booty, and promis'd him mighty Favours upon Condition he would ſubmit, otherwiſe that he muſt expect nothing but an inevitable Deſtruction. *Maniaces*, either doubtful of the Truth of what they had affirm'd, or reſolv'd to ſell the City as dear as he could, ſeem'd to give Credit to their Information; and having thank'd 'em for their kind Advice, he ſent 'em out a great quantity of Proviſions, with which he deſir'd 'em to refreſh themſelves that Night, and promis'd to deliver up the Town to 'em as ſoon as it was Light. The Infidels believ'd all he ſaid, and without any Diſtruſt eat and drunk to that exceſs, that when *Maniaces* iſſu'd out at Midnight, as he had before determin'd, he found 'em drunk and aſleep, and kill'd 'em all before they were able to make the leaſt Reſiſtance. After which he took two hundred and eighty Camels loaden with the rich Effects of the late Victory, all which he preſented to the Emperor, who by that time was got into *Cappadocia*, and was ſo ſenſible of this ſeaſonable piece of Service, that he made *Maniaces* Captain or Governor of the Lower *Media*. After this he return'd very dejected to *Conſtantinople*, where, as if his late Succeſs had diſcourag'd him from any Warlike Attempts for the future, he buſied himſelf in ſevere Exactions, and oppreſſing his Subjects at home. He renew'd his Claim to old Debts, thought to have been bury'd in utter Oblivion, and proceeded with ſo inexorable a Rigour in the Recovery of 'em, that many Perſons of noble Families and large Inheritances were driven from their Eſtates, and conſtrain'd to beg their Bread from Door to Door. Tho' the Mony, rais'd from theſe Claims, ought to have been lodg'd in the Publick Treaſury, where it was due, yet was that and

Romanus *his great Severity.*

other immenſe Sums, by which the Exchequer was exhauſted, conſum'd in expenſive Buildings, and beſtow'd on Monks, on whom he conferr'd whole Cities and Provinces at once; and they being thus enrich'd by the Profuſe and Superſtitious Emperor, renounc'd the Auſterities of Life to which they were by Vow engag'd, and grew Voluptuous, Proud and Effeminate.

Theſe Proceedings of the Emperor rais'd a general Diſcontent in the People, which gave a Beginning to ſeveral Plots and Commotions in the State. *Conſtantine*, the late Emperor, left behind him two Daughters beſide *Zoe* the Empreſs. The eldeſt of which, call'd *Eudocia*, having been disfigur'd by the Plague, turn'd Nun; and *Theodora*, the youngeſt, refuſing to marry *Romanus*, either becauſe he was too near a Kin to her, as ſhe pretended, or for that his firſt Wife, of whom mention has been made before, was ſtill alive, afterwards gave Life to ſeveral Plots and Undertakings againſt him, for which Treaſon *Zoe* the Empreſs had her ſhaven, conſtrain'd her to turn Nun, and confin'd her to a Monaſtery, from whence we ſhall ſee her remov'd hereafter, to appear cloath'd in the Imperial Purple.

A great Plague. At the ſame time that the Court was diſtracted by theſe Fears and Jealouſies, ſo great a Plague and Famine rag'd throughout *Cappadocia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Armenia*, and ſeveral other Provinces, that the Inhabitants were forc'd to leave their Dwellings, and diſperſe themſelves into other Parts of the Empire. This was ſucceeded by a terrible Earthquake, and that by a Comet which paſs'd from the North towards the South with a terrible Noiſe, and ſeem'd to inflame the whole Horizon. And indeed the Hiſtories of theſe Times are full of ſurprizing Prodigies, which for ſeveral Years together ſeem'd to threaten the Empire, and denounce the Wrath of Heav'n againſt it. Tho' *Romanus* his Forces proſper'd abroad, and obtain'd ſeveral conſiderable Advantages over the Infidels near *Babylon* in *Egypt*, and againſt the *African Saracens*, whoſe Fleet was deſtroy'd by *Nicephorus Carentenus*,

rentenus, his Admiral; yet theſe Domeſtick Misfortunes made him reflect on his paſt Actions, and inclin'd him to Works of Mercy and Compaſſion. He re-edify'd the Hoſpitals near *Conſtantinople*, erected for the Relief of the Poor, and that had been deſtroy'd by the late Earthquakes, and repairing the Aqueducts, ſupply'd the City with Water, of which it began to be in great want. The reſt of his time, which was not aſſign'd to theſe Acts of Charity, was employ'd in his Devotions, and Converſation with religious Perſons, whom he carefully reliev'd, protected and encourag'd; ſo that, in all probability, he would have dy'd univerſally lamented by his Subjects, whom he now labour'd to reconcile and oblige, had his Empreſs ſuffer'd him to live longer. He was ſixty Years of Age when he was firſt marry'd to her, notwithſtanding which he flatter'd himſelf with many Years to come, and the Happineſs of Children to ſucceed him. Accordingly at firſt he made uſe of Ointments and other Expedients, that might enable him to meet her with a vigorous Heat, and omitted no Arts to make himſelf ſtrong, and prepare her for Conception. The Empreſs, being of a hot and amorous Conſtitution, made uſe of Charms and Inchantments to provoke and allure him; but when he found all his Endeavours prov'd ineffectual, he totally declin'd ſuch Conjugal Viſits, being by Nature averſe, and by Age become incapable of thoſe Carnal Conflicts. The Empreſs, whilſt ſhe had no other Object to provoke her Luſt, bore with him patiently; but having at length caſt her Eyes on *Michael*, the Brother of *John*, an Eunuch in great Authority with the Emperor, an adulterate Heat incens'd her againſt him, and provok'd her ſhortly after to remove him out of the Way. The Account we have of this Action ſhows us how ungovernable Women are in their Luſt, when they are abandon'd to it; for tho' *Zoe* hated *John* to the laſt degree, yet had ſhe no ſooner entertain'd a Paſſion for *Michael*, but ſhe quitted her former Reſentments, and frequently entertain'd a familiar A. D. 1034.

liar Converſation with him, tho' for no other reaſon, but that ſhe might have an Opportunity of bringing his Brother, who, through the Eunuch's Intereſt, was made one of the Bed-Chamber, into the Diſcourſe. *John* was at firſt ſurpriz'd at this unuſual Condeſcenſion in the Empreſs; but when he found, from repeated Obſervations, that his Brother was ſtill the darling Topick of her Converſation, he acquainted him with what he had obſerv'd, and advis'd him, if ever ſhe apply'd her ſelf familiarly to him, to receive her with the Air of a Lover, and never recede 'till he had won the laſt Favour from her, which, he thought, might with little or no Difficulty be obtain'd. *Michael*, thus inſtructed, found an eaſie Conqueſt, and their Amours grew at firſt the Diſcourſe of the Court, and afterwards of the whole City, the Emperor himſelf, as it is uſual in thoſe Caſes, being the laſt that entertain'd any Suſpicion of it. Some ſay he tax'd *Michael* with it, who ſolemnly upon Oath deny'd it; for which Perjury he was ſaid to be ſtruck with a terrible Diſeaſe, being ſeiz'd with a Frenzy, and dreadful Convulſions at his Eyes, which made him pity'd by the Emperor, who ſuſpected him no longer, but thought him a very unfit Perſon to allure an Empreſs to his Embraces. Others ſay *Romanus* was throughly convinc'd of their Intrigues, but knowing, from Experience, how wantonly the Empreſs was inclin'd, wink'd at her Practices, leſt he ſhould provoke her to be more infamouſly a Proſtitute. However it were, this Impunity coſt the aged Emperor his Life; for *Zoe*, grown impatient of being any longer confin'd in her Amours, which ſhe was forc'd to manage ſecretly and in fear, reſolv'd, by the Death of the Emperor, to make way for a more open and avow'd Enjoyment of 'em, and for that purpoſe gave him a Poiſon, which working ſlowly ſeiz'd him inſenſibly, and by degrees deſtroy'd him. As it began to work his Face ſwell'd, and was diſcolour'd; his Hair fell off, and he labour'd under a Difficulty of Reſpiration. Tho'

Romanus poiſon'd by the Empreſs.

Zoe

Zoe had no reaſon to diſtruſt the Effects of her Phyſick, yet was ſhe ſo impatient, that ſhe order'd her Creatures, appointed to that purpoſe, to Stifle him on the eleventh, or, as ſome ſay, on the fifteenth of *April*, by holding his Head under Water, as he was refreſhing himſelf in a Bath, out of which he was remov'd to his Bed Speechleſs, but not quite dead. Thither the Empreſs haſten'd with an affected Lamentation to bewail the Loſs ſhe had her ſelf procur'd, and left him not 'till ſhe ſaw him breathe his laſt, after he had reign'd five Years and ſix Months, *A. D.* 1034. *Is ſtifled in a Bath.*

Romanus had in his Youth apply'd himſelf to Learning, and had a good taſte of the old *Greek* Authors, and ſome Knowledge of the Civil Laws, and for that reaſon he appear'd a great Encourager of learned Men after his Advancement to the Imperial Dignity, of which he ſeem'd more worthy before his Creation, than capable after he was elected. Tho' for his many Acts of Juſtice and Charity, as well at the Beginning as the latter End of his Reign, he is deſervedly to be number'd among thoſe who govern'd well; he might, in all probability, have been happier, as he would undoubtedly have liv'd longer, in a private State; but ſhe, who gave him the Empire, procur'd him likewiſe his Death, not more to the Detriment of the State than her own Shame and Diſgrace. *His Character.*

The Emperor being dead, whilſt the Paſſion of our Saviour, or the Office appointed for *Good-Friday*, was celebrated in the Church, *Alexius* the Patriarch, ignorant of what had been tranſacted at Court, was ſent for thither in great haſte, as by Command from *Romanus*, whom, at his coming, he found dead; and being introduc'd to *Zoe* ſhe commanded him to marry her to *Michael*. The Patriarch, ſurpriz'd at the Novelty, as well as Heinouſneſs of the thing, ſtood ſilent for ſome time, and declin'd the Office, 'till *John* and the Empreſs preſented him with fifty Pounds of Gold, and gave as much more to his Clergy, and ſo prevail'd upon him to comply. By this means *Michael* was advanc'd to MICHAEL IV.

Michael *the* Paphlagonian, *made Emperor.*

the Throne, and was Partner with *Zoe* not only in the Bed, but in the Imperial Power, which *Zoe* at first thought to reserve entire to her self, and to be absolute in the Empire. Of this *John* the Eunuch, *Michael's* Brother, who knew the ambitious, as well as amorous Temper of *Zoe*, was seasonably aware, and therefore reflecting on *Romanus* his Fate, he suddenly remov'd all the Women, in whom she had any Confidence, from her; he dismiss'd all the Eunuchs, and substituted his own assur'd Friends, and most intimate Acquaintance in their Places, by which means she was confin'd in a manner as to a Prison, being able to do nothing of the least Moment without his Knowledge and Approbation.

When the Eunuch had thus, as it were, disarm'd her, and prevented her from doing any Mischief at home, he dispatch'd his Letters into the Provinces, by which the Governors were acquainted with the Death of *Romanus*, and the Succession of *Michael*, who, he said, was by common Consent marry'd to *Zoe* the late Emperor's Widow. None of the Great Men seem'd displeas'd at this Alteration, but *Constantinus Delassenus*, of whom mention has been made already, who being one of the first Quality in the Empire, was highly offended that a Man of *Michael's* obscure Birth should be preferr'd to others of the highest Rank and Deserts. *John*, knowing the Interest as well as the Ambition of *Delassenus*, endeavour'd by all means to gain him, and at length, after much Diffidence on the one side, and Promises, Presents, Oaths, and Asseverations on the other, prevail'd with him to come to Court, where he was very kindly receiv'd at first, but shortly after was banish'd, upon a form'd Accusation, into the Island *Prota*; from thence he was remov'd to a strong Tower, where he was confin'd 'till after the Banishment of *Michael Calaphates*, when *Zoe* the Empress sent for him to Court. At the same time *John* remov'd and confin'd such others, in whom he thought he could not safely confide; amongst the rest *Constantinus Monomachus*, who, when in his turn he came to be Emperor, remem-

ber'd

ber'd in what manner he had proceeded againſt him. Having thus remov'd thoſe, whom he thought ill affected to his Family, he committed the Government of the Provinces, and the Charge of Civil Affairs to none but Eunuchs. *Maniaces*, whom the late Emperor had made Governor of *Edeſſa*, was remov'd to the Upper *Media*, leſt continuing long in one Place, his Intereſt might in time grow ſo ſtrong as to render him formidable to the Emperor. *Nicetas*, the Emperor's Brother, was made Governor of *Antioch*, where dying ſhortly after, he was ſucceeded by his other Brother *Conſtantine*, enrich'd with the Eſtates of three of the moſt wealthy Men in *Aſia*, who had been baniſh'd upon a pretence of holding a Treaſonable Correſpondence with *Delaſſenus*. For all this while the ſupream Power reſted in *John*, tho' the Name of Emperor was reſerv'd to *Michael*, who, beſides the ill Condition of his Body, began to be diſtemper'd in his Mind, and conſcious of the great Sin he had committed in the Murther of *Romanus*, he apply'd himſelf wholly to his Devotions, hoping, by Acts of Piety and Liberality to the Poor, to expiate his great Offence; tho', as the Writers of thoſe Times obſerve, all he did upon that Account could profit him little or nothing, ſince he ſtill lay in the Arms of the Adultereſs, and enjoy'd the Price of Murder and Treaſon. When *John* obſerv'd the dangerous Condition of his Brother's Health, he concluded, if he dy'd, the Empreſs, upon the Recovery of her Authority, would gratifie her Revenge with the Ruin of him and all his Family, if ſome Expedient was not found out to prevent it. At his Inſtigation therefore the Emperor promoted *Michael*, Sirnam'd *Calaphates*, his Siſter's Son, to the Dignity of *Cæſar*, and baniſh'd all the Brothers and Relations of *Delaſſenus*, ſo jealous was *John* grown of that Man.

John *the Eunuch, Brother to the Emperor, governs all.*

All this while *Zoe* the Empreſs was highly provok'd at the Reſtraint put upon her, and looking on *John* as no other than her Goaler, endeavour'd to get rid of

A. D. 1036. him by Poiſon, but the Deſign was diſcover'd before it could be executed, and ſerv'd only to admoniſh *John* to ſtand more upon his Guard for the future. This happen'd in the third Year of this Emperor's Reign, which was remarkable for a Truce of thirty Years concluded betwixt him and the *Egyptian Saracens*, whoſe Caliph being lately dead, his Widow is ſaid to have embrac'd Chriſtianity, together with her Son, and to have offer'd Peace to the *Romans*. The Year following was no leſs remarkable for three ſeveral Earthquakes, which did great Miſchief in ſeveral Parts of the Empire; and for the Attempt of the *Saracens* upon the City of *Edeſſa*, which narrowly eſcap'd falling into their Hands. Twelve of the Principal Men of their Nation came to the Governor of that City with five hundred Horſe, and as many Camels, all loaden with heavy Boxes: They pretended the Boxes contain'd Preſents, which they were carrying to the Emperor, and deſir'd they might be admitted into the Town. The Governor entertain'd the twelve Perſons with great Civility at a Feaſt, but, knowing the deceitful Practices of that Nation, refus'd to receive the Horſemen and Camels into the City, which was preſerv'd by this Diffidence; for there was no leſs than twelve thouſand arm'd Men conceal'd in thoſe Boxes, who were order'd in the dead of Night to get into the Caſtle, and, having kill'd the Sentinels, they were to ſecure both that and the Town. The Deſign being diſcover'd to the Governor by a poor *Armenian*, he left the Feaſt on a ſudden, and taking a ſufficient Force with him, ſeiz'd on the *Saracens* as they lay without the Town, and kill'd every one of 'em upon the Spot: After which he return'd to his Gueſts, who met with much the ſame Treatment from him, for he ſpar'd but one, whom having depriv'd of his Hand, Ears, and Noſe, he ſent him home in that Condition to give his Countrymen an Account of their Succeſs. All this while *Zoe* enjoy'd ſmall Fruits of her late unnatural Treaſon and Adultery; for beſides that *John* obſerv'd

A Deſign of the Saracens *upon* Edeſſa *prevented.*

ſerv'd her with a wary Eye, and reſtrain'd the natural Impetuoſity of her Spirit; the Emperor's Diſtemper had by this time prevail'd ſo much upon him, that he was not only grown infirm, and incapable of concurring with her wanton Deſires, but ſo alter'd in his Perſon, which was at firſt exceeding beautiful, that he was now deform'd and loathſome. This ſerv'd only to augment the great Authority of *John*, *Zoe*'s moſt implacable Adverſary; for whilſt the Emperor, who beſides his old Diſtemper was now grievouſly afflicted with a Dropſie, abandon'd himſelf to Acts of Penitence and Devotion, *John* govern'd the Empire with an unlimited Power, which he made uſe of to the Oppreſſion and Impoveriſhment of the People, and the Aggrandizing his own Family. And as if theſe Calamities were not ſufficient to humble and correct a guilty People, terrible Earthquakes and deſtructive Tempeſts ſeem'd to ſhake the Foundations of the Earth, which, tho' horrible and amazing in themſelves, ſeem'd to bring this Comfort with them, that they denounc'd the approaching Fall of the Tyrants. Theſe Domeſtick Calamities were follow'd by others from abroad, which were like to have prov'd fatal to the Empire; for the *Bulgarians* revolted the very ſame Year, and threw off their Allegiance. A Citizen of *Conſtantinople* had in his Service a *Bulgarian*, call'd *Deleanus*, or *Dolianus*, who running from his Maſter upon ſome Provocations given him, eſcap'd into *Bulgaria*, where he confidently affirm'd he was the Son of *Gabriel*, and Grandſon to *Samuel*, late King of that Country; being a Man of a ready Wit and perſonable Appearance, the giddy *Bulgarians*, grown weary of the Yoke to which they had but lately ſubmitted, receiv'd him with joyful Acclamations, and proclaim'd him King, cruelly murdering all the *Romans* that had the Misfortune to fall into their Hands. This Inſurrection was follow'd by a Revolt of the Inhabitants of *Dyrrachium* in *Albania*, occaſion'd by an unſeaſonable Quarrel betwixt

The Bulgarians *revolt, and proclaim* Dolianus *King*;

Michael

Michael Dermocaitas, a Tribune in the Army, and *Baſilius Synademus*, Governor of that City. For as he was marching out againſt the *Bulgarians* with the Forces garriſon'd in that Place, the Contention was carry'd ſo high between 'em, that the Tribune accus'd *Synademus* of Treaſon at Court; whereupon he was ſeiz'd by Order from the Emperor, and ſent Priſoner to *Theſſalonica*, and the Accuſer was preferr'd to the Government of *Dyrrachium* in his ſtead; in which he behav'd himſelf with ſo much Inſolence, and oppreſs'd the Inhabitants with ſuch cruel Exactions, that they roſe up againſt him, and forc'd him out of the Town. When this was done, and they began to conſider how the Matter would be reſented by the Emperor, deſpairing of Pardon they openly revolted, and choſe *Teichomere*, a Soldier of great Reputation among them, for their King.

and the Inhabitants of Dyrrachium *make choice of* Teichomere *for their King,*

This unexpected Election at firſt very much ſurpriz'd *Deleanus* and his Adherents, for there were now two great Factions in *Bulgaria*, and neither of 'em very likely to attain their Ends, but rather to effect each other's Ruin. Of this *Deleanus* was very ſenſible, and therefore endeavour'd to obtain that by Artifice, which Fortune ſeem'd to deny to more open Attempts. Accordingly he ſent *Teichomere* a very obliging Letter, in which he told him how well pleas'd he ſhould be to have him for his Collegue, and earneſtly invited him to come and ſhare the Sovereignty with him. *Teichomere*, who had more of the Soldier than Stateſman, believ'd him ſincere in his Profeſſions, and went without any diſtruſt and join'd with him. When *Deleanus* had thus got him, as he thought, into his Power, he watch'd his Opportunity, and in a form'd Speech, which he made to the Soldiers, he told 'em, *He was of Opinion* Bulgaria *would not admit of two Kings together, and that therefore they ought either to confirm his Election, who was deſcended from* Samuel, *and remove* Teichomere, *or if they thought him moſt worthy*

worthy then to eſtabliſh him. This Speech at firſt created a great Conteſt in the Army, by whom *Teichomere* was entirely belov'd; but at length *Deleanus* his Faction prevail'd, not only in the Choice of him for their King, but the Stoning of the unhappy *Teichomere*; by whoſe Death *Deleanus* being become abſolute without a Rival, he march'd with his Army towards *Theſſalonica*, where he heard the Emperor lay, who, upon the firſt Report of *Deleanus* his Approach, fled in a precipitate manner to *Conſtantinople*, leaving all his Baggage and Treaſure behind him to the care of *Manuel Ibatza*, one of his Domeſticks, who having Orders to follow with it after him, betray'd his Truſt, and carry'd it over to *Deleanus*, whoſe Party was ſtrengthen'd by ſome new Acceſſion almoſt every Day; ſo that in a ſhort time he took not only *Dyrrachium*, and the Territories adjoining to it, but almoſt the whole Province of *Nicopolis*, whilſt *John* the Eunuch, inſtead of preventing the ill Conſequences of ſuch a Revolution, and providing Forces to oppoſe and ſuppreſs the Uſurper, grew more licentious in his Exactions, and diſguſted moſt of thoſe who had the Power or Will to ſerve the Emperor. Among theſe was *Aluſianus*, the Son of *Aaron*, and Brother to *John*, the laſt King of *Bulgaria*, who, when that Country ſubmitted to *Baſilius*, was kindly receiv'd by the Emperor, and gratify'd with the Dignity of a Patrician; but now, being accus'd of ſome unjuſt Proceedings, he was forbidden the Court 'till his Cauſe could be brought to an Hearing, and oblig'd to pay a great Sum of Gold to *John*, who moreover forc'd a beautiful Woman from him, whom he had kept ſecretly in the Country, and for whom he had a very extraordinary Paſſion, which incens'd him more than all the reſt; wherefore cloathing himſelf in an *Armenian* Habit he got undiſcover'd into *Bulgaria*, where the generality of the People receiv'd him with great Demonſtrations of Joy, and *Deleanus* careſs'd him outwardly with much

who is ſton'd to Death.

much Tenderneſs, but was inwardly offended at the Preſence of one, who was a real Deſcendant of that Family of which he pretended himſelf a Member. Obſerving how entirely the Soldiers appear'd affected to him, and how much his Greatneſs was like to be eclips'd, he thought it the wiſeſt way to make a voluntary Offer, and ſhare that Dominion with him, to which he appear'd to have the ſole Right. *Aluſianus* being therefore receiv'd as his Collegue, was inſtantly ſent at the Head of forty thouſand Men to beſiege *Theſſalonica*, which however *Conſtantine* the Patrician, and Kinſman to the Emperor, defended with ſo much Conduct and Reſolution, that he was in the end forc'd to raiſe the Siege, and leave fifteen thouſand of his Men dead behind him.

This Defeat ripen'd the Jealouſies and Diſtaſte that had been already conceiv'd between the two Competitors, for *Deleanus* would aſcribe the late Overthrow to nothing but Treachery, and *Aluſianus* grew more peeviſh and untractable from the ſenſe of his Diſgrace, ſo that each in private meditated nothing but the Deſtruction of the other; and *Aluſianus* having invited his Collegue to an Entertainment firſt made him drunk, and then pluck'd out his Eyes; immediately after which, being doubtful of his own Intereſt, and the fickle Humour of the *Bulgarians*, he ſent to *Michael*, promiſing to ſubmit and return to his Obedience, upon Condition of a Pardon, and ſuch a Reward as his Service might be thought to deſerve, which was readily granted him by the Emperor, who had reſolv'd in Perſon to make an Expedition into *Bulgaria*, affirming, *It was a Shame for him to ſuffer any Part of the Empire to be torn from it, who during his whole Reign had added nothing to it:* But his Dropſie had now ſo far prevail'd upon him, that his Friends adviſ'd him to deſiſt from it, and truſt the Expedition to the Management of ſome other, which however ſerv'd only to quicken him, and make him more earneſt in his Preparations;

rations; ſo that being enter'd into the Country, the *Bulgarians*, who were now without a Head to adviſe and command 'em, diſpers'd themſelves, and in a very ſhort time return'd to their Obedience, after which the Emperor return'd in Triumph to *Conſtantinople*; where perceiving, by the Prevalence of his Diſeaſe, that his Death approach'd, he diveſted himſelf of the Imperial Purple, caſt off all Cares of State, and, being ſhaven for a Monk, enter'd into a Monaſtery of his own Building, where he gave himſelf wholly up to Religious Exerciſes and Acts of Penitence, in which he appear'd very ſincere, devoutly lamenting his paſt Sins, eſpecially the Murder of *Romanus*. He continu'd in this Temper of Mind 'till Death put an end to his Devotions on the tenth Day of *December*, after he had reign'd ſeven Years and eight Months, *A. D.* 1041.

Michael *quits the Empire, and turns Monk;*

and dies.

As the Murder of *Romanus* ought to be charg'd upon *John*, rather than on *Michael*, who appears to have been naturally a religious and conſcientious Man, ſo muſt the Severities, with which his Reign is juſtly tax'd, be aſcrib'd to the ſame Inſtrument. It may properly be call'd the Reign of Eunuchs, ſince few or none were entruſted with the Management of Affairs but they; and certainly no Prince, who of himſelf had a tender regard to the Welfare of his Subjects, was ever ſerv'd with worſe Miniſters. As he was notorious for his great Sins of Adultery and Treaſon, ſo was he in as high a degree commendable for his exemplary Repentance, and is an Inſtance to us, that the greateſt Enjoyments upon Earth cannot ſoften the Stings of a guilty Conſcience.

Michael being dead the Empire devolv'd upon *Zoe*, who, finding the weight of Affairs too heavy for her to ſupport without an Aſſiſtant, was eaſily perſuaded to adorn *Michael Calaphates*, the late Emperor's Nephew, with the Imperial Purple. *Michael* had been created *Cæſar* by his Uncle, as has been before obſerv'd;

MICHAEL CALAPHATES. A. D. 1041.

ſerv'd; and ſome affirm, that the Empreſs *Zoe* adopted him the ſame time for her Son. At the time when the late Emperor withdrew into the Monaſtery he was abſent, having receiv'd Orders from his Uncle, who ſeem'd to repent of what he had done in his Behalf, not to come near the Court, or the Imperial City, without leave firſt obtain'd for that purpoſe. But *Michael* having reſign'd the Purple, his Brothers ſent immediately for the Nephew to return; and he, by an artful Management, ſo far inſinuated himſelf into *Zoe*'s good Opinion, that ſhe liſten'd to the Advice of thoſe who perſuaded her to make him Emperor; tho' for her own Security ſhe firſt remov'd *John* and his Brother, together with ſuch others as had appear'd the moſt active againſt her in the late Reign.

Calaphates made Emperor,

The World expected mighty Advantages from this Advancement of *Michael*; for he had the Reputation of an active induſtrious Man, but he quickly deceiv'd the Hopes his Subjects had conceiv'd of him, and prov'd a cruel, ungrateful, and degenerate Prince. His firſt Proceedings were againſt thoſe of his own Family; for tho' at firſt he ſeem'd to liſten to the Advice of his Uncle *John*, notwithſtanding he had been remov'd by *Zoe*, yet in the end, after he had affronted him ſeveral times in a very high manner, he ſent him into Baniſhment; he acted with the ſame Severity againſt his other Relations, cauſing both Husbands and Fathers to be made Eunuchs, without any Regard had to their Age or Circumſtances. Only his Uncle *Conſtantine* he recall'd with *Zoe*'s leave, and communicated all his Councils to him, and was directed by him. This unnatural Behaviour to his own Family could be exceeded by nothing but his Ingratitude to *Zoe*, whom he reduc'd to a private State, pretending ſhe was guilty of Witchcraft and Sorcery, and that ſhe had attempted to take away his Life.

who depoſes Zoe;

Tho' he thought, by theſe plauſible Suggeſtions, to ſatisfie the Minds of the People, yet they having a great

great Veneration for *Zoe*, upon the Account of her high Birth, and judging the Empire juſtly deſcended to her by Hereditary Right, were generally diſcontented; and obſerving *Michael* wallow'd in his ſenſual Pleaſures, without any regard to the high Dignity he bore, they broke out into a general Sedition, and reſolv'd every Man to venture his Life in the Vindication of her, who they thought was us'd unworthily. *Michael*, the ſame time that he remov'd *Zoe*, threaten'd to depoſe *Alexius* the Patriarch, as conſenting to her Deſigns, who, as ſoon as he was inform'd of it, fled into the Great Church, whither all the old Eunuchs, and other Officers that had ſerv'd under *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine* repair'd, where, with an unanimous Conſent, they ſent for *Theodora* out of the Monaſtery, where ſhe had been confin'd, and in the Church ſaluted her Empreſs, together with her Siſter *Zoe*; whilſt *Michael*, obſerving how reſolutely the People were bent againſt him, withdrew with his Brother into a Monaſtery, where they both took the Religious Habit, thinking thereby to evade the Fury of the enrag'd Multitude, who notwithſtanding were all reſolv'd upon their Deaths; but the great Diſpute amongſt 'em was what manner of Deaths they ſhould die. Whilſt they were buſied in this Diſpute, *Zoe*, forgetting with how much Indignity ſhe had been us'd by the Family, and perhaps a little compaſſionate to a Creature of her own raiſing, mov'd for their Lives; but *Theodora*, reſenting her long Impriſonment, and eager to expreſs her Anger againſt the firſt Object that preſented it ſelf, at firſt adher'd to thoſe who were for nailing 'em to a Pole; and when ſhe found that Point could not be carry'd, ſhe mov'd that their Eyes might be pluck'd out, to which at length all agreed, and Orders were given to *Capanares*, Prefect of the City, to ſee it executed. When the unhappy Princes heard of the Meſſengers Approach, and to what purpoſe they were ſent, they withdrew into the moſt ſecret Parts of the Church, dedi-

and is himſelf depos'd.

dedicated to the Memory of St. *John* the Baptiſt, from whence however the implacable Multitude dragg'd 'em, and pull'd their Eyes out in the *Forum*. *Conſtantine* behav'd himſelf with a very even Temper, but *Michael*, with great Reluctancy and Lamentation, deſir'd his Uncle, who had been the Author of all thoſe Evils of which they complain'd, might firſt be puniſh'd for 'em, which was granted accordingly. After this *Michael* was baniſh'd with all his Relations, after a tumultuary Reign of ſomething more than four Months.

Zoe, being thus reinſtated in her Authority, remov'd all ſuch as had been in greateſt Truſt with the late Tyrants, and preferr'd thoſe who had ſerv'd her Father and her Uncle, or been diſgrac'd by *John* during his Adminiſtration, amongſt whom was *John Maniaces*, of whom mention has been made before, who had been clapp'd up in Priſon during the late Adminiſtration, but was now made General of the Weſtern Forces. Tho' Matters had herein been manag'd with the general Approbation of all, yet the State ſeem'd not perfectly ſettled in the Opinion of the People, 'till they had an Emperor to obey, who being lawfully marry'd to *Zoe* might put an end to all Competition, and have a Right to command over 'em. *Zoe* was as willing to marry as the People were to ſee her marry'd, ſo that after a Trial of ſome others, who did not appear fit for her purpoſe, ſhe made choice of *Conſtantinus Monomachus*, a Perſon of noble Extraction and beautiful Aſpect. He had been baniſh'd during the Reign of *Michael* into the Iſland of *Lesbos*, either at the Inſtigation of *John* the Eunuch, or for that the Emperor miſtruſted there was too great an Intimacy between him and the Empreſs; from *Lesbos* *John* afterwards order'd him to be remov'd to *Metylene*, and from thence the Empreſs now ſent for him, and firſt marry'd, and then had him crown'd Emperor by the Hands of the Patriarch. *Monomachus*, as ſoon as he

CONSTANTINUS MONOMACHUS.

was

was advanc'd to the Imperial Dignity, endeavour'd by all means to oblige his Subjects, and ingratiate himſelf with the two Empreſſes. *John* the Eunuch he firſt confin'd to *Lesbos*, and ſhortly after, either at the Inſtigation of *Theodora* the Empreſs, or out of Reſentment for his own Confinement, he pluck'd out his Eyes, in a ſhort time after which *John* dy'd.

Tho' *Conſtantine* had immediately upon his Advancement done all that he thought requiſite for the Security of the State, and to render himſelf acceptable to his People, yet *George Maniaces*, at the beginning of his Reign, rais'd ſuch a powerful Intereſt againſt him, as ſeem'd at firſt to threaten him with unavoidable Deſtruction. *Conſtantine* had had a Miſtreſs, who had been a faithful Companion to him in all his Misfortunes, burning with an uncommon Paſſion towards him, and ſupplying him very liberally during his Exile; for being deſcended from the great *Sclerus* ſhe was Miſtreſs of a plentiful Fortune. The Emperor, who had been thus oblig'd by her, lov'd her with an equal Paſſion, and had not a more abſolute Command over his Subjects, than ſhe had over his Affections. She had a Brother whoſe Eſtate join'd to that of *Maniaces*, to whom he bore a Mortal Hatred, and who at that time was employ'd in the Emperor's Affairs in *Italy*, where he ſignaliz'd himſelf by his many Services. During his Abſence *Sclerus*, depending upon the great Intereſt his Siſter had in the Emperor, preſum'd not only to injure his Eſtate, but lay with his Wife; and that he might be ſure to give *Maniaces* a ſufficient Provocation, got him to be remov'd from his Command, and to have it conferr'd upon a Fellow altogether unworthy ſo great a Truſt. *Maniaces* was ſo enrag'd at theſe Proceedings, that having firſt ſecur'd the Forces under his Command to declare for him, and kill'd him who was deſign'd for his Succeſſor, he aſſum'd the Imperial Ornaments, and was ſaluted Emperor. After which he paſs'd over with his Army into *Bulgaria*, Maniaces *uſurps.*

where he was join'd by great Multitudes of the Male-contents in that Country.

Monomachus, as ſoon as he was inform'd of this Rebellion, ſent him Letters, in which he offer'd him and his Followers an Indemnity and Pardon for what was paſt, together with ſeveral conſiderable Rewards, provided they would lay down their Arms, and return to their Obedience. But when he found that *Maniaces*, who was animated more by the Spirit of Revenge than Ambition, would liſten to no Terms, but continu'd fix'd in his Reſolution, he ſent *Stephen Sebaſtophorus* at the Head of a very powerful Army againſt him, which was defeated, and totally broken at the firſt Engagement; whereupon *Maniaces* was univerſally acknowledg'd Emperor in the Field, and had, in all probability, given *Monomachus* a great deal of Trouble, had he not fallen ſuddenly dead from his Horſe, having receiv'd a Mortal Wound in his Breaſt from ſome unknown Hand. The Death of *Maniaces* put an end to the Rebellion, and all they of his Followers, who had been the moſt forward in it, were now the firſt that threw down their Arms, and return'd to their Obedience. They revil'd *Maniaces* as a Traitor, and having cut off his Head preſented it to *Stephen* the Emperor's General, who, tho' he had receiv'd a Defeat, yet had the Honour of a Triumph granted him at his Return to *Conſtantinople*.

The Troubles that this Civil War created were hardly compos'd, before the *Ruſſians*, who had for ſeveral Years together maintain'd a peaceable Correſpondence with the Emperor, broke the League, and threaten'd the City of *Conſtantinople* it ſelf. But the Emperor, having firſt, by repeated Meſſengers, offer'd 'em fair Conditions of Peace, which they arrogantly rejected, mann'd a ſtrong Fleet out againſt 'em, and fought 'em in the *Straits* about *Pharos*, where he obtain'd a compleat Victory over 'em, and in the End forc'd 'em to renew the Truce they had ſo injuriouſly broken.

The Ruſſians *overthrown.*

Mono-

Monomachus after this turn'd his Arms into the East, where he recover'd several Cities to the Empire, that the Connivance or Weakness of his Predecessors had suffer'd to be torn from it; and was pursuing the War with much Application and Success, when *Leo Tornicius*, who had been formerly Governor of *Iberia*, and was nearly related to the Emperor, escap'd out of a Monastery to which he had been confin'd, and assum'd the Imperial Purple. *Leo* was a Man of excellent Parts, and a very beautiful Aspect, which gain'd him the Love of all those who convers'd with him, especially of the *Macedonians*, among whom he had formerly resided; and there having been a Prophecy publish'd abroad, which promis'd he in time should be Emperor, the Expectations of most Men hung upon him. This made the Emperor view him with a jealous Eye, and when some People had undertaken to accuse him for some unwarrantable Proceedings in his Government of *Iberia*, *Monomachus* embrac'd the Opportunity; and having divested him of his Command had him shav'd, and constrain'd him to turn Monk. Notwithstanding which a Party of *Macedonians* took him one Night out of the Monastery, and conducted him to *Adrianople*, where, when by an unanimous Acclamation he had been saluted Emperor, he prepar'd to make good his Title, and march'd at the Head of a numerous Party towards *Constantinople* it self. *Monomachus* had lately, by some unpopular Act, very much disgusted the People, and *Leo* knew he was not very acceptable to the Soldiers, so that he thought he had great reason to hope the Citizens would open the Gates at his first Appearance, and receive him; but, contrary to his Expectation, he was so vigorously oppos'd, that he ran a great hazard of his Life, and found that several of his Accomplices fell off from him, and made their Peace with the Emperor; wherefore fearing lest some of 'em might deliver him up into his Hands he rais'd the Siege, and retreated to *Arcadiopolis*, where for some

Leo Tornicius usurps.

time he defended himſelf againſt the Forces the Em-
and is ſup-preſs'd. peror had ſent to reduce him, but was at length taken, and ſent bound to *Monomachus*, who commanded his Eyes to be pluck'd out, and after that baniſh'd him.

A. D. 1048. This Inſurrection being ſo happily ſuppreſs'd almoſt in its Birth, a more fatal Storm began at that time to threaten the Empire, which in the end fell with an invincible Violence upon it, and cruſh'd it to pieces. For the *Turks*, who had lately ſettled themſelves in *Perſia*, where *Tangrolipix* their Captain was declar'd Sultan, began now to turn their Arms againſt the Empire. After the *Saracens* had by a wonderful Progreſs not only overturn'd the *Perſian* Empire, but had ſubdu'd *Media*, *Babylon*, *Aſſyria*, *Egypt*, *Africk*, and a conſiderable Part of *Europe* it ſelf; this vaſt Empire was divided into ſeveral Parts, which were all govern'd by their reſpective Sultans or Commanders, who by degrees fell out among themſelves, and warr'd one with another. About the Year 1030 *Mahomet*, the Son, of *Imbrael*, was Sultan of *Perſia*; and he finding *Piſaſiris*, the Sultan of *Babylon*, againſt whom he had declar'd War, too ſtrong for him, requir'd the Aſſiſtance of the *Turks*, who were then ſettled in *Armenia* Major, into which they had pierc'd thro' the *Caſpian Straits* in the Year 844, where they liv'd a poor and contemptible Nation, 'till theſe Wars in *Perſia* gave 'em an Opportunity of aggrandizing their Nation. For three thouſand of theſe *Turks* being thus call'd in by *Mahomet*, went to his Aſſiſtance under the Conduct of *Tangrolipix*, a Man deſcended from one of the chief Families among 'em. *Mahomet*, being thus ſtrengthen'd by theſe Auxiliary Supplies, obtain'd an eaſie Conqueſt over the *Babylonians*; but when the *Turks*, who had now done the Buſineſs for which they came, requir'd their Wages, and leave to return home, he having a Mind to employ 'em longer againſt the *Indians*, with whom he was likewiſe at War, refus'd to let 'em go,

and

and threaten'd to puniſh 'em if they inſiſted upon it. The *Turks*, being juſtly provok'd at this Uſage, revolted from him, and withdrew into the Wilderneſs of *Carbonitis*, where ſeveral diſcontented *Perſians* united themſelves to 'em. *Mahomet* immediately ſent an Army of twenty thouſand Men againſt 'em, which *Tangrolipix* defeated; and having taken their Camp found many Chariots and Horſes, and good ſtore of Mony in it, with which he was enabled to purſue the War, and encourage ſuch as wou'd declare for him; by which means his Army was in a ſhort time encreas'd to fifty thouſand Men.

The Turks *conquer* Perſia.

Mahomet was ſo enrag'd at the Defeat of his Forces, that he put out the Eyes of thoſe that commanded 'em, and threaten'd the Soldiers that eſcap'd to cloath 'em like Women, and ignominiouſly to expoſe 'em. At the ſame time he rais'd a very numerous Army, with which he encounter'd *Tangrolipix* near *Iſpahan*, but fell off his Horſe as he was riding about to animate his Soldiers, and broke his Neck; whereupon both Armies, with a joint Conſent, declar'd *Tangrolipix* King of *Perſia*, and of all the late Sultan's Dominions.

Of which Tangrolipix *is declar'd Sultan*;

Tangrolipix, being thus promoted, open'd the Paſſage for the reſt of his Countrymen, who in prodigious Multitudes flock'd over the *Araxes*, a River that divided *Perſia* from *Armenia*, over which was a large Bridge defended by a Fort, which was now remov'd by *Tangrolipix*, that they might paſs over with greater Security. After this he began to enlarge his Dominions, and having ſlain *Piſaſiris*, the Caliph of *Babylon*, he ſent his Nephew *Cutlu-Moſes*, or *Cuthimuſes*, againſt the *Arabians*, by whom he was overthrown, and in his Flight deſir'd *Stephen*, the Emperor's Governor in *Media*, to grant him a Paſſage through that Country, which he indiſcretely deny'd, tho' he was in no Condition to oppoſe him ſhould he force his Way through, which he preſently after did; and having taken *Stephen* Priſoner he ſold him for a Slave. Returning to

the Sultan he endeavour'd to excuſe the Blow he had receiv'd from the *Arabians*; and that he might make it appear that his Expedition was not altogether fruitleſs, he acquainted him with the Diſcoveries he had made in *Media*, the Fertility of the Country, and how eaſily it might be conquer'd, it being inhabited by none but Women, for ſuch he thought thoſe with whom he lately fought.

Tho' *Tangrolipix* was too much incens'd againſt him for the Loſs he had ſuſtain'd in *Arabia*, to give any open Credit to his Information, yet after he had been defeated himſelf in a ſecond Engagement with the *Arabians*, he began to reflect on what his Nephew had told him; and ſent *Aſan*, his Brother's Son, with an Army of about twenty thouſand Men to conquer *Media*, which *Aſan* enter'd, and miſerably deſtroy'd, ſparing neither Age nor Sex, but ſuffer'd himſelf at laſt to be overreach'd by the *Roman* Generals, who lay in Ambuſh for him, and cut him and the greateſt part of the Army in pieces, whilſt they were buſie in plundering the Camp, which the *Romans* had quitted on purpoſe to enſnare 'em.

who invades Media.

Tangrolipix, rather enrag'd than diſcourag'd at this Misfortune, rais'd an Army of near one hundred thouſand Men, which he committed to the Conduct of *Abram Alim*, his half Brother; they who commanded for the Emperor in *Media*, thought it adviſeable not to run the hazard of a Battel againſt ſuch a Multitude, but rather to fortifie ſuch Places as ſeem'd the fitteſt to be maintain'd, and ſecure their beſt Effects within the Walls, 'till they had ſent to the Emperor for more Forces, and were able upon more equal Terms to offer the Enemy Battel. In the mean time the *Turks* ravag'd the Country without any Oppoſition, and laying Siege to *Artze*, an open Town, inhabited by great Numbers of Merchants and Tradeſmen, and upon that Account eſteem'd the wealthieſt of any in thoſe Parts; they met with ſo great an Oppoſition from the Inhabitants, who for ſome

time

time made good their want of Walls by their great Numbers and extraordinary Courage, that the *Turks*, who did not expect to meet with so great a Resistance from a Village, the Wealth of which they vehemently thirsted after, resolv'd to destroy what they could not get, and so set it on Fire, and forc'd out the Inhabitants, of whom one hundred and fifty thousand are said to have perish'd, partly by the Sword, and partly by the Fire, into which many are reported voluntarily to have cast themselves. The *Turks* found among the Ruins much Silver, and other things of great Value that were not Combustible. After this they rov'd up and down the Country without observing any Order, in which Condition two of the *Roman* Generals, whom the Emperor had lately strengthen'd with fresh Supplies, thought it advisable to fall upon 'em, but were therein oppos'd by *Liparites*, Prince or Governor of part of *Iberia*, who commanded likewise for *Monomachus*; the Reason he would have declin'd fighting was, because it was on *Saturday*, which he reckon'd amongst the unlucky Days. But *Abram*, the General of the *Turks*, and half Brother to *Tangrolipix*, being inform'd by his Scouts in what Condition the Enemy lay, and understanding the Difference there was between their Generals, march'd up in a regular Order, and offer'd 'em Battel, of which they were in a manner oblig'd to accept, and so prepar'd to receive 'em. The Fight was obstinate on both sides, but at length the Fortune of the Day fell to the *Romans*; who however having lost *Liparites*, who engaging too far in the Heat of the Action, and enrag'd for the Loss of a Kinsman slain by the *Turks*, was taken Prisoner, thought not fit to pursue the Victory, but retir'd; and *Abram* on the other side, being very proud of his Prisoner, sent him away to the Sultan, who seem'd outwardly pleas'd at his Brother's good Fortune, but was inwardly jealous of his Success, for which reason he shortly after forc'd him to rebel against him; and having

A.D. 1049.

The Romans *defeat the* Turks,

who take Liparites *Prisoner;*

ving overthrown him in a Battel, took him Priſoner, and put him to Death.

In the mean time the Emperor, who was highly concern'd at the Captivity of *Liparites*, ſent an Ambaſſador with rich Preſents to *Tangrolipix*, on purpoſe to redeem *Liparites*, and enter into a Peace and Alliance with the Sultan; who receiv'd the Preſents, but reſtor'd 'em back to *Liparites*, whom he generouſly releas'd, and at his Departure advis'd him to remember how much he ow'd him, and for that reaſon never more to bear Arms againſt the *Turks*. At the ſame time he ſent the *Xeriph*, a Man of Principal Authority among the *Turks*, his Ambaſſador to *Conſtantinople*; where having, in a long Speech, magnify'd the great Power and Authority of his Maſter, he arrogantly demanded of the Emperor to become his Tributary, upon which Condition he had Power to conclude a perpetual Peace with him. This inſolent Demand was rejected with much Scorn by the Emperor, and the Ambaſſador diſmiſs'd; who, upon his Return to *Tangrolipix*, gave him ſuch an Account of his Reception as highly incens'd him againſt the Emperor, on whom he prepar'd to be reveng'd. *Monomachus*, on the other Hand, being ſenſible of what he was to expect from the *Turks*, made the beſt Preparations he could to oppoſe 'em, when a War ſuddenly broke out between *Monomachus* and the *Patzinacæ*, a People of *Scythia*, which brought the Empire into manifeſt Danger. *Tyrach* was then Prince of that People, and being a Man of noble Extraction, tho' otherwiſe abandon'd to Sloth and Inactivity, he was highly reverenc'd by his Subjects; among whom was one *Kegenes*, who was born of obſcure Parents, but had acquir'd a great Reputation in the Wars, which he manag'd with much Succeſs againſt the neighbouring Nations, whilſt *Tyrach* liv'd idle and inglorious at home. He obſerving how much *Kegenes* was admir'd by the People, naturally fierce and addicted to War, grew jealous of him, and reſolv'd to move ſo dangerous a Competitor out of the Way; of which

who is releas'd without Ranſom by the Sultan.

Kegenes

Kegenes having timely Intimation, he made his Escape into the Fens of the River *Boryſthenes*, or *Nieper*, where all his own Tribes (for that Nation was divided into ſeveral *Clanns*, or Tribes) and one more join'd with him, and revolted from *Tyrach*, who march'd at the Head of a numerous Army againſt him, and defeated him; after which *Kegenes* thought it the ſafeſt way for him to throw himſelf into the Emperor's Protection; accordingly he ſent to *Michael*, who commanded for the Emperor in thoſe Parts, and acquainted him with his Deſign, and undertook to do his Maſter conſiderable Services. *Michael*, having communicated his Deſires to the Emperor, receiv'd Orders from him to entertain him courteouſly, to provide his Men, amounting to twenty thouſand in Number, with all Neceſſaries, and ſend him to *Conſtantinople*, where he was honour'd with the Dignity of a Patrician, and receiv'd Baptiſm, engaging for his Countrymen, that they likewiſe ſhould turn Chriſtians, which they accordingly did, and had three Caſtles aſſign'd 'em, with large Territories upon the Banks of the *Iſter*, from whence they made frequent Incurſions into *Tyrach*'s Dominions, and ſold the Women and Children to the *Romans*. *Tyrach*, provok'd at theſe Proceedings, ſent to expoſtulate with the Emperor, for that the *Patzinacæ* being Friends and Allies to the Emperor, he had receiv'd their Fugitives, and threaten'd to denounce War againſt him, if he any more countenanc'd or aſſiſted *Kegenes* in his Depredations. The Emperor receiv'd the Ambaſſadors very diſdainfully, laughing at their Meſſage, and ſuffer'd 'em to depart without vouchſafing 'em an Anſwer. He gave Orders to *Michael* and *Kegenes* to be upon their Guard, and ſent an hundred Gallies to cruiſe up and down on the *Iſter* to prevent a Deſcent, if the *Scythians* ſhould attempt it. Notwithſtanding which Precaution *Tyrach* took the Advantage of a Froſt, when the River was cover'd with Ice of a convenient thickneſs, and paſs'd over with no leſs than eight hundred thouſand Men,

The Scythians *break into the Empire.*

Men, who broke like an irresistible Torrent into the *Roman* Provinces. Tho' the Emperor sent all the Forces quarter'd in *Macedonia* and *Bulgaria*, under the Conduct of *Constantinus Arianites*, with Orders to join *Michael* and *Kegenes*, and oppose the *Bulgarians*; yet, in all probability, their Numbers had prevail'd, had not the *Scythians* drunk too immoderately of Wine, and other Liquors of which they had never tasted before, which threw 'em into Distempers that swept off great Multitudes every Day. Of which when *Kegenes*, who very well knew the Temper of his Countrymen, was inform'd, he advis'd the *Romans* to fall suddenly upon 'em; which was done with so much Resolution, that the Barbarians, weaken'd by Sickness, and terrify'd at so sudden an Onset, threw down their Arms, and cry'd for Quarter; which was allow'd to all but such as fell into *Kegenes* his Hands, who, like a true Renegade, kill'd all those who were not able to buy their Lives with a vast Sum of Mony. The rest were by *Basilius*, the Governor of *Bulgaria*, disarm'd and dispers'd through the Plains of *Sardica*, *Naissus*, and *Euzapelus*; only *Tyrach*, and one hundred and forty of the most noble among 'em were sent to *Constantinople*, where they were kindly receiv'd by *Monomachus*; who, having first persuaded 'em to embrace the Christian Religion, conferr'd such Honours and Wealth upon 'em, as rais'd 'em to an higher degree of Happiness than they had ever tasted before.

Thus for the present was an End put to this War, which notwithstanding broke out shortly after with more Fury than ever; for when *Tangrolipix*, offended at the Reception of his Ambassador, had gather'd all his Forces together out of *Persia*, *Arabia*, and other Provinces, in order to renew the War; *Monomachus*, besides his other Preparations, arm'd fifteen thousand of these *Scythians*, and sent four of those, who resided at *Constantinople*, to command 'em and conduct 'em into *Iberia*. These, being thus arm'd, march'd chearfully

as far as *Melitene*, the Metropolis of *Armenia* Minor; but as they proceeded on farther they began to reflect on the Service that was impos'd upon 'em, and by the Advice of *Catalunes*, one of their Officers, they resolv'd to return back to their Countrymen; where, when they were arriv'd, they arm'd their Companions, and removing to the Plains lying upon the *Ister*, from thence they made Incursions into *Thrace* and *Macedonia*, and grievously molested the Subjects of the Empire. Hereupon the Emperor sent for *Kegenes* to consult with him, what Methods were the most proper to suppress 'em. *Kegenes* came at the Head of a strong Party, and encamp'd in a Plain near the Imperial City, where three of his Countrymen endeavour'd to Assassinate him one Night as he lay in his Tent, but his Guards coming timely to his Assistance, they had only time to give him a slight Wound; for as they were preparing to second their Blow they were seiz'd, and, without suffering themselves to be examin'd upon the Spot, appeal'd to the Emperor. Hereupon *Kegenes* was conducted in a Chariot into the City, and the three Assassines were led bound after him. When he was brought before the Emperor, *Monomachus* ask'd *Baltzar*, the Son of *Kegenes*, why they had not put the Villains immediately to Death; and he replying, *That it was because they had appeal'd to him*; the jealous Emperor suspected some Treachery, and sent immediately for the Men, who being ask'd for what reason they attempted to murder their Leader, they affirm'd with much Assurance, *That they undertook it for his Sake, and the Safety of the City; which* Kegenes *had a Design to have enter'd early the next Morning, and having plunder'd it to have return'd with the rich Booty into his own Country.*

The Scythian *War renew'd.*

The Emperor, without any farther Inquisition, gave Credit to this improbable and ill-grounded Accusation; wherefore, having first order'd those Villains to be set at Liberty, he commanded *Kegenes* to be remov'd to Court, under a Pretence of having his Wound cur'd with

with greater Care, and himself more diligently attended; there he kept him immur'd close up, and separated his Sons one from the other. At the same time he shew'd great Kindness to his Men, giving 'em large Allowances of Provision, but design'd by degrees to disarm 'em, and imprison those whom he apprehended to be the most dangerous among 'em. Tho' this Design was manag'd with the greatest Secrecy, yet the *Scythians*, who seem'd outwardly well pleas'd with their Usage, and promis'd an entire Submission and Obedience, had Intimation of the thing, and broke up by Night from their Camp, and by long Marches got the third Day over the Mountain *Hæmus*, and join'd with their Countrymen, who being thus united, and having plenty of Arms among them, came almost as far as the City of *Adrianople*, and wasted all the Country round about. *Constantinus Areianites*, the General of the Western Forces, was then in that City; and having engag'd 'em near a Fort call'd *Dampolis* was defeated, and forc'd to retire with a considerable Loss. Whereupon the Emperor was advis'd to send *Tyrach*, and the other *Scythians* residing at *Constantinople*, to pacifie and compose their Nation. These Persons having been oblig'd by rich Presents from *Monomachus*, engag'd themselves by Oath to the Performance of it; but being dismiss'd, and having join'd the rest of their Countrymen, they were so far from accomplishing what they had so solemnly undertaken, that they conspir'd with 'em, and discover'd all the Designs that were forming against 'em. *Monomachus*, as soon as he was inform'd of this Defection, sent for all the Eastern Forces to join the rest, and march against the Barbarians; who, notwithstanding the whole Strength of the Empire seem'd engag'd against 'em, had the Advantage in several Engagements, and obtain'd some considerable Victories, which was chiefly to be attributed to the Rashness, Ignorance, and Indiscretion of the Generals that were sent against 'em. This Success made 'em more Daring, Cruel, and Outragious than ever!

Having

Having conceiv'd a through Contempt of the *Romans*, they laid all waſte before 'em in *Thrace* and *Macedonia*, ſparing neither Age nor Sex, but murdering even Infants as they hung at the Breaſt. In this Confidence of their own Strength, ſome of 'em preſum'd to approach *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, but were ſeverely chaſtis'd for their Preſumption; for the Emperor ſent out againſt 'em a ſtrong Party choſen out of his own Guard, under the Command of *John* the Patrician, one of the Eunuchs belonging to the Empreſs, who fell on 'em by Night, as they were drunk and ſleepy; and having made a great Slaughter of 'em, cut off their Heads, and ſent 'em in Cart-loads up to *Monomachus*.

By this time the Emperor began to reflect on his partial and imprudent Behaviour to *Kegenes*, whom therefore he releas'd out of Priſon; and upon his engaging to divert 'em from their outrageous Courſes, he diſmiſs'd him to 'em. As he drew near he ſent to inform 'em of his Approach, and upon what Errand he was come; they anſwer'd, and confirm'd their Anſwer by Oath, that they were ready to ſubmit to him, and be govern'd and directed by his Will; but as ſoon as they got him into their Power they cut him to pieces, and thereby aſſur'd the Emperor they would liſten to no Terms of Accommodation. Thus the War was continu'd on both ſides for ſeveral Years together, during which the Imperialiſts had moſt commonly the Diſadvantage; but the *Scythians* being at length inform'd, that the Emperor was making ſuch mighty Preparations, as if he ſeem'd reſolv'd to root 'em, if poſſible, out of the Earth; they were terrify'd at the approaching Storm, and ſent to deſire Peace from *Monomachus*, who, after ſeveral Difficulties, condeſcended to a Truce for thirty Years.

Monomachus *his Profuſeneſs ruins the Empire.*

Tho' this War, which had been long, bloody, and expenſive, was in the End brought to an happy Concluſion, yet was *Monomachus* ſurrounded with other Difficulties, from which he found it impoſſible to extricate himſelf. For whereas the Charge of his Wars

ſhould

ſhould have made him frugal and deliberate, he liv'd at ſo profuſe and expenſive a rate, that he was forc'd to charge his Subjects with ſeveral illegal and unreaſonable Impoſitions; which made him hated, and contemn'd at home, whilſt the *Turks* enlarg'd their Conqueſts, and grievouſly infeſted the Provinces abroad. And here it may be obſerv'd, that this Emperor was, in a great meaſure, guilty of the Decay, and Ruin of the Eaſtern Empire; for whereas all the Provinces upon the Borders were uſually exempted from paying Tribute, becauſe they undertook to maintain ſo many Soldiers as were ſufficient to guard the *Roman* Pale, and ſecure it from the Incurſions of the Barbarians, he disbanded thoſe Soldiers, and diſſolv'd the Garriſons in thoſe Parts, eſpecially the Army in *Iberia*, which conſiſted of fifty thouſand Men, and ſerv'd as a Barrier againſt the *Turks*, that he might have a Pretence to raiſe a Revenue out of that Country. An Act of ſuch pernicious Conſequence, as might brand him with Infamy to all Poſterity, and render him a dreadful Warning to all profuſe and inconſiderate Princes.

The Succeſs of the Turkiſh *Arms in* Iberia.

However the Emperor, having thus concluded a Peace with the *Scythians*, was at leiſure to obſerve the Progreſs of the *Turkiſh* Arms in *Iberia*. The Sultan, affronted at the Reception of his Ambaſſador, as has been before obſerv'd, enter'd with all his Forces into that Country; the Inhabitants of which had ſecur'd themſelves and their moſt valuable Effects in their ſtrong Towns, of which there was great plenty in thoſe Parts; ſo that hearing the Emperor was preparing a very powerful Army at *Caſarea*, which was to be ſent againſt him, he return'd with great Indignation into *Media*; where finding the People, who had notice of his Approach, had diſpos'd of themſelves and their Wealth in the ſame manner thoſe in *Iberia* had done; he reſolv'd to attack ſome of the Garriſons, and accordingly ſate down before *Mantzichierta*, a Town ſituate in an open Country, but fortify'd with a tri-

ple

ple Wall and deep Ditches. The Situation of this Place made him hope to be Master of it in a short time; but finding, after he had ply'd it warmly for thirty Days together, that *Basilius* the Governor, and the rest of the Christians that were in it, were resolv'd to defend it to the utmost; he began to despair of Success, and was about to have rais'd the Siege, when *Alcan*, one of his General Officers, prevail'd with him to defer it for one Day longer, and trust the Disposition of the Attacks to his Management. This being granted him, he divided the Army next Day into two Parts, one of which he order'd to gall the Besieg'd with their Arrows from a rising Ground that fronted the Eastern Gate, where the Wall seem'd lower, whilst he led the other on to the Assault, which was directed with great Bravery on the one side, and oppos'd with an equal Resolution on the other. For the Besieg'd pour'd Clouds of Arrows, Darts, and Stones upon the Assailants, of whom great Numbers were slain, and amongst the rest *Alcan* himself, who, being known by the richness of his Armour, was drawn by the Hair of his Head into the City, and his Head being instantly cut off was thrown over the Wall among the *Turks*. Whereupon the Sultan, who, being attended by his chief Officers, had beheld all from an adjacent Eminence, broke up the Siege, pretending some urgent Affairs had call'd him home, but threaten'd to return with greater Forces the Spring following; which he did some time after in Pursuit of his Cousin *Cutlu-Moses*, of whom mention has been made already, who fled into *Arabia*, leaving *Tangrolipix* to waste and ravage *Iberia*, 'till the Approach of *Michael Acoluthus*, who was sent out of the West to repress him, and who, by the Measures he took, threaten'd to force him to a Battel, and oblig'd him to retire with the main Body of his Army to *Taurus*; however he left three thousand *Turks* behind him with Orders to infest the Frontiers of the Empire, which they did afterwards with much Ease,

for

for that *Monomachus* had left an Example to his Succeſſors, which they obſerv'd with too much exactneſs, through Sloth and Covetouſneſs ſuffering their Dominions to be torn piece-meal from 'em, as we ſhall have melancholy Occaſion enough to obſerve in the purſuit of this Hiſtory.

The Death of Zoe the Empreſs.

The Death of the Empreſs *Zoe* follow'd ſoon after, the Loſs of whom *Monomachus* at firſt lamented with an unmanly Paſſion, abſtaining from all Company, and comparing her to the Angels above; but ſhortly after addreſs'd himſelf with as much Gallantry as the Gout had left him to another Lady, the Daughter of an *Alan* Prince, who than lay as an Hoſtage at *Conſtantinople*. This Lady was brought into the Palace, ſaluted *Auguſta*, and had he not been reſtrain'd by the Reſpect he bore *Theodora*, and the Infamy of a fourth Marriage, he had, in all probability, marry'd and declar'd her Empreſs; but, whatever he intended, Death in a little time after put an end to that, and all his other Deſigns; for the Gout, which ſome time before had ſeiz'd on his Limbs, being increas'd by his Intemperance, at length prevail'd inwardly, and left him time enough to conſult about, but not to declare or confirm his Succeſſor.

A. D. 1054.

Tho' he had hitherto expreſs'd a great Eſteem and Reſpect for *Theodora*, yet either for that he thought the Management of Publick Affairs too weighty for a Woman's Shoulders, or elſe, being induc'd to it by the earneſt Perſuaſions of ſome about him, eſpecially of *John* the Eunuch, a deſpicable unworthy Wretch, who had other Deſigns in view, he deſign'd *Nicephorus*, who commanded the Forces of the Empire in *Bulgaria*, to ſucceed him; the Buſineſs was manag'd with much Caution and Secrecy, and *Nicephorus* ſent for without the Knowledge, as 'twas thought, of *Theodora*, who however receiv'd an Account of all their Tranſactions; and leaving the Emperor in the new Monaſtery of St. *George*, which he had built in *Mangani*,

ſhe

ſhe went, attended by her moſt faithful Friends, to *Conſtantinople*, where, in the great Palace, ſhe was proclaim'd and ſaluted Empreſs; the News whereof being brought to *Monomachus* exaſperated his Diſtemper, and left him no other Power than to teſtifie, by a deep Sigh, his Diſlike of it, with which he ended his Days, after he had reign'd twelve Years and eight Months, or ſomething more. Monomachus *dies, and* Theodora *is declar'd Empreſs.*

Of this Emperor it may be ſaid, that during his Reign, Fortune, by turns, ſmil'd and frown'd upon him; for as in his Time the *Turks*, through his natural Lazineſs, or want of Mony, grew exceeding powerful in *Aſia*, and extreamly haraſs'd the Territories of the Empire, ſo had he the good Luck to ſuppreſs all ſuch as rebell'd againſt him at home. The beſt Quality he had was his Charity, for he daily reliev'd the Poor, and built an Hoſpital for Old Men, whom Age had render'd incapable of getting their own Subſiſtance; his many ill ones the Reader will find in the Account we have already given of him. Some ſay, that both he and *Zoe* dy'd of the Plague, which indeed rag'd ſo violently at that time in the City, and the Quick were hardly ſufficient to bury the Dead; however the beſt Authors agreed, that he dy'd of the Gout, aggravated by his great Intemperance to Women, in the ſixteenth Year of *Henry* the Third Emperor in the Weſt, and the laſt of *John* the Twentieth Pope of *Rome*, *A. D.* 1054.

Theodora, having thus receiv'd the Imperial Crown, which ſhe challeng'd as well by Virtue of an Hereditary Right, as the Conſent and Approbation of the People, took Care firſt to chaſtiſe ſuch as had propos'd and attempted the Promotion of *Nicephorus*, whoſe Eſtates were all confiſcated, and their Perſons baniſh'd. She depriv'd *Iſaacius Comnenus* of his Command in the Eaſt, and baniſh'd *Bryennius* a *Macedonian*, whom *Monomachus* had ſent at the Head of his Countrymen againſt the *Turks*, becauſe, upon the Death of that Theodora's *Management.*

Emperor, he had remov'd with the *Macedonians* under his Command, without waiting for her Orders, to *Chryſopolis*. *Theodore* the Eunuch was ſent General into the Eaſt, where he fought with ſome Succeſs againſt the *Turks*, who, upon the Report of *Monomachus* his Death, prepar'd for new Attempts againſt the Empire. The prudent Choice of her Great Officers and Miniſters of State made the Management of Affairs eaſie to her, and agreeable to her People. Being well grown in Years ſhe was advis'd to chuſe ſome fit Perſon to be her Aſſiſtant, and declare him Emperor, which ſhe rejected with a manly Reſolution, and ſate conſtantly upon the Bench her ſelf, gave Audience to Ambaſſadors, created Magiſtrates, and interpos'd her Opinion and Reſolution in all Matters relating to the State, as well publick as private. In this manner ſhe rul'd with great Applauſe for almoſt two Years, during which her Subjects enjoy'd a perfect Tranquility, ſo that they generally wiſh'd ſhe had either been advanc'd ſooner to the Imperial Dignity, or they might have enjoy'd her longer in it; but ſhe was in the end ſeiz'd with an Illack Paſſion, which ended her Days. As ſoon as her Phyſician began to deſpair of her Recovery, *Leo*, Sirnam'd *Straboſpondylus*, Chief Miniſter of State, and the Favourite Eunuchs, conſulted on whom they might confer the Government, and continue entire to themſelves the Power with which *Theodora* had entruſted 'em. After ſome Debates they made Choice of *Michael Stratioticus*, a Perſon Old and Decrepid, which together with his Ignorance in State Affairs, for he had from his Youth apply'd himſelf ſolely to the Wars, render'd him very unworthy of ſo Eminent a Station: However, judging him a Perſon fit for their Purpoſes, they firſt made him promiſe to do nothing without their Knowledge and Conſent, and then perſuaded *Theodora* to make him Emperor; which being done, ſhe dy'd in the Month of *Auguſt*, after ſhe had reign'd one Year and nine Months, *A. D.* 1056.

MICHAEL STRATIOTICUS.

Theodora *dies*,

The

The Advancement of *Michael* was manag'd with ſo much Secrecy, and the Death of *Theodora* follow'd ſo immediately upon it, that *Theodorus* the Preſident, and Couſin German to *Monomachus*, knew nothing of it, 'till *Michael* was declar'd and acknowledg'd Emperor. At which being ſurpriz'd and incens'd, he ſummon'd all his Servants, Friends and Dependants to his Aſſiſtance, and mov'd in the Evening, with a great Train, through the publick Streets to the Palace, where he proteſted againſt what had been done in Favour of *Michael*, and laid Claim to the Empire as of Right belonging to him, who was ſo nearly related to the late Emperor *Monomachus*. In the mean time the Priſon Doors were broken open by his Order, and the Malefactors call'd out to his Aſſiſtance, ſo that a general Confuſion and Tumult began to threaten the whole City; but the Eunuchs in the Palace having receiv'd the Alarm, prepar'd with great Vigour to ſuppreſs him both by Land and Water; which when he underſtood, he turn'd about, and went to the Great Church, where he hop'd to be receiv'd and own'd by the Patriarch and Clergy, who, contrary to his Expectations, ſhut the Doors againſt him, and refus'd to admit him. His laſt Refuge was the People, who, being generally fond of Innovations, did however in this Conjuncture continue firm in their Allegiance, and declar'd all for *Michael*. In this Condition, abandon'd by his Friends, who in great Numbers began to forſake him, and purſu'd by his Enemies whom he had juſtly provok'd againſt him, he fled in a diſconſolate Condition with his Son, and took Sanctuary in the Church, from whence he was ſhortly after taken out, and baniſh'd to *Pergamus*, where he had time to reflect on his inconſiderate Undertaking, and laugh at the Vanities of the World.

upon which enſues a Commotion in the City.

After this *Michael* enjoy'd the Imperial Dignity without a Competitor, and in ſuch things as were done by the Advice of thoſe, who had been the Inſtruments

of his Promotion, he acted very well; but whatever he did without their Advice, and in the Execution of which they were not ſo fitly qualify'd, ſhow'd him a weak and unworthy Prince. But he betray'd himſelf in nothing ſo much as his Behaviour to the General Officers of the Army, who had been his Fellow-Soldiers under the late Reigns, and whom he ought to have regarded as his principal Support. Among theſe were *Iſaacius Comnenus*, and *Ambuſtus Catacalo*, Men renown'd for their great Services and Experience; the latter of theſe he remov'd from the Government of *Antioch*, and upon every Occaſion Affronted *Comnenus*. He recall'd *Bryennius*, whom his Predeceſſor had baniſh'd, and ſent him into the Eaſt againſt the *Turks*; but when he deſir'd to have his Eſtate reſtor'd, which *Theodora* had taken from him, he gave him a ſurly Denial, and ſo prepar'd him to embrace the firſt Propoſal ſhould be offer'd to his Prejudice.

Michael's *Behaviour.*

A Conſpiracy againſt him.

For when *Ambuſtus* and the other Officers had, by reiterated Affronts, been provok'd to Conſpire againſt him, their Deſign was by *Ambuſtus* his Advice communicated to *Bryennius*, as one who was able to aſſiſt 'em with a powerful Army; and *Bryennius*, provok'd at the late Repulſe he had receiv'd from the Emperor, concurr'd very readily with them. Being thus, as they conceiv'd, prepar'd for a Revolt, they proceeded to the Choice of a new Emperor, and the Dignity fell, by a general Suffrage, upon *Ambuſtus*; but he, tho' a Man of exemplary Valour and Experience, excus'd himſelf upon the Account of his great Age, and propos'd *Iſaacius Comnenus* as the fitteſt Perſon they could promote, to which all unanimouſly aſſented; and having confirm'd their Choice by Oath, they all departed from *Conſtantinople*, where they met, as it was cuſtomary at *Eaſter* to receive the Emperor's Bounty, to their ſeveral Poſts, where each in his reſpective Station was to promote the general Deſign. Among the reſt *Bryennius* went to his Charge in the Eaſt, with whom

ISAACIUS COMNENUS

John

John Opſaras, a Patrician, was ſent to pay the Soldiers, the only Perſons to whom the indiſcreet Emperor was not Liberal and Munificent. At a general Muſter *Bryennius* would have had the Gold diſtributed as he thought convenient, which *John* with great Obſtinacy refus'd, alledging he would fully obey the Orders he had receiv'd from the Emperor; whereat *Bryennius* was ſo highly enrag'd that he fell upon him, and having firſt order'd him to be ſoundly beaten, committed him to Cuſtody, and then made a Diſtribution of the Treaſure according to his own Fancy. This Proceeding had like to have broken all the Meaſures of the Conſpirators, for it happen'd at that time that *Lycanthes*, a Patrician, who was General of the *Lycaonians* and *Pyſidians*, lay with all his Forces near the Army commanded by *Bryennius*; and being utterly ignorant of the Reſolutions lately taken by the other Commanders in the Eaſt, concluded that no one could be guilty of ſo Inſolent and Arbitrary a Proceeding, but who aim'd at the Sovereignty, and therefore fell with all his Forces upon *Bryennius* his Camp, and having taken him Priſoner deliver'd him to *Opſaras*, whom he ſet at Liberty, and who, palliating his Revenge with a ſpecious Pretence of Loyalty, pluck'd out his Eyes, and ſent him with an Account of what had happen'd to the Emperor.

When the Chief Officers of the Eaſt, who were of the Conſpiracy, had been inform'd of *Bryennius* his Misfortune, they began to apprehend, leſt he, upon Examination, ſhould reveal their Deſigns, and therefore choſe rather to be in Action, tho' they were not as yet throughly ripe for it, than be oppreſs'd by the Emperor before they had leiſure to declare themſelves, and decide the Quarrel by the Dint of the Sword. Accordingly they forc'd *Comnenus* from his Houſe in *Paphlagonia*, and having ſummon'd the Army together in a ſpacious Plain, he was there by univerſal Conſent ſaluted Emperor, on the eighth of *June*, *A. D.* 1057. A. D. 1057. Iſaacius Comnenus *declar'd Emperor by the Army*;

Comnenus, being thus declar'd Emperor, order'd firſt his Receivers to collect the Revenue and Contributions in the Eaſt, and then marching his Army over the River *Sangarius* in *Phrygia* Major, he proceeded with ſlow Journies towards *Nice*, which he was the more willing to get into his Hands, becauſe he judg'd it proper for a Receptacle upon all Occaſions. The Soldiers that were Quarter'd in it diſlodg'd as ſoon as they heard of his Approach, and retir'd to their own homes, to take Care of their reſpective Families during theſe publick Diſtractions. Some of the Officers fled with the News of this Revolt to *Stratioticus*, who, tho' he ſaw that almoſt all the Forces of the Empire were combin'd againſt him, yet he refus'd to offer any Conditions of Peace, and prepar'd for a vigorous Reſiſtance. He ſent immediately for all the Forces that lay Quarter'd in the Weſt, committing 'em to the Conduct of ſuch *Macedonians* as were Perſons of the greateſt Quality and Experience in Warlike Affairs; and conſidering into what Dangers his late Behaviour had betray'd him, he now careſs'd both the Officers and Soldiers, encouraging them with many Preſents, and large Promiſes of future Rewards. Having muſter'd his Army, he made Choice of *Theodorus*, Eunuch to the late Empreſs, and *Aaron Ducas*, a Man of great Experience, and Brother to *Comnenus* his Wife, for his Generals.

againſt whom Michael *ſends his Army,*

Theſe Generals march'd at the Head of their Forces to *Nicomedia*, and from thence ſent to break down the Bridge of *Sangarius*, that *Comnenus* might not be able to retire back that way, but being forc'd to go about they might be ſure to come up to him, ſo eager were they for an Engagement. *Comnenus*, on the other Hand, having ſtrongly fortify'd *Nice*, and left all his Baggage and Carriages in that City, he encamp'd at ſome diſtance from the Enemy, and offer'd 'em Battel. *Ambuſtus* had the Command of the Left Wing, and *Romanus Sclerus* of the Right, whilſt he himſelf led the main Battel. At firſt *Aaron*, who led the Right Wing of

of the Emperor's Forces, ſeem'd to have the better, for he broke the oppoſite Wing, took *Romanus* Priſoner, and drove 'em back as far as their Camp, which he might have taken, and obtain'd an entire Victory, had he not been too diffident of his Succeſs; for the main Battel began to give Ground, and *Comnenus* had once Thoughts of flying away, and throwing himſelf into *Nice*, when he was inform'd that *Ambuſtus*, who had born down all before him, was piec'd into the Enemy's Camp, which he had taken and plunder'd, at which both he and his Soldiers were ſo animated, that they charg'd with freſh Vigour, and gave the Emperor's Forces an entire Defeat; many were kill'd in the Purſuit, and ſeveral Officers of principal Note were taken Priſoners. *which are totally routed;* When *Michael* was firſt inform'd of the Overthrow of his Forces, he was ſo ſurpriz'd, that had not ſome about him diſſuaded him from it, he had ſent and offer'd the Imperial Crown to *Comnenus*. At laſt ſeveral of the chiefeſt Senators were ſent to treat with him, and in Concluſion it was agreed, that *Comnenus* ſhould be adopted *Cæſar*, and all his Followers ſhould receive a full Pardon and Indemnity; which was immediately ratify'd by the joyful Emperor, who promis'd to confirm all *Comnenus* his Officers in their Employments, and in a ſhort time to reſign the Adminiſtration of Affairs ſolely to his Conduct.

No Perſon in the Camp oppos'd this Agreement but *Ambuſtus*, who contended, with great Earneſtneſs, *That* Stratioticus *ſhould be depos'd*; that *they having depriv'd him, by a Solemn Oath, they could not without Perjury readmit him to the Throne*; that *if they laid down their Arms*, Comnenus *would in the end be infallibly poiſon'd, and they puniſh'd with the Loſs of their Eyes.* In this he was underhand encourag'd by the Senators themſelves, who were ſent to confirm the Agreement in Behalf of the Emperor. Theſe Men repreſented to *Comnenus* the great Advantages he had over *Stratioticus*; how much the one was deteſted at *Conſtantinople*; how earneſtly the

other was deſir'd there; how ready the People were to declare for him at his firſt Appearance, and how unable *Michael* was to oppoſe him.

Whilſt theſe things were thus agitating in the Camp, the unhappy Emperor himſelf made void that Agreement he had juſt ſent to have confirm'd, and partly by fair Words, and partly by Menaces, oblig'd both the Senate and the People to ſubſcribe a Writing, and take an Oath, with moſt direful Imprecations, never to give *Comnenus* the Title of Emperor, or own him for their Sovereign; which would have been a very unreaſonable Engagement, had he deſign'd him *Cæſar*. This Oath was exacted from 'em whilſt *Comnenus* was at a diſtance from the City, but being approach'd within leſs than a Day's Journey to *Conſtantinople*, they declar'd, by common Conſent, *Comnenus* to be Emperor, and adjudg'd all ſuch as ſhould oppoſe him to loſe their Eſtates, and be declar'd Enemies to the *Roman* Empire. This being procur'd by the Patriarch, and decreed in the Church, he ſent Meſſengers to *Comnenus* to invite him to the City, and at the ſame time, by other Meſſengers, order'd *Stratioticus* to reſign, and depart from the Palace.

and he forc'd to reſign.

At firſt he had behav'd himſelf with much Caution and ſeeming Fidelity to *Stratioticus*, but now he made it appear how much he had been from the Beginning concern'd in the Revolt. When the Biſhops that were ſent to *Stratioticus* deliver'd him their Meſſage, he demanded of 'em what the Patriarch would give him in Exchange for the Empire, and they anſwer'd, *The Kingdom of Heav'n.* He diveſted himſelf of the Imperial Habit, and retir'd to his own Houſe in the Caſtle, after he had reign'd one Year; and *Comnenus* arriving in the ſame Evening, was, the next Morning, being the firſt of *September*, crown'd in the great Church by the Hands of the Patriarch, and declar'd Emperor of the *Romans*.

Comnenus *his Behaviour in the Empire.*

Iſaacius Comnenus, having by theſe means obtain'd the Empire, very liberally rewarded ſuch as had been aſſiſtant

aſſiſtant to him, particularly *Michael Cerularius* the Patriarch, whom he exceedingly reverenc'd, and highly preferr'd his Nephews; and whereas he had rais'd himſelf to the Empire by the Force of Arms, he immediately caus'd Mony to be Coin'd with his Image holding a Sword. He abrogated all the Acts of *Stratioticus* without Diſtinction, and reſcinded thoſe of many of his Predeceſſors; proceeding with an equal Severity to all, as well Senators as common People. At length he fell upon the Monaſteries, from whom he took what the Liberality of former Princes had enrich'd 'em withal, and allow'd 'em no more than a bare Subſiſtance. Theſe his Proceedings made him fear'd more than lov'd by his Subjects, among whom no one was found of Courage enough to blame or reprehend him except the Patriarch; who preſuming upon his great Authority with him, and the Services he had lately done him, was as inſolent in his Reproofs, as boundleſs in his Demands, threatning, that unleſs he comply'd, to pull him down from the Throne, to which he had ſo lately exalted him; at which the haughty Emperor was ſo incens'd, that he immediately baniſh'd him; and having firſt extorted from him the Charter of Privileges and Immunities, granted by *Monomachus* to his Monaſtery of *Mangana*, he preferr'd *Conſtantinus Lichudes* to be Patriarch in his room.

The warlike Temper and reſolute Behaviour of this Prince ſo far influenc'd the Councils of his Neighbours, that they attempted nothing memorable againſt him: For tho' the *Hungarians* and *Scythians* ſhow'd ſome Inclinations to a Rupture, yet upon his firſt Preparations they ſu'd for Peace; ſo that hardly any thing memorable happen'd during the ſhort Reign of *Comnenus*, who in the End quitted the Empire, with a Reſignation equal to the Reſolution with which at firſt he aſſum'd it. One Day, whilſt he was Hunting, he was blaſted by a Wind or Lightning, which threw him into ſuch a Diſtemper, that deſpairing of a Recovery, and conſcious A. D. 1060.

ſcious to himſelf of the unlawful Means by which he had obtain'd the Imperial Dignity, he made a voluntary Reſignation, and retir'd into a Monaſtery, where he diſcharg'd the meaneſt Offices of the Houſe, and ſpent the Remainder of his Days in continu'd Acts of Devotion and Contrition, having reign'd in all two Years and three Months. The Character left us of this Prince repreſents him as a Man of mix'd Qualities, in ſome things very commendable, in others as much to be reprehended. He was by Nature Valiant, in his Diſpoſition Arrogant, dextrous in the Diſpatch of Buſineſs, and inflexible in any thing he had once reſolv'd upon; he was exceeding skilful in Military Affairs, and tho' illiterate himſelf, yet he was a great Encourager of Learning and learned Men. When he was tax'd with his ambitious affecting the Empire, he reply'd, *That the Domination of a Fellow-Servant, who deny'd him his juſt Reward, was intolerable.* He is ſaid to have been ſo exceeding Chaſte, that falling ill once when he was from home, and his Phyſicians preſcribing the Company of a Woman as a means to relieve him, he utterly refus'd to meddle with any other than his own Wife.

His Reſignation.

and Character.

Before *Comnenus* reſign'd the Empire he was adviſ'd to provide it with a Succeſſor, in the Choice of whom he rather conſulted the publick Safety of the State, than the private Intereſt of his own Family; for tho' he had ſeveral Children and near Relations of his own, yet he made Choice of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, who was eſteem'd a Man very worthy ſo high a Dignity. *Ducas*, being thus elected by *Comnenus*, and approv'd of by the People, was crown'd with great Solemnity at *Conſtantinople*; having formerly diſcharg'd the greateſt Offices in the State with the general Approbation, he was eſteem'd the fitteſt Man in the Empire for that high Dignity, tho' he afterwards appear'd, in the Courſe of his Adminiſtration, ſubject to ſome Vices altogether unworthy of a Prince. He began his Reign with the Promotion of ſeveral Perſons, who had appear'd the beſt affected to him

CONSTANTINUS DUCAS.

A. D. 1061.

him in his private State, and the Reſtitution of others, whom the Severity of his Predeceſſor had depriv'd and excluded; notwithſtanding which he narrowly eſcap'd being oppreſs'd by a Conſpiracy form'd againſt him by ſome of his moſt intimate Friends, which, being fortunately diſcover'd and ſuppreſs'd, he proceeded with no greater Severity againſt thoſe who had ungratefully fomented it, than to a Confiſcation of their Eſtates: After this he apply'd himſelf with great Diligence to the Affairs of State, and acted upon all Occaſions with ſo much Juſtice and Moderation, that he had deſerv'd to have been reckon'd among the good Princes, had not all his good Qualities been poiſon'd by an inſatiate Covetouſneſs, which betray'd him to the ſevere Reflections of his Subjects at home, and expos'd the Territories of the Empire to the Inſults of the barbarous Nations abroad; for *Ducas*, influenc'd by ſome Maxims that had lately ſeduc'd ſeveral of his Predeceſſors, out of a ſordid and unſeaſonable Principle of good Husbandry, ſuffer'd the Frontiers to lye naked, and by that means gave the *Turks* an Opportunity of extending their Conqueſts, which they did on every ſide. To this chiefly may be attributed the Ruin of the Eaſtern Empire; for the Soldiers, being thus neglected and unrewarded, grew remiſs and unactive, and the Poiſon, which might have been ſtopp'd in time, diffus'd it ſelf by degrees, infected firſt the extream Parts, 'till at length it became invincible, and by an irreſiſtible Progreſs in the End ſeiz'd on the Head. His uſual Maxim was by no means to begin a War, but if the Empire was threaten'd with one from abroad, he maintain'd it to be at leaſt cheaper, tho' not ſo honourable, to court the *Barbarians* with Preſents, and to buy a Peace rather than to be at the Expence of Levies and Muſters.

Ducas *his Covetouſneſs very prejudicial to the Empire.*

This Diſpoſition in the Emperor, as it occaſion'd the Loſs of ſome Provinces in the Eaſt, ſo it encourag'd the *Uzians*, a *Scythian* People, to make a terrible Irruption into the Empire; for having taken *Nicephorus Botoniates*, A. D. 1067.

The Scythians *Invading the Empire are defeated by the* Hungarians.

niates, who was afterwards Emperor, and *Basilius Apocapes*, Prisoners; they pass'd the *Ister* to the Number of five hundred thousand Men, and wasting all the Country thereabouts march'd up into *Macedonia*, and from thence into *Greece*, where they liv'd at Discretion, destroying all before 'em. Tho' the Emperor seem'd sufficiently sensible of the Calamities of his Subjects, yet he made no Preparations to remove their Oppressors, but answer'd those who earnestly conjur'd him to it, *That it was impossible to repel 'em.* So that instead of marching at the Head of an Army against 'em, he endeavour'd to purchase a Peace by rich Presents made to the Chief Officers, and a Promise of an Annual Tribute for the future. When he found, that notwithstanding all this, they continu'd their Hostilities with more Barbarity than before; and being revil'd by his Subjects, as one that sacrific'd the Empire to his own sordid Temper and miserable Covetousness: In this Calamity he betook himself to Prayer, and order'd a general Fast to be observ'd throughout his Dominions, after which he march'd out against 'em with no more than a handful of Men, as some have written, tho' others say his Army consisted of no less than an hundred and fifty thousand Men, which however was far inferior to the Number of the *Scythians*; who, being first exceedingly weaken'd by the Plague that had rag'd in a terrible manner among 'em, were suddenly set upon by the *Hungarians*, whose Territories they had wasted in their Passage into the Empire, and who cut 'em entirely off, and did the Emperor's Business for him without the Assistance of his own Army.

This was the most remarkable Action that happen'd during the Reign of this unactive Prince, towards the End of which many of the Churches and most magnificent Palaces at *Constantinople* were overthrown by an Earthquake, which was attended by a Comet following the Sun with its Tail directed to the East: It was seen by the Inhabitants of *Constantinople* for forty Days toge-

together, and ſerv'd to remind the Emperor of his approaching End; for having contracted a Diſeaſe, which by this time grew incurable, he apply'd his Thoughts to the Settlement of the Succeſſion in his Family. He had three Sons by the Empreſs *Eudocia*, whereof *Conſtantine* the youngeſt, being born after his Advancement to the Empire, had ſome time before been inveſted with the Imperial Ornaments, but now he caus'd his other two, *Michael Ducas* and *Andronicus*, to be declar'd Emperors, and left the Empire to 'em all; but conſidering they were young and incapable, he firſt requir'd an Oath from the Empreſs never to marry, which, being taken with great Solemnity, was lodg'd in the Hands of the Patriarch, and then appointed her to be Regent during the Minority of her Children. After this he exacted an Oath from all the Senators, that they would admit of none for Emperors but his Sons; and having, as he thought, by this means ſettled the Imperial Crown upon his Poſterity, he dy'd after a Reign of five Years and ſix Months, in the ſixtieth Year of his Age, in the fifth Indiction, *A. D.* 1067.

Ducas *his Death,*

He was a Man of exemplary Piety and Juſtice, unleſs ſometimes he was biaſs'd by his Avarice, which made him, in the Deciſion of Controverſies, not always obſerve the Preſcript of Laws, but to determine contrary to Law, and with a Reſpect of Perſons. Tho' he was unlearned himſelf, yet he had a great Eſteem for learned Men, declaring often, That *it would have pleas'd him better to have been enobled by Learning than Sovereignty*. He proceeded with much Moderation againſt ſuch as conſpir'd againſt him: He was a great Lover of Plain-dealing, and Men of Integrity; and had it not been for his abominable Covetouſneſs, which reign'd predominant over all the reſt of his Qualities, he had undoubtedly enrich'd the Throne with many Royal Virtues.

and Character.

Conſtantine

The Turks *renew their Incursions into the Empire.*

Constantine was no sooner dead but the *Turks*, hearing the Management of Affairs was lodg'd in the Hands of a Woman, in Contempt of her Sex, and the tender Years of her Sons, fell with great Confidence into the Provinces of the Empire, wasting *Mesopotamia*, *Cilicia* and *Cappadocia* at pleasure; which being reported at *Constantinople* very much afflicted the Empress, who found her self in no Condition to oppose 'em. The greatest part of the Army had been Disbanded in her Husband's Days, that which was on Foot was Undisciplin'd and Licentious; the People in general were dissatisfy'd, and some, who were Enemies to her Family, seem'd to commiserate the present State of the Empire, which requir'd a Man of Worth and Courage at the Helm, instead of a weak, helpless, and unregarded Woman; and this they urg'd with the greater Heat, because they thought the Empress would never think of marrying in regard of the Oath she had lately taken. *Eudocia* was quickly inform'd of what had been mov'd with so much freedom against her, and knew the only way she had left to prevent the Mischiefs with which she was threaten'd, was to marry some Valiant deserving Man, who, being entrusted with an absolute Command, might Protect her and her Children.

ROMANUS DIOGENES.

Romanus Diogenes was at that time a Prisoner at *Constantinople*, where he had been committed by the Empress, to whom he was accus'd as one who affected the Empire. He was a Person of a very beautiful Aspect and generous Temper: Being about this time call'd out to receive the Sentence of Death, which his Ambition had deserv'd, the whole Assembly were touch'd at the Appearance of the unhappy Prisoner, whose Illustrious Birth, for he was descended from the Emperor *Romanus Argyrus*, and Excellent Qualifications, seem'd to have design'd him for a more honourable Fate, with the Considerations of which no one was more affected than the Empress her self. Having therefore put a stop to the Sentence they were ready to denounce

nounce againſt him, ſhe gently check'd him for his ill-tim'd Ambition; and having obtain'd an Oath from him for his future Fidelity, ſhe firſt ſet him at Liberty, and ſhortly after made him General of all her Forces, firmly reſolving in her ſelf to marry him, if ſhe could but recover the Writing, in which her Oath was compris'd, out of the Hands of the Patriarch. In this ſhe was aſſiſted by a Favourite Eunuch, who apply'd himſelf with much Art and Diſſimulation to that Prelate, telling him that the Empreſs had caſt her Eyes upon one *Bardas*, a young Gentleman of the Court, and the Patriarch's Nephew, and was ſo well affected to him, that ſhe would gladly marry him, and make him Emperor, if the Patriarch would diſcharge her of the Oath ſhe had lately taken, and convince her of the Lawfulneſs of it. *Johannes Xiphilinus*, a Perſon of great Probity and Learning, was at that time Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; and tho' he was otherwiſe averſe to the Honours and Vanities of this World, yet being dazzl'd with the Proſpect of his Nephew's Promotion, readily promis'd the Eunuch to concur with the Empreſs in whatever ſhe ſhould deſire of him relating to that Matter, and accordingly ſhortly after repreſented to the Senators, whom he ſent for one by one, "the dangerous Condition of the Empire, con-
"tinually threaten'd with Foreign Invaſions, which
"were not to be repreſs'd by the Hands of a weak
"Woman, or the Authority of young Children, and
"therefore requir'd the Valour and Judgment of ſome
"deſerving Man. Then he took an Occaſion to ex-
"claim againſt the raſh Oath, which had been injuſt-
"ly impos'd upon the Empreſs, rather to ſatisfie the
"jealous Humour of the late Emperor, than for any
"Advantage could ariſe from it to the Common-
"wealth; he therefore urg'd how reaſonable it was for
"the Empreſs to be diſcharg'd from the Obſervance of
"it, that being thus ſet at Liberty ſhe might make
"Choice of ſome Worthy Perſon, able to undergo

"the

"the Burden of Affairs, and to take upon him, in "this visible time of Danger, the Protection both of "the Empress, her Children, and the Empire. Those few of the Senate, who were not mov'd by these Arguments, were overcome by more prevailing Gifts from the Empress; so that the Patriarch, by a Publick Act of Senate, restor'd the Writing to her; and she, having thus circumvented the Patriarch, and got her self discharg'd from her Oath, shortly after marry'd *Diogenes*, who was thereupon Proclaim'd Emperor.

A. D. 1068.

Diogenes *marries the Empress.*

Diogenes being thus, by a surprising Turn of Fortune, advanc'd from a Prison to the Throne, immediately consulted what were the most proper Ways to restrain the Progress of the *Turks*, who grew every Day more terrible, and threaten'd the Empire with an Universal Inundation. He found the Armies of the Empire in a very desperate Condition, which was chiefly owing to the Avarice and Inactivity of the late Emperors. The Provinces were utterly impoverish'd, and the Affairs at home in an unsettl'd Condition; notwithstanding all these Inconveniences, being a Man of a hardy resolute Nature, he pass'd over into *Asia* at the Head of a small Army ill provided, using all the means possible to recruit and supply it as he march'd along. Shortly after he was inform'd that the *Turkish* Sultan hearing of his Approach, and ignorant of what Numbers he was leading against him, was retir'd himself; but having divided his Army into two Bodies, sent one of 'em into the Southern Parts of *Asia*, and the other into the North, which destroy'd all the Country as they march'd along; and surprising the City of *Neo-Cæsaria*, now *Nexaria* in *Pontus*, had sack'd it, and were gone off with a rich Booty. Hereupon selecting out the lightest Troops he had in his Army, he coasted the Country with great Expedition, and never rested 'till he was got betwixt the *Turks* and home; and falling suddenly upon 'em charg'd 'em so briskly that they fled away in great Confusion, and left all their Bag-

His Success against the Turks.

Baggage and Carriages, and whatever they had got in their late Expedition, and the Sack of *Neo-Cæsarea*, behind 'em; from thence the Emperor march'd to *Aleppo*, which was deliver'd up to him, together with *Hierapolis*, where he ſhortly after built a ſtrong Caſtle. Here whilſt he lay, being inform'd that part of his Army, which he had detach'd to join the Forces he at firſt had left behind him, were in danger of being overthrown by the *Turks*, he decamp'd with all Expedition, and march'd to their Relief; but the *Turks* far exceeding him in Numbers, ſurrounded him on a ſudden as he lay encamp'd near 'em, and threaten'd him with an unavoidable Deſtruction. At the ſame time the Governor of *Aleppo* treacherouſly revolted from him, and went over to the Enemy, who, in great Confidence of an aſſur'd Victory, were already dividing the Spoils; but the Emperor, without ſounding a Trumpet, iſſu'd ſuddenly out of his Camp, and fell with great Violence upon 'em, as they lay in Security, little prepar'd for ſo unexpected an Attack, ſo that they were eaſily routed, and he might have had an entire Victory over 'em, had he thought it adviſable to purſue 'em far from his Camp. Several Towns were after this deliver'd up to him as the Conſequence of his Victory, and having diſpers'd his Army into Winter-Quarters in *Cilicia*, and the Parts adjacent, he return'd himſelf to *Conſtantinople*; where he had hardly time to repoſe himſelf, before he was inform'd, that the reſtleſs *Turks* were again Invading the Frontiers of the Empire after their uſual manner, and had done much Miſchief about *Neo-Cæſarea*; ſo that in the beginning of the Spring he was forc'd to renew his Expedition againſt them, and having repreſs'd their Fury in thoſe Parts, he retir'd into *Cappadocia*, where he was inform'd that the *Turks*, having defeated *Philaretus*, whom *Diogenes* had left for the Security of the Frontiers upon the *Euphrates*, had afterwards ſack'd *Iconium*, a rich and populous City in *Cilicia*; whereupon he pre-

par'd to march againſt 'em in Perſon, but hearing that upon the Report of his coming they were retir'd, he ſent the Governor of *Antioch* to ſtop their Paſſage near *Mopſueſtia*, who found the Work, in a great Meaſure, done to his Hand by the *Armenians*, who fell upon 'em in the Plains of *Tarſus*, and ſtripp'd 'em of all their rich Booty; and they hearing that the Emperor's Forces were approaching fled away by Night, and with great Difficulty eſcap'd into their own Country; which the Emperor underſtanding, and the Year being far advanc'd, he firſt ſettled the Affairs of the Provinces, and then return'd once more to *Conſtantinople*, where he made vigorous Preparations for a powerful Expedition againſt the *Turks* the Spring following.

It is not to be conceiv'd what great Alterations were wrought in the Army in ſo ſhort a time, as ſince this Emperor's Advancement; Levies were regularly made, the Legions were duly Officer'd, and the Officers juſtly encourag'd; ſo that had not *Diogenes* his Authority come to an untimely End, he had in all likelihood been as terrible to his Neighbours as moſt of his Predeceſſors; but Fortune appear'd as abſolute in his Deſtruction, as ſhe had been before in his Exaltation, and Fate had determin'd otherwiſe of the Empire.

In the beginning of the Spring the Emperor march'd into *Aſia*, and muſter'd his Forces in *Armenia*, where one of the Legions mutiny'd againſt him, for that they thought him too ſevere in his Diſcipline of the Army; but he, with an unſhaken Conſtancy, threaten'd to turn the reſt of the Army againſt 'em, and ſo quickly pacify'd 'em. In the mean time the *Turks* began to be in Motion on the other ſide, and ſeveral Actions happen'd between Parties detach'd from both Armies, in one of which *Nicephorus Baſilacius*, who commanded as General for the Emperor, was taken Priſoner, and honourably us'd by *Axan*, the *Turkiſh* Sultan, and Son of *Tangrolipix*.

This

This Prince, being a Man of great Experience and Sagacity, reflecting on the doubtful Event of War, and the numerous Forces the Emperor had rais'd against him, ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Diogenes* with Propoſals for a firm and honourable Peace; but the Emperor inclining inadviſedly to the Advice of ſome about him, who perſuaded him that this Condeſcenſion in the Sultan proceeded from Fear, and an Apprehenſion of his Power, return'd a haughty Anſwer by the Ambaſſadors, and prepar'd for an Engagement. A great Body of his Troops, under the Command of *Ruſelius*, one of his moſt experienc'd Officers, was abſent, and a Company of *Scythians*, who ſerv'd in the *Roman* Camp, revolted to the *Turks*, and there was great reaſon to think that their Countrymen, who were left behind, would ſoon follow their Example; notwithſtanding which the Emperor, either preſuming that the Strength he had remaining was ſufficient for the Service, or being hurry'd by his Deſtiny, drew out his Forces into Order of Battel, and fell upon the Enemy; who ſtill flattering themſelves with ſome hopes of an Accommodation, were very much ſurpriz'd to be thus unexpectedly charg'd, and behav'd themſelves like Men, who were equally unwilling to fight and to fly. However the Diſpute was continu'd with various Succeſs on both ſides the greateſt part of the Day; for tho' the *Turks* ſometimes gave Ground, yet they kept themſelves in Order, and charg'd briskly upon the *Romans*, 'till *Diogenes*, who was by this time advanc'd at ſome diſtance from his Camp, which he left weakly guarded, began to apprehend leſt the Enemy, who were ſuperior to him in Numbers, ſhould aſſault and take it, and therefore perceiving the Night to approach he ſounded a Retreat, and retir'd in good Order with that part of the Army which he commanded in Perſon: But *Andronicus*, the Son of *John Ducas*, Brother to the late Emperor *Conſtantine*, who look'd on *Diogenes* his good Fortune with a malicious Eye, and had a great Body

The Turks make Offers for a Peace, which are rejected.

of the *Roman* Forces under his Command, publiſh'd boldly, to thoſe who were near him, that the Emperor fled; and to encreaſe the Confuſion he ſaw 'em in, and confirm their Fears, he ſuddenly turn'd his Horſe about, and fled with great Precipitation to the Camp, and was follow'd in a diſorderly manner by the reſt of the Army, whom the *Turks* purſu'd, and did great Execution upon the Fugitive Chriſtians. The Emperor, ſeeing the Condition his Forces were in, did all that lay in his Power to make 'em ſtand; but they, being preſs'd hard by the Enemy, were deaf to all Orders, and ſhifted every Man for himſelf.

The Emperor defeated and taken Priſoner,

The Emperor, being thus forſaken by his Army, and oppreſs'd by the Multitude of his Enemies, many of whom he ſlew with his own Hands, was taken Priſoner, having firſt receiv'd ſeveral Wounds, and had his Horſe kill'd under him. When firſt the Sultan heard of his being taken he could hardly give Credit to it, 'till he was aſſur'd, by the Ambaſſadors he had lately ſent, that it was the Emperor, and by *Baſilacius*, who fell down at his Feet, and paid him the Honours due from a Subject to a Soveraign; whereupon *Axan* embrac'd the Royal Priſoner, who ſeem'd dejected, and aſham'd of his Captivity, and adviſ'd him to bear with Patience the Chance of War, which gives the Victory not always to the Brave, but Fortunate; promiſing, at the ſame time, to uſe him not like a Captive, but an Emperor, which he did accordingly, lodging him in a Royal Tent, entertaining him at his own Table, and releaſing ſuch Priſoners for whoſe Liberty the Emperor petition'd; and when he had thus entertain'd him with great Magnificence for ſeveral Days together, a perpetual Peace was concluded betwixt 'em, and the Emperor diſmiſs'd with ſuch Honours as never could have been expected at the Hands of an Enemy and Barbarian. Being thus diſmiſs'd he went attended with the *Turkiſh* Ambaſſadors, who were to ſee the Peace ratify'd at *Conſtantinople*, to *Theodoſiopolis*, where he attended

and is honourably treated by the Sultan, and diſmiſs'd.

tended ſome time for the Cure of his Wounds, deſigning, as ſoon as he was recover'd, to proceed on to the Imperial City, where ſuch Alterations had been made during the unfortunate Prince his Captivity, as promis'd him but an uncomfortable Welcome. For *John*, the Brother of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, and *Pſellus* a chief Senator, and others of the ſame Faction, hearing *Diogenes* was taken Priſoner, thruſt *Eudocia* the Empreſs from the Government, and having forc'd her into a Monaſtery, proclaim'd her eldeſt Son, *Michael Ducas*, Emperor; MICHAEL DUCAS. who being young and ignorant, *John* acted as his Guardian, and arrogated to himſelf the ſole Management of Affairs, preferring *Pſellus*, and ſuch other of his Accomplices as had been inſtrumental in the late Revolution, and diſcountenancing all thoſe who ſeem'd in the leaſt diſpleas'd at it.

In the mean time hearing *Diogenes* was releas'd, and A. D. that, being recover'd of his Wounds, he was approaching the Imperial City, he iſſu'd out Letters in the young Emperor's Name, commanding all the Governors of the Provinces, through which he was to paſs, not to receive or obey *Diogenes* as Emperor, but to deny him all the Honours due to that high Dignity; and being inform'd that upon the News of ſo unexpected a Revolution he was fortifying himſelf in a Caſtle call'd *Docia*, whither ſome of his moſt faithful Friends reſorted to him, he ſent *Andronicus* his eldeſt Son, *Diogenes* his inveterate Enemy, againſt him. *Andronicus* having eaſily defeated, him purſu'd the unfortunate Prince to *Adana*, a City in *Cilicia*, where, being cloſely beſieg'd by *Andronicus*, he was at length forc'd to ſurrender upon Condition he might retire to a private Life, and live unmoleſted. *Andronicus*, having thus got him into his Power, carry'd him into *Phrygia* in Expectation of farther Orders from the Court. Here *Diogenes* fell dangerouſly ill, being, as many ſuſpected, ſecretly poiſon'd; and, as if all this were not ſufficient, his Eyes were ſhortly after in a barbarous manner pull'd out, and he confin'd

to the Iſland *Prota*, where he ended his Days in a moſt miſerable manner; for as there was no Care taken of his Wounds his Eyes putrify'd, and Worms bred out of the Putrifaction, which created ſuch an abominable Smell that no one could endure to come near him. This unfortunate Prince ſuffer'd all this with an admirable Patience, and dy'd ſoon after in the Month of *October*, after he had reign'd three Years and eight Months, *A.D.* 1071.

Diogenes his Death.

Some ſay the young Emperor was wholly ignorant of this barbarous Cruelty, and that it was done by the Contrivance and Authority of *John*, his Uncle; however it were, he muſt be allow'd to have been as unfortunate, and to have deſerv'd it as little as any of his Predeceſſors. All his Perſonal Merit, and Publick Zeal for the Welfare of his Country, could not avert the Divine Indignation, for being a Party to that Breach of Oath in *Eudocia* the Empreſs, who her ſelf receiv'd but ſmall Satisfaction from ſo egregious a Prevarication; for as at firſt his neceſſary Attendance in the Wars forc'd her Husband from her Embraces, ſo was ſhe her ſelf at laſt ſhut up in a Monaſtery, and not ſuffer'd by her Preſence to Adminiſter to him, to Comfort and Condole with him in the utmoſt of his Extremities, and the ſevereſt Trials.

Diogenes being thus remov'd, to the great Detriment of the Empire; *Michael Ducas* was generally receiv'd for Emperor, but being ſluggiſh, and uncapable, the Chief Management of Affairs reſided in his Uncle *John* and his Family, who govern'd all with an indiſputed Authority, and apply'd their Power to the Oppreſſion of thoſe they were bound to protect. As ſoon as *Axan* heard of the miſerable End of the late Emperor he reſented it with a generous Indignation, and conceiving the perpetual League he had ſo lately concluded with *Diogenes*, was hereby render'd ineffectual; he reſolv'd inſtantly to revenge the Death of his Allie, and to Invade the Imperial Provinces, not ſo much now for the

the ſake of Spoil, but as one who reſolv'd perfectly to Conquer what he Invaded, and Poſſeſs what he had once Conquer'd.

The Emperor, hearing of the great Preparations of the *Turks*, firſt ſent *Iſaac Comnenus*, Son of the late Emperor *Comnenus*, againſt them; who, marching at the Head of a numerous Army, at firſt had ſeveral Advantages over the Infidels, whoſe advanc'd Parties he engag'd with Succeſs; but being too haſty to bring it to a general Engagement, he was, after an obſtinate Diſpute on both Sides, totally defeated, his Army put to the Rout, and himſelf taken Priſoner, and forc'd ſome time after to redeem himſelf with a vaſt Sum of Mony. *The* Turks *defeat the* Roman *Army.* In the mean while the Emperor, having rais'd another Army, appointed his Uncle *John Ducas* Commander in Chief, who had, in all probability, ſucceeded in his Expedition had it not been for *Ruſelius*, or *Urſelius*, a *Gaul*, who with ſome Troops of that Nation which he commanded, having revolted from the Emperor, defeated *John* near the River *Sangarius*, and took him Priſoner; and tho' he ſhortly after releas'd him, and join'd with him againſt the *Turks*, yet were his Troops ſo broken by the late Action, and the Spirits of the Soldiers in general ſo diſcompos'd, that *Axan* engag'd them on a ſudden, overthrew, and took 'em both Priſoners, and had undoubtedly purſu'd his Conqueſts without any Oppoſition, had he not been diverted by the Motions of *Cutlu-Moſes*, of whom mention has been made already, who fled from *Tangrolipix*, the late Sultan, but hearing of his Death return'd with great Forces out of *Arabia*, and laying a Claim to the Sovereignty, prepar'd to decide the Controverſie by a Battel.

Theſe Diviſions among the *Turks* muſt in time exceedingly have broken their Strength, to the great Benefit of Chriſtendom, had not the Caliph of *Babylon*, who, tho' he had been depriv'd of his Temporal Sovereignty, yet continu'd to exerciſe an Authority over them in Matters of Religion, repreſented to 'em the great

Danger they were in by their Inteſtine Diſſentions, which had already deſtroy'd the Great, and otherwiſe Invincible Empire of the *Saracens*, and would infallibly do as much by them, did they not come to a ſpeedy Agreement, and arm mutually againſt the Chriſtians. Theſe Words, which carry'd an unanſwerable Weight with them, wrought ſo ſeaſonable an Effect upon the Competitors, that they immediately laid down their Arms, and agreed to be determin'd by the Caliph's Arbitration; who inſtantly decreed that *Axan* ſhould enjoy, with an undiſputed Right, the new Monarchy ſo lately erected by his Father in the Upper *Aſia*, and ſhould aſſiſt *Cutlu-Moſes* and his Sons in the Conqueſt of ſuch Parts as they afterwards obtain'd, and call'd from them *Turcomania*, where they were to Rule with an abſolute and independent Authority. This Order, ſo pernicious to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire, was purſu'd with ſuch Application, that in a ſhort time they ſubdu'd all *Media*, the Provinces of *Lycaonia*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, *Bithynia*, and in the End made *Nice* the Seat of their Empire.

An Agreement between the Turks *extreamly prejudicial to the Chriſtians.*

Nor is this their extraordinary Progreſs to be wonder'd at, conſidering it happen'd during the ſluggiſh Reigns of the preſent Emperor *Michael Ducas*, and his Succeſſor *Nicephorus Botoniates*, whoſe Weakneſs and Incapacity encourag'd other Pretenders to the Imperial Dignity, ſome of whom, the better to purſue their Pretenſions, were not aſham'd to join with the *Turks* themſelves, and make uſe of their Aſſiſtance; it being natural to Ambition to apply without Shame the moſt infamous Means to the obtaining their unwarrantable Ends. Among theſe, in the firſt Place, was *Ruſelius* before mention'd, who having, from his Youth, ſerv'd in the *Roman* Army, had acquir'd much Experience and Reputation; and tho' his late Revolt had deſervedly render'd him ſuſpected to the Emperor, yet being redeem'd out of Captivity by his Wife, he was reſtor'd to Favour, and entruſted with a conſiderable Command

in

in the Leſſer *Aſia*, where having join'd to him ſeveral Troops of his own, and other Nations, and being ſecretly promis'd the Protection of the *Turks*, he threw off his Obedience to the Authority that had ſent him thither, and aſpir'd at nothing leſs than the Empire. Ruſelius *Uſurps.*

Michael, upon the firſt notice of his Rebellion, ſent ſeveral Commanders of great Eſteem againſt him, who, by their ſeveral Overthrows, ſerv'd only to encreaſe his Hopes and Preſumption. Some he circumvented by Fraud, or over-power'd by ſudden and unexpected Onſets, and the reſt, being aſſiſted by the *Turks*, he defeated in open Battel; 'till at length the Emperor was advis'd to ſend *Alexius Comnenus*, who was afterwards Emperor, againſt him. *Alexius*, tho' at that time very young, yet was even then look'd upon to be a Man ſubtle and daring, and therefore judg'd the fitter to contend with *Ruſelius*. He accordingly in a few Days, with a wonderful Succeſs, put a ſtop to the Courſe of the Uſurper's Fortune, and reduc'd him to ſuch Straits that he was forc'd to apply himſelf to *Tutach*, who commanded at that time for the *Turks*, with whom he offer'd to join both his Intereſt and his Forces. *Alexius*, who well knew the Conſequence of ſuch a Conjunction, reſolv'd, if poſſible, to prevent it; he therefore, by Meſſengers ſent on purpoſe to *Tutach*, repreſented to him, *The Peace that was at that time betwixt the Emperor and the Sultan, which it was his Duty religiouſly to obſerve:* He told him *Ruſelius was equally obnoxious to the* Turks *and the* Romans; that *having conquer'd the latter his Ambition would make him carry his Army into* Perſia, *where he would repeat the ſame Hoſtilities he had already committed in the Leſſer* Aſia; and knowing the Mercenary Mind of the Barbarian, and how powerful *Ruſelius* his Preſents had formerly been, he offer'd him an immenſe Sum of Mony, upon Condition he would deliver the Uſurper up into his Hands; and concluded by telling him, *He would not only oblige the Emperor, who was ready to reward him for ſo ſeaſonable*

a

a piece of Service, but would do a thing highly acceptable to the Sultan himſelf, who had great reaſon to be offended at a Man of Ruſelius *his ambiguous Temper, who had, by Turns, been a Traitor as well to the* Turks *as the* Romans.

Tutach was affected with no part of this Meſſage, ſo much as that wherein mention was made of the Reward. Having therefore, after a ſhort Conſultation, demanded a certain Sum, which was readily promis'd him by *Alexius*, he ſeiz'd ſuddenly on *Ruſelius*, and ſent him bound to *Amaſia*, where the *Roman* General then lay, who, with much difficulty, rais'd the Mony by a Contribution from the Inhabitants of that City, and ſent *Ruſelius* to *Conſtantinople*, having firſt order'd him to be blinded, as ſome have alledg'd, tho' others affirm the contrary; after which he reduc'd all thoſe Towns that had either declar'd for *Ruſelius* when firſt he uſurp'd, or had been forc'd by him afterwards. Having, in the beſt manner he could, compos'd the Diſorders of thoſe Parts, he return'd to the Imperial City, the Affairs of which were then in the utmoſt Confuſion, for the People were generally diſſatisfy'd with the Government, and almoſt every Day receiv'd ſome new Ground for Complaints.

and is ſuppreſs'd by Alexius.

About this time the City was afflicted with a grievous Famine, during which the covetous and improvident Emperor, who ought to have reliev'd the Inhabitants with a Fatherly Affection, leſſen'd the Meaſure of the publick Corn, and conſequently rais'd the Price of it, which deſervedly got him the Sirname of *Parapinaces*. His Avarice had render'd him ſo ungracious to the People, that they ſeem'd prepar'd to lay hold on the firſt Opportunity to remove him, of which tho' he was ſufficiently ſenſible, yet he took no Care, by any popular Act, to recommend himſelf to 'em.

NICEPHORUS BOTONIATES.

During theſe Jealouſies and Diſcontents at home, the *Turks*, having renew'd the War, prevail'd on every ſide abroad. *Nicephorus Botoniates* had been ſent to Command

mand the Forces of the Empire in *Asia*, where being render'd conſiderable by his many Services, and having wonderfully enrich'd himſelf, by which means he was enabl'd to bribe the *Turks* to countenance his Undertakings; he reſolv'd no longer to ſerve a Prince ſo univerſally contemn'd and diſlik'd, but to ſet up for himſelf. Accordingly having firſt try'd the Temper of his Soldiers, whom he had oblig'd by his Liberality, he enter'd into a Treaty with the *Turks*, who made a great Advantage of thoſe frequent Revolutions in the Empire, and was ſhortly after declar'd Emperor by the Army. A. D. 1078.

Michael was ſo ill prepar'd for ſuch a Defection, that he receiv'd the News of it with the greateſt Conſternation, which was aggravated, becauſe much about the ſame time he was inform'd *Nicephorus Bryennius*, who commanded in *Dyrrachium*, was preparing for the like Attempt upon the Imperial Authority in the Weſt, and was ſo far from moving to his Aſſiſtance againſt *Botoniates*, that truſting to his own Strength, and the Affection of his Soldiers, he reſolv'd to declare againſt 'em both. In this Extremity he caſt his Eyes upon *Robert Guiſchard*, a *Norman* by Birth, but at that time Duke of *Calabria* in *Italy*, to whoſe Daughter he had promis'd his Son *Conſtantine* in Marriage; but *Robert* was at that time too much employ'd at home to ſupport his Allie, ſo that *Michael*, unable of himſelf to oppoſe his Adverſaries, and deſpairing of Aſſiſtance from abroad, upon a certain Information that *Botoniates* was approaching the Imperial City at the Head of a numerous Army, compos'd as well of *Turks* as Chriſtians, he ſubmitted to an invincible Neceſſity, and having firſt endeavour'd to ſoften *Nicephorus* by an humble ſubmiſſive Meſſage, he with a ſeeming Chearfulneſs reſign'd the Imperial Ornaments, and retir'd into a Monaſtery, out of which he was ſhortly after remov'd, and made Arch-Biſhop of *Epheſus*. Michael reſigns.

Thus ended the Reign of a Prince, who, ſucceeding one who had deſerv'd ſo well, and been ſo ſerviceable

viceable to the Empire, was from the Beginning very unacceptable to his Subjects; tho' in ſome Reſpects he was worthy of Commendation; for he was naturally addicted to Learning, which was almoſt the only thing that met with Encouragement throughout his Reign; for beſides his exceſſive Covetouſneſs, he was ſubject to detract from and oppreſs ſuch as were more deſerving than himſelf. How he behav'd himſelf under his new Office is left uncertain, tho' we ſhall have occaſion to make ſome mention of him upon another Account hereafter.

and Nicephorus *acknowledg'd Emperor.*

Immediately upon this Reſignation of *Michael*, *Nicephorus* enter'd *Conſtantinople*, where he was acknowledg'd Emperor on the twenty fifth of *March*, 1078, and being crown'd by the Hands of the Patriarch, prepar'd with all Diligence to reduce *Bryennius*, whom he conſider'd as a dangerous Competitor, both in reſpect of his Perſonal Abilities, and the great Courage and Diſcipline of his Troops. *Bryennius* was deſcended from an Illuſtrious Family, and ſo well qualify'd both in his Perſon and his Mind, that he ſeem'd deſign'd by Nature from his Birth to Command. As he march'd Eaſtward from *Dyrrachium*, the Cities through which he paſs'd receiv'd him with open Arms, and reiterated Acclamations, and his Party encreas'd ſo viſibly every Day, that for ſome time it was doubtful who was the Perſon deſign'd to be obey'd. *Botoniates* was not ſo well ſecur'd of the Affections of his People at home, to undertake the Expedition himſelf, but committed the Conduct of the War to *Alexius Comnenus*, who, tho' created General in Chief of all the Forces for that purpoſe, with ſome Unwillingneſs undertook it; for as the Eaſtern Forces were chiefly employ'd for the Defence of the Frontiers againſt the *Turks*, who grew every Day more powerful, ſo the greateſt Part of thoſe in the Weſt had declar'd for *Bryennius*, and left an inconſiderable Body to oppoſe him.

Bryennius *uſurps in the Weſt,*

Alexius

Alexius was ſent at the Head of theſe againſt *Bryennius*, having receiv'd the Promiſe of being reinforc'd with ſome *Turkiſh* Auxiliaries; but without waiting for their Arrival he muſter'd his Army, and began his March, well knowing how favourable the leaſt Delay would be to *Bryennius*, to whom the People in general were ſo well affected; and conſidering how much he was inferior to the Enemy in Strength, he prepar'd rather to circumvent him by Stratagems, than oppoſe him in the Field. *againſt whom the Emperor ſends Alexius;*

Accordingly he endeavour'd, as much as he could, to conceal from *Bryennius*, in his Marches and Encampments, the Weakneſs of his Forces; and when, after ſeveral Attempts on each ſide, and Skirmiſhes by Parties, he thought fit to bring it to a general Engagement near *Calaura* in *Thrace*, he made ſo good a uſe of his Ground, and ſo artfully diſpos'd his Forces, that *Bryennius* was in the end defeated and taken Priſoner. The Fortune of the Day continu'd doubtful for ſome time, *Alexius* making that good by his Stratagems which he wanted in Men; tho' had the *Scythians*, that ſerv'd under *Bryennius*, purſu'd the Advantage they had at firſt over their Enemies, and had forborn to plunder 'till they had been aſſur'd of the Victory, it had not declar'd ſo ſoon for *Alexius*; who, during the Confuſion the unſeaſonable Avarice of thoſe Barbarians had created, ſeiz'd on *Bryennius* his State-Horſe, adorn'd as it was with the Imperial Ornaments, according to the Cuſtom of thoſe Times; and having order'd it to be led up and down the Army, proclaim'd aloud that the General was ſlain.

By this Device *Alexius* fix'd the Fortune of the Day; for on the one Hand it added freſh Vigour to the Imperial Troops, and quite diſpirited thoſe of *Bryennius* on the other; and it was impoſſible for him to convince them of the Error, into which they had been betray'd, 'till 'twas too late; wherefore finding himſelf irrecoverably loſt, he at length fled after the reſt, and *who takes him Priſoner.*

and was taken in the Purſuit, having firſt giving extraordinary Proofs of his Perſonal Valour. *Alexius* receiv'd him with a Reſpect and Commiſeration due to his Perſon and Misfortunes. Having ſettled his Forces in Quarters of Refreſhment, he ſet forward with this unhappy Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*, but before he could reach the Imperial City, *Borilus*, the great Favourite of *Botoniates*, met him with Orders from the Emperor, in whoſe Name he requir'd *Bryennius* to be deliver'd up to him, and gave him a Commiſſion to march back againſt *Baſilacius*, who began to appear as dangerous to the Empire as *Bryennius* had been before him.

Baſilacius *Uſurps*,

Baſilacius was a Perſon remarkable for the Strength of his Body, and great Preſence of Mind, which made him bold, and capable of the moſt hazardous Undertakings. Being naturally proud and ambitious, he had been long deſigning what he now thought fit to put in Execution; like the Heir of *Bryennius* his Courage, as he prov'd afterwards of his Misfortunes, he prevail'd with the Men of Intereſt in the Weſt to declare for him, and at the Head of a conſiderable Number of Veteran Soldiers, and the Boors of the Country, who were join'd by thoſe that had eſcap'd the late Defeat, he ſet out from *Dyrrachium* to *Theſſalonica*, which he eaſily took, and having been declar'd Emperor in his March, he there began to exerciſe his Imperial Authority.

In the mean time *Alexius*, having drawn his Troops out of their Quarters, march'd into *Theſſaly*, and perceiving how much *Baſilacius* was ſuperior to him in Force, he encamp'd himſelf very advantageouſly between two Rivers, prepar'd to prevent any Surprize, and vigilant to lay hold of all Advantages. *Baſilacius* lay encamp'd very near him, and knowing the Caution of his Adverſary, and how difficult it would be to bring him to an Engagement, he reſolv'd to fall on his Camp by Night. Of this *Alexius* being apprehenſive, either from his own natural Sagacity, or the Information of Deſerters,

Deſerters, gave Orders for all to be ready by the Evening; and having commanded the uſual Fires to be kindled throughout the Camp, and his own Tent to be illuminated with Lamps, as ſoon as Night approach'd he march'd out with his Forces without the leaſt Noiſe, and poſted himſelf at a convenient diſtance behind his Camp, expecting the Iſſue of his Stratagem. *Baſilacius*, on the other ſide, having prepar'd his Men for that purpoſe, waited for the Opportunity he promis'd himſelf from the Darkneſs of the Night, and then broke with great Violence into *Alexius* his Camp; where, whilſt his Forces were diſpers'd to kill their Enemies, whom they thought to find aſleep, he himſelf prepar'd to ſurprize their General in his Tent, whither he march'd with full Confidence; but was hardly ſenſible of his Error, and the Danger he had thruſt himſelf into, before *Alexius* return'd in a regular Order, and fell ſuddenly upon thoſe, who, thinking their Enemies fled, were in a diſorderly manner intent upon the Spoil, and unprepar'd at firſt to make any Reſiſtance. *Baſilacius*, beſide the Diſappointment of his Prey, found now upon what great Diſadvantages he was to contend; however he reduc'd his Forces into the beſt Order he was able, and made good his Defence all that Night, and ſome part of the Day following; but at length his Men, who were forc'd to fight upon unequal Terms, began to give Ground, and perceiving *Manuel*, *Baſilacius* his Brother, was taken, they fled with great Precipitation, and threw themſelves with their General into *Theſſalonica*, whither *Alexius* cloſely purſu'd 'em, and immediately ſummon'd the City; and becauſe he was willing to get *Baſilacius* alive, if poſſible, into his Cuſtody, he promis'd Security to his Perſon, and his Intereſt with the Emperor for an Indemnity for what was paſt, provided he would ſubmit and ſurrender himſelf.

but is defeated by Alexius.

Baſilacius was ſo far from accepting of theſe advantageous Conditions, that he prepar'd to hold out to the laſt

laſt Extremity; but the Inhabitants, who were afraid leſt *Alexius* ſhould Demoliſh their Town, open'd their Gates, allowing *Baſilacius* juſt time enough to retire into the Caſtle, whither he carry'd with him the ſame invincible Spirit, before the Victorious General was receiv'd into the City. Here *Alexius* once more made Offers of an Accommodation to *Baſilacius*, who with an unſhaken Conſtancy once more rejected 'em, chuſing rather to fall like a Soldier with his Sword in his Hand, than ſubmit to his Enemies; 'till the Soldiers, who were to defend the Caſtle, terrify'd at *Alexius* his Succeſs, laid violent Hands upon him, and deliver'd him up to the *Roman* General; who, together with his Priſoner, ſent an Account of his Victory to the Emperor, who commanded *Baſilacius* his Eyes to be pluck'd out, and dignify'd *Alexius* with the Title of *Sebaſtos*, or *Auguſtus*.

and taken Priſoner.

A. D. 1080. By theſe Services *Alexius* render'd himſelf conſiderable in the Empire, and made way for his future Advancement, which he ſhortly after effected. In this he was faithfully aſſiſted by his Brother *Iſaac*, and under-hand by *Mary* the Empreſs, at firſt the Wife of *Michael Ducas*, and afterwards of his Succeſſor *Nicephorus Botoniates*. *Nicephorus*, being an eaſie, improvident, and unactive Prince, ſuffer'd himſelf to be govern'd by *Borilus* and *Germanus*, two *Scythian* Brothers, who, well acquainted with the Arts of the Court, reign'd there with an invidious Authority; when they perceiv'd that *Botoniates* was too much declin'd in Years to hope for any Iſſue of his own, they advis'd him to think of a Succeſſor; and he, tho' *Conſtantinus Ducas*, Son of the late Emperor, and his own Son-in-Law, had an indiſputed Right to ſucceed him, yet, after ſome Conſultation with his two Favourites, he declar'd privately in Favour of *Synadenus*, a Youth related to him, of Illuſtrious Parentage, great Beauty, and of other Qualities uncommon to one of his Years. This Deſignation was not manag'd with ſo great Secrecy,

crecy, but the Empreſs had Intimation of it, and being highly concern'd at the Injury ſhe thought they were doing her Son, ſhe diſcover'd all to *Iſaac* and *Alexius Comnenus*. *Iſaac* had lately marry'd one of her near Relations, and *Alexius* was ſo powerful in the Army, and had been juſt then adopted by her, that ſhe was eaſily perſuaded, both by Affinity and Intereſt, to apply to them; and they, being naturally Ambitious, and by Birth laying a Claim to the Empire, ſtrove to ſtrengthen her Reſentments, and promis'd her all imaginable Aſſiſtance.

The Intimacy that daily appear'd betwixt the Empreſs and the *Comneni*, adminiſter'd juſt Grounds of Jealouſie to the two Favourites, who therefore at firſt endeavour'd to render 'em ſuſpected to the Emperor, and when they found that could not be effected, they prepar'd by ſome violent Means to remove 'em. Of this *Alexius* receiv'd a ſeaſonable Information, ſome ſay by means of the vigilant Empreſs her ſelf, ſo that having firſt inform'd his Mother and Relations of the Danger they were in, he apply'd himſelf to *Pacurianus*, a Principal Officer in the Army, the ſmalneſs of whoſe Stature was abundantly made good by the largeneſs of his Soul, his Experience in the Wars, and Illuſtrious Birth. *Pacurianus* being inform'd by *Alexius* of the two Brother's Deſigns, without any Heſitation return'd him this reſolute Anſwer, *If early the next Morning you will withdraw to the Army, behold here the faithful Companion of your Flight and Fortunes; but if you delay a Moment longer, I will inſtantly diſcover all to the Emperor, and inform him of the Treaſonable Propoſals you have made me.* *Alexius*, charm'd with ſo generous a Proceeding, came immediately to this Agreement with him, which was confirm'd by Oath, That *when ever the one ſhould be advanc'd to the Imperial Dignity, the other ſhould ſucceed him in all his Employments.*

Alexius being in Danger prepares for a Revolt.

This being done to their mutual Satisfaction, *Alexius*, *Isaacius*, *Pacurianus*, and the reſt of their Adherents, fled early in the Morning towards the Army lying then upon the Borders in *Thrace*, from whence they ſent a Meſſenger to *John*, the Brother of the late Emperor *Conſtantinus Ducas*, living then in thoſe Parts, with Invitations to partake of the Entertainments, as they term'd it, which they had been preparing. *John* at firſt receiv'd the Meſſenger with much Conſternation; on the one Hand he was afraid of the Emperor's Reſentment, (who had already entertain'd a Jealouſie of him) ſhould the Conſpirators miſcarry; on the other he apprehended the Power of the *Comneni*, who were Maſters of all the Forces Quarter'd in that Country, and were able to puniſh him upon a Refuſal; to this Conſideration he added another of no leſs weight, the general Diſſatisfaction of the People upon the great Progreſs of the *Turks*, who prevail'd in all Parts, and had lately taken the City of *Cyzicus*, which made 'em prone to any Innovations. Hereupon he chearfully embrac'd the Propoſals, and ordering his numerous Retinue to be got ready, he ſet forward on his Journey, and on his way intercepted an Officer, who was going with a great Treaſure, part of the Emperor's Revenue, to *Conſtantinople*, which he ſeiz'd, and by ſo unexpected a Supply, render'd his Appearance more welcome to the *Comneni*.

Immediately upon his Arrival the Chief Officers of the Army conſulted what was next to be done, and after ſome Conſideration whether *Iſaacius*, or *Alexius* ſhould be declar'd Emperor, it was unanimouſly decreed in favour of the latter, as well at the Inſtigation of *Iſaacius* himſelf, as by the Advice and earneſt Exhortations of *John Ducas*, and all his powerful Relations, who were the more inclinable to him becauſe *Alexius* had marry'd *Irene*, one of their Family. Accordingly *Alexius* was declar'd, and ſaluted Emperor by all the Army, which he led, by long Marches, towards

ALEXIUS COMNENUS.

wards *Conſtantinople*, receiving the Acclamations and Acknowledgments of all the Cities as he paſs'd.

Nicephorus receiv'd the News of his Approach with the utmoſt Conſternation; his Age had robb'd him of that Strength and Activity for which he had heretofore been deſervedly renown'd, and his preſent Dangers had render'd him uncapable of ſafe and wholeſome Councils. The Citizens in general were diſaffected, the Senate irreſolute, and tho' his two Favourites, and ſome others continu'd faithful to him, yet they ſeem'd rather reſolv'd to Fall with him, than capable of Protecting him. The Senſe of his own Uſurpation added a weight to his preſent Confuſion, and the Wrong he had done others taught him what he was to expect himſelf.

Whilſt he lay under theſe Apprehenſions *Alexius* approach'd the Imperial City, to which he thought not fit to lay a regular Siege, but by ſlight Skirmiſhes, and momentary Attempts, try the Temper and Inclinations of the Inhabitants; chuſing rather, if poſſible, to have it betray'd into his Hands, than by the Obſtinacy of a Siege to force it. In this he was very happily aſſiſted by *George Palæologus*, a Perſon of Principal Authority in the Empire, who at firſt was with great Difficulty perſuaded to eſpouſe the Intereſt of the *Comneni*; but having once embrac'd it he appear'd a very zealous Champion for them, tho' his Father continu'd firm in his Obedience to *Botoniates*. This Man enter'd into a Treaty with him, who had one of the Quarters of the City committed to his Charge, and he promis'd to open the Gates at the ſame time that *Palæologus*, who got ſecretly into the Town, was to give *Alexius* a Signal from the Turret, that he might march and take Poſſeſſion of them. This Deſign was executed with a Succeſs ſuitable to the Secrecy with which it was concerted; and the *Comneni* were Maſters of the City before *Botoniates* knew it was aſſaulted. *Alexius* his Army, being compos'd of Barbarians as well as

He takes Conſtantinople.

Christians, 'tis incredible to relate the Mischief they did in that rich and populous City, which they plunder'd with an unheard of Brutality, without any Regard had to things Sacred, robbing the Churches as well as Shops, prophaning Cloysters, and unripping Houses with an equal Impetuosity.

Palæologus, having thus gain'd Admission for *Alexius* his Troops into the City, so dexterously manag'd the Officers of the Fleet then riding in the Haven, that they all declar'd for the new Emperor; and *Botoniates* sent to offer a Submission to *Alexius*, to whom he propos'd wholly to resign the Power of Emperor, provided he might be suffer'd to share the Name with him, and reserve some of the outward Ornaments of the Imperial Dignity. To this the *Comneni* are said to have assented, but were with great Obstinacy oppos'd in it by *John Ducas*, who, discovering his implacable Hatred to *Botoniates*, upon the Account of his Nephew *Michael*, would suffer *Alexius* to listen to no Accommodation. In the mean time *Borilus*, observing with how much Security *Alexius* his Soldiers rang'd throughout the City, drew together a good Body of Forces well arm'd, and of approv'd Fidelity, with which he offer'd *Botoniates* to fall upon the unthinking Enemy, and promis'd to give him a good Account of his Undertaking. This Offer was thankfully receiv'd by the disconsolate Emperor, but *Cosma* the Patriarch happening to be present, and dreading the Effusion of Blood, from which, after the first Impression, *Alexius* his Soldiers had hitherto abstain'd, advis'd him at length to submit to the Divine Will, and retire to a private Life, rather than by his Obstinacy suffer the City to be polluted with the Slaughter of Christians wallowing in each others Blood. *Botoniates* was so lively touch'd with this Heavenly Exhortation, that he immediately retir'd out of the Imperial Palace, and fled for Refuge to the Great Church; where, with much Difficulty, he was persuaded to be shaven,

and Depoſes Botoniates.

and

and to turn Monk, after a Reign of almoſt three Years, during which he did nothing anſwerable to the Expectation Men had conceiv'd of him before his Advancement, but left the Empire in a worſe Condition than that wherein he found it, ſuffering the *Turks* to gain Ground every Day in *Aſia*, without undertaking any thing effectually to reſtrain 'em. His great Favourite *Borilus* made it appear in the end how much he lov'd the Authority, and how little he eſteem'd the Perſon of his great Maſter and Benefactor; for when he found that the Patriarch's Admonitions had prevail'd, contrary to his Advice and Expectation, and that the confus'd Emperor had forgot to diveſt himſelf of the Imperial Gown before he quitted the Palace to retire to the Church, he violently tore off the Jewels that were faſten'd to the Sleeve, adding, with an inſolent Reproach, that an Habit, depriv'd of all Ornaments, beſt became the Condition he had with ſuch a Poorneſs of Spirit embrac'd. After *Botoniates* had been for ſome time in the Cloyſter he was ask'd, by one of his intimate Friends, *With what Temper of Mind he bore that Change of Condition?* To whom he reply'd, *That he found nothing unpleaſant in his preſent State of Life, but his enjoin'd Abſtinence from Fleſh*; an uncommon Anſwer to an obvious Queſtion.

CHAP. IV.

From the Beginning of Alexius *his Reign, 'till the Weſtern Chriſtians expell'd the* Greeks *out of* Conſtantinople.

Containing the Space of 119 *Years.*

I. IF *Alexius* had conſider'd the unhappy Concluſion of the late Reigns, he would have had ſmall reaſon to have coveted his Advancement; but Ambition, like a vicious Glaſs, repreſents things in their wrong Colours, and makes ſome Men fond of the Imperial Purple, tho' in the end it proves as pernicious as *Hercules* his Shirt. The greateſt and beſt Pretence to Power is a larger Opportunity of doing good, tho' in the mean time a Man has as full a Scope for the Exerciſe of his Virtues in a Cell, as upon a Throne, and that Water which flows from a polluted Fountain, how clear ſoever it may appear, muſt be dangerous and unwholſome. However Uſurpations were, by this time, grown ſo familiar to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, that he only was judg'd to have a Legal Right, who had the longeſt Sword; and Succeſſion was ſo far from being obſerv'd among 'em, that Poſſeſſion it ſelf was an unregarded Plea, unleſs ſupported by the Force of Arms; than which nothing can be more pernicious to the Safety of a State, or more apparently threaten the Diſſolution of it.

A. D. 1081. *Alexius*, having thus maſter'd the City of *Conſtantinople*, was immediately, upon *Botoniates* his Reſignation, crown'd by the Hands of the Patriarch, in the Month of *April*, in the fourth Indiction, *An. Dom.* 1081. after which he took care, in the beſt manner he could, to reward thoſe who had been inſtrumental in his Promotion; but found himſelf ſo unable to anſwer all their Deſerts, or Expectations, that he was oblig'd to invent new

new Honours and Dignities, to gratifie them. *Conſtantinus Ducas*, the Son of the late Emperor *Michael*, was honour'd with a Shadow of the Imperial Dignity; he was ſuffer'd to wear an Imperial Crown, and make uſe of the other Ornaments inſeparable to that Dignity. He ſign'd with *Alexius* in all Acts and Grants, was ſaluted with him in all publick Acclamations, and follow'd immediately after him in the general Proceſſions. A Promiſe of this his Mother *Mary*, the late Empreſs, is ſaid to have obtain'd from the *Comneni* before they undertook to declare againſt *Botoniates*, which was now confirm'd by a Golden Bull at the Inſtigation of *John Ducas*, who thought it the only Means to perſuade *Mary* to quit the Imperial Palace, from whence he was deſirous to remove her, either out of an inveterate Averſion to her Perſon, or a Diſtruſt leſt ſhe ſhould give Occaſion to ſome new Commotions; for ſhe was a Princeſs belov'd by the People, and of ſo exquiſite a Beauty, that tho' ſhe was ſomething paſt the Prime of her Years, it was thought no impoſſible thing for her to enſnare one of the *Comneni*. However, having thus provided for the Honour and Safety of her Son, ſhe withdrew to *Mangana*, and contented her ſelf with a private Life. After this *Alexius* proceeded to reward his Brother, and the reſt of his Relations, which he did with ſo liberal a Hand that he thereby impoveriſh'd his Treaſury, which threw him upon unjuſt Exactions and illegal Uſurpations, the unhappy Effects of which he ſeverely felt afterwards. When this was done, knowing how much the late barbarous Behaviour of his Soldiers in the City had offended the Clergy and the People, he thought the only way left to reconcile himſelf to 'em was to make a publick Confeſſion, and undergo a publick Penance; which he did with more Art and Deſign, as ſome affirm, than Humility and Devotion: For having made an open Acknowledgment of his Rebellion, and the great Damage the Imperial City ſuſtain'd, as a Conſequence of it, the Patriarch enjoin'd him, and

all thoſe who had aſſiſted him in the Defection, a Penance for forty Days, during which they were to faſt, and ſleep on the Ground, in the Performance of which none appear'd ſo chearful as the Emperor.

Alexius *his Actions againſt the* Turks.

Having, as he thought, by theſe Rewards and Expiations ſettled the Minds of his People at home, he began to obſerve the growing Power of the *Turks*, whoſe Sultan *Solyman* had, during the Diſtractions of the late Reigns, fix'd his Court at *Nice*, and from thence made daily Incurſions up as far as the *Boſphorus*, roving without Controul upon the Sea-Coaſts, and always returning loaden with Booty. To prevent this, the Emperor order'd ſufficient Numbers of his Forces to embark on board light Pinaces deſign'd for that purpoſe, who coaſting along the Shoar by Night, where-ever they found the *Turks* not exceeding them in Numbers, landed on a ſudden, and fell violently upon 'em; and having done ſufficient Execution, they as ſuddenly reimbark'd, and prepar'd for the like Onſet upon ſome other Poſt, which they attempted with an equal Succeſs. This they continu'd ſo long, and haraſs'd the Enemy to that degree, that they were forc'd to quit their Stations upon the Shoar, and remove farther up into the Country; whither the *Romans* follow'd 'em, ſeiz'd the Poſts they had deſerted, from whence they tir'd 'em by their frequent Alarms, and ſo gall'd 'em by their ſudden and unexpected Aſſaults, ſtill deluding 'em with as quick a Retreat, that the Sultan, who had loſt many of his Subjects in this tumultuary War, thought it adviſeable to ſue for a Peace.

who conclude a Peace with him.

Tho' *Alexius* was ſenſible of the Neceſſities to which he had reduc'd the *Turks*, and how eaſie it was for him to purſue his preſent Advantages, yet he readily liſten'd to the Overtures made him by *Solyman's* Ambaſſadors, who thereupon concluded a Peace between him and the Sultan.

It has been truly obſerv'd, that the *Turks* ow'd the Extent of their Dominions, which in time cover'd ſo great

great a Part of the Earth, rather to the unhappy Diſſentions among Chriſtians, than the Courage or Diſcipline of their own Forces, of which the Hiſtory before us affords an undeniable Inſtance. For whilſt *Alexius* was managing the War againſt the *Turks* with ſo much Conduct and Succeſs, he was diverted from the Proſecution of it, upon Advice of the Preparations *Robert Guiſchard*, Duke of *Pavia* and *Calabria*, was making againſt him in the Weſt; which made him think rather of ſecuring what ſtill remain'd of the Empire to his Succeſſors, than recovering thoſe Parts as had been wreſted from his Predeceſſors.

Robert Guiſchard's *Expedition againſt* Alexius.

This Expedition of *Robert* giving ground to ſeveral of *Alexius*'s Actions in the Series of his Reign, it will not be improper to make a particular Enquiry into the Reaſons for it. *Robert* was by Birth a *Norman*, the Son of *Tancred*, Lord of *Hauteville*; who having a numerous Family, and but a ſmall Eſtate, ſent his two Eldeſt Sons, about the Beginning of the eleventh Century, to try their Fortune in the Wars againſt the *Saracens* in *Italy*, where they behav'd themſelves with great Courage and Succeſs, and taking an Occaſion to be their own Paymaſters, they ſeiz'd on certain Places in *Pavia*, and ſending for their Brethren, they in time eſtabliſh'd their Dominion in *Italy*. *Robert*, the third Son, as he ſurviv'd moſt of his Brethren, ſo he prov'd the moſt fortunate. He, not content with *Pavia*, conquer'd the greateſt Part of that Country which is now call'd the Kingdom of *Naples*, and took upon himſelf the Title of Duke of *Pavia* and *Calabria*, which he enjoy'd many Years without a Competitor. Being a Prince of an aſpiring ambitious Temper, he perſuaded the Emperor *Michael Parapinaces* to betroth his young Son *Conſtantinus Ducas* to his Daughter, which *Michael*, who ſaw how much he ſtood in need of Foreign Aſſiſtance, readily conſented to; and having made his Eſcape into the Weſt, towards the End of *Botoniates* his Reign, he earneſtly ſollicited *Robert* and the Pope for his Reſtoration,

ſtoration, which *Robert* very readily undertook. This is the Account left us by the *Latin* Writers, from whom the *Greeks* differ only in this, that it was not *Michael* himſelf who implor'd *Robert*'s Aſſiſtance, but a Monk call'd *Rector*, ſuborn'd by *Robert* to perſonate that unhappy Prince, and thereby give a better Colour to his Undertaking.

Alexius, upon the firſt Advice of *Robert*'s Motions, diſpatch'd away *George Palæologus* to ſecure the City of *Dyrrachium*, and other Poſts in thoſe Parts; the Governors of which having not as yet ſworn Allegiance to him, gave him great Reaſon to ſuſpect they would with the firſt Opportunity revolt to his Enemy. At the ſame time he endeavour'd, by rich Preſents and large Promiſes, to ſtir up the Weſtern Princes againſt *Robert*, eſpecially *Henry* the *German* Emperor, with whom he offer'd to enter into the ſtricteſt Alliances, nor did he omit to make ſuch Proviſion at home as the Danger with which he was threaten'd indiſpenſibly requir'd. He ſent for all the Forces quarter'd in the Eaſt, except ſome few left for the Security of the Borders, and commanded the general Officers to make new Levies as they march'd along. By frequent Muſters, and large Donatives, he confirm'd the Minds of his Soldiers, and in every reſpect behav'd himſelf like a Prince who was ſenſible of the Power with which he was to contend, and the Dangers that naturally ariſe from Foreign Invaſions.

In the mean time *Robert*, having left his Son *Roger* as his Lieutenant in *Italy*, ſet ſail with all his Forces from *Brunduſium*, and landed at *Buthrotum* or *Butrinto* in *Epirus*, where he was join'd by his Son *Bohemond*, who having firſt landed at *Aulon*, a Sea-port Town in *Albania*, took it at the firſt Aſſault. Here *Robert* divided his Forces into two Bodies, with one of which he intended to proceed by Sea to *Dyrrachium*, whilſt his Son march'd towards it by Land at the Head of the other, reſolving at once to beſiege it by Land and Water. But

Robert

Robert was hardly put out to Sea before he was overtaken with a furious Storm, which ſeparated his Fleet, deſtroy'd ſeveral of his Ships, and ſuffer'd himſelf with great Difficulty to eſcape a-ſhore; where reflecting on the Numbers of Men he had loſt, he allow'd thoſe that ſurviv'd ſeven Days time to refreſh themſelves, at a Place call'd *Glabinitza*, where that Body which his Son commanded came up to him, and ſome Troops that he had left behind at *Brunduſium* and other Ports join'd him: So that being as he thought ſufficiently reinforc'd, he ſate down before *Dyrrachium* on the fourteenth of *June*, at the ſame time ordering his Fleet to approach it by Sea, being reſolv'd to take it at what Price ſoever, as a Pledge of his future Conqueſts. *He beſieges* Dyrrachium,

The Inhabitants of *Dyrrachium* were ſo terrify'd at the Approach of this Army, that 'tis very likely they had open'd the Gates to *Robert* at the firſt Summons, had they not been reſtrain'd by the great Courage and Authority of *Palæologus*, whoſe indefatigable Vigilance omitted nothing requiſite to a vigorous Defence, or worthy the Truſt the Emperor had repos'd in him; above all he took Care to inform *Alexius* of *Robert*'s Arrival, and the great Conſternation the Country was in. The Emperor having agreed with *Solyman* for ſome Auxiliary *Turks*, after ſeveral Treaties with the *Venetians*, they undertook to fall on *Robert* by Sea, and defend *Dyrrachium* on that ſide. Accordingly they ſet ſail with a numerous well-appointed Navy, with whom *Robert*'s Son *Bohemond* engaging receiv'd an abſolute Defeat, his own Ship and ſeveral others were ſunk, and he himſelf narrowly eſcap'd. The *Venetians* having thus broken the Fleet landed on a ſudden, and being join'd by *Palæologus* from the Town, they fell furiouſly upon *Robert*'s Men, whom they drove to their Tents, and then return'd to their Ships with a great Booty.

Nor was this the only Difficulty *Robert* had to contend with, during this memorable Siege, for the *Venetians* having ſhortly after that given him a ſecond Defeat,

feat, grew ſo powerful at Sea, that his Ships could not ride there in any manner of Safety, ſo that he was oblig'd to draw 'em a-ſhore for their better Security. This threw him into a greater Inconvenience than any he had ſuffer'd before, for the Inhabitants of the Sea-port Towns, ſeeing him no longer Maſter at Sea, refus'd him their uſual Contributions; and he being unable to receive any Proviſions out of *Italy*, a great Famine rag'd in his Camp, which was ſucceeded by a Peſtilential Diſeaſe occaſion'd by the Change of Air, which is ſaid to have deſtroy'd upwards of ten thouſand in three Months time; it rag'd particularly amongſt his Horſe, the very Flower of his Army, and carry'd off moſt of his Chief Officers and prime Nobility: So that had he not been a Prince of an unſhaken Conſtancy, he never would have perſiſted in the Purſuit of an Enterpriſe, whoſe Beginning ſeem'd to diſcourage him with ſo many fatal Diſappointments.

However, finding by Experience how neceſſary it was for him to have the Sea open, he once more with great Difficulty launch'd his Ships, and apply'd himſelf with new Vigour to the Proſecution of the Siege. And the Emperor, finding by repeated Advices how hardly the Beſieg'd were preſs'd, having left his Brother *Iſaac* at *Conſtantinople*, to obſerve the Temper of the People, and reſtrain ſuch as ſhould be found to attempt any Innovations, he ſet forward to *Theſſalonica*, where he was join'd by *Pacurianus* and the Forces under his Command; and having receiv'd freſh Advices from *Palæologus*, urging him to a timely Relief, he immediately march'd towards *Dyrrachium*, and encamp'd on a riſing Ground at ſome Diſtance from the Town, having the Sea on the Left, and a very high Mountain on the Right. Here he entrench'd himſelf, and held a Council of War, at which *Palæologus* was ſummon'd to aſſiſt; and after a ſerious Debate it was reſolv'd to fight the Enemy, contrary to the Advice of the Eldeſt and moſt Experienc'd Commanders in the Army, and *Alexius* gave the neceſ-

ſary

ſary Orders accordingly. *Robert* on his ſide was ſo far from being terrify'd at the Emperor's Preſence, and his Preparations for an Engagement, that he commanded his Men to ſink their Ships, and burn their Camp-Equipage, giving 'em thereby to underſtand there was no Medium left between Death and Conqueſt, that one would free 'em from the Want of what they were now deſtroying, and the other ſupply 'em abundantly with all things from their Enemies. At firſt the Emperor's Forces had the Advantage, and drove a Body of *Robert*'s Troops towards the Sea, which put the whole Army into ſome Diſorder; but they being again reſtor'd by the Maſculine Behaviour of *Gaita*, *Rober*'s Wife, and the *Pallas* of her Age, they fell with ſo much Violence upon thoſe who juſt before ſeem'd to have ſo great an Advantage over them, that they fled with great Precipitation to a Church dedicated to St. *Michael*, which ſtood not far from the Place of Battel; whither they were purſu'd by the victorious *Latins*, who ſet Fire to the Sacred Pile, and deſtroy'd both that and their Enemies. By this time *Robert*, whoſe Courage and Conduct were equally to be admir'd upon that Occaſion, made an Impreſſion upon the main Body of the *Roman* Army, which after a ſhort but hot Diſpute was defeated and put to Flight. *Alexius* had in all likelihood maintain'd the Field longer than he did, had it not been for the Auxiliary *Turks*, who kept themſelves entire and unbroken during the Heat of the Engagement, but as ſoon as they found the Victory enclining to the *Latins*, they ſuddenly drew off and march'd back towards their own Country, which added to the Confuſion the *Romans* were already in, and confirm'd their Overthrow. *defeats the Emperor.*

Alexius his Loſs was not more conſiderable for the Numbers than the Quality of the ſlain, among whom were *Conſtantius* the Son of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, *Nicephorus Synademus*, and *Nicephorus Palæologus* the Father of *George*, with ſeveral others of the Prime Nobility.

bility. The Emperor himſelf was one of the laſt that turn'd his Back, and therefore eſcap'd with the greater Difficulty to *Achris*; of which when *Robert* was inform'd, he grew ſo incens'd againſt thoſe he had ſent to purſue him, that he order'd one of 'em to run the Gantlet, and gave the reſt ſignal Marks of his Diſpleaſure, ſo ſure he thought himſelf of the Emperor's Perſon, which would have compleated a Victory of it ſelf ſo very conſiderable; for it had made him Maſter of the Emperor's Pavilion, the *Roman* Camp and all their Baggage; and ſhortly after of *Dyrrachium*, which was ſurrender'd up to him at his next Summons. Here he ſpent ſome time in the Refreſhment of his Troops, in the Recovery of the wounded, and the rewarding thoſe who had behav'd themſelves well in the Engagement.

and takes the Town;

which reduces Alexius *to great Neceſſities.*

Tho' a Wound the Emperor had receiv'd in his Forehead was exceeding troubleſome, yet that of his Mind was more inſupportable; his Army was ſo weaken'd that he found it impoſſible to take the Field again without new Levies; and his own improvident Liberality, and the Profuſeneſs of the late Emperor *Botoniates*, had ſo impoveriſh'd the Treaſury, that thoſe Levies could not be rais'd without a ſeeming Miracle: So that the *Roman* Empire lay under two Difficulties, at that time eſpecially the moſt dangerous, Weakneſs and Poverty. In this Extremity, the Emperor thought once of quitting the Purple, which he found encumber'd with ſo many Cares; but receiving freſh Incouragement from his Mother and the reſt of the *Comneni*, who ſent all their Plate to the Mint, and having ſeiz'd on great quantities of that which belong'd to the Church, to the great Scandal of his Clergy, he prepar'd for refreſh Recruits, and to draw ſome of his Neighbours into his Quarrel, eſpecially *Henry* the *German* Emperor, whom he perſuaded to invade *Robert*'s Territories, hoping ſuch a Diverſion would give him ſome time to breathe, and enable him in the End

to

to drive him out of *Illyricum*. Accordingly *Henry*, purſuant to the Agreement between 'em, mov'd with his Army towards *Italy*; of which when *Robert* was inform'd, being ſenſible of the Danger to which his Dominions would be expos'd, ſhould they be invaded during his Abſence, he inſtantly ſummon'd a Council of War, where having declar'd his Son *Bohemond* to command as his Lieutenant in the Eaſt, and recommended him to the general Officers of the Army, he departed for *Italy*; and having reliev'd the Pope, who was cloſely beſieg'd by the Imperialiſts in the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*, he conſtrain'd *Henry* to quit *Italy*, and retook *Rome* from the Schiſmaticks; after which he retir'd to *Salernum*, there to refreſh himſelf, and expect the Event of *Bohemond*'s Arms in the Eaſt, where he ſucceſsfully puſh'd on the War againſt *Alexius*: For as ſoon as his Father was departed he muſter'd his Forces, which he found conſiderably ſtrengthen'd by the Acceſſion of ſeveral *Romans*, who, diſhearten'd at the late Defeat, had deſerted the Emperor and declar'd for the Victor; after which he took in ſeveral Towns and Places of Conſequence, which he had time to fortifie before the Emperor was able to move to their Aſſiſtance. At length *Alexius*, perceiving he had only chang'd the General, and not remov'd the War, march'd from *Conſtantinople* at the Head of ſuch Forces as he had been able to draw together, and was readily offer'd Battel by *Bohemond*, who once more overthrew him, and chas'd him a ſecond time to *Achris*; where having again recruited his Army, he was yet a third time overthrown and forc'd to fly, and implore the Aſſiſtance of *Solyman* the *Turk*, who ſent him ſeven thouſand of his Veteran Troops, under the Command of his moſt experienc'd Officers.

In the mean time *Bohemond*, having taken in ſeveral of the moſt conſiderable Towns in *Theſſaly*, was ſate down before *Lariſſa*, which was defended for ſix Months

Months together by *Leo Cephalas*, who thereby gave *Alexius* time to march up to its Relief; and he having been ſo often defeated by the *Latins*, who were always ſuperior to him in Horſe, he endeavour'd, according to his Method formerly, to obtain that by Stratagem which he had in vain attempted by open Force. In this he ſucceeded ſo well, that having drawn the *Latins* into an Ambuſcade, he cut off great Numbers of 'em, and took their Camp; and tho' in the end *Bohemond* ſeem'd to have the better of the Day, yet *Alexius* tamper'd ſo effectually with his chief Officers, that he was forc'd ſhortly after to retire to his Father into *Italy*, either for freſh Forces to recruit his Army, or Mony to pay 'em, they refuſing to continue the War 'till they had receiv'd their Arrears.

Alexius *his Artifice.*

A. D. 1083. *Alexius*, making uſe of *Bohemond*'s Abſence, recover'd ſeveral Towns that the Fortune of the War had wreſted from him; and hearing what great Preparations *Robert* was forming againſt him, he once more crav'd the Aid of the *Venetians* his Confederates, to which they readily accorded, and mann'd out a powerful Fleet for his Aſſiſtance; which, being join'd to the Emperor's, overthrew *Robert* in two Engagements, but were ſhortly after ſurpriz'd by him, as they lay ſecure in the Confidence of their own Strength, and Contempt of his Forces, and receiv'd an abſolute Defeat, which he us'd with the greateſt Barbarity, depriving ſome of thoſe he took Priſoners of their Eyes, others of their Hands and Feet, and putting others to unheard of Torments; at which the *Venetians* were ſo provok'd, that they ſhortly after rigg'd out another Fleet, and fell on *Robert* as he lay at Anchor near *Buthrinto*, burnt or ſunk moſt of his Ships, and had like to have taken his Wife and younger Son Priſoners; notwithſtanding which he prepar'd with an invincible Courage to refit his Fleet, and revenge himſelf upon his Enemies, but dy'd of a Feaver in the Iſland of *Cephalenia*, in the twenty ſixth Year of his Eſtabliſh-

Robert *dies.*

ment

ment of the *Normans* in *Italy*, and the ſeventy ninth of his Age; after whoſe Death *Dyrrachium*, and the other Towns in thoſe Parts, return'd to the Emperor.

Alexius being, by the Death of *Robert*, deliver'd from a dangerous and expenſive War, found himſelf at leiſure to obſerve the Proceedings of the *Turks*, whoſe Inteſtine Diviſions ſeem'd to offer him ſome fair Advantages againſt 'em, which proceeded no farther than to the Recovery of a few Maritime Towns, and ſome Advantages over *Apelchaſemus*, the pretended Sultan of *Nice*, which Place the Emperor in vain deſir'd, and attempted to get into his Hands; for he was at the ſame time clogg'd with the Reſentments of his Clergy, who being upon good Grounds offended at him for his Invading the Goods of the Church, gave him a ſufficient Trouble, which was not well compos'd before a War broke out with the *Scythians*, who threaten'd the Empire with new Dangers; for having paſs'd the *Danube*, and being invited into the *Roman* Territories by the diſcontented *Manichees*, they did great Miſchief where-ever they came. *The Scythian War.* Againſt theſe the Emperor ſent *Pacurianus*, who being join'd in Commiſſion afterwards with *Branas*, a valiant, but hot-headed, unthinking Officer, was forc'd to fight with unequal Numbers contrary to his own Judgment, and was kill'd in the Action, together with his unhappy Collegue, to the exceeding great Grief of the Emperor, who had a moſt particular Eſteem for *Pacurianus* upon the account of his conſummate Experience, and approv'd Fidelity. However he immediately appointed *Talicius*, or *Talin*, who had lately commanded with Succeſs againſt the *Turks*, to ſucceed him in the Service. *Talicius* engag'd 'em near *Philippopolis*, and having ſlain a great Number of 'em in the Battel put the reſt to Flight, concluding, tho' his Victory ſeem'd entire, the Service was not yet over, but that freſh Supplies, which he knew the Barbarians could not long want, would quickly draw him to a ſecond Engagement.

Accordingly he was ſhortly after inform'd by his Scouts, that the *Scythians* were approaching with redoubled Forces; whereupon he drew up his Men in Order of Battel, and ſtood prepar'd to receive 'em: Tho' the *Scythians*, by their Approach, ſeem'd deſirous of an Engagement, and the *Romans* appear'd ready to give 'em Battel; yet after they had both view'd each other for two Days together, the *Scythians* retir'd with ſo much Order and Expedition, that the *Romans*, who were far inferior to 'em in Numbers of Men, found it in vain to purſue 'em.

The *Scythians* the Spring following renew'd their Incurſions, and grew in time ſo conſiderable, that the Emperor thought it proper to march againſt 'em in Perſon. Accordingly he remov'd from the Imperial City to *Adrianople*, and from thence to a Place call'd *Lardea*, where, having muſter'd his Forces, he prepar'd to engage, contrary to the Advice of his moſt experienc'd Captains, eſpecially of *Bryennius* before-mention'd, who tho' he had loſt his Eyes by Order from *Botoniates*, as had been before obſerv'd, was ſtill highly eſteem'd for his extraordinary Knowledge and Affection to the preſent Emperor. But *Alexius* being guided more by his own Inclinations, and the Heat of the younger Officers, reſolv'd to fight; and tho' the Victory for ſome time ſeem'd to incline to the *Romans*, whoſe Commanders are ſaid to have done Wonders upon that Occaſion, yet the *Scythians*, being by much ſuperior in Numbers, at length turn'd the Fortune of the Day, and put the *Romans* to flight, in which many were ſlain, and the Emperor himſelf eſcap'd with great Difficulty to *Beroe*, where he receiv'd a ſurprizing Account of the great Numbers the *Scythians* had taken Captive, all which were however ſhortly after redeem'd. After this a Peace was frequently concluded, and as often broken by the irreconcilable *Scythians*, to the great Danger and apparent Ruin of the Empire. For the *Turks* obſerving the main Forces of the Empire were,

were, in a great Meaſure, directed againſt thoſe Barbarians, who however continu'd unconquer'd, ſeiz'd ſuddenly on *Clazomene*, *Phocæa*, *Metylene*, and *Methymna*, Places of conſiderable Importance in *Aſia*, and afterwards the Iſland of *Chios*, which tho' the *Romans* attempted to recover, yet were they in the end forc'd to raiſe the Siege, and had like to have loſt their Fleet. This oblig'd the Emperor to draw ſome of his Forces out of the Weſt, and to ſend 'em under the Conduct of *John Ducas*, Brother to the Empreſs, againſt the prevailing *Turks*, who threaten'd otherwiſe to bear all before them; whilſt he, in the mean time, purſu'd the War againſt the *Scythians* in Perſon, which was prolong'd partly by the Obſtinacy of his declar'd Enemies, but more through the Treachery of his pretended Friends. Among theſe was *Neantzes*, a *Scythian* by Nation, who deſerted to the Emperor almoſt at the beginning of the War, and expreſs'd himſelf, upon Occaſions, full of Duty and Reſpect, but took care to betray all the Emperor's Deſigns to his Countrymen; of which when he was accus'd by one, who, being of a mix'd Birth, underſtood both Languages, and heard *Neantzes* entertaining a traiterous Conference with the Barbarian Commanders, inſtead of vindicating himſelf to *Alexius*, and confuting his Accuſer, he drew his Scymiter in the Emperor's Preſence, and at the Head of the Army ſlew the Informer, which was ſo far from removing the Suſpicion of the Crimes objected to him, that it gave great Credit to the Information. However, both Armies being ready to engage, the Emperor thought fit to defer a farther Enquiry 'till the Battel was over, and by that means gave him an Opportunity of Deſerting at the firſt Charge, and of diſcovering to his Countrymen the Diſpoſition of the *Roman* Forces, which occaſion'd their Defeat.

This Diſgrace was wiped out by a conſiderable Advantage over the Barbarians obtain'd ſhortly after, which however did not hinder 'em from renewing

their Attempts the Spring following, when with fresh Forces they assaulted the Empire. But now Fortune seem'd determin'd against 'em, for the *Romans* overthrew 'em in two Engagements with little or no Loss to themselves; and tho' they had afterwards the Confidence to make their Excursions almost as far as the Walls of *Constantinople* it self, and gave the Emperor great Reason to apprehend the *Turks* would become Confederates with them in the War, yet at length their frequent Advantages and barbarous Confidence had so effectually blinded 'em, that *Alexius* watch'd his Opportunity, and in a pitch'd Battel did such Execution upon 'em that few escap'd; they who did not fall in the Fight were murder'd in cold Blood, the Women and Children sharing in the same Fate with their adventurous Husbands and Fathers.

A great Victory obtain'd against the Scythians.

This Victory, which may be allow'd to be the most compleat *Alexius* ever obtain'd, put an End to the War; after which the Emperor spent some time in settling the Affairs of the Provinces in the West, and then prepar'd to manage the War in Person against the *Turks*, which had hitherto been conducted with various Success by the Care of *John Ducas*, his Brother-in-Law. The Great Leader of the *Turks* was call'd *Tzachas*, who being possess'd of the City of *Smyrna*, began there to exercise a Regal Authority independent of the Sultan or the Emperor, and by degrees became so powerful, that he struck a Terror into the Inhabitants of *Constantinople* it self: Wherefore *Alexius*, as we observ'd before, sent *John Ducas*, his Commander in Chief, to oppose him, and with him *Constantinus Dalassenus*, who had a Command of the Fleet subordinate to the other, who was to assault *Metylene*, and such other Places as he lately wrested from the Empire by Sea, whilst *John* attack'd it by Land. In the mean time *Tzachas* had committed *Metylene* to the Custody of his Brother, whilst he with a select Army kept abroad, watching the Motions of his Enemies, and

Alexius *his Wars with the* Turks.

intent upon all Occaſions to ſupport and ſuccour his Friends; and *Ducas* acted with ſo much Vigour againſt him, that almoſt every Day, for three Months together, the *Romans* were either employ'd againſt the Walls of *Metylene*, or engag'd with *Tzachas*, by which continu'd Services they grew ſo exceeding weak, that without ſome timely Reinforcements they were in danger of being all cut off. Of this when *Alexius* was inform'd, and that the Fight generally began in the Morning, at which time the *Romans* fought with the Sun conſtantly in their Faces, he ſent Orders to *John* to ſpare his Men as much as poſſible, and rather to make choice of the Evening, as a Seaſon more convenient for an Engagement. This Order was ſucceſsfully obſerv'd by *John*; for when the *Turks* the next Morning, according to Cuſtom, drew out to fight, and obſerv'd the *Romans* to keep within their Entrenchments, as if they were celebrating ſome Feſtival, they retir'd, and with a too forward Security laid down their Arms. But as ſoon as the Sun had paſs'd his Meridian Point, and began to decline, the *Romans* iſſu'd out in exact Order of Battel, and tho' the *Turks* little expected them, yet they prepar'd to receive 'em. The Fight was manag'd at firſt with equal Obſtinacy on both ſides, 'till the *Turks*, who fought as well againſt the Sun, whoſe Beams mightily incommoded 'em, and a violent Wind, which blew the Duſt full into their Faces, as they did againſt their Enemies, gave Ground, and fled away. This Defeat made *Tzachas* incline to a Peace, which was concluded between him and *Ducas* ſhortly after. The Conditions were, That *Tzachas* ſhould have free Liberty to retire by Sea from *Metylene* to *Smyrna*, and that on the other Hand he would not oblige any of the Inhabitants at his Departure to go with him, nor injure 'em in their Perſons or Eſtates. Theſe Terms being mutually agreed to, and Hoſtages deliver'd on both ſides, the *Turk* was ſo far from a Performance, that he forc'd ſeveral of the Inhabitants to attend him: Immediately upon this

Delaſſenus arriv'd before *Metylene*, and being inform'd of *Tzachas* his perfidious Dealings he ſail'd ſpeedily after him, overtook, defeated, and ſunk or ſeiz'd on moſt of his Piratical Ships, kill'd thoſe that mann'd 'em, and releas'd the Captives; nor would *Tzachas* himſelf have eſcap'd, if the crafty *Turk*, apprehenſive of the Danger, had not embark'd himſelf on Board a ſmall Pinnace, inſtead of a Ship of Burden, and ſo eluded the Diligence of the Purſuers.

Being arriv'd at *Smyrna* his reſtleſs Mind threw him upon new Attempts, which at laſt ended in his Deſtruction. He gave Orders for a new Fleet to be prepar'd, and ſupply'd with all the Materials requiſite for his intended Expedition, and in the mean time he ſate down with a reſolute Army before *Abydos*, of which he hop'd to be Maſter in a few Days. But the Emperor having again declar'd *Delaſſenus* Admiral of his Fleet, upon the firſt News of *Tzachas* his Preparations alarm'd the Sultan by his Letters writ to that purpoſe, in which he repreſented to him *the dangerous Ambition of* Tzachas, *who, tho' he openly pretended his Deſigns were wholly againſt the* Romans, *at whoſe Empire he aim'd, yet that was no other than a Mask to cover his more ſecret Contrivances. The* Roman *Empire was too far out of his reach ever to attain it; that therefore tho' his Attempts were at preſent againſt that, he had the Sultan's Dignity in view, which he would make no ſcruple of Invading ſo ſoon as his preſent Succeſſes ſhould have ſtrengthen'd him ſufficiently for it; that therefore it behov'd him to conſider him as his moſt dangerous Enemy, and join with the* Romans *in the Suppreſſion of him, which would be an Undertaking no leſs prudent and honourable in him, than acceptable to the Emperor.*

The Sultan's Jealouſie was quickly alarm'd at the Receit of this Letter, ſo that he immediately march'd with his whole Army againſt *Tzachas*; who, being preſs'd by *Delaſſenus* from the Sea, and the Sultan by Land, and fearing leſt the Inhabitants of *Abydos* would

ſally

ſally upon him from the Town, at the ſame time that his Enemies aſſaulted him from without, in this Extremity he attempted to reconcile himſelf to the Sultan, who for that he was his Father-in-Law, and he ignorant of the Letter the Sultan had receiv'd from *Alexius*, he hop'd would be the ſooner perſuaded to receive him into Favour. The Sultan at firſt receiv'd him very graciouſly, and invited him to an Entertainment, where, in the midſt of his Mirth, he order'd him to be murder'd, and ſhortly after concluded a Peace with the Emperor, which reſtor'd Tranquility to thoſe Parts.

Tzachas murder'd by the Sultan's Order.

The War being thus extinguiſh'd in the Eaſt, broke out again preſently after in the Weſt, where *Bolcanus*, a *Dalmatian*, a Man of principal Authority in that Country, infeſted the *Roman* Territories, and laid all waſte before him; and tho', upon the Emperor's Approach, he pretended to ſubmit, and promis'd to live peaceably for the future, yet *Alexius* was no ſooner return'd to *Conſtantinople* but he renew'd his Hoſtilities, and committed greater Outrages than he had done before. The Emperor at firſt ſent *Joannes Comnenus*, his Brother's Son againſt him, whom, being young and unexperienc'd, the crafty Barbarian eaſily circumvented. He fell upon him ſuddenly by Night, deſtroy'd moſt of his Men, and forc'd him to a diſhonourable Flight: After which he renew'd his Devaſtations, and did unſpeakable Miſchief to the Territories of the Empire, which made *Alexius* undertake a ſecond Expedition againſt him, in which we was attended by the Flower of his Army; among whom none ſeem'd more zealous for his Service than *Nicephorus Diogenes*, tho' it afterwards appear'd that his loyal Outſide ſerv'd only to gild over his treacherous Deſigns. This *Nicephorus* was Son to the late Emperor *Romanus Diogenes*, who together with him left another Son behind him call'd *Leo*: Theſe Brothers had been baniſh'd by *Michael Ducas*, but reſtor'd by *Alexius*, who advanc'd 'em to honourable Employments, and always appear'd well inclin'd towards 'em.

A Deſign againſt the Emperor's Life

of which *Leo* was truly ſenſible, but *Diogenes* his aſpiring Spirit would not ſuffer him to be grateful. His ambitious Deſigns had been often diſcover'd, and as often pardon'd by the Emperor; who at length finding he had been waſhing the *Æthiop* white, that *Diogenes* inſtead of being reclaim'd continu'd to purſue his treacherous Ends, and ſeduc'd ſeveral of Power and Reputation to adhere to him, he then thought it time to provide for his own Safety; and being inform'd of a Deſign he had to murder him as he was bathing himſelf in this Expedition, he order'd him, and the moſt forward and dangerous of his Accomplices to be ſeiz'd, which was done accordingly, and their Eyes were pluck'd out, whether with the Emperor's Knowledge and Approbation 'tis left uncertain. *Diogenes*, when firſt he was ſeiz'd, was put to the Torture, which drew a Confeſſion from him, by which among other things it appear'd that the late Empreſs *Mary*, whoſe Husband was *Nicephorus* his half-Brother, had been privy to the intended Revolt, but not to the Aſſaſſination. Of which when the Emperor was inform'd he was ſo far from reſenting it, that he forbad any farther Mention to be made of it, and either would not believe it, or imputed it rather to the importunate Sollicitations of *Nicephorus*, than any Natural Diſpoſition of that Princeſs againſt him. *Nicephorus* having thus loſt his Sight was comforted and ſupported by the indulgent Emperor, who allow'd him a liberal Exhibition, by means of which he apply'd himſelf to Learning, and made a greater Proficiency than moſt others could have done with the Advantage of their Eyes againſt him, eſpecially in Geometry, in the Study of which the Sight is ſo particularly uſeful; in this he was aſſiſted by a celebrated Maſter, who deſcrib'd the Figure upon Wood, or ſome other ſolid Matter, by which means his Pupil with a wonderful Progreſs obtain'd that by the Uſe of his Fingers, which others acquir'd by the Eye. However he was not ſo entirely employ'd in theſe Studies, but ſtill Ambition and the

diſcover'd, and puniſhed.

Deſire

Deſire of Revenge raged within him, and thruſt him in to new Attempts; in which he proceeded ſo far, that by a ſtrange Infatuation he diſcover'd himſelf to ome whom he thought his Friends, and ready to eſpouſe is Intereſt, one of whom diſcloſed it to the Emperor, who ſending for *Diogenes* obtain'd a ſincere Confeſſion rom him, and once more pardon'd him.

The late Conſpiracy being detected in the Field in a manner, and at the Head of the Army which *Alexius* was leading againſt the Enemies of the Empire, 'tis incredible to relate how much Horror the Soldiers conceiv'd at the Senſe of it, how careful they appear'd for he Safety of the Emperor's Perſon, and with what Chearfulneſs they deſir'd to be led againſt the Barbaians: Of which when *Bolcanus* was inform'd, and obſerving the Order of the *Roman* Forces, he grew doubtful of Succeſs, and therefore once more offer'd Proſals for a Peace, promiſing moſt religiouſly to obſerve when concluded. In this he ſeem'd ſo ſincere, that he Emperor having receiv'd his Hoſtages condeſcended to a Peace, and return'd to *Conſtantinople*, where e had not long reſted before freſh Attempts againſt the Empire call'd him abroad again.

Tho' the *Scythians* had continu'd quiet ſince the laſt Peace, yet it appear'd that it proceeded rather from the want of a Pretence, than an Inclination to a Rupture, which was now offer'd to 'em by an Impoſtor, who pretending to be *Leo*, the Eldeſt Son of the late Emperor *Diogenes*, of whom Mention has been made already, and who was ſlain in an Engagement with the *Turks*, laid Claim to the Empire. This Impoſtor came firſt poor and deſpicable to *Conſtantinople*, where he inſinuated himſelf into the Acquaintance of ſuch as were fit for his Purpoſe, to whom he boldly declar'd he was that *Leo*. The Emperor at firſt rather laugh'd at the Folly than reſented the Inſolence of the Thing, but obſerving how his Followers encreas'd, and that the Relations of the late Emperor *Diogenes* were provok'd at the

The Scythians *renew the War.*

the Indignity this Uſurper offer'd their Family, he baniſh'd him to *Cherſona*, where he order'd him to be kept in ſtrict Cuſtody; from whence however he eſcap'd by Night, and fled over to the *Scythians*, who joyfully receiv'd him, and proclaim'd him Emperor. And now having as they thought got an Emperor of their own to warrant their Proceedings, they prepar'd with much Caution and Secrecy to fall into the *Roman* Territories; of which however *Alexius* had timely Advice, and took Care for the Security of the Borders, which he viſited in Perſon, and ſupply'd the Frontier Towns with all things neceſſary for their Defence, after which he return'd to *Anchialus* a City of *Thrace* ſeated upon the *Euxine* Sea. Here he was inform'd that the Barbarians had paſs'd the *Danube*, and had taken in ſeveral Towns in their March, where the Uſurper was proclaim'd Emperor: Having therefore given the neceſſary Orders for the Security of *Adrianople*, he reſolv'd himſelf to defend *Anchialus*; whither the pretended *Leo* march'd with his Army of Barbarians, propoſing inſtantly to take that and the Emperor with it, and by that means make an End of the War at once. Here when both Armies had view'd each other for three Days together without coming to Blows, for the Emperor had the Advantage of the Ground, tho' the *Scythians* were more numerous, and the Barbarians ſaw they muſt of neceſſity venture a Battel before they could come near enough to the Town, they drew off, and march'd towards *Adrianople*, of which the Impoſtor pretended himſelf to be very ſure, by the Intereſt he had in *Nicephorus Bryennius* who commanded in it, who he ſaid had been highly oblig'd by his Father *Diogenes* when Emperor, adding, that from thence they might eaſily march up to the Imperial City. The credulous Barbarians believing all he ſaid, thought themſelves already Maſters of the *Roman* Empire, and ſo ſet out for *Adrianople*; where notwithſtanding the Hopes they had conceiv'd of *Bryennius*, they met with ſo vigorous a Reſiſtance, that hardly one Day

paſs'd

paſs'd for near ſeven Weeks together wherein ſome conſiderable Action did not happen. At length the Beſieg'd began to be ſo hardly preſs'd that *Bryennius* ſent to the Emperor to let him know the Condition he was in, and *Alexius* made all poſſible ſpeed to relieve him. In the mean time an Officer of the Army, a bold and reſolute Man call'd *Alacaſeus*, made uſe of a Stratagem which prov'd highly ſerviceable to the Emperor; for he, like *Zopyrus* of old, tore off his Beard, mangled his Face, and in a cruel manner disfigur'd his whole Body, in which lamentable Condition he betook himſelf to the Uſurper, who with much Surprize ask'd him what he was on whom ſo much Cruelty had been exercis'd. *Alacaſeus* reply'd, that *he was the Son of one who had been united in an inviolable Friendſhip to his Majeſty's Father, upon which Account* Alexius *had thus inhumanly us'd him; that he was come over to his Majeſty as his Protector, conjuring him by the Memory of both their Fathers to revenge their mutual Injuries upon the Head of him who with-held his Majeſty's undoubted Right from him.* The Uſurper, to whoſe Ears the Appellation of *Majeſty* ſounded very grateful, eaſily believ'd all he ſaid, liſten'd to his Advice, and repos'd an entire Confidence in him. Having thus prepar'd him, by vertue of ſome ſpecious Pretences he entic'd him and a Company of his *Scythian* Followers into a Caſtle ſubject to the Emperor, from whom the Captain that commanded in it had receiv'd Orders to obſerve the Inſtructions he ſhould receive from *Alacaſeus:* Here the Mock Prince was receiv'd as into a Place betray'd to him, and being invited to a Banquet the Barbarians drank to that Exceſs, that their Horſes and Arms were firſt ſeiz'd, and afterwards themſelves, being unable to make any Reſiſtance. *Alexius* hearing the Uſurper was taken march'd againſt the *Scythians*, with whom he engag'd, and ſlew ſeven thouſand upon the Spot, and took three thouſand Priſoners. After which he return'd to *Adrianople*, there to treat with the *Scythian* Ambaſſadors who came with Offers of Peace,

An advantageous Stratagem.

The Scythians *are overthrown.*

Peace, which they ſeemingly deſir'd, only that their Forces might have time to withdraw into Places of Security, from whence, as ſoon as they had been refreſh'd and recruited, they intended with freſh Vigour to renew the War. But the Emperor, being ſenſible of their Deſign, purſu'd 'em with great Diligence, overthrew 'em in two Engagements, entirely broke their Troops, and return'd with a great Booty, which he divided among thoſe who had diſtinguiſh'd themſelves moſt in the Service.

The Emperor, being return'd to *Conſtantinople*, was preparing to reſtrain the Incurſions of the *Turks*, who threaten'd the City of *Nicomedia*, when he receiv'd Information of the Preparations the Weſtern Chriſtians were making for the Recovery of the Holy-Land. And ſince the Fortunes of thoſe Adventurers bear ſo near a Relation to the enſuing Part of this Hiſtory, it may not be judg'd improper to give the Reader a brief Account what it was that firſt gave Motion to that mighty Undertaking.

A. D. 1093. *The Holy War.*

Among the many Pilgrims that continually reſorted from all Parts of *Europe* to viſit the Holy-Land, a *French* Man of *Amiens* in *Picardy*, whoſe Name was *Peter*, about the Year 1093 took a Voyage to *Jeruſalem*, there to perform his Devotions where the Redemption of Mankind had been effected: Here the miſerable Condition to which he ſaw the Chriſtians reduc'd through the Tyranny of the *Turks*, under which all *Aſia*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and the City of *Jeruſalem* groan'd, made him deliberate upon ſome Means for the Delivery of God's People from their cruel Servitude, and remove thoſe Infidels from the moſt Holy Places, where they had ſacrilegiouſly tyranniz'd for five hundred Years together. Upon Examination he found the Eaſtern Empire in too weak a Condition to give him any Hopes of Aſſiſtance and Redreſs, which were no where to be expected but from the Weſt; and therefore being a Man of Reſolution and Courage, as well as zealous for God's Service,

Service, he undertook to inform the Pope and the Princes of the Weſt of the deplorable Condition of the Chriſtians in the Holy-Land, and repreſent it in ſo lively a Figure to 'em, as would effectually unite 'em in a generous Reſolution to break off the Manacles of their Slavery, and deliver 'em from the tyrannick Yoke of the Enemies of Jeſus Chriſt. Accordingly having receiv'd Letters from the Patriarch to that Purpoſe, he got on board the firſt Merchant Ship he met, and happily arriv'd at the Port of *Bari*, from whence he proceeded to the Court of *Rome*, where he addreſt himſelf to the Pope, and having deliver'd him the Patriarch's Letters, he found in the Pope all the Inclinations he could wiſh to favour an Enterprize ſo illuſtrious, ſo advantageous to the Glory of God, ſo neceſſary to the Good of all Chriſtendom, and which would render his Pontificate renown'd to all Poſterity. Having receiv'd the Encouragement he very well deſerv'd from the Pope, he travell'd over the greateſt Part of *Europe*, treating in particular with moſt Princes, and in leſs than a Year's time inflam'd the Hearts of all Men with ſuch a Deſire to ſhare in the Glory of redeeming the Holy Land, that both Princes and People embrac'd the Deſign with an equal Ardor, and longed for an Opportunity of being engag'd in this Religious War. Urban II.

The Pope being inform'd by his induſtrious Hermit of the general Diſpoſition he found in the Minds of Men to it, firſt ſummon'd the Council of *Placentia*, where Proviſions were made for the Peace of the Church, and the People were render'd ſenſible of the Danger Chriſtianity in general was in from the prevailing Arms of the Infidels, which had miſerably overrun the Eaſtern Empire; and ſhortly after in a Council celebrated at *Clermont*, ſome things were decreed as were thought neceſſarily previous to it, and then the Holy War was unanimouſly reſolv'd upon, and the A.D. 1095.

Cruſade

Cruſade publiſh'd by the Pope, and generally embrac'd throughout the Weſt.

The Princes of the Cruſade. The Princes, who were to be the chief Commanders in this Religious Expedition, were *Hugh* the Great, Brother to *Philip* the Firſt of *France*; *Robert*, Duke of *Normandy*; *Robert*, Earl of *Flanders*; *Raymond* of *Tholouſe*; *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, with his Brothers *Baldwin* and *Euſtace*; and others whoſe Names are particularly mention'd by ſuch as have written the Hiſtory of this Holy War. Moſt of theſe Princes, who had not Treaſures ſufficient to maintain Armies equal to ſo great an Enterprize, generouſly ſold or mortgag'd their Patrimonies, which it is obſervable were generally purchas'd by the Biſhops, who thereby ſuffer'd the Secular Princes to impoveriſh themſelves to ſerve Jeſus Chriſt, whilſt they enrich'd themſelves with the Spoils of thoſe Temporal Potentates.

'Tis incredible to relate the Numbers that voluntarily liſted themſelves upon this Occaſion; Women, as well as Men; the Peaſant, as well as him that had born Arms already; the Superſtitious, and the Devout; the Old, and the Young; all united in the ſame Service, tho' ſome of 'em enter'd into it upon different Views: Which when *Godfrey*, who was the firſt that advanc'd towards *Conſtantinople*, where their general Rendezvous was appointed the Year following, obſerv'd, and fearing he ſhould be clogg'd by a Multitude of unprofitable People, who were more likely to deſtroy him by Famine, than aſſiſt him by the Sword, he contrived to ſend 'em before under the Conduct of the Hermit *Peter*, with the Opinion of whoſe Sanctity they were ſo prepoſſeſs'd, and ſeem'd ſo charm'd with his Looks, and enchanted with his Words, that he thought he ſhould have a Sovereign Power over them, and therefore readily accepted of the Command, and was declar'd Captain-General of this firſt Army of the Cruſades, which had Orders to advance firſt towards *Conſtantinople*.

Peter *the Hermit begins the Expedition.*

This

This Army *Peter* divided into two Bodies, one of which he led himſelf, and committed the other to the Conduct of a *French* Gentleman call'd *Gautier*, a good Captain, but being a Soldier of Fortune was ſirnam'd *the Monyleſs*. *Gautier* being his March on the eighteenth Day of *March*, and having paſſed through *Germany* with great Difficulty enter'd into *Hungary*, through which *Carloman* the King of that Country, being himſelf a Chriſtian, permitted him a Liberty of Paſſage, provided his Men paid for what they had; notwithſtanding which, being refus'd Proviſions upon the Frontiers of *Bulgaria*, they liv'd at Diſcretion, and plunder'd the Country; whereupon the Inhabitants taking up Arms, to the Number of an hundred and forty thouſand Men, fell upon theſe unhappy Adventurers, kill'd great Numbers of 'em, and forc'd the reſt to ſuffer the utmoſt Extremities of Hunger and Cold among the Woods; 'till the Prince of *Bulgaria* compaſſionating their Miſeries furniſh'd 'em with Guides, who conducted 'em to *Conſtantinople*, where they waited for the Arrival of *Peter*, who did not join them 'till the firſt of *Auguſt*, having been more unfortunate in his March than his Precurſor: For *Carloman* having granted him the ſame Liberty he had done the other upon the ſame Conditions, *Peter* undertook an Action which neither became him as an Hermit or a Chriſtian, and which ſufficiently manifeſted how much God was offended at him, for tranſgreſſing the Bounds of his Profeſſion, and undertaking a Charge which did in no wiſe belong to him. He had with him about forty thouſand Foot, and a good Number of Horſe, which obſerv'd his Orders well enough at his firſt ſetting out, but being arriv'd at *Malleville*, a good Town upon the Frontier of *Hungary*, under a Pretence of revenging the Injuries which ſome of the Soldiers of the firſt Army had receiv'd there, he took it by Storm, contrary to his Faith given, and put four thouſand *Hungarians* to the Sword; which Example of their

A. D. 1096.

His unhappy Conduct.

General

General authoriz'd the reſt of the Army to meaſure out their own Revenge, ſo that there was no manner of Exceſs, no ſort of Crimes, Perfidiouſneſs, Cruelty, Robberies, Murder, Fire, or any kind of Violence, which theſe brutiſh Dregs of *France*, *Lorrain* and *Germany* did not commit in their March through *Hungary* and the Confines of *Bulgaria*; at which the Inhabitants were ſo juſtly exaſperated, that they took all Occaſions to fall upon them, and finding 'em in a diſorderly March they ſlew above ten thouſand of them upon the Place, took all their Baggage, their Proviſions, their Wives, Children, and the old Men who could not fly, together with two thouſand Waggons, among which were thoſe that carry'd *Peter*'s Treaſure, deſign'd to pay them who had ſo unadviſedly paid themſelves. *Peter* rally'd the reſt with great Difficulty, and got with much ado to his Comrades at *Conſtantinople*, where the Emperor receiv'd him with a ſeeming Friendſhip, and having learnt from him the Quality of the Princes who were to be the Adventurers in this Holy War, and the Number of their Forces, adviſ'd him not to paſs the *Straits* 'till their Arrival, nor expoſe his harraſs'd Troops againſt the *Turks*; tho' at the Bottom this jealous Prince was very much concern'd at the Expedition. His late Wars with *Robert* had made him diffident and diſtruſtful, he had entertain'd an inveterate Antipathy to *Bohemond*, who he underſtood was one of the Adventurers, and could not reflect on their mighty Preparations without a Heart full of Apprehenſions. Being himſelf ambitious and aſpiring, he concluded that tho' the common People might act upon Principles of Religion, yet it was very improbable the Princes ſhould leave their own Dominions, and embark in ſo long and hazardous an Undertaking upon the ſame Motives. The Senſe of his own Weakneſs, and their Power, which he eſteem'd not to be oppoſed by open Force, made him reſolve to be upon his Guard, and prepare to behave himſelf like a Friend,

He arrives at Conſtantinople,

Friend, or Enemy, as the Neceſſity of his Affairs ſhould require.

Alexius's Jealouſies were ſhortly after fortify'd by the inſupportable Inſolence of that Army of Peaſants, of which *Peter* ſeem'd to have the Command, but who indeed were under no manner of Government; for being encamp'd without the Suburbs of *Conſtantinople*, they there renew'd the ſame Diſorders which had been ſo fatal to 'em before in *Hungary*; they plunder'd and burnt all the beautiful Houſes of Pleaſure, and magnificent Palaces, which were without the City; they ſacrilegiouſly robb'd the Churches, ſeeming to wage that War with the Chriſtians, which they had vow'd againſt the Infidels: Whereupon the Emperor, grown weary of ſuch troubleſome Neighbours, not only permitted, but perſuaded him to paſs the *Straits*, which they immediately did, and behav'd themſelves wherever they march'd with their uſual Barbarity, which ſhortly after met with an exemplary Puniſhment; for as it is ſeldom known that the Spirit of Union was ever long maintain'd among wicked Men, ſo it happen'd with this unruly Army, the *Germans* and *Italians* ſeparated ſhortly after from the *French*, which haſten'd the Ruin of them all. For the *Italians* having ſeiz'd on a Town call'd *Xerigordus* were beſieg'd by the Sultan, who upon the firſt Notice of the great Preparations of the Weſtern Chriſtians had rais'd a formidable Army compos'd of all *Aſia*, and found it no difficult matter to recover one Town from a headſtrong ungovern'd Rabble; moſt of the Chriſtians were taken with the Town, and thoſe among 'em who would not renounce their Religion were put to the Sword. *and paſſes the* Straits,

The *French* in the mean time lay encamp'd near *Helenopolis* and *Cibotus*, two Villages ſituate in the Gulph of *Nicomedia*, and neareſt the City of *Nice*, from whence they ſent out their Parties to forage and deſtroy the Country, but were ſhortly after circumvented by the Sultan; who having planted an Ambuſh in a con-

venient Place between *Helenopolis* and *Nice*, he ſent two Renegades to *Peter*'s Camp, who told the *French* that the *Italians* and *Germans* had taken *Nice*, which they were plundering, and had hardly Hands ſufficient to carry off the Booty, whilſt they lay idle in their Camp. The *French* Soldiers were ſo alarm'd at this News, that without any Regard had to Military Diſcipline, or the Commands of their Officers, they iſſu'd out in a diſorderly manner, and ran headlong into the Snares had been laid for 'em. The Slaughter of theſe miſerable Chriſtians was ſo great, that their Bones pil'd up together appear'd like a Mountain, ſome of which mix'd with Stones were us'd afterwards in the Building of a City, which was rais'd not far from the Place where they receiv'd their Defeat, and ſerv'd at once as a Monument to the Dead, and an Habitation to the Living.

His Army is cut off by the Sultan.

Thoſe, who had been able to ſave themſelves from this woful Maſſacre, retir'd ſome to the Mountains, where they miſerably periſh'd, and others to *Cibolus*, where, the Town being ſhortly after taken by the *Turks*, they were all made Slaves. So that there did not remain above three thouſand of that innumerable Multitude, which *Peter* had led out of the Weſt, who with much Difficulty got on Board the Emperor's Fleet, who carry'd 'em diſarm'd and almoſt naked to *Conſtantinople*.

The unfortunate Beginning of this War was highly acceptable to *Alexius*, who had his Eyes every where, and growing every Day more diffident and jealous, had concluded rather to oppoſe and weaken the Chriſtians upon every little Pretence, than to aſſiſt and cheriſh 'em. The miſerable Remains of *Peter*'s Army were hardly got to *Conſtantinople*, before the Emperor receiv'd Advice of *Godfrey*'s Arrival at *Philippopolis*, whither he had led an Army of ten thouſand Horſe and ſeven thouſand Foot over the vaſt Countries of *Bulgaria*, and ſent an Ambaſſador to *Conſtantinople* to acquaint *Alexius* with

Godfrey arrives at Philippopolis.

with his Arrival, and to demand the Liberty of *Hugh* the Great, Brother to the *French* King, who in his Paſſage from *Bari* to *Dyrrachium*, having left Part of his mighty Retinue and the Forces he was to lead behind him in *Italy*, and being ſeparated in a Storm from the reſt, was ſeiz'd by the Governor of *Dyrrachium*, and ſent by the Emperor's Order thro' By-Ways to *Conſtantinople*, where he was detain'd Priſoner.

Whether this was done either for that the Emperor was offended at an arrogant Meſſage he had receiv'd from *Hugh*, at the Beginning of his Expedition, as the *Greeks* alledge, or for that *Alexius* was well pleas'd to have ſo great a Prince in his Hands, who might ſerve for an Hoſtage to ſecure him againſt the *Latins*, is uncertain. However he return'd ſuch an Anſwer to *Godfrey*, advanc'd by that time with his Army as far as *Adrianople*, that he thought he had juſt Cauſe to act againſt him as an open Enemy, and for eight Days together waſting the Country as he mov'd along, he march'd directly to *Conſtantinople*, where he rais'd ſuch a Conſternation, that *Alexius* gave *Hugh* his Liberty, ſent to deſire Peace, and promis'd *Godfrey* all imaginable Satisfaction. However this Peace, for which the Emperor was forc'd to petition, was very indifferently obſerv'd on his Part; for tho' he had undertaken to furniſh the Army with Proviſions, yet he fail'd of his Promiſe, and when upon that Account they began to live at Diſcretion he attack'd 'em by Sea and Land, and in every Reſpect behav'd himſelf more like an open Enemy, than a Friend: Which deteſtable Infidelity *Godfrey* puniſh'd, by waſting all about *Conſtantinople* for five or ſix Days together, and by that means compell'd *Alexius* to deſire a new Accommodation, who offering his Son *John* for an Hoſtage, invited the Princes to *Conſtantinople*, where they were receiv'd with great Magnificence, and according to the Cuſtom of the *Greek* Emperors, *Alexius* adopted *Godfrey* for his Son, after which they came to this Agreement,

Marches in an hoſtile Manner to Conſtantinople.

An Agreement betwixt him and the Emperor.

That the Emperor ſhould, from time to time, aid the Princes with all his Forces both by Sea and Land, that he would continually ſupply the Army with Proviſions, and be ſerviceable to 'em upon all Occaſions. On the other Hand, the Princes were to do nothing contrary to his Intereſt, but reſtore to him ſuch Places of Importance as they ſhould recover in *Aſia*, and do Homage for the reſt. After many Diſputes and Arguments on both ſides, the Princes bound themſelves by Oath to the Obſervance of the ſecond Article, but with this Limitation, that they were no longer oblig'd than whilſt he punctually perform'd the firſt.

When theſe Matters were thus ſettled, *Alexius*, who was profuſely magnificent, loaded the Princes with new Honours, and made 'em exceſſive rich Preſents; but being ſhortly after inform'd that other Princes of the Cruſade were upon their March at the Head of powerful Armies, eſpecially *Bohemond*, Prince of *Tarentum*, of whom he thought he had great Reaſon to be diſtruſtful, he deſir'd *Godfrey* to paſs with his Army towards *Bithynia*, and encamp near *Calcedon*, alledging he was not able long to ſubſiſt his Forces where they lay, tho' the true Reaſon was to avoid the Preſence of ſo many Gueſts at once, moſt of whom he had juſtly provok'd by his Prevarications and Treachery. However *Godfrey* being deſirous to wait for the Arrival of *Bohemond*, and being at the ſame time ſenſible of *Alexius*'s Jealouſies, and *Bohemond*'s Reſentments, he undertook, at the Emperor's Requeſt, a Mediation between 'em, and ſo well manag'd the haughty Spirit of that great Prince, whom he met for that purpoſe on his March, that he brought him with him to *Conſtantinople*, where he was receiv'd by *Alexius* with all imaginable Marks of Eſteem and Affection; and the Prince, who was willing to remove all Obſtacles that might retard 'em in their intended Expedition, behav'd himſelf on his ſide with an open generous Confidence, and ſo both endeavour'd for the preſent to

to conceal what it was impoſſible for either to overcome.

All things being thus happily concerted at *Conſtantinople*, the Forces paſs'd the *Boſphorus* and encamp'd near *Calcedon*, where the Meaſures neceſſary to be taken for the Siege of *Nice* were conſulted, the Emperor himſelf promiſing to aſſiſt in Perſon at that Enterprize, tho' he ſecretly propos'd to obtain that City to himſelf, rather by the Conceſſion of the *Turks*, than the Force of the Chriſtian Armies.

Nice, the Metropolis of *Bythinia*, famous for the firſt Oecumenical Council celebrated here againſt the *Arian* Hereſie, ſtands in the midde of a fertile and pleaſant Valley, encompaſs'd by high Mountains, and a capacious Lake, which on the Weſtern Quarter ſerves as a Natural Fortification, and ſupplies it plentifully with all the Commodities of the Country; notwithſtanding which it was more ſtrongly fortify'd by *Solyman*, who having puſh'd on his Conqueſts as far as the *Propontis*, fixt here the Seat of his Empire, as moſt commodiouſly favouring the Deſire the *Turks* had entertain'd of paſſing one Day into *Europe*. Here *Solyman*, his Succeſſor, uſually maintain'd a ſtrong Garriſon, but when firſt he heard of the Enterprize the Chriſtians were about in the Weſt, he reinforc'd it with the choiceſt of his Troops, and went in Perſon into *Perſia*, to ſollicit the Aſſiſtance of the Princes of his Nation. On the ſixteenth of *May* in the Year 1097. tho' *Solyman* was juſt then return'd with a powerful Army out of the Eaſt, and had poſted himſelf in the Mountains, the Princes diſtributed their ſeveral Quarters in his open view, knowing their Forces ſuperior to his in Number, and by that means able to cover the Siege; for at a general Muſter they were found to be no fewer than ſix hundred thouſand Men, of which an hundred thouſand were Horſe, beſides Prieſts, Monks, Women, Children, and Servants, whoſe Numbers were infinite; notwithſtanding which ſo juſt and exact a Diſcipline

The Siege of Nice.

was maintain'd among 'em, that all ſorts of Debauchery, which uſually attend a licentious Multitude, were baniſh'd the Camp.

During this Siege, which was maintain'd for ſeven Weeks, both the one ſide and the other gave eminent Inſtances of their Obſtinacy and Reſolution: *Solyman* deſcended twice from the Mountains at the Head of a numerous Army, with a deſign to raiſe it, but was as often repuls'd by the more numerous Chriſtians: The Beſieg'd made frequent Sallies upon the Aſſailants, who receiv'd 'em with a Martial Conſtancy, and ſtill forc'd 'em to retire with great Loſs to the Garriſon; who notwithſtanding continu'd to defend the Place with a chearful Courage, 'till they ſaw the Chriſtians Maſters of the Lake, by which they expected to receive the Relief they had ſent to deſire of *Solyman*, and then they entertain'd Thoughts of a Rendition. For whilſt that Lake was open they receiv'd conſtant Supplies of Proviſion, and all other Neceſſaries at their Pleaſure; of which when *Alexius* was inform'd, he fitted out ſome little Frigots, which commanded the Lake, and intercepted their uſual Commerce.

For tho' the Emperor had promis'd to join with the Princes, yet conſidering how much their Forces exceeded his, that they were chiefly commanded by ſuch of whoſe Affections he had great Reaſon to be doubtful, he choſe rather to be a Spectator of that War, in which he had ſworn to be a Companion; and therefore continu'd at a Place call'd *Peltcanus*, from whence he obſerv'd the Progreſs of the Beſiegers, and at the ſame time held a Correſpondence with the Defendants, whom he ſollicited by *Butumites* his Lieutenant to ſurrender the Place to him; which, upon mighty Promiſes of Advantages, as the higheſt Honours, and magnificent Penſions to the Sultan's Wife and Siſter, and liberal Preſents to the leading and moſt deſerving Men of the Garriſon, they condeſcended to. Tho' the Princes had timely Intimation of this Treaty, yet being ſenſi-

which is ſurrender'd to Alexius.

ble

ble that it would haſten the Surrender of the Place, they choſe rather to conceal their Knowledge of it, than obſtruct it by a Reſentment.

Alexius being thus become Maſter of *Nice*, and at the ſame time conſcious to himſelf of the diſhonourable Means by which he obtain'd it, endeavoured to conceal or varniſh over his Guilt by his profuſe Liberality to the *Franks*, making moſt magnificent Preſents to all the Principal Commanders, and beſtowing large Donatives upon the diſappointed Soldiers, who had promis'd themſelves the Spoils of the vanquiſh'd City; notwithſtanding which the Diſtruſt the Princes had entertain'd of him made 'em always upon their Guard, and the common Soldiers charg'd him every Day with whole Vollies of Curſes and Execrations.

After the Reduction of *Nice* the Princes took leave of the Emperor, and march'd immediately towards *Syria*, having firſt ſeparated into two Bodies for the Conveniency of Forage and Subſiſtence, *Bohemond* taking the Left Hand and *Godfrey* the Right, being however both careful that the Army ſhould not be diſtant above two Miles the one Body from the other. *Bohemond* marching firſt, was, three Days after this Separation, diſcover'd by *Solyman* in a large Plain; who concluding that ſmall Body contain'd the whole Chriſtian Army, and he being reinforc'd with new Troops, which made his amount to three hundred and ſixty thouſand *Turks* and *Perſians*, all Horſe, beſides an infinite Number of *Arabians*, who were alſo Cavalry, he ſuddenly ſeiz'd on all the Paſſes of the Hills, and the Avenues leading out of the Valley, intending to ſurprize the Chriſtians early next Morning, as they were going to decamp.

Bohemond *his Army in great Danger.*

Of this *Behomond* being advertis'd, he inſtantly diſpatch'd ſome Horſe to acquaint *Godfrey* of the Danger he was in, and made the beſt Proviſion he could to oppoſe the terrible Shock he expected from the Enemy, who came pouring down into the Valley to charge

the Chriſtians, whom they expected to find half conquer'd to their Hands by their Fear and Diſorder. The Chriſtians receiv'd the Charge with great Conſtancy and Reſolution, but would in the end have been over-power'd by Numbers, had not *Godfrey* appear'd upon the Mountains, and in an Inſtant made an Alteration in the Face of the Battel; for *Solyman* retreated preſently to the Hills, where he thought the Chriſtians would not dare to attack him, which however they did with ſo much Execution, that the Enemy were put to Flight, leaving their Camp, and above three thouſand of the Principal Perſons of Quality among the *Turks*, beſides a prodigious Number of *Arabians*, and other ordinary Soldiers, behind 'em.

The Turks *defeated.*

The Chriſtians, having refreſh'd themſelves for two Days in the Valley, continu'd their March, advancing towards *Syria*, ſuffering much as they march'd along; for the *Turks*, who no longer dar'd to encounter 'em hand to hand, deſtroy'd the Country through which they were to paſs, which reduc'd 'em to extream Want, eſpecially in their Paſſage over the Mountains and Deſarts. However, after having overcome Difficulties that others would have thought invincible, they arriv'd at *Antioch*, accompany'd by *Taticius*, or *Tatin*, the Emperor's Lieutenant, ſent rather to be a Spy upon 'em, and betray 'em, than to aſſiſt 'em. The Seaſon was far advanc'd when they arriv'd near *Antioch*, and the Town ſupply'd with a numerous Garriſon, and every thing requiſite for an effectual Defence; notwithſtanding which, conſidering it conſiſted with the Reputation of their Arms to ſet down before it, they put the whole Army in Order of Battel, and on the twenty firſt of *October* march'd in a terrible Triumph, and encamp'd within a Mile of it.

The Chriſtians beſiege Antioch.

It is Foreign to my preſent Deſign to inſiſt upon the Particulars of this Siege, which laſted nine Months, and is moſt memorable for the many Actions perform'd in the Courſe of it, it being hard to determine whether

ther the Beſiegers or Defendants were expos'd to the greateſt Hardſhips, or endured 'em with the greateſt Patience and Reſolution. The Fury of War, and the Viciſſitudes of it, appear'd no where more conſpicuous than upon this Occaſion. The Peſtilence and Famine, Envy and Emulation, Anguiſh and Deſpair rag'd equally within the Walls and without. That which ought to have haſten'd *Alexius* to the Succour of the Aſſailants, the Neceſſities they were under, made him return back when he was upon his March towards 'em: So that it's no wonder the Princes did not reſtore *Antioch* to him, as they had before oblig'd themſelves to do, but made *Bohemond* Prince of it, and that for a Reaſon, which becauſe it includes the Means by which they got it into their Hands, a brief Account of it may not be judg'd amiſs in this Place.

Pyrrhus, a Citizen of Quality in *Antioch*, was Born of Chriſtian Parents, but pretended to embrace the *Mahometan* Superſtitions to ſave his Eſtate, as ſeveral other *Antiochians* had done in fourteen Years time, when firſt it was conquer'd by the *Turks*. This Man had obtain'd ſo great an Eſteem among the Infidels, that *Accien* the Sultan, charm'd with his good Qualities, entruſted him with the Guard of three Towers, and made him his Secretary of State. Notwithſtanding this, *Pyrrhus*, who ſecretly abhorr'd the Abominations of that Religion, to which he had outwardly conform'd, and being ſenſible how difficult it would be for the Chriſtians to take the Town by Force, conceiv'd an ardent Deſire to redeem his Country from the Servitude and Oppreſſion of the *Turks*; to which he was prompted by his Son, who at the beginning of the Siege was in a Sally taken Priſoner by *Bohemond*, and was ſo tranſported with his generous Treatment and Diſcharge, (for he refus'd to receive the Ranſom *Pyrrhus* had offer'd for him) that at *Bohemond*'s Inſtigation he induc'd his Father, at his Return, to think of ſome means of delivering the Town up to the Chriſtians,

ſtians, and the Father from that time forward maintain'd a ſecret Correſpondence with *Bohemond* by his Son's means, who was often ſent out into the Camp under the Pretence of being a Spy, and at length he agreed upon a certain Day to put the three Towers, of which he had the Command, into his Hands. About this time the Great Sultan of *Perſia* had rais'd a moſt formidable Army of two hundred thouſand Horſe, and an innumerable Multitude of Foot, which were then on their March to the Relief of *Antioch*. Whereupon *Bohemond*, who was a politick deſigning Prince, the very Day that *Pyrrhus* and he had agreed, as is before mention'd, told the Princes in a Council of War with a melancholy Air, *That the Evils which the Army endured were inſupportable, and yet that they muſt ſhortly be forc'd to abandon the Siege, and riſe from the Town, after they had loſt ſo many Brave Men before it, ſince ſo prodigious an Army was marching to its Relief.* That *nothing remain'd more to be done, but to try if any among 'em could gain the Town by Surprize or Intelligence, before the Succours arriv'd; and to encourage every one to undertake ſomething of that Nature for the Publick Good, he propos'd the Principality of* Antioch *as a Reward to him who ſhould perform the Exploit, and thereby diſengage the Army from ſo long, ſo bloody and expenſive a Siege.*

Tho' the reſt of the Princes eaſily perceiv'd the Artifice of *Bohemond*, yet their Scouts continually alarming 'em with the Approach of the Succours, they in the end decreed that he who could gain *Antioch* ſhould be Maſter of it; whereupon *Bohemond* inſtantly adviſ'd *Pyrrhus*, that he was prepar'd to execute what had been concerted between 'em; and *Pyrrus* the Night following, upon a Signal given, threw down a Cord, with which he drew up a Ladder, and faſten'd it to one of the Tower Battlements, whereupon a Company of *Bohemond*'s Soldiers, appointed for that purpoſe, mounted the Tower, which whilſt ſome of 'em maſter'd, killing

Antioch *betray'd to the Chriſtians.*

killing all the *Turks* they met, others broke open a Sally Port, at which the Troops enter'd, and ſeizing the Gates the whole Army was, by break of Day, got without any Reſiſtance into the City, where the greateſt part of the *Turks* were kill'd, ſome in their Beds, others in the Streets, and *Accien* himſelf, who fled away in a Diſguiſe, was taken ſhortly after, and ſlain by ſome Chriſtians of *Syria*.

The Princes being thus become Maſters of *Antioch* ſent *Hugh* the Great, and *Baldwin*, Earl of *Heynault*, to give the Emperor an Account of their Succeſs, and preſs him to make good his Oath, and in Perſon join his Forces with thoſe of the Princes, who got little by that unfortunate Ambaſſage; for the Earl of *Heynault* periſh'd in the way, nor was it ever known what Death he dy'd, tho' it was generally ſuſpected that he was taken Priſoner, and murder'd by the Emperor's Soldiers in *Nice*. *Hugh* got ſafe to *Conſtantinople*, but inſtead of returning to the Princes with an Account of his Embaſſy, he parted from thence in ſo abrupt a manner, that ſome of the Writers of that Time took Occaſion from thence to mention him much to his Diſadvantage; and the Emperor was ſo far from being perſuaded to join with the Princes then, that he reſolv'd never to do it. A. D. 1098.

Indeed at that time he had a juſtifiable Excuſe for his Abſence, for *Tzachas* ſtill continu'd Maſter of *Smyrna*, from whence he exercis'd his Piracies, and infeſted the Sea-Coaſts of the Empire; and *Tangripermes*, a Man of the ſame Faith and Practices, had ſeiz'd on *Epheſus*, as ſome of his Followers had done on *Rhodes*, *Chios*, and other Places, which they judg'd the moſt fit for their Piratical Excurſions. Here they built their Ships, and laid 'em up after any Expedition; here they ſtor'd their Booty, and ſold ſuch Chriſtians, as fell into their Hands, into a miſerable Slavery.

This

This made *Alexius* think it requiſite to Man out ſuch a Fleet, and raiſe an Army as ſhould not only be able to reſtrain the Barbarians, but to remove, and, if poſſible, to extirpate them. Accordingly he Beſieg'd *Smyrna* by Sea and Land, which, deſpairing of Relief, ſurrender'd upon ſuch Conditions as the Beſieg'd themſelves requir'd. But before the Fleet looſed from thence, *Caſpan*, whom the Imperial General had made Governor of the Place, was murder'd by a *Turk*, of whom ſome Chriſtians had made preſſing Complaints for his Violence and Extortion, whereupon the Sailors and Soldiers in a confus'd Number fell into the City, where in an Inſtant they ſlew ten thouſand of the *Turkiſh* Inhabitants.

Ten Thouſand Turks *ſlain by the Chriſtians at* Smyrna.

The Imperial General march'd from *Smyrna* to *Epheſus*, where he engag'd with *Tangripermes*, and defeated him, killing great Numbers of his Men, and taking no leſs than two thouſand Priſoners, conſiſting chiefly of their principal Officers and prime Nobility among the *Turks*, who by the Emperor's Order were diſpers'd throughout the Iſlands. After this *Philadelphia*, *Laodicea*, and other Maritime Places of no ſmall Importance fell into the Emperor's Hands, which ſhortly after prov'd the Subject of a War between the Emperor and *Bohemond*, the newly elected Prince of *Antioch*: For that Prince, mindful of his Hereditary Quarrel to *Alexius*, and offended at the Demand he had made of *Antioch*, which he claim'd as his, he ſent his Nephew *Tankred* with part of his Forces to ſit down before *Laodicea*, and to take it by Storm if the Defendants refus'd to ſurrender. The Town was provided with a Garriſon, which the Emperor judg'd ſufficient to defeat any Deſigns of the *Turks*, but not ſtrong enough to oppoſe the Courage of the victorious Chriſtians; ſo that after ſome ſhort Reſiſtance it was deliver'd up to *Tankred*, together with other the moſt conſiderable Fortreſſes in all *Cilicia*. Of which when *Alexius* was inform'd, he ſent and renew'd his Claim to *Antioch*,

and

and upon a Repulſe prepar'd to make good his Pretenſions by the Force of Arms; and hearing that the Biſhop of *Piſa* and other Princes in the Weſt were preparing a great Fleet for the Support of the Chriſtians in the Eaſt, who had lately taken *Jeruſalem*, in which they found ſo much Booty, that the whole Army was enrich'd beyond Imagination, he gave Orders for the Building more Ships of War to be added to thoſe he had already at Sea, and made *Taticius* his Admiral; reſolving to ſtop the Paſſage of the Weſtern Fleet, 'till the Princes had deliver'd up ſuch Towns as he challeng'd from 'em. Accordingly both Fleets met and engag'd near *Rhodes*, where the Imperialiſts prevail'd, and entirely defeated the Enemy's Fleet; but were themſelves overtaken by a Tempeſt in their Return to *Conſtantinople*, which deſtroy'd all their Ships but the Squadron commanded by *Taticius* himſelf.

Jeruſalem taken by the Chriſtians.

Bohemond, obſerving the Emperor was in earneſt, and that after all his Prevarications he began now to declare more openly, put himſelf upon his Guard; and hearing that *Alexius*'s General, call'd *Catacuzenus*, was preparing to beſiege *Laodicea*, after he had in vain attempted to hinder the *Genoeſe* from landing, and marching to the Aſſiſtance of the Chriſtians in the Holy-Land, he reſolv'd to march in Perſon to the Relief of it. Before his Arrival the *Greeks* were Maſters of the Town and Haven, but the *Franks* continu'd to make a vigorous Defence in the Caſtle, into which with much Difficulty he threw ſome Supplies, tho' that ſhortly after fell into the Emperor's Hands, and then return'd to *Antioch*, where he conſulted what Methods were moſt proper to oppoſe and annoy the Emperor. Upon Examination he found he had not Strength ſufficient at preſent either by Sea or Land to contend with him, that he could hope for no Recruits but out of the Weſt, and that his Preſence there was abſolutely neceſſary for the raiſing of 'em, and was ſenſible at the ſame time of the Danger he muſt unavoidably run

in

in a Voyage thither, the Emperor being abſolute Maſter at Sea. In this Extremity he had recourſe to a Stratagem, which was no leſs wonderful in the Contrivance, than dangerous in the Execution. Having ſettled his Affairs at *Antioch*, the Management of which he committed to ſuch in whom he could ſafely confide, he commanded a Report to be ſpread abroad of his Death, which was confirm'd by the Behaviour of his Friends, and the Conduct of his Court. When he thought no one would be ſo ſcrupulous as to doubt the Truth of it, he was put into a Coffin, and ſhipp'd on board a Veſſel prepar'd for that purpoſe, which was to carry him to *Rome* in Order to his Interment. By this Artifice he deluded the Curioſity of the Emperor's Officers, who ſuffer'd his Corps, as they took it, to paſs unmoleſted, firſt to the Iſland *Coryphus*, and thence into *Italy*; and the Emperor was hardly ſenſible of this unhappy Overſight, 'till he was inform'd of the mighty Preparations *Bohemond* was making againſt him.

Bohemond his Stratagem.

The unhappy Emperor never labour'd under greater Apprehenſions than he did upon this Occaſion. He was ſenſible how highly he had provok'd *Bohemond*, and how ready that haughty Spirit was to reſent it. He knew he was already obnoxious to the Pope and the *Italian* Princes, ſo that it was extreamly difficult for him to create any Diverſion on that ſide to defeat the Deſigns of a powerful Enemy, who ſeem'd ſworn to his Ruin. Theſe Apprehenſions were improv'd by the Appearance of a Comet of an extraordinary ſize, which roſe in the Weſt, and by an unnatural Motion travell'd on towards the Eaſt, where it ſet. The Appearance of this Star, and its irregular Progreſs, at firſt very much perplex'd the ſuperſtitious Emperor, 'till he in ſome meaſure was eas'd of his Fears by *Baſilius* a Mathematician, for whom he had a great Regard, who aſſur'd him, that as by its Riſing in the Weſt it foretold the Invaſion of the *Latins*, ſo its Setting in the Eaſt

East intimated, that in the East they would all be destroy'd. At *Theſſalonica*, whither the Cares of the War, and approaching Dangers had drawn him, he narrowly escap'd the Effects of a Conspiracy, which being form'd by Persons of the highest Rank, as well in the Church and the Senate as in the Army, it serv'd to let him know how his own Subjects were dispos'd against him.

A Conspiracy against the Emperor, discover'd.

Whilst he lay under these Disquietudes his Fleet was ready to put to Sea, and he order'd his Admiral, whose Name was *Contostephanus*, upon Forfeiture of his Eyes, so diligently to watch the Seas, as not to suffer *Bohemond* to pass by him without an Engagement. At the same time he sent Orders to the Governor of *Dyrrachium* to be constantly upon his Guard, and not suffer himself to be surpriz'd. But *Contostephanus*, instead of following his Instructions, made a Descent into *Italy*, and laid Seige to *Brundusium*, where he receiv'd an absolute Defeat, which was chiefly owing to the brave Conduct of *Tancred*'s Mother. This Misfortune prov'd in the Issue of worse Consequence to *Alexius* his Affairs, than might have reasonably been at first expected. For six *Scythians* being taken Prisoners in the Action they were sent to *Bohemond*, who carry'd 'em to the Pope, telling him 'twas with such Instruments as these *Alexius* endeavour'd to defend and enlarge his own Dominions, and encroach upon his Neighbours, fighting at the Head of Pagans against Christians, and arming Barbarians against the most civiliz'd Nations of *Europe*. By these Artifices *Bohemond* stirr'd up the Pope and People against *Alexius*, so that his Levies were compleat in an Instant, every one crowding to receive the Pope's Benediction, and to engage in the War against so abominable a Tyrant as they conceiv'd *Alexius* to be.

Great Preparations in the West against Alexius.

The Emperor's Fleet lay at *Aulon* in *Albania*, when *Bohemond* put to Sea; and tho' they had receiv'd Express Orders from their Master to hinder his Passage,

yet

yet terrify'd at the Number and Burden of his Ships, they all fled, and *Bohemond* landed his Forces without any Oppoſition at that Place, which they had relinquiſh'd to him, and prepar'd to Beſiege *Dyrrachium*, of which that impetuous Prince was already Maſter in his own Imagination. In Order to which he ſeiz'd on all the Towns adjoining to it, and having burnt his Ships in the ſight of his Army, thereby giving 'em to underſtand there was no Poſſibility of their returning home, he ſate down with his whole Army before it, and expos'd himſelf and all his Forces to ſuch unavoidable Difficulties as, had they been foreſeen, would have been ſufficient to deter him from ſo dangerous an Undertaking. For the Emperor, being Maſter at Sea, he could not from thence receive any Proviſions, which there was no poſſibility of getting by Land, where *Alexius* had ſeiz'd on all the Avenues leading to *Dyrrachium*. This begot a great Famine in his Camp, which was follow'd by a Sickneſs that ſwept off great Numbers of his Men daily. In the mean time the Beſieg'd made a vigorous Defence, and *Alexius*, who was not willing to venture all upon one Stake, declin'd bringing it to a Battel, and endeavour'd to weaken'd *Bohemond*'s Army by ſowing Diſſentions in it. Having learn'd what Officers in his Army that Prince had the greateſt Dependance upon, he ſent ſuch Letters to them as ſeem'd no other than Anſwers to ſome others he had lately receiv'd from them before, in which he thank'd 'em for the great Services they had done him in betraying *Bohemond*'s Deſigns to him, and exhorted 'em to perſiſt in the good Work they had began, and effectually deſerve the Rewards he had abundantly prepar'd for 'em. Theſe Letters were directed to *Bohemond*'s own Brother, and other his moſt intimate Friends and Confidents; hoping by ſuch means to create ſuch a Jealouſie of 'em, and the Prince, as would in time end in the Ruin both of them and himſelf. Theſe Letters, being thus diſpatch'd, he ſent a Man

Bohemond *Beſieges* Dyrrachium.

Alexius *his Artifices.*

Man of experienc'd Loyalty, who poſting a nearer way to *Bohemond*'s Camp, immediately demanded Admittance to that Prince, to whom he pretended, that having receiv'd ſome Injuries from the Emperor he had renounc'd his Allegiance, and was come to follow his Fortunes, being able, by a timely Diſcovery of ſome Treaſons intended againſt him, to make way for his Reception: When he was ask'd what thoſe Treaſons were, and who were the Traitors, he boldly accus'd *Bohemond*'s own Brother, and ſuch others as had been before agreed upon betwixt him and *Alexius*, referring himſelf to the Contents of ſome Letters, which he knew were upon the Road, for the Truth of what he had declar'd; undertaking to intercept the Bearers of 'em, before they ſhould be able to deliver 'em according to their Directions, provided he might be aſſur'd of the Lives of thoſe who did nothing out of Ill-will to him, but in Obedience to an haughty imperious Maſter; which *Bohemond*, who was ſurpriz'd at the Novelty of the thing, without any Heſitation granted. Accordingly the Men were ſeiz'd, and the Letters deliver'd to *Bohemond*, who opening 'em with great Impatience, read 'em over with an aſtoniſh'd Eye, and was at firſt ſo thoroughly perſuaded that they were genuine, that he kept within his Tent ſix Days together, ſeriouſly debating with himſelf what Councils to take in ſo critical a Conjuncture. At laſt, either conſidering that the Removal of ſo many experienc'd Men at once would be of a more dangerous Conſequence than the Continuance of them in the Service, however ill affected they might be to him; or having at length ſome Reaſon to diſtruſt the Sincerity of thoſe Letters, he continu'd his Brother and all the reſt in their Employments, gave 'em freſh Inſtances of his good Inclinations towards 'em, and of the Truſt he repos'd in 'em, not to be ſhaken by ſo weighty a Teſtimony as thoſe Letters ſeem'd to produce againſt 'em.

A. D. 1109. In the mean time Acts of Hostilities were continu'd on both sides, and the Siege advanc'd extream slowly, for the Besieg'd made a vigorous Defence, and had great Plenty of all things in the Garrison. Momentary Skirmishes and Party Engagements happen'd almost every Day, in which for the most part the Emperor had the Advantage, and so closely press'd *Bohemond*, who began to be in want of almost every thing necessary for a Camp, that that haughty Spirit first heard patiently some Overtures of a Peace, and at length was prevail'd upon to conclude it upon Terms very honourable to the Emperor, and no less satisfactory to him, considering the present Condition of his Affairs. After which, having dispers'd his Troops into such Winter Quarters as were allotted him by the Emperor, he himself return'd into *Italy*, saith *Anna Comnena*, tho' we learn from others that he went forwards to *Antioch*, where he dy'd within six Months, and went to seek that Peace beyond the Grave, which his Honour and Ambition would not suffer him to enjoy on this side of it. He was undoubtedly one of the Greatest Men of that Age, he was tall and well-shap'd; of an Appearance mixt with Terror and Delight, at the same time threatning and inviting: He was in Designing judicious, in Execution forward; neither soften'd by Prosperity, nor dejected in Adversity. His great Courage and Generosity made him esteem'd by those that knew him, and admired even by Strangers; so that we may have reason to believe *Anna Comnena*, when she saith he was the bravest Man of his Age, except that Idol of her Heart, her Father *Alexius*.

Bohemond *dies.*

Bohemond, among other things, agreed, at the Conclusion of the late Peace, to restore to the Emperor such Towns as he with-held from him in *Asia*, to which *Tancred* now laid Claim upon his Uncle's Death, in Right of the young *Bohemond* his Cousin, and refus'd to surrender 'em; of which the Emperor made loud Complaints, and requir'd him to observe the Articles:

ticles: To which he return'd a reſolute Anſwer, and let the Emperor know he was to expect nothing but what he could obtain by down-right Force. Upon this Occaſion *Alexius* had recourſe to his uſual Artifices; he endeavour'd to perſuade *Baldwin*, at that time King of *Jeruſalem*, to aſſiſt him againſt *Tancred*, or at leaſt to ſit Neuter, whilſt he recover'd his undoubted Right from him. But finding that neither *Baldwin* or any other of the Princes of the Cruſade were inclinable to favour his Pretences againſt *Tancred*, he thought fit to ſuſpend his Claim for the preſent, and the rather becauſe his Jealouſie was awaken'd with the new Preparations he heard the *Italians* were making in the Weſt.

'Tis no wonder if this Prince, having in ſome Reſpect or other provok'd all the World, thought the whole World combin'd againſt him, and receiv'd an Alarm from every Motion of thoſe whom his Guilt taught him to conſider as his Enemies: On whatever Quarter he caſt his Eyes he thought he had juſt Reaſon to put himſelf upon his Guard, and that at a time when he was leaſt able to make a Reſiſtance. The *Turks* were not more diſtruſted by him than the Chriſtians themſelves, nor could he ſafely confide even in his own Subjects, who were continually forming Conſpiracies againſt him, or terrifying him by their Rebellions; add to all this, the Infirmities of his Body, afflicted by the Gout, and other Diſtempers which uſually accompany Old Age, and render Life a Burden. Notwithſtanding which, being inform'd that the *Turks* had renew'd their Incurſions, which they made up almoſt as far as the Walls of *Nice*, he march'd in Perſon againſt 'em, and gave 'em an Overthrow that was thought worthy ſuch a Triumph at *Conſtantinople*, as the Inhabitants of that Place had not ſeen for a long time before. A. D. 1118.

Notwithſtanding this Defeat of the *Turks*, they ſhortly after renew'd their Incurſions, and deſtroy'd

the Borders of the Empire for a conſiderable time without Control, for that the Forces of the Eaſt had been ſome time before ſent againſt the *Scythians*, who were preparing to give *Alexius* new Trouble, and the Emperor himſelf was laid up of the Gout. However, being at length recover'd, and having review'd his Forces, he march'd againſt the *Turks*, who with an inſolent Barbarity deſtroy'd all before 'em, but at the Emperor's Approach retir'd without venturing a Battel; and when they heard he was return'd to *Nicomedia*, they renew'd their Hoſtilities with their uſual Confidence, and were frequently defeated by *Alexius*'s Lieutenants, who were left behind for that purpoſe, eſpecially by *Nicephorus*, who drove the Sultan himſelf out of the Field, and won ſeveral Places of Importance from the *Turks* near *Iconium*; at which, and a ſecond Expedition of *Alexius* againſt 'em, they were ſo terrify'd that they immediately deſir'd Peace, which was readily granted 'em by the Emperor.

This Peace being ſo happily concluded, the Emperor never after appear'd in the Field; but being now as cautious of provoking his Neighbours, as he had been heretofore forward in it, he apply'd himſelf to Acts of Charity, and to the healing thoſe Diviſions, with which the *Greek* Church was at that time grievouſly afflicted. Theſe Cares took up the reſt of his Time 'till his Death, which happen'd ſhortly after, occaſion'd by a violent Cold, and his own Wilfulneſs, or the Ignorance and unſeaſonable Diſputes of his Phyſicians. He dy'd in the thirty eighth Year of his own Reign, the laſt of *Bladwin* the firſt King of *Jeruſalem*, and the twenty ſecond after the firſt Expedition of the Weſtern Chriſtians for the Recovery of the Holy-Land, *An. Dom.* 1118.

Alexius dies.

His Character. The Character of this Prince is differently repreſented by the *Greek* Authors, and thoſe who have written the Hiſtory of the Holy Wars; the *Græcians*, eſpecially his Daughter *Ann*, placing him among thoſe excellent

cellent Princes whoſe Virtues adorn'd the Imperial Throne; and the reſt making him worſe than the worſt of thoſe who defil'd it. It is agreed on all Hands, that he was one of the greateſt Politicians of his Time, and knew how to be Maſter of his Deſigns by Artifice, when it was not to be effected by open Force. His greateſt Fault was his Ambition, and his moſt ſhining Talent Diſſimulation. He was patient of Labour; and, upon Occaſion, a great Time-ſerver. He outwardly profeſs'd a great Veneration for the Church, but made it appear, when ever his Neceſſities requir'd it, how ſuperficial that Veneration was. That he was grateful and munificent, appears from his Behaviour to his Brother and the reſt of his Friends, who had been inſtrumental in his Advancement. He was Perfidious, but not Cruel, ſeldom puniſhing thoſe, who during the long Courſe of his Reign ſo often attempted him by their Conſpiracies, otherwiſe than with Baniſhment and Confiſcation. His Behaviour to the Weſtern Adventures was unworthy a Prince and a Chriſtian, but that in ſome meaſure it was to be excus'd by the Jealouſies he had upon good grounds entertain'd againſt *Bohemond*. His Reign was for the moſt part full of Cares and Anxieties, and at laſt he left the Empire to his Son, who govern'd more to the Satisfaction of his People than his Father had done before him.

Whilſt *Alexius* lay ſick, he was earneſtly ſollicited by the Empreſs and his Daughter *Ann*, to declare her Husband *Bryennius* Emperor, and to deprive his own Son *John* of the Succeſſion; and tho' *Alexius* abſolutely deny'd their Requeſt, and gave 'em unanſwerable Reaſons for that Denial, yet they perſiſted in their Sollicitations; and that the rather, becauſe they heard *John*, having got the Imperial Signet from off his dying Father's Finger, had caus'd himſelf to be proclaim'd Emperor, by thoſe of his Relations and others who were well affected to his Cauſe. This made 'em more importunate with *Alexius*, who continu'd deaf to their

Calo-Johannes. A. D. 1118.

Importunities, 'till *John* was got at the Head of his Party into the Palace, immediately upon which the aged Emperor dy'd, and left him his Succeſſor without any Competitor.

John, being confirm'd in the Imperial Dignity, and crown'd by the Hands of the Patriarch, remov'd ſuch Officers from Court as were ſuſpected by him, and preferr'd none to ſucceed 'em but his own Friends and Relations, and ſuch others as were the moſt Eminent for their Birth in the Empire. Notwithſtanding this prudent Management, he had not worn the Imperial Purple a full Year before ſome of his neareſt Relations conſpired againſt him, and by Oath oblig'd themſelves to advance *Bryennius*; this was rather contriv'd by the haughty and ambitious Temper of *Ann*, than deſir'd by *Bryennius*, who was ſo far from approving what had been deſign'd, that his Remiſsneſs and Averſion to publick Affairs blunted the Edge of the Conſpirators Swords, who had undertaken to murder the Emperor by Night. A treaſonable Deſign not executed proves pernicious to none but the Traitors: The Conſpirators being diſcover'd, and ſeiz'd the next Day, ſuffer'd no other Puniſhment than a Confiſcation of their Goods, which however were ſhortly after reſtor'd to 'em through the Clemency of the Emperor, and they receiv'd into Favour. *Ann* her ſelf, who had given Life to the Conſpiracy, being the firſt who taſted of his Royal Bounty, which was in a great Meaſure owing to the Virtue and Generoſity of *Axuchus*, a *Perſian* by Birth, who being in the City of *Nice* when it was taken by the Chriſtians, was among other Captives preſented to *Alexius*; and that Emperor, obſerving ſomething extraordinary in the Youth, order'd him to attend as a Companion upon his Son, who from that time forward conceiv'd ſo great an Affection for him, that when he came to be Emperor he was declar'd his chief Favourite and prime Miniſter, *John* thinking he could never do enough for the belov'd Companion of his

John, *the new Emperor, his great Moderation.*

his Studies and Diverſions. *Axuchus*, on the other ſide, behav'd himſelf with the greateſt Moderation, and tho' his Authority was ſo great in the Empire that many of the Royal Blood thought it no Diſgrace to alight from their Horſes when they met him, and pay him Homage; yet was he ſo far from the Arrogance of unworthy upſtart Favourites, that he demean'd himſelf on all Occaſions like a Servant, daily endeavouring to eſtabliſh a good Underſtanding in the Royal Family, and reconciling the Offenders to the injur'd Prince. By this Man's good Offices the Emperor was perfectly reconcil'd to his Mother and Siſter, and having eſtabliſh'd an agreeable Harmony at home, he found himſelf at leiſure to obſerve the *Turks*, who, in Defiance of the Peace lately concluded with his Father, had broken into *Phrygia*, where he overthrew 'em in ſeveral Engagements, recover'd all the Places of Importance out of their Hands, and among the reſt the City of *Laodicea*, which he ſecur'd with new Walls and other Fortifications. After which he laid Siege to *Sozopolis*, a conſiderable Town in *Pamphilia*, from whence the *Turks* by their frequent Excurſions very much oppreſs'd the Subjects of the Empire. The Town was ſtrongly fortify'd, and almoſt inacceſſible, ſo that he found it difficult to force the numerous Garriſon by the uſual Methods of a Siege, and had Recourſe to a Stratagem, which had the Succeſs he deſired, and made him Maſter of the Town: For having by a pretended Aſſault drawn the *Turks* out, and by a counterfeit Flight entic'd 'em into an Ambuſcade, part of his Forces got between them and the City, and fell upon the Rear, whilſt the other fac'd about and attack'd 'em upon the Front, killing great Multitudes upon the Spot, taking ſeveral Priſoners, and ſuffering none to eſcape, but a few who ow'd their Lives to the Fleetneſs of their Horſes. After which not only *Sozopolis* fell into his Hands, but ſeveral other Places in thoſe Parts, formerly Members of the *Roman* Empire, but

His Wars with the Turks,

late ſubdu'd, and added to the Dominions of the *Turks*.

Theſe ſucceſsful Expeditions in the Beginning of his Reign, render'd *John* terrible to his Enemies in *Aſia*, who ſuffer'd him therefore peaceably to enjoy the Fruits of his Victories at *Conſtantinople*; 'till in the fifth Year of his Reign he was forc'd upon an Expedition againſt the *Scythians*, who having paſt the *Iſter* had waſted *Thrace*, and like devouring Locuſts deſtroy'd all before 'em. Againſt theſe the Emperor led the Flower of the *Roman* Army, preparing however to circumvent by Fraud if poſſible, rather than engage with ſuch a Multitude of Barbarians in a pitch'd Battel. Accordingly he ſent his Ambaſſadors to the chief Captains in their Army, for every Tribe, or Clan, had its particular Commander, and amus'd the moſt powerful among 'em ſo effectually with his fair Promiſes and magnificent Preſents, that they were careleſly conſulting among themſelves on what Terms they ſhould grant Peace to a Prince, who appear'd ſo willingly to pay for it; when the Emperor towards the Evening fell ſuddenly upon 'em, kill'd great Multitudes before they were able to defend themſelves, and forc'd the reſt, after a reſolute Oppoſition, to fly, or yield themſelves Priſoners.

A. D. 1122. *and the* Scythians.

This ſignal Victory was ſucceeded by another, obtain'd ſhortly after over the *Triballi*, or *Servii*, who having broke the League concluded with them, provok'd the Vengeance of the *Roman* Arms againſt 'em. Theſe being likewiſe overcome by the Emperor, were either incorporated in his Legions, or tranſplanted to other Parts, where they were not ſo capable of doing Miſchief for the future.

The perfidious *Triballi* being thus puniſh'd by this active Emperor, he was ſhortly after forc'd to turn his Victorious Arms againſt the *Hunns*, who upon ſome frivolous Pretences had invaded the Territories of the Empire. *John*, who thought it adviſable to prevent

and

and remove an Evil before it gain'd too much Head, forc'd 'em back over the *Iſter*; and paſſing his own Army over that River, he carry'd the War into their own Country, where he took ſeveral of their ſtrong Holds, obtain'd a conſiderable Booty, forc'd 'em to ſuch a Peace as he thought fit to grant, and having ſecur'd the Frontiers, return'd in Triumph to *Conſtantinople*; where he had hardly return'd Thanks for his Succeſs, ſhown himſelf to his Subjects, and ſuffer'd his Soldiers to enjoy a ſhort Refreſhment, before new Attempts of his Enemies call'd him out to new Adventures.

The *Turks*, who had already ſeiz'd on ſo many conſiderable Branches of the Empire, ſtill graſp'd at more; with confederate Forces they ſeiz'd on ſeveral of the *Roman* Cities in *Galatia*, in *Cilicia*, and other Places, which this warlike Emperor did not only recover, but forc'd 'em to yield up others they had injuriouſly detain'd, and did not deſiſt 'till he had maſter'd all *Armenia*; he laid Siege to *Baca* and *Anazarba*, which he took, but was forc'd to riſe from before *Berrhæa* in *Syria*, after which he took in other Places of Importance, and made a fruitleſs Expedition againſt *Antioch*, to which he laid Claim by Virtue of the Treaty concluded between his Father and the Princes of the *Cruſade*: But *Fowk*, Earl of *Anjou*, who had lately ſucceeded *Baldwin* of *Bruges* in the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, undertook the Defence of the Place, and the Protection of *Raymond*, the Earl of *Poitier*'s Son, who had marry'd *Conſtantia*, *Bohemond*'s Daughter, and by that means was eſteem'd the lawful Prince of thoſe Territories.

The Emperor, in his Return homewards, was happily reconcil'd to his Brother *Iſaac*, who in the Beginning of his Reign had taken ſome Diſguſt, and withdrew to the *Turks*, among whom he liv'd, and adviſ'd 'em to direct their Incurſions with the moſt probable Succeſs. But ſhortly after, as the *Romans* were about

to

to engage the *Turks* near *Neo-Cæsaria*, *Isaac*'s Son *John*, an arrogant intractable Youth, deserted to the Enemy, which had like to have prov'd the Destruction of the *Roman* Army; for he inform'd the Barbarians of the Difficulties they labour'd under, how their Horses dy'd daily, and that there was a Scarcity of all things convenient in their Camp; and that he might add a greater Weight to his Information, he impiously renounc'd the Christian Religion, and embrac'd the *Mahometan* Superstitions. The *Turks* were so encourag'd by this Defection, that they fell violently upon the *Romans* as they were decamping, and kill'd great Numbers before the Emperor could lead 'em into a Place of Security.

After this he return'd to *Constantinople*, where he was receiv'd with the usual Acclamations by the Citizens, who however murmur'd frequently at the heavy Impositions laid upon 'em for the Support of the War; but considering the Mony was entirely apply'd for the Good and Security of the Publick, and not diverted to any private Use, they grew asham'd of their Uneasiness, and admir'd the indefatigable Industry of their Warlike Emperor, whose Care for the Good of his Subjects was more extensive than his Dominions, and who thought it a Shame to lye idle at home, when the Season of the Year suffer'd him to be at the Head of his Armies abroad.

Hitherto the many Wars he had been ingag'd in concluded all honourably, and most of 'em advantageously to the Empire, and he had no great reason to accuse Fortune; but now she, who had so long attended him in all his Expeditions as a Friend, began to declare against him. Tho' he had frequently attempted *Antioch* in vain, as has been before observ'd, and was ob-
A. D. lig'd to come to an Agreement with the *Latins* there,
1140. yet his Ambition still prompted him to endeavour the Conquest of that renown'd City, which had formerly appear'd like an inestimable Diamond in the Crowns

of

of his Predeceſſors. Having ſettled his Domeſtick Affairs he ſet forward in the Spring, accompany'd by his three Sons, *Alexius*, *Andronicus*, and *Manuel*, pretending publickly that the Deſign of his Expedition was only to ſettle the Affairs of *Armenia*, to ſecure his Conqueſts there, and confirm the Cities in their Obedience; tho' his Principal Deſign was, if poſſible, to reunite *Antioch* to the Empire. How much Divine Providence was offended at his Undertaking, appear'd from the great Loſs this Emperor ſuſtain'd ſhortly after he had begun his March. For his eldeſt Son *Alexius*, whom he had before adorn'd with the Imperial Purple, dy'd by the way; and *Andronicus*, his ſecond, had hardly perform'd the laſt Office to his deceas'd Brother before he follow'd, to the exceeding great Regret of the Emperor, who was ready to ſink under the weight of ſo unexpected a Calamity. However, being in nothing diverted from his intended Deſigns, he proceeded firſt into *Iſauria*, and from thence into *Syria*, having firſt acquainted the Inhabitants of *Antioch* of his Arrival. The Citizens immediately ſent an Embaſſy to congratulate his Preſence in thoſe Parts, with which he ſeem'd highly delighted, and promis'd himſelf an agreeable Succeſs; but as he drew nearer he found he had great Reaſon to diſtruſt the Integrity of the *Latins*, who underſtanding the Deſign of his Expedition, refus'd to admit him into the City 'till he had ſolemnly ſworn he would attempt no Innovation, but quietly depart after a ſhort Reſidence among 'em. The Emperor, having firſt try'd the Temper of the *Syrians* and *Cilicians*, and found 'em by no means inclinable to a Change, were forc'd to ſubmit; ſo that after he had taken the Oath preſcrib'd, he and a few of his Followers was receiv'd into the City, but he was ſo ill pleas'd with his Entertainment there, and the Obſtinacy of the Inhabitants, who had extorted that Oath from him, that at his Departure he order'd his Soldiers to plunder the Suburbs, which he pretended was done through

through the want of Proviſions in the Army, though it was really contriv'd to revenge the Affront he thought they had put upon him. After this he directed his March towards the Confines of *Cilicia*, where he ſeverely paid for the Outrages committed at *Antioch*. For as he was one Day Hunting a Wild Boar, having wounded him with his Spear, the enrag'd Beaſt bore forward upon the Weapon with all his Strength, and forc'd the Emperor's Hand back upon the Point of a poiſon'd Arrow, which hung in a Quiver at his Back, and gave him a ſlight Wound, of which he ſhortly after dy'd; for whereas at firſt proper Remedies were not apply'd, the Strength of the Poiſon prevail'd by degrees, and caus'd ſuch a Swelling in his Hand and Arm, that at length the Phyſicians declar'd there was no Remedy left but to cut off his Arm; this the Emperor peremptorily refus'd, affirming, that *he wanted both Hands to govern ſo large an Empire.*

The Emperor wounded mortally.

A. D. 1142. Wherefore finding that Death was unavoidable, he ſent for his Son *Manuel*, and having ſummon'd the chief of the Nobility to be preſent, he recounted to 'em the Condition he found the Empire in at his Father's Death, and in what a flouriſhing State he now left it. He repreſented to 'em *his many Expeditions, his laborious Marches, and Victories obtain'd over ſuch as had, for a long time before, reflected on the* Roman *Arms with Contempt.* He told 'em *he was now call'd to the Enjoyment of an Heavenly Kingdom, and wiſh'd 'em to conſider of a Succeſſor.* He added, *that he had two Sons living,* Iſaac *and* Manuel, *and that if it might be lawful for him to name the Perſon he would have to ſucceed him, he would not ſo much conſider the Priority of Birth, as the Superiority of Virtues, nor would he willingly leave the Empire to the oldeſt, but the moſt deſerving.* He obſerv'd, *that God was no Accepter of Perſons, that the Dictates of Nature, like the Councils of Old Women, were often to be rejected in things of Moment and Conſequence.* After that he proceeded to recount *the diffe-*

His Speech before his Death.

rent

rent Tempers of Iſaac *and* Manuel, *that this was of a ſedate modeſt Diſpoſition, and therefore the fitter to liſten to, and receive the wholſome Advice of his Friends; that on the contrary the other was fiery and impatient; and having appear'd incapable of Obedience he judg'd him unworthy to Command; that* Manuel *from his Youth ſeem'd deſign'd for the* Roman *Empire, that ſeveral notorious Prophecies and Omens declaring the Divine Pleaſure, had mark'd out his way to it, and therefore that as* Iſaac *formerly conferr'd the Birth-Right on the younger, ſo he now thought it became him to call the younger to the Succeſſion.*

Declares his Succeſſor,

Iſaac was by no means gracious to the People, and was moreover at this time abſent from the Army, ſo that they all readily agreed to receive *Manuel* from the Hands of their dying Emperor, and was accordingly proclaim'd and acknowledg'd ſuch at the Head of all the Legions, the Chief Officers of the Army obliging themſelves, by moſt ſolemn Oaths, never to obey any other. This was chiefly attributed to the prudent Management of *Axuchus*, who thought, by this means, to put a ſtop to the Troubles that might otherwiſe hereafter ariſe from different Pretenders.

MANUEL COMNENUS.

The remaining Part of the Emperor's Time was ſpent in his Exhortations to *Manuel*, and his private Devotions: He liv'd not long after, but dy'd on the eighth of *April*, in the twenty fifth Year of his Reign, the fifth of *Conrade* the Third Emperor of *Germany*, and ſeventh of our King *Stephen*, *A. D.* 1142. He was a Prince equally to be admir'd for his private Deportment as a Man, and his publick Adminiſtration as Emperor, belov'd by the People for his frequent Donatives and magnificent Buildings. His Thirſt after Glory was his moſt prevailing Quality, deſiring above all things to continue his Name down to Poſterity. He was an exact Obſerver of Forms in his Family and Habit, ſuffering no wanton Diſcourſes in Court, no gaudy Dreſſes, nor riotous Banquets. As he was a ſincere Lover of Virtue himſelf, ſo he endeavour'd by his

and dies.

His Character.

his Example to encourage it in others. He was naturally Courteous, and free of Acceſs, indulging himſelf in all ſorts of innocent Recreations and Entertainments when the Affairs of State would permit. It is obſervable of him, that he put none to Death, nor inflicted a Corporal Puniſhment on any one throughout his whole Reign. So that he was deſervedly belov'd after his Death, and eſteem'd an Ornament to the *Comnenian* Family, equalling moſt, and excelling not a few of his Predeceſſors.

Manuel's firſt Care, after his Father's Death, was to confirm himſelf in the Dignity to which he had been advanc'd. He was afraid leſt his Brother *Iſaac*, who was then at *Conſtantinople*, ſhould upon the firſt notice of his Advancement declare againſt him, to which he thought the Imperial Treaſure and Ornaments were no ſmall Inducements. He therefore immediately ſent away *Axuchus*, who had Orders to ſecure *Iſaac*, if poſſible, before he had time to attempt any Alterations; in which that faithful Miniſter ſucceeded ſo effectually, that he ſuddenly ſeiz'd on the unregarded Prince, and ſhut him up into a Monaſtery, where he in vain exclaim'd againſt the Injuſtice he had receiv'd, and declar'd his Right to the Empire; whilſt *Axuchus* was intent upon ſettling the Affairs at Court, upon reconciling the Minds of the People to the new Emperor, and preparing for his Publick Entry, which he made amidſt the loud Acclamations of the Inhabitants, who receiv'd him joyfully, both for his Father's ſake, and the Reputation he had acquir'd for his own Valour, Prudence and Bravery. He had a lively Countenance, a manly Stature, and a Complexion rather Swarthy than Fair, but what was very becoming; and the Citizens at that time diſcover'd ſeveral imaginary Graces in his Perſon, which had before paſs'd unobſerv'd. Being Crown'd by the Hands of the Patriarch, and reconcil'd to his Brother *Iſaac*, who promis'd an implicit Obedience for the future, he turn'd

turn'd his Eyes towards the Eaſt, where the *Turks* renew'd their Inroads, and *Raimond*, Prince of *Antioch*, encroach'd upon the *Roman* Territories in *Cilicia*. *Andronicus* and *Pruſuchus* were ſent to obſerve *Raimond*, and the Emperor march'd in Perſon againſt the Infidels, from whom he recover'd ſuch Places as they had ſeiz'd in *Phrygia*, and other Parts, and engaging with 'em at *Philomelium* he receiv'd a Wound in his Foot; notwithſtanding which he continu'd the War, and ſate down before *Iconium* it ſelf, from whence however he was ſhortly after forc'd to riſe, and return in a diſorderly manner home, where he began, by ſome unworthy Actions, to render himſelf unacceptable to the People. He had marry'd *Gertrude*, Siſter-in-Law to *Conrade* the *German* Emperor, who was not ſo careful by artificial tranſitory Beauties to adorn her Body, as by ſolid Virtues to enrich her Mind; which alienated the Affections of the youthful Emperor from her, who continu'd to her her Guards, and the other uſual Enſigns of Empire, but abſtain'd from her Bed, and wantonly convers'd with his own Niece *Theodora*, to the great Scandal of his Dignity and Profeſſion.

The Greek *Writers call her* Eirene.

Manuel's *Adminiſtration diſagreeable to the People.*

Knowing how much ſuch an Action would raiſe the Indignation of his Subjects againſt him, he endeavour'd to ſoften 'em by his continu'd Application to the Affairs of State, by his Choice of ſuch Miniſters as he knew were acceptable to the People, and by his great Charity, Affability and Magnificence, which however in time degenerated into the moſt ſordid Parſimony and Auſterity.

About this time Ambaſſadors arriv'd at *Conſtantinople* from the *German* Emperor, and ſuch other Princes as had undertaken the Second *Cruſade* to the Holy-Land. Their Buſineſs was to deſire in their Maſters Name a free Paſſage for their Troops through the Territories of the Empire, with a Supply of Forage and Proviſion. The Emperor, tho' he was infinitely jealous, receiv'd the Ambaſſadors tolerably well, extoll'd

A. D. 1147.

that

that generous and moſt Chriſtian Temper in their Maſters, and promis'd 'em a Sufficiency of all things they could deſire, provided they inſulted none of his Subjects in their Paſſage. Notwithſtanding this fair Anſwer he muſter'd all his Forces, and in a ſet Speech told his chief Officers *how much reaſon he had to diſtruſt the Weſtern Chriſtians, who he fear'd would appear Wolves in Sheeps Cloathing.* He repreſented to 'em *the Numbers and Inclinations of theſe Adventurers,* that *they were perfidious, cruel and revengeful;* that *they uſually made War before they had declar'd it;* and ſeem'd, by his Speech, rather to animate the Minds of his Soldiers for an Engagement with their Enemies, than to prepare 'em for a friendly Reception of their Fellow-Chriſtians, who had arm'd themſelves for no other purpoſe, but to drive the implacable Infidels farther from their Doors.

His treacherous Behaviour to the Weſtern Princes.

When he had thus deliver'd himſelf to the Army he diſmiſs'd part of it to meet the Emperor, not ſo much out of Reſpect or Honour, as to obſerve his Motions, and the reſt he retain'd for the Defence of the City, which he ſecur'd with new Fortifications, and behav'd himſelf as one who expected to be Beſieg'd by his Enemies, and not viſited by his Friends. Thoſe he had ſent out to attend the Emperor *Conrade,* carry'd with them that Spirit he had inſtill'd into 'em; for they omitted no Opportunity of incommoding the *Germans* in their March, ſo that frequent Differences aroſe between 'em, which often ended in Blows, and Blood was drawn on both ſides. The Emperor had commanded 'em to diſpoſe themſelves in Ambuſcades on both ſides of the Army in their March, and to kill, as they did without Mercy, ſuch as ſtraggled never ſo little from the Body of the Army, which for that Reaſon, not being able to march at any compaſs, ſuffer'd extreamly for want of Proviſions; and when the *Greeks,* by the Emperor's Permiſſion, ſold any to the neceſſitous *Germans,* they firſt mingled Quick-lime among

among the Flower, which was to make Bread for the Soldiers, who being extream hungry had not time to diſcover the cruel Cheat, by which means a ſtrange Mortality rag'd among 'em. But this was not all; the Gates of all the Towns in their Paſſage were by the Emperor's Order ſhut againſt 'em, and when they went to buy their Victuals from the Inhabitants upon the Walls, they were firſt oblig'd to ſend their Mony up in Baskets let down for that purpoſe, which when the treacherous Villains had receiv'd, they return'd only Deriſion inſtead of Commodities in Exchange for their Silver. In a Word, there was no Villany omitted, which either the Emperor himſelf did not act againſt 'em, or committed to the Conduct of others; that thereby their Poſterity might for ever hereafter be deterr'd from invading the Territories of the Empire.

And that nothing might be wanting to compleat the Ruin of an Army, which otherwiſe might eaſily have triumph'd over all the Eaſt, *Manuel*, ſo ſoon as he underſtood what Preparations were making for this ſecond Cruſade, ſecretly acquainted *Mamut*, the Nephew of *Solyman*, Sultan of *Iconium*, with it, and preſs'd him vigorouſly to take up Arms againſt this Army of the Cruſades which he was like to have upon his Hands; whereupon the Sultan immediately ſent to all the Princes of his Nation to join in Defence of their common Intereſt againſt the Chriſtians, and before one could well think it poſſible, had a moſt formidable Army rais'd, and ſent to his Aſſiſtance.

By theſe Artifices *Manuel* effected the Ruin of an Army, which might otherwiſe have been invincible, whereby he has render'd his Name odious to all Poſterity; and was in ſome meaſure puniſh'd by a War which about that time broke out between him and *Roger*, King of *Sicily*. That Prince, preſerving the hereditary Averſion his Family had conceiv'd againſt that of *Manuel*, omitted no Opportunities of annoying the

His Wars with Roger *King of* Sicily.

Emperor. Wherefore taking the Advantage of ſome Diſcontents among the Inhabitants of *Corcyra*, who thought themſelves oppreſs'd by too heavy Exactions, he firſt ſeiz'd on that, and then coaſting along without Control, he took *Corinth*, *Thebes*, and moſt of the principal Towns in *Bœotia*, which he plunder'd, and dividing part of the Spoil among his Soldiers, return'd laden home with the reſt.

Manuel was at once afflicted and provok'd at theſe Proceedings, and breathing nothing but Revenge, declar'd War againſt the *Sicilians*. Accordingly he collected all the Standing-Forces of the Empire into one Body, rais'd new Levies both of Horſe and Foot, mann'd out a Formidable Fleet, invited the *Venetians* into his Aſſiſtance, and declar'd *Stephen* and *Axuchus* Generals in chief againſt *Roger*; tho' he follow'd ſhortly after in Perſon, knowing how much his Preſence would animate the Soldiers, and began the War with the Siege of *Corcyra*, or *Corfu*, the chief Town in the Iſland ſo nam'd. Here obſerving the ſtrong Situation of the Place, that it was ſecured with ſtrong Walls, and thoſe Walls defended with convenient Towers, he was enraged at the Treachery of his Men, who ſuffer'd it to fall with ſo much Eaſe into the Hands of *Roger*. At firſt he ſummon'd the Garriſon to ſurrender, who anſwering him no otherwiſe than with Showers of Arrows from the Walls, he gave Orders for an Aſſault, which was puſh'd on with great Bravery by the *Romans*, 'till having loſt great Numbers of their Men, and *Stephen* their General among the reſt, they were oblig'd to retire. Shortly after the *Romans* renew'd the Attack, in which the Emperor loſt four hundred of the beſt Men in his Army, which Calamity was ſucceeded by another of a more fatal Conſequence; for tho' *Manuel* had from the Beginning taken all neceſſary Precautions to prevent any Miſunderſtanding between the *Romans* and his Auxiliary *Venetians*, yet there aroſe between 'em an unhappy Quarrel, which beginning in

ſome

ſome trivial Diſputes, ended at length in Blood; for when *Axuchus* found the *Venetians* would not be brought to Reaſon by fair Means, he drew out the *Roman* Guards againſt 'em, and drove 'em to their Ships; whither when they were forc'd, after much Slaughter on both Sides, they renew'd the Fight by Sea, and having burnt ſeveral of the Emperor's Ships, they ſeiz'd on the Admiral, on board of which they adorn'd a profligate Black with the Imperial Ornaments, and with a mock Solemnity ſaluted him Emperor, in Deriſion of *Manuel*, who, as we obſerv'd before, was of a ſwarthy Complexion. Tho' the Emperor was highly provok'd at this Indignity, yet dreading the Effects of a popular Commotion, and with a wonderful Diſſimulation concealing his Reſentments for the preſent, he ſent ſome of their Nation, who had the Honour to be employ'd near his own Perſon, with Offers of an Accommodation, and Promiſes of Forgiveneſs for what was paſt, provided they would return to a Participation of the War, and once more unite their Arms with his againſt him whom he call'd their common Enemy. By this prudent Condeſcenſion a Pacification was effected, the Siege renew'd, and the Town aſſaulted both by Sea and Land; 'till the Beſieg'd, who had made a vigorous Defence ſo long as they conceiv'd any Hopes of Relief, but deſpairing now of *Roger*'s Aſſiſtance, ſurrender'd upon honourable Conditions, and ſome of 'em entring into the Emperor's Pay, among whom was *Theodorus Capellanus*, who had been their Governor, the reſt return'd into *Sicily*.

The Emperor leaving a ſtrong Garriſon in the Town, which he found now to be of ſo conſiderable a Conſequence, prepar'd to carry the War into *Sicily* it ſelf, but was overtaken by a Storm, which diſperſt his Fleet, ſunk ſeveral of his Ships, and ſuffer'd himſelf and the Tranſports to eſcape with great Difficulty to *Aulon*, from whence he march'd with ſome of the choiceſt Troops of his Army againſt the *Servians*, who taking

their Advantage from the preſent Troubles, had infeſted the neighbouring Provinces of the Empire, and committed the Proſecution of the *Sicilian* War to the Conduct of *Michael Palæologus*, who by the Emperor's Order went to *Venice*, where he rais'd Recruits for his Army; with which he march'd into *Calabria*, by the Advice of *Alexander*, *Roger*'s Kinſman, who having been diſobliged by the King revolted to the *Romans*, and perſuaded 'em to tranſlate the War into his own Country, where he frequently defeated *Roger*'s Forces, took ſeveral Towns, and ſent great Numbers of Captives to the Emperor; who in the mean time preſſing hard upon the *Servians*, they ſummon'd the *Hungarians* to their Aſſiſtance, and for ſome time made a tolerable Reſiſtance; but being at length overthrown, *Manuel* carry'd the War into *Hungary*, where he raz'd ſeveral of their Cities, and return'd with a great Booty to *Conſtantinople*: From whence he ſhortly after made another Expedition againſt 'em, but upon Submiſſion granted 'em a Peace; which however was of no long Continuance, for they were accus'd of favouring *Andronicus Comnenus*'s Deſigns upon the Empire, whereupon the War commenc'd, and was manag'd for a conſiderable time with various Fortune on both ſides.

Andronicus's ambitious Deſigns.

Andronicus, of whom we ſhall have Occaſion to ſay more hereafter, was Couſin-German to the Emperor, and being a Man of an haughty aſpiring Temper, had for a long time privately affected the Empire; of which *Manuel* was ſufficiently ſenſible, but having no plain Proofs againſt him, he rather choſe narrowly to obſerve than openly to puniſh him: But being now juſtly provok'd at him for his Practices with the *Hungarians* and other States, and incens'd againſt him by all his Relations, for his inceſtuous Converſation with *Eudocia*, the Emperor's Neice, he committed him to cloſe Cuſtody; hoping by the Inconveniences of a ſevere Reſtraint to break his intractable Mind, and teach him his Duty. But *Andronicus*'s Obſtinacy was invincible; he

he was ſo far from learning the Leſſon his Calamities ought to have taught him, that his whole Thoughts were bent upon his Eſcape, which would make him capable of declaring himſelf more openly againſt the Emperor: And tho' he effected it ſhortly after, yet he was preſently taken again, and more ſeverely handled than before; 'till a forc'd Submiſſion reconcil'd him for the preſent to the Emperor, tho' in the Iſſue he made it appear that he was of a Nature not to be oblig'd, as ſhall be ſhown in its proper Place.

In the mean time *Manuel* having, by the Pope's Intervention, concluded a Peace with *Roger*, and in a great meaſure check'd the unquiet *Hungarians*, took a Progreſs into the Eaſt; and marching through *Armenia* arriv'd at *Antioch*, where the Inhabitants receiv'd him openly with much Reſpect, yet they beheld him with an unfriendly and jealous Eye. The Deſign of this Expedition was rather to ſhow himſelf to the Eaſtern Provinces, than affect any thing material there; for having continu'd ſome time at *Antioch*, where he was entertain'd with Shows and Feſtivals, he return'd to *Conſtantinople*; but was aſſaulted by the *Turks* in his Paſſage, who kill'd ſeveral of his Men, and took part of his Equipage. A. D. 1162. Manuel at Antioch.

Being arriv'd at *Conſtantinople*, and angry at the late Behaviour of the *Turks*, he began to reflect on the Poſture of their Affairs in *Aſia minor*, where they ſtill maintain'd their Dominion, tho' not ſo extenſive as it had been formerly: For a War breaking out between *Solyman*'s Succeſſor, and *Maſut*, Sultan of *Iconium*, it ſerv'd very much to the weakening of their Nation. This happen'd in the Reign of the late Emperor, who aſſiſting the one againſt the other, was in the end deceiv'd by both. But *Maſut* in time getting the whole Kingdom of the *Turks* into his Hands, at his Death divided it among his three Sons; to *Cliſaſthlan* his Eldeſt he bequeath'd *Iconium*, the Metropolis, with all its Dependances; to *Jagupaſan* his Second, or rather his Son-in-Law, *His Behaviour towards the* Turks.

Law, he gave *Amaſia*, *Ancyra*, with the fruitful Country of *Cappadocia*, and the adjacent Territories; but the rich Cities of *Cæſaria* and *Sebaſtia* he allotted to *Dadunes* his Youngeſt. Theſe Brethren being thus in Poſſeſſion of their Father's Kingdom, formerly belonging to the *Roman* Empire, fell out quickly among themſelves; the Sultan of *Iconium* ſeeking the Deſtruction of *Jagupaſan*, who was influenc'd by the ſame Thoughts againſt him. The Emperor in the mean time ſate ſtill as an idle Spectator, wiſhing the Deſtruction of both, and privately incens'd the one againſt the other, tho' at length he more openly favour'd *Jagupaſan*, who by vertue of his Aſſiſtance overthrew his Brother, and obtain'd a memorable Victory over him; ſo that the Sultan, grown weary of the Quarrel, not only courted the Emperor's Favour by his Ambaſſadors, but went in Perſon to *Conſtantinople*, where he was honourably receiv'd, and treated with all the Magnificence imaginable.

Among other Entertainments contriv'd for the mutual Diverſion of the two Princes, a buſie *Turk* undertook to fly the Space of a Furlong by vertue of artificial Wings, and to take his Flight from the Top of the Tower which ſtood in the *Hypodrome*. The whole World were ſurpris'd and intent upon ſo deſperate an Undertaking, the Emperor himſelf diſſuading him from it, and the Sultan doubtful of the Event. The Time appointed being come, the Undertaker appear'd on the Turret, having a large white Garment on, gather'd into many Foldings for the better Reception of the Wind; and having for ſome time ſuſpended the Expectation of the Beholders, who derided him, and provok'd him at length to perform what he had ſo unadviſedly promis'd, he hover'd a while with his Arms, as Birds do with their Wings, the better to gather the Wind, and committed himſelf with his vain Hopes to the Air; but inſtead of mounting as he had promis'd, like *Icarus* of old, he tumbled headlong down with ſuch

ſuch a Force that he broke his Neck, his Arms, and Legs, with almoſt every Bone in his Body, to the great Satisfaction of the Citizens, who with an inhoſpitable Freedom jeer'd the *Turks* when ever they met 'em, for this extravagant Attempt of their Countryman; 'till the Emperor, who obſerv'd the Sultan to be inwardly diſpleas'd at their Inſolence, commanded a Stop to be put to it.

After this, the Emperor, who was willing to make the Sultan Witneſs of his prodigious Wealth, ſhow'd him his Treaſury, and gratify'd him with ſo many Royal Preſents, that the *Turk* pretended he knew not which to admire moſt, the abundant Riches or magnificent Liberality of the Emperor. In Token of Thankfulneſs he embrac'd *Manuel*, call'd him Father, and promis'd at his Return to drive *Dadunes* out of *Sebaſtia*, and reſtore it to the Emperor. Part of this Promiſe he carefully obſerv'd, for being return'd to *Iconium* he rais'd an Army with which he drove *Dadunes* out of *Sebaſtia*, and having ſeiz'd on the Dominions of *Jagupaſan*, who dy'd at the Beginning of the War, and by that means render'd himſelf Maſter of all the *Turks* held in *Aſia minor*, he forgot all former Courteſies; and ſeeing himſelf at the Head of a powerful Empire, he invaded *Manuel*'s Territories, from whom he took *Laodicea* in *Phrygia*, with the adjacent Territories, plundering and deſtroying all that lay before him, killing the moſt reſolute, and leading the reſt into Captivity.

Manuel, who thought at firſt he had oblig'd a Friend, found now on the contrary that he had arm'd an Enemy againſt him; wherefore, to repreſs the Outrages of the perfidious *Turks*, he paſs'd with a powerful Army over into *Aſia*, where finding the Barbarians rov'd up and down at their Pleaſure, he thought fit to fortifie *Dorylæum*, the better to reſtrain their Incurſions; and that his Soldiers might with more Chearfulneſs undertake the Work, he carry'd the firſt Basket

of Stones himself, which serv'd as an Example to the rest, so that in a short time the City was defended with strong Walls and deep Ditches, maugre all the Opposition of the *Turks*, who continually alarm'd the *Romans*, and endeavour'd to drive 'em from their Works. With the like Care and Industry he fortify'd *Subleum*, another strong Hold, and having left sufficient Garrisons in both, he return'd to *Constantinople*. These Garrisons very much gaul'd the *Turks*, notwithstanding which they continu'd their Hostilities and Incroachments upon the Borders. This oblig'd the Emperor to expostulate with the Sultan, to remind him of the great Benefits he had receiv'd from him, and to reprove him for his Ungratitude. These Complaints of the Emperor were answer'd by Complaints as earnestly urg'd from the Sultan, who vehemently upbraided *Manuel* for his Unconstancy, and Breach of Promise, but insisted on nothing so much as his fortifying those Places, contrary, as he said, to the League between 'em.

This Disposition in the two Princes, and their mutual Remonstrances, were look'd upon as the Preludes of an ensuing War; for they were both Men of Resolution, impatient of Injuries, and revengeful. The Sultan was more cautious and circumspect, managing all by his Lieutenants; the Emperor more fiery, open, and adventurous, being the first to restrain the Encroachments of his Neighbours, and fighting in Person at the Head of his Armies: And now finding the Sultan was not to be oblig'd by fair means, he rais'd such an Army, consisting of *Latins* and *Scythians* as well as of his own Subjects, as if he intended not only to revenge the Affronts he had receiv'd from the present Sultan, but to call him to an Account for all the Injuries his Predecessors and the *Roman* Empire had sustain'd from the whole Nation, which he prepar'd utterly to extirpate.

With

With theſe Thoughts, and at the Head of his numerous Forces, the angry Emperor paſs'd over into *Aſia*, directing his Marches with much Care and Circumſpection, for fear of any ſudden Attempts from the Barbarians, and drawing a Trench where-ever he lodg'd his Army. The *Turks* in the mean time ſhowing themſelves in ſmall Parties, and watching their Advantages, inſulted ſometimes one Part of the Army, and ſometimes the other, deſtroying the Forage, and infecting the Water, where-ever they knew the Emperor was to paſs; which exceedingly incommoded the *Romans*, who dy'd daily of the Flux.

In the mean time the Sultan, having receiv'd a powerful Aſſiſtance from the *Perſians*, thought fit, before he had Recourſe to the Extremities of War, to try the Emperor by his Ambaſſadors, who demanded a Peace of him, and that upon ſuch Terms as he himſelf ſhould think fit to grant. This made *Manuel* to ſummon a Council of War, in which they who were the moſt experienc'd in the Wars advis'd that the Sultan's Offers ought to be embraced, that an honourable Peace ought to be preferr'd to the Dangers and Uncertainties of War, as conſiſting more with the Emperor's own Honour, and the Safety of the Empire. In this they were with great Vehemence oppos'd by the young unſkilful Courtiers, who having hardly ever heard the Sound of a Trumpet, but puſh'd on by a falſe ill-grounded Courage, declar'd aloud for the War; to whom the unfortunate Emperor adherr'd, and diſmiſs'd the Ambaſſadors with a ſurly arrogant Anſwer: And when the Sultan once more courted him to a Peace, he made no other Reply, but that *he would come and let him know his Pleaſure at* Iconium. Manuel's *Indiſcretion*

The Sultan, perceiving the Emperor deaf to all Motions of a Reconciliation, ſeiz'd on the Straits of *Zibrica*, through which the *Romans* were to paſs in their Removal from *Myriocephalon*, an old ruinous Caſtle, and of a Name ominous to the *Romans*, as it appear'd after-

afterwards by the Event. The Entrance into these Straits was by a long Valley, flank'd on each Side by high Mountains and craggy Rocks, which at once afforded a painful and amazing Paſſage to the Traveller.

In an inauſpicious Hour the deſperate Emperor enter'd this Valley, having neither provided for the clearing of the Paſſages, nor Safety of the Carriages, but marching as through a plain and open Country, tho' he had been aſſur'd before that the *Turks* were ſtrongly poſſeſs'd both of the Straits and Mountains, in order to diſpute his Paſſage. So that the *Romans* were no ſooner enter'd, but the *Turks* poured deadly Showers of Arrows upon 'em from the Mountains and broken Cliffs, which did the Execution they deſired. However they of the Van-guard caſting themſelves into the Form of a Wedge, and having join'd their Targets in the manner of a Pent-houſe cloſe over their Heads, by degrees drove the *Turks* out of thoſe Straits, and forc'd 'em farther up into the Mountains; and having recover'd the Top of a Hill they there encamp'd themſelves, waiting for the reſt to join 'em.

In this manner the whole Army might probably have paſs'd, had they not been encumber'd by their Carriages, which lengthen'd their March, and gave the *Turks* time to fall like a Torrent upon 'em from the Mountains, which put 'em into the greateſt Confuſion; for being continually preſs'd by the growing Multitudes of their Enemies, who had the Advantage of the Ground againſt 'em, they were by degrees hemm'd in on every ſide, and had not Power left either to retreat or advance, but fell a Sacrifice to the Emperor's Indiſcretion, and the Fury of the Barbarians. The Slaughter was ſo great, that the Vallies were in a manner cramm'd with dead Bodies, and the Rivers overflow'd with Blood. Men and Beaſts, Chriſtians and *Turks*, the Valiant and the Coward, lay together in promiſcuous Heaps; for during the Action a violent Wind

occaſions the Loſs of his Army.

Wind rais'd the Sand of that Defart Country as into a thick Darkneſs, ſo that both Sides fought with an undiſtinguiſhing Fury, killing Friend and Foe in that horrible Confuſion. The Emperor, whoſe Courage was equal to his Folly, ſeeing the Day irrecoverably loſt, forc'd his Way, with ſuch as had the Boldneſs to follow him, through the thickeſt Ranks of his Enemies, and bore off with him the viſible Marks of the Danger he had eſcaped. Being thus diſingag'd, he mov'd directly towards the Vanguard of his Army, and obſerv'd ſometimes as he paſs'd along ſome of his own Subjects and moſt intimate Friends beſet and overpower'd by the prevailing *Turks*, without being able to ſtay and relieve 'em; at others he was forc'd to ride over the Bodies of his neareſt Relations, either dead or dying, who with a dumb Horror ſeverely reproach'd him for his fatal Indiſcretion. However at length, with much Difficulty, he eſcap'd to the advanc'd Legions; where wounded, weary, and ready to faint for Thirſt, he commanded Water to be brought him from a neighbouring Stream, which when he had taſted, and perceiving it to be infected, with a deep Sigh he ſaid, *How unfortunately have I taſted of Chriſtian Blood*; to which a mutinuous Soldier, who overheard him, inſtantly reply'd, *This is not the firſt Time, O Emperor, thou haſt drunk the Blood of Chriſtians, but didſt even then drink of it to an Intoxication, when firſt by thy cruel Exactions thou didſt oppreſs and devour thy needy Subjects.* Tho' this reproachful Speech imbitter'd the Senſe of his preſent Calamities, yet knowing how juſtly he had deſerv'd it, he paſs'd it by in Silence, as if he had not heard it.

Shortly after this, *Andronicus Contoſtephanus*, and ſuch other Officers as had commanded in the Rear, and eſcap'd the Fury of the *Turks*, came up to the Emperor; and he had now time to reflect on the many Brave Men he had loſt, and the Danger he was in. Among the ſlain were reckon'd *Baldwin* the Emperor's

ſecond

ſecond Wife *Matilda*'s Brother, and *Manuel*'s own Nephew *Andronicus Bataza*; who marching with an Army out of *Paphlagonia* and *Heraclea Pontica* againſt the *Turks* in *Amaſia*, was intercepted by the way, and ſlain. The Miſeries of the Day were more than equall'd by the Horrors of the enſuing Night: The Chriſtians were in a foreign hoſtile Country, encompaſs'd by their Enemies on all ſides, who alarm'd every Quarter of their Camp, threatning, with an inſolent Barbarity, to deſtroy 'em all at the Return of Day; whereupon they began, whilſt living, to number themſelves among their dead Companions. No one drew a deeper Draught of this ſorrowful Cup than the Emperor, who being himſelf the Occaſion of all theſe Calamities, had a double Portion: Having called the Chief Officers together, after ſome Deliberation he told 'em, *he was reſolv'd to fly and ſecure himſelf, and adviſ'd 'em to ſhift for themſelves in the beſt manner they could.* Which infamous Reſolution being by chance overheard by the Soldier before mention'd, who ſtood then at the Tent Door, he ask'd him in a reproachful manner, *If it was not he who had led 'em into theſe Dangers, and to ſuch invincible Neceſſities? Had they more reaſon to complain of the Barbarians, or him, who had brought 'em into that Vale of Miſeries and Mouth of Hell; and would he now betray 'em by a ſhameful Flight, and leave 'em as Sheep deſign'd for the Slaughter?* The Emperor was touch'd to the Quick with this ſevere Reprehenſion, and therefore laying aſide all Thoughts but of Fighting, he reſolv'd to expect the worſt; tho' his Enemies on every ſide were ready to devour him; Help he ſaw none at hand, and nothing remain'd but Death and Deſpair.

An unexpected Deliverance.

Whilſt *Manuel* labour'd under theſe Agonies, Divine Providence touch'd the Sultan's Heart with an unwonted Tenderneſs and Pity to diſtreſs'd Majeſty. He, having recall'd the *Turks*, who by Break of Day began to aſſault the Camp, preſented the Emperor, by the

the Hands of *Gabras*, a Man of greateſt Authority next himſelf, with a Horſe richly capariſon'd, and a Sword of an ineſtimable Value. Theſe Preſents were attended with Propoſals for a Peace upon ſuch Terms as the Emperor, in that Exigency of his Affairs, could not reject. Whilſt *Gabras* was, in an eloquent Speech, at once comforting the Emperor for his preſent Misfortunes, and recommending to him the Study of Peace, he obſerv'd a rich yellow Robe which the Emperor wore over his Armour, and concluded with telling him that Colour was not proper for a Soldier, but was ominous and portended ill Luck; at which the Emperor with a Smile gave it him, and receiving the Preſents ſent him from the Sultan, ſign'd the Peace: Which being thus concluded beyond all Mens Expectations, *Manuel* prepar'd to march home, deſiring to return another Way than that by which he came, on purpoſe to avoid offending his Eyes with the Sight of thoſe he had loſt in the Straits; but his Guides, either through Deſign or Neceſſity, conducted him back the ſame Way, where he could not but behold the lamentable Effects of his late Overthrow: The Straits were fill'd up, the Vallies rais'd into Hills, and the Foreſts lay cover'd with the Carcaſſes of the Slain: Every Man, as he paſt by, call'd with a doleful Voice upon his Friends and Acquaintance, whom he had loſt; and they were all ſo touch'd with that inexpreſſible Scene of Woe, that they once more ſeem'd to be ſurrounded by the mercileſs *Turks*, and again to repeat thoſe Dangers they had lately with ſo much Difficulty eſcap'd.

Having at length paſs'd thoſe doleful Straits, the *Turks* appear'd again in their Rear; for the Sultan, repenting that he had ſuffer'd the Prey to eſcape out of his Hands, gave Leave to ſuch as would to purſue 'em, who ſlew many of 'em, eſpecially of the ſick and wounded, who could not keep up with the reſt. After many Inconveniences, the Emperor re-conducted

the

the Army to *Chonas*, where he diſtributed Money among thoſe that were wounded, and having diſcharg'd 'em proceeded forward to *Philadelphia*, where he ſtaid ſome time to refreſh himſelf, and attend the Cure of his Wounds.

Among other Conditions of the Peace, which the Emperor had oblig'd himſelf to obſerve, One was, That the Fortifications of *Dorylæum* and *Subleum* ſhould be raz'd: This the Emperor, being now out of Danger, and conſidering the great Importance of thoſe two Places, was very unwilling to perform; however he did it by halves, diſmantling *Subleum*, but continuing *Dorylæum* in the ſame Condition it was in before the Wars; and when the Sultan exhorted him by his Ambaſſadors to a better Obſervance of the Treaty, he anſwer'd, *That what had been extorted from him during his Neceſſities could be of no Force*, and therefore refus'd a Compliance: At which the Sultan was ſo enrag'd, that he ſent *Atapacus*, at the Head of twenty four thouſand of his beſt Soldiers, to waſte and deſtroy all the Provinces and Cities without Diſtinction down to the Sea-ſide, ſtrictly commanding him, as a Proof of his Obedience, to bring him ſome of the Sea Water, an Oar, and ſome of the Sand. Theſe Orders were executed with ſo much Reſolution, that *Atapacus* immediately laid all *Phrygia* waſte, ſparing neither Man, Woman, nor Child; but as he was returning with a prodigious Booty, he was met in his Paſſage over the River *Meander* by ſome of the Emperor's Forces, who had been poſted there for that purpoſe, and who cut him off together with his whole Army, and recover'd the Prey. The *Turks* were ſo diſpirited by this Overthrow, that they grew leſs arrogant for the future, tho' they never obſerv'd any Peace, but watch'd all Opportunities for enlarging their Dominions.

Manuel having thus in ſome meaſure ſecur'd himſelf, and the Empire from the *Turks*, was too jealous and active to enjoy long the Tranquility his late Dangers had

had purchas'd. *Frederick* the Firſt, ſirnam'd *Barbaroſſa*, was at that time Emperor of *Germany*, who having pacify'd the Affairs of that Country, and made the States of *Italy* ſubmit to his Pleaſure, appear'd as a dangerous Rival to the diſtruſtful *Manuel*; who was ſenſible, that if any one Prince ſhould become abſolute in the Weſt, he might eaſily inſult the Eaſtern Empire, which had been ſo conſiderably weaken'd by the prevailing Power of the Barbarians. Of this he had been aware long before, and therefore maintain'd, at a vaſt Expence, his Penſioners in moſt of the *Italian* Courts, by which means there was ſcarce any thing tranſacted even in the Conclave of which he had not an Account. By his Munificence he had brought over the *Venetians*, *Genoeſe*, the *Piſans*, and the Inhabitants of *Ancona* to his Intereſt; and of thoſe he made frequent uſe to embaraſs *Frederick*'s Affairs. *Frederick*, who was ſenſible of this Proceeding, knew not how to declare himſelf openly againſt *Manuel*, but ſate down before *Ancona*, of which he pretended to be the Lord in chief, and which he knew was particularly inclin'd to the Eaſtern Emperor. The Siege laſted longer than was at firſt expected, and the *Germans* were at length forc'd to quit it, the Inhabitants undergoing with great Chearfulneſs all the Difficulties attending a Siege, to which they were encourag'd by *Manuel*'s Ambaſſadors, who continu'd all the while within the Town.

We have nothing elſe conſiderable of this Emperor 'till his Death, except that, of an ill Emperor, he, in the latter End of his Reign, ſet up for a worſe Divine; proceeding ſo far in the Heat of his Diſputes, as to defend even ſome of *Mahomet*'s Abſurdities. This created great Diviſions in the Church, whilſt ſome adher'd to the Truth out of Conſcience ſake, and others, blinded by their Intereſt, implicitly follow'd the Emperor: But Death ſhortly after put an End to theſe Diſputes, which he manag'd with ſo much Application.

Manuel *an ill Divine.*

He

A. D. 1180. He was taken ill in *March*, and tho' he dy'd not 'till the Month of *September* following, yet he could not be prevail'd upon all that while to ſettle the Affairs of State, and appoint a Guardian to his Son, who being young was uncapable of Governing himſelf. The Reaſon of this was, that confiding in judicial Aſtrology, he affirm'd he had fourteen Years of Life ſtill remaining, during which he was to have the Pleaſure of obtaining new Miſtreſſes, and recovering ſeveral Towns from from the Barbarians. But finding at length the Approach of Death, and that it was irreſiſtable, he renounc'd his former Vanities, and took the Habit of a Monk, the Sight of which drew Tears from his Aſſiſtants, in Conſideration of the Imbecillity of Human Affairs. He did not long ſurvive this Change, but dy'd in the thirty ſixth Year of his Reign, the twenty ninth of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, the twenty ſixth of *Henry* the Second, King of *England*, *A. D.* 1180.

His Death, and Character.

He was a Prince, whoſe good and bad Qualities were ſo intermixt, that it was no eaſie thing to determine which had the Predominance. The Beginning of his Reign was ſo propitious, that he ſeem'd deſervedly to enjoy that Dignity, which had been conferr'd on him in Prejudice to the Right of his Elder Brother. He was naturally brave, fearleſs, hardy, daring, and ready in the Execution of what he had undertaken. He delighted very much in War, and yet took little Care to encourage and reward Military Men, eſpecially towads the latter End of his Reign, when he had the greateſt need of 'em: And indeed he ſeem'd properly deſign'd for War, for in Times of Peace no Prince was ever more diſſolute in all manner of Debauches, which threw him upon Extravagances, that oblig'd him to oppreſs his Subjects with illegal Taxes, and moſt ſcandalous Impoſitions. He was remarkable for his Cruelty, which proceeded from his great Jealouſie and Superſtition. The moſt execrable of all his Qualities was his Perfidiouſneſs, which made him commit

commit the blackeſt and moſt horrid Crimes upon occaſion of the ſecond Cruſade, and thereby render'd his Name eternally infamous to the whole Earth.

Manuel being dead, he was ſucceeded by his Son *Alexius Comnenus*, a Child of about twelve Years of Age, who had the Name of Emperor, but the Authority reſted in his Mother, and ſuch of his Father's Relations as ſhe thought fit to truſt; who govern'd the Empire no better than *Phaeton* is ſaid to have guided the Chariot of the Sun; the young Prince in the mean time being ſuffer'd to indulge himſelf in his Pleaſures, unable to diſcern what would contribute moſt to the Honour and Reputation of the Empire, or what would prove moſt prejudicial to it: Whilſt they, who manag'd the Affairs, ſtudy'd nothing leſs than the Care of his Education, and follow'd every one his private Intereſt and particular Inclinations. Some, who were taken with the Beauty of the young Empreſs, for which ſhe was worthily celebrated, made their Courtſhip to her, and ſpent their Time in Gallantries, and amorous Amuſements; others enrich'd themſelves out of the publick Treaſury; and a third ſort, who were the moſt dangerous, had greater Things in view, aiming at nothing leſs than the Empire it ſelf.

ALEXIUS II.

The ill Management of the Miniſtry proves the Ruin of the young Emperor.

Whilſt the Court was thus taken up, and no Regard was had to the publick Affairs, the *Turks* without any Reſiſtance invaded the Frontiers, and took *Sozopolis*, with ſeveral other Towns in *Phrygia*, and daily encroach'd upon the Provinces of the Empire; this rais'd in the People a general Diſlike to the preſent Government, and prepar'd 'em for any Innovation.

Among thoſe who endeavour'd to gain the Affections of the Empreſs, no one ſucceeded ſo well as *Alexius*, at that time Preſident of the Council, and nearly related to the Emperor, with whom he was thought to be more familiar than conſiſted with her Honour, and that by her Aſſiſtance he hop'd to be advanc'd to the Imperial Dignity, which was judg'd no difficult

matter to be effected in that Conjuncture. At this the other Grandees of the Court were alarm'd, and highly reſented the great Authority of *Alexius*, not out of any tender Regard to the young Emperor, but a jealous Concern for their own Safety.

Andronicus, of whom mention has been made already, was quickly inform'd of theſe different Factions, and divided Intereſts at Court; having a long time affected the Purple, he was too ſagacious not to think this the fitteſt Time to attempt the obtaining it. He was a Man of a haughty turbulent Spirit, and for that reaſon had liv'd either as a Priſoner or an Exile, during the greateſt Part of the late Reign; reſiding at preſent at *Oenaum*, whither he had been confin'd, for ſome new Attempts, by the late Emperor. He was a Man of great Addreſs, and had highly recommended himſelf to the Commonalty, and ſome alſo among the Nobility, by his inſinuating popular Behaviour. That which *Manuel* had deſign'd to curb and reſtrain him, he now made uſe of as a Step to aſcend the Imperial Throne; there was one Clauſe, among many other Things in the Oath of Obedience, which the late Emperor had forc'd him to take to himſelf and his Son *Alexius*, whereby he was oblig'd to diſcover whatever he knew at any time contriv'd or attempted that was prejudicial to the Honour and Safety of their Perſons, and with the utmoſt of his Power to oppoſe it. In Obedience to this Oath, as was pretended, he writ Letters full of Reſpect to the young Emperor, and *Theodoſius* the Patriarch, in which having profeſs'd a profound Veneration for the Memory of the late Emperor, and an implicit Love and Obedience to the Perſon and Authority of the young Prince, he complain'd in high Terms of *the unbounded Authority of the Preſident, and his ſcandalous Familiarity with the Empreſs, ſo notorious*, as he ſaid, *to the whole World.* That *this could not be ſuffer'd without a Violation of the Imperial Dignity, which he was bound by Oath to aſſert to the utmoſt*,

moſt, and to die rather than ſee the young Emperor in ſo notorious a manner inſulted. Theſe Letters had their deſired Effect: *Andronicus* was conſider'd as a Man of great Experience, and the only Perſon fit to reform the Abuſes of State. Being inform'd by his Emiſſaries at Court of the Peoples Diſpoſition towards him, he left *Oenaum*, and mov'd towards *Conſtantinople*; declaring, where-ever he came, That he was marching in Obedience to the Oath made to the late Emperor, and to redeem *Alexius* out of the Hands of his Enemies, who like ſenſual Brutes fed upon the Fat of the Land. In this manner he came as far as *Paphlagonia*, being receiv'd by the People as their Deliverer and Defender; for he had a Tongue ſo fluent, that he was able to convince the moſt obſtinate, and ſoften the Barbarian: His Words were attended with Tears, which flow'd as it were from two Fountains, and commiſerated the deplorable Condition of his Country, that call'd aloud for his Aſſiſtance. The Numbers of thoſe Country People, that were by theſe Artifices drawn over to him in his March, were incredible, ſo that no one dared to oppoſe him 'till he came into *Bythinia*, where *John Ducas*, Governor of *Nice*, ſhut the Gates againſt him, as an Enemy of the State: The ſame Treatment he met with at *Nicomedia*; notwithſtanding which he continu'd his March, and having, near a Caſtle call'd *Charace*, defeated *Andronicus Angelus*, whom the Preſident had ſent out againſt him, he proceeded forward, encamp'd a little above *Chalcedon*, almoſt oppoſite, and in ſight of *Conſtantinople*.

Andronicus *marches towards* Conſtantinople.

The Citizens were by this generally prepar'd for his Reception, courting him by Letters, and urging him to be ſpeedy in the Execution of his juſt and honourable Deſigns; for the Preſident had ſo provok'd 'em by his Tyrannical Proceedings, his Arbitrary Exactions, and Cruel Oppreſſions, that he was univerſally deteſted by them; particularly *Mary*, the young Emperor's Siſter by the Mother's ſide, who was highly offended

to ſee that vaſt Treaſure, which her Royal Progenitors had been ſo long hoarding up, and the Empire it ſelf become a Prey to the Ambition of one Man, and the Luſt of a Woman, to whom ſhe had always expreſs'd an irreconcilable Averſion, ſtirr'd up the People againſt 'em, and rais'd a Sedition, which occaſion'd the ſpilling of much Blood, and was with great Difficulty appeas'd. The Preſident perceiving how unable he was to contend with *Andronicus* by Land, had in the mean time mann'd out the Imperial Fleet, which was committed to the Conduct of *Contoſtephanus*, who claim'd it as his Right, and was order'd to prevent *Andronicus* his Paſſage over the *Boſphorus*; but he, watching his Opportunity, revolted with the whole Fleet, which, being the greateſt Stroke, determin'd the Fortune of the War, and ſecur'd to *Andronicus* all his Pretences. For now *Alexius* had no longer any Authority in the City, where the Citizens revil'd him to his Face, and with repeated Acclamations declar'd for *Andronicus*, the Guardian of the young Emperor, and Genius of the State. In the mean time *John* and *Manuel*, *Andronicus* his two Sons, whom the Preſident had thrown into Priſon, were ſet at Liberty, and the Preſident himſelf, with thoſe of his Faction, were clapp'd under a ſtrong Guard 'till the Arrival of *Andronicus*, who was impatiently expected. *Alexius* himſelf, who but lately was attended by thouſands, whom he could command with a Nod, and who was Emperor in every thing but the Name, was in a few Days after ſeated on a ſcurvy Jade, and with a Rag plac'd on the Top of a Reed in manner of an Enſign, carry'd before him, attended with the Scoffs and Execrations of the People, conducted to the Sea-ſide, and there thrown into a little Boat, which tranſported him to *Andronicus*, who having inſulted him himſelf, and expos'd him to the ſevere Reprehenſions of the Nobility about him, ſhortly after order'd his Eyes to be pluck'd out.

A Sedition in the City.

By

By this time all things having been manag'd and settled in the City, according to the Pleasure of *Andronicus*, he pass'd over, and was conducted into the City, attended with the Shouts and Acclamations of the People. The Emperor lay at that time with his Mother at a Royal Seat in the Country, which was done by *Andronicus* his Appointment, who, out of a pretended Respect to his Prince, went to wait on him first before he would be receiv'd into the City. Being come into his Presence he fell on the Ground, kiss'd his Feet, and wash'd 'em with his Tears, which he had ready at Command, as he had several Texts of Scripture, which he properly apply'd to the present purpose. He saluted the Empress with a Coldness that sufficiently express'd the Aversion he had to her. Andronicus *enters the City.*

Having staid some Days with the Emperor, he then march'd into the Imperial City, where, among other things, he went with a pretended Devotion to visit the late Emperor *Manuel*'s Grave, where he wept bitterly, roaring, as it were, with excess of Grief, to the great Admiration of those Spectators who were not acquainted with his great Talent of Dissimulation, and who therefore imputed it to the great Love he had for him, who had been his cruel Persecutor. When one of his Relations would have pull'd him from the Tomb, telling him he had indulg'd his Sorrows enough, he refus'd to be remov'd, urging that he had something in secret to say to the Dead. And accordingly, with his Hands lifted up, and his Eyes fix'd fast on the Tomb in the Posture of a Suppliant, he mov'd his Lips, and said something secretly, the Purport of which no Man can tell. Some said it was a Charm or Incantation, others, who were better acquainted with *Andronicus*, made a Speech for him, which they knew was more agreeable to his Temper, and which they compriz'd in Words like these. *I have thee now fast, my most cruel Persecutor, by whom I have been so often* Nicet. p. 166. Paris Edit.

driven to the laſt Extremity, an Outcaſt, and Wanderer upon the Face of the Earth. But now art thou confin'd to the Limits of this narrow Tomb, and lock'd faſt in the Arms of Death, ſhalt ariſe no more 'till the laſt fatal Trump awake thee. Know thou that I will ſeverely avenge my ſelf upon thy Family, and, like a Lion poſſeſs'd of his Prey, will ſatiate my ſelf with Blood, when once I have maſter'd this Imperial City.

Having receiv'd the Submiſſion of the Citizens, and been acknowledg'd Protector of the Empire during the Minority of the young *Alexius*, he apply'd himſelf to the Management of the State, and recall'd to the Memory of that unhappy People the Days of old, and the Proſcriptions of *Marius*, *Sylla*, and the reſt, who, having trampled over the Liberties of their Country, dy'd their Swords in the Blood of their Fellow-Citizens. Many were murder'd, others depriv'd of Sight, and great Multitudes thrown into Priſon without any Cauſe aſſign'd, but the Will of the Tyrant, which proceeded either from ſome old Grudge, or for that they were of the Nobility, and wiſh'd well to *Alexius*. His Ears were open to all Accuſations, ſo that if any Man had conceiv'd a Prejudice to his Neighbour, his ready way to be reveng'd was to accuſe him of ſome pretended Crime to *Andronicus*. In this Confuſion the Father ſpar'd not the Son, nor the Son the Father; the Brother labour'd for the Brother's Deſtruction, and it often happen'd that the Accuſer and Accuſed ſhar'd in the common Fate.

His cruel Behaviour.

The firſt who taſted of his Cruelty was *Mary*, the Daughter of the late Emperor, who tho' ſhe had appear'd the moſt zealous to promote the Revolution, yet was ſhe poiſon'd by the Tyrant's means, and her Husband is ſaid to have taſted of the ſame Cup, and to have dy'd ſhortly after. The very Favours and Commendations of this Tyrant were fatal; for thoſe whom he pretended moſt to eſteem to Day were ſure to bleed to Morrow, ſo that they appear'd no other than

than Victims deck'd out for the Altar, as if Death it ſelf had not been ſufficient unleſs it was aggravated by theſe Circumſtances. As yet the Empreſs was ſuffer'd to be near her Son, but when the Tyrant had polluted the Streets of *Conſtantinople* with his Murders and Maſſacres, then he began to reflect how much ſhe had oppos'd his Deſigns during the late Reign; and tho' there was no reaſon to think ſhe would ever be capable of hurting him in this, yet he reſolv'd to deſtroy her. Accordingly he exclaim'd publickly againſt her, call'd her Traitreſs, and a declar'd Enemy to the Emperor and the State, threatening once more to depart if ſhe were not remov'd from her Son's Preſence.

Tho' he would have done any thing ſooner than that, yet the unthinking Multitude, who were ſtill miſs-led by a wonderful Opinion of him, flock'd in great Numbers to the Patriarch's Houſe, and threaten'd to Mutiny if *Andronicus* was not oblig'd in that Point. Whereupon a Council was ſummon'd, conſiſting of ſuch as, for the moſt part, were too complaiſant to oppoſe the Tyrant's Pleaſure. In this Council ſhe was charg'd of Treaſon, as that ſhe by Letters ſhould invite *Bela*, King of *Hungary*, her Brother-in-Law, to invade the Empire. And that the Council might know before hand what they were to do, *Leo Monaſteriotes*, *Demetrius*, *Tornicius*, and *Conſtantinus Petrenus*, who among others were ſummon'd to aſſiſt in it, were ſeiz'd by Order of *Andronicus*, and hardly eſcap'd the Fury of the Mob, for deſiring to know *Whether that Council was call'd by the Emperor's Conſent and Approbation*? The unhappy Empreſs was adjudg'd guilty of the Matters alledg'd againſt her; and ſhe, who not long before was one of the greateſt Princes of the Eaſt, and receiv'd a double Obedience from her Subjects, on account of her irreſiſtible Charms and Imperial Power, was now reduc'd to the utmoſt Miſery and Deſpair, deſerted by her Friends, and ſcorn'd even of

her Keepers. In this Condition ſhe lay not long, for *Andronicus*, to compleat his Villany, commanded her ſhortly after to be ſtrangled, and committed the Execution of it to *Pterigionites* the Eunuch, who was already ſtain'd with the Blood of *Mary*, and her Huſband *Manuel*; *Andronicus* his own Son, and *Georgius Auguſtus*, having firſt refus'd ſo ungrateful an Office.

The Empreſs ſtrangled by Andronicus's *Order.*

All this while the Tyrant expreſs'd the tendereſt Love to the young Emperor, whom he took care to have ſolemnly crown'd by the Patriarch, he aſſiſting in Perſon with Tears in his Eyes, the Witneſſes of his inward Joy, as he would have it thought, upon that Occaſion; which made thoſe that obſerv'd him, and were not yet acquainted with his bloody Hypocriſie, to think the young Prince exceeding happy in ſo faithful and loyal a Protector and Counſellor: But having by this time got both the Emperor and Empire in his Power, and remov'd all thoſe whom he judg'd averſe to his Deſigns, he began more openly to declare himſelf. In a Council conſiſting chiefly of his own Favourites, he enlarg'd upon the preſent Dangers of the Empire, threaten'd at once with inteſtine Diviſions and foreign Invaſions, and requir'd their ſpeedy Advice in ſo great an Exigency; they watching their Cue, affirm'd the Empire would be irrecoverably loſt unleſs he was aſſociated to *Alexius*, and by his great Wiſdom and Experience divert the Storm, or teach the State to weather it; after which with one Voice they cry'd out, *Long live* Alexius *and* Andronicus, Roman *Emperors!* Which Acclamation was taken by others employ'd for that Purpoſe, and in a moment communicated through the whole City. The young Emperor himſelf ſeeming outwardly glad of ſo worthy a Companion, and congratulated him for his Advancement; whilſt the crafty Tyrant affected an Averſion to what he had ſo long coveted, and unwillingly ſuffer'd 'em to place him in the Imperial Seat, and adorn him with the Purple; and being, as it was cuſtomary, at his

ANDRONICUS. A. D. 1182.

Corona-

Coronation to partake of the Bleſſed Sacrament, having receiv'd the Bread, and taken the Bleſſed Cup in his Hand, with a Countenance devoutly fram'd, and his Eyes caſt up to Heaven, he ſolemnly ſwore by thoſe dreadful Myſteries that *he had taken upon him the Fellowſhip of the Empire for no other End, but to aſſiſt* Alexius, *his Couſin, in the Government, and ſupport his Authority.* A dreadful Imprecation and proper Introduction to what follow'd ſoon after, for after he had ſpent a few Days in his feign'd Devotions, in the midſt of which he ſecretly reſolv'd upon the Death of *Alexius*, he ſummon'd his Council, who had done ſo many great things for him already, wherein the Inconveniency of many Governors was diſcourſed of at large, and how much a ſingle Dominion was conſiſtent with the Safety of the State, and that the Age of an old Eagle was more valuable than the Youth of a Lark. After which ſeaſonable Preparation, they decreed that *Alexius* ſhould be dethron'd; and as if that was not ſufficient, he was ſhortly after condemn'd to die; which abominable Sentence was accordingly executed by *Stephanus Hagiochriſtophorites*, and ſome others, who entring the unhappy Prince's Chamber by Night, without any Regard had to his Dignity, or Compaſſion for his Youth and Innocency, cruelly ſtrangled him with a Bow-ſtring; and *Andronicus* coming in ſhortly after, ſpurn'd the dead Body with his Foot, branding the Memory of his Father with Perjury, and of his Mother with Whoredom.

who does the ſame by the young Emperor Alexius.

This was the unfortunate End of the young Emperor *Alexius*, who had not liv'd full fifteen Years, nor reign'd three, before he was cropt, like a Flower in the Bloom, by the execrable Hands of Treaſon and Parricide. And now *Andronicus* being Emperor without a Rival, as he poſſeſs'd his Predeceſſor's Dignity, ſo was he reſolv'd to enjoy his intended Bride; for tho' he was no leſs than threeſcore and ten Years of Age, yet he thought himſelf a fit Match for *Ann*, the *French* King's

King's Daughter, whom he marry'd, tho' ſhe was no more than eleven Years old, and had before been betroth'd to *Alexius*.

Finding the People reproach'd him for the Breach of his Oath made to *Manuel* and *Alexius*, he by much Dexterity perſuaded the Biſhops to releaſe and abſolve him from it. For which preſumptuous Abſolution, thoſe very Biſhops, who had thereby exceeded their Commiſſion, were ſhortly after puniſh'd by *Andronicus* himſelf, who contemn'd 'em as Men forgetful of their Duties and Calling.

A. D. 1184. Andronicus *being now ſole Emperor his great Tyranny.*

After this he apply'd himſelf without Intermiſſion to the Eſtabliſhment of his Power, ſparing neither Age, Sex, or Condition, where he conceiv'd he had reaſon to apprehend any Danger; ſo that every Day was diſtinguiſh'd by the Execution of ſome brave Man or other, and Murders were grown ſo common, that they began to be unregarded. Some were depriv'd of their Sight, others hang'd, ſome poiſon'd, and not a few burnt alive: But that which aggravated theſe undeſerved Puniſhments was, that all the while the mercileſs Tyrant would pretend to be ſorry for 'em, and with Tears in his Eyes ſeem to blame the Severity of the Law, which would not ſuffer him to ſhow Mercy to ſo many, whom he thought brave Men. Nor did *Andronicus* rage only againſt ſuch as were near him at *Conſtantinople*, but extended his Cruelty to the remoteſt Provinces of the Empire; ſo that all thoſe who were the leaſt inclinable to the Family of the Emperor *Manuel*, were forc'd to fly as from an enraged Lion, or an irreſiſtible Torrent that bore down all before it. *Iſaac Comnenus*, *Manuel*'s near Kinſman, took Refuge in *Cyprus*, where he turn'd Tyrant himſelf, and is ſaid as much to have exceeded *Andronicus* in all manner of Barbarities, as *Andronicus* out-did the reſt of Mankind. *Alexius Comnenus*, *Manuel*'s own Brother, fled into *Sicily*, where he perſuaded *William*, the King of that Iſland, to declare War againſt *Andronicus*. The

King

King landing at *Dyrrachium* took the City, and march'd from thence without meeting any to oppoſe him, through the Heart of *Macedonia*, having order'd his Fleet to attend him at *Theſſalonica*, whither he led his Army, and won the City, rather through the Cowardice of the Governor, than the Courage of his own Troops. The Outrages the *Sicilians* committed in that Place were unſpeakable, they not only thruſt the Inhabitants out of their Habitations, and depriv'd 'em of their moſt valuable Subſtance, but ſtript 'em naked, expoſing thoſe Parts to publick View which by Nature were deſign'd to be conceal'd; and ſuffer'd 'em to ſtarve in the Streets, whilſt they revell'd in their Houſes, devouring that in a Moment, which the parſimonious Induſtry of many Years had been purchaſing: After which they ſpoil'd all the Country round about, and threaten'd the Imperial City it ſelf. In this Extremity *Andronicus* ſent out ſome in whom he could moſt confide againſt the *Sicilians*, who eaſily defeated the cowardly *Græcians*, and grew more formidable from ſo ineffectual an Oppoſition. This very much weaken'd the Authority of *Andronicus* at home, where the Number of the Malecontents encreas'd proportionable to the Succeſs his Enemies met with abroad, and threw him upon more deſperate Courſes, if poſſible, than any he had recurr'd to before: For now he preſcribed whole Families at once, and ſometimes his own Favourites, who had hitherto been the Executioners of his Tyranny, were carry'd off in the general Deſtruction. Among others appointed to the Slaughter was *Iſaac Angelus*, a Man of great Nobility, who was obnoxious upon no other Account but for the two firſt Letters of his Name, with which the jealous Tyrant was told his began who was to ſucceed him. *Hagiochriſtophorites*, *Andronicus*'s chief Miniſter, went with a ſufficient Force to apprehend him, but *Iſaac* defending himſelf with much Valour ſlew the Villain with his own Hands, and eſcaped through the midſt of the reſt,

The Sicilians Cruelties at Theſſalonica.

reſt, with his Sword bloody, into the great Church, where he took Sanctuary. Hither he was follow'd not only by his Uncle *John Ducas* and his Son *Iſaac*, who had been Sureties to the diſtruſtful Tyrant for his good Behaviour, as he had been for theirs, but by Multitudes of People, who flock'd thither out of all Parts of the City, and ſilently pity'd *Iſaac*, whom they highly eſteem'd for his great Birth, without any Thoughts as yet of farther Favours towards him. Some there were, who reſorted thither, not ſo much to behold *Iſaac*, as for their own Security, apprehending the like Uſage from the implacable *Andronicus*; theſe exclaim'd with great Freedom againſt the Tyrant, and in artful pathetical Speeches appeal'd to the People, *whom they adjured to ſtay, and protect 'em from the Fury of a Monſter, that was become the general Enemy of Mankind.*

Iſaac Angelus taking Sanctuary is declar'd Emperor.

The Hand of Divine Providence appear'd eminently viſible upon this Occaſion; for *Andronicus* happen'd to be abſent at that time from the City, and his bloody Miniſters were too ſecure to apprehend any thing from the neglected Mob; who being thus careſs'd by the Malecontents, and perceiving no one offer'd any thing in Behalf of the Tyrant, or Diſlike of the Tumult, they proceeded from pitying *Iſaac* to curſe *Andronicus*, every Man giving his Tongue a Liberty, which 'till then it durſt never have exerted. A great Part of the People continu'd with *Iſaac* all Night, the reſt retiring not ſo much for their Repoſe, as to prepare their Fellow-Citizens, and create a general Diſlike in the Inhabitants to *Andronicus*.

Early in the Morning *Andronicus*'s Favourites endeavour'd to appeaſe the People, who were ſo far from liſtning to them, or *Andronicus* himſelf, who arriv'd ſhortly after, that at a Signal given, as Men inſpir'd with one Spirit, they flock'd together into the Temple of St. *Sophia*; where having revil'd thoſe who appear'd without Weapons in their Hands and declar'd not with them,

them, they broke open all the Priſons, and releas'd the Priſoners; whereof ſome, who were not of the Dregs of the People, but had been committed by *Andronicus* for ſome trivial Offence, or ill-grounded Suſpicion, ſo effectually animated the Multitude againſt him, that they declar'd him a publick Enemy to the State, and ſaluted *Iſaac* Emperor.

Iſaac being thus advanc'd to the Throne by this enrag'd promiſcuous Aſſembly, refus'd at firſt the Crown, which having been worn by *Conſtantine* the Great hung for a Monument over the Altar, and was now taken down by the Sexton, and preſented to *Iſaac*; whoſe Averſion to it proceeded not from his Want of Ambition, but his Fear of the Dangers that attended it from the Power of *Andronicus*: Which when his Uncle *Ducas* obſerv'd, he deſir'd the People, ſince his Nephew declin'd it, that they would beſtow it on him; but they in a tumultuary manner reply'd, *they would no more yield Obedience to an Old Bald Pate, having already ſuffer'd too much from the hoary Hairs of* Andronicus; whereupon *Iſaac* at length ſuffer'd himſelf to be Crown'd, after which he was conducted by the Rabble to the Palace. ISAACIUS ANGELUS. A. D. 1184.

In the mean time *Andronicus*, who ſaw how far the Fury of the Multitude was like to carry 'em, endeavour'd to appeaſe 'em by an Offer of a Reſignation to his Son *Manuel*; with which when he obſerv'd 'em to be more enrag'd than before, he diveſted himſelf of the Imperial Purple, and eſcap'd with his Wife *Ann* to *Meludium*, a Royal Palace on the Eaſt-ſide of *Propontis*, reſigning all to *Iſaac*, who, by a wonderful Change of Fortune, was advanc'd from the Jaws of Death to the higheſt of Worldly Honours. Being again ſaluted Emperor in the Palace, with the repeated Acclamations of the People, he ſent out ſome in whom he had the greateſt Confidence to ſeize on *Andronicus*, who had embark'd himſelf on board a Ship with a Deſign to fly into *Taurо-Scythia*, but was ſeveral times forc'd back Andronicus *flies*,

back by foul Weather, the Sea, as it were, abhorring ſo monſtrous a Burden. Being thus repuls'd by the Weather, and purſu'd by Divine Vengeance, he was at length apprehended by thoſe who were ſent out in queſt after him, who clapp'd him in Irons, and preſented him to *Iſaac*, as he was buſied in compoſing the Minds of the People, and reforming the diſorder'd City. The Indignities he ſuffer'd from the incens'd Multitude were anſwerable to the Injuries with which he had provok'd 'em; ſome of 'em revil'd him and ſpit in his Face, others pluck'd him by the Noſe, and tore off his Beard, whilſt the Women, whoſe Husbands had been either blinded or murder'd by him, were more outrageous in their Reſentments. Having his Right Hand cut off, he was committed to Priſon, where after he had lain a few Days without either Meat, Drink, or other Comfort, he was ſet on a ſcabbed Camel, having one of his Eyes pluck'd out, and with his Face towards the Tail, was led as it were in Triumph through the *Forum*, his bald Head being all the while bare, and was ſuch a miſerable Spectacle as might have drawn Tears from Cruelty it ſelf; but the relentleſs and incens'd Mob, forgetting the high Character he had lately born, thruſt ſome their Nails into his Head, others threw Filth in his Face, ſome prick'd him in the Sides with Spits, others caſt Stones at him, and all loaded him with their Reproaches and opprobrious Language, no leſs bitter to him than the reſt, all ſtriving among themſelves who ſhould do him the greateſt Villany. In this ſhameful Manner they conducted him to the Theatre, and hang'd him up by the Heels, between two Pillars, where they ſtripp'd him of all his Cloaths, cut off his Privities, and tormented him with Hooks and Harping-Irons for three Days together. All this he ſupported with an invincible Courage, ſometimes crying out, *Lord have Mercy upon me*; at others, *Why do you break a bruiſed Reed?* At length one, more merciful than the reſt, thruſt his Sword in at his Throat

and is apprehended,

Throat up to the Twiſt as he hung, and ſo diſpatch'd him. This was the miſerable End of this infamous Emperor, after he had tyranniz'd two Years, and done as much Miſchief as any of his Predeceſſors in ſo ſhort a Space. He was a Prince of a venerable Aſpect, well built, and of a youthful Countenance even in his old Age; for having from the Beginning led an active abſtemious Life, he had enjoy'd an uninterrupted Series of Health; he never took any Phyſick 'till after his Advancement to the Throne, and then but once by way of Prevention, and that upon the earneſt Sollicitations of his Phyſicians. He is ſaid once in the *Circenſian* Games to have pointed to the two Pillars between which he was hung, and have told *Mannel*, that *he foreſaw a certain* Roman *Emperor would one Day, after having ſuffer'd the greateſt Indignities, be hung up there by his Rebellious Subjects*; to which *Mannel* reply'd, that *the Propheſie, if it was one, did not in the leaſt relate to him*, as it too manifeſtly appear'd afterwards. Had not *Andronicus*, ſaith the *Greek* Annaliſt, too much abandon'd himſelf to Ambition and Cruelty, and polluted the Purple with an Effuſion of Blood, he might have been eſteem'd one of the beſt of the *Comnenian* Race; for he was not quite diveſted of Humanity, but like the Centaure had a Human Countenance, tho' the Parts below were of the Brute. He was Magnificent, and Charitable; he delighted much in Publick Buildings, and, had he liv'd longer, would have added much to the Beauty of the City. That which the ſame Author relates concerning the Image of St. *Paul*, which is ſaid to have wept before his Death, becauſe he always expreſs'd a profound Reſpect for the Writings of that Apoſtle, ſavours more of the Monkiſh Biggotry, than the Sincerity of an Hiſtorian.

and after grievous Torments is murder'd.

Nicet. p. 227.

His Character.

Iſaacius Angelus, being thus advanc'd to the Imperial Throne, at firſt behav'd himſelf with much Lenity and Moderation; he recall'd all ſuch as had been baniſh'd by *Andronicus*, and reſtor'd 'em to their Eſtates,

and

and reliev'd ſuch as were in Want out of the Publick Treaſury. This gain'd him the Good-will of all his Subjects, who looking on this happy Change, as on a fruitful Spring after the Severities of a tedious Winter, flock'd from all Parts to *Conſtantinople*, there to behold a ſecond *Moſes* or *Zorobabel*, and to liſt themſelves in the Service againſt the *Sicilians*, who during the Diſtractions of the late Times had propos'd nothing leſs than the Subjection of the Imperial City it ſelf. *John*, *Andronicus*'s Eldeſt Son, was at that time abſent in the Provinces, where when the News of the late Revolution was arriv'd, the Soldiers ſeiz'd on the unfortunate Prince, and pluck'd out his Eyes, of which Cruelty he dy'd ſhortly after. *Manuel*, his Brother, was in like manner blinded ſhortly after, tho' he had been in no manner conſenting to his Father's Actions, of which no one was more ſenſible than the Emperor *Iſaac* himſelf.

Iſaac *defeats the* Sicilians.

All this while the *Sicilians*, who had not as yet heard of *Andronicus*'s Fate, rov'd up and down at their Pleaſure, deſtroying all before 'em, when *Branas*, the Imperial General, fell ſuddenly upon 'em, and totally overthrew 'em. This Defeat was follow'd by the Surrender of ſuch Cities as had fallen into the Enemy's Hands, and the Deſtruction of the whole *Sicilian* Army. Thoſe who had been diſpers'd abroad in Garriſons, or ſent out upon Parties, fell into the Hands of the Country People, who cut 'em all off. Their Fleet, conſiſting of two hundred Sail, met with no better Fortune, but in their Return home were either deſtroy'd by a Tempeſt, or ſo weaken'd by Sickneſs, that they fell into the Emperor's Hands, whoſe Cruelty to his Priſoners very much ſully'd the Honour of the Victory, which he had obtain'd both by Sea and Land; for he ſuffer'd ſome thouſands to periſh in Priſon for want of Food; and when the King of *Sicily* upbraided him for his Want of Humanity, he contemn'd the Meſſage, and ſeverely check'd thoſe who had the Tenderneſs

derneſs to relieve 'em, tho' with no other Suſtenance than with Bread and Water. This Behaviour was more ſuitable to *Iſaac*'s Temper than his former Moderation and Lenity, as it afterwards appear'd, when his bloody Severities made him compar'd to *Andronicus* himſelf.

Having put an End to the *Sicilian* War, and bought a ſhameful Peace of the *Turks*, who had taken ſeveral Places of great Conſequence from the Empire in the leſſer *Aſia*, and being now a Widower, he thought of marrying again, and made Choice of a Foreigner, the Daughter of *Bela* King of *Hungary*, who was not yet full ten Years of Age. The Nuptials were celebrated by the parſimonious Emperor, who was willing to ſpare his own Purſe, at the Expence of the Provincial Cities, which very much diſoblig'd the Inhabitants, and forc'd thoſe of Mount *Hæmus* into a Rebellion, and conſequently drew a great Charge upon the State.

All this while *Iſaac Comnenus* tyranniz'd in *Cyprus*, nor was he to be reduc'd either by large Promiſes of mighty Rewards made to him by the Emperor, nor the Terror of the Forces he ſaw *Iſaac* arming againſt him, but exercis'd the moſt barbarous Cruelties over the Inhabitants. The Emperor mann'd out a Fleet conſiſting of ſeventy Sail, and choſe *John Contoſtephanus* and *Alexius Comnenus* for his Admirals; the firſt of which being old and infirm, and the other, who was the Emperor's near Kinſman, having loſt his Eyes by *Andronicus*'s Order, tho' otherwiſe a Man of Courage, and of an Age fit for Action, they who wiſh'd well to the State entertain'd melancholy Apprehenſions of their Succeſs. The Fleet ſetting Sail was firſt horribly ſhaken by a Tempeſt, and at length, through the Indiſcretion of the Commanders, loſt entirely to the Enemy; for *Margarites*, a notorious Pirate, watching his Opportunity when all the Forces were order'd a-ſhore to fight the Enemy, who ſeem'd ready to give 'em Battel, ſeiz'd the Ships thus weaken'd and diſarm'd, whilſt

His Forces defeated by the Cypriots.

whilſt the Tyrant fell on the Soldiers that were landed, from whom all Poſſibility of a Retreat was cut off, and obtain'd an eaſie Conqueſt over 'em.

This Misfortune encourag'd others who were not well affected to the Empire to declare themſelves againſt it, eſpecially the *Myſians*, who having been oppreſs'd by the Emperor's unjuſt Exactions, flew out into an open Rebellion; and when they had receiv'd a ſmall Defeat from the Imperialiſts, they drew the *Scythians* into the Quarrel, and having raiſed a formidable Army conſiſting of both Nations, they renew'd their Hoſtilities, and exceedingly haraſs'd the Borders of the Empire. *Iſaac*, who was himſelf naturally ſlothful and unactive, ſent out *John*, his Uncle, againſt 'em; and *John* behav'd himſelf with ſo much Prudence and Conduct, that had he not been recall'd by the unworthy Emperor, who was grown jealous of thoſe that were more deſerving than himſelf, he had in all Probability made an End of the War. *John* was ſucceeded by another *John*, ſirnam'd *Cantacuzenus*, who having marry'd the Emperor's Siſter, had been declar'd *Cæſar*. He was a Man of great Courage and Reſolution, but raſh and inconſiderate, and by his Ill Conduct gave the Enemy frequent Advantages over him; whereupon he was recall'd, and *Branas Alexius* appointed to ſucceed him. *Branas* was one of the greateſt Captains of his Age, but Proud and Ambitious; he had ſerv'd as General before in the *Sicilian* War, but at his Return aſpir'd at the Imperial Dignity, for which notwithſtanding he was pardon'd upon his Submiſſion, and was now again declar'd General againſt the *Myſians*. His Succeſs in this War reviv'd in him his former Pretenſions: For having obtain'd ſome Advantages over the Enemy, he return'd on a ſudden with his moſt intimate Friends and neareſt Relations to *Adrianople*, the Place of his Nativity, where he was declar'd Emperor, and march'd inſtantly towards the Imperial City, preſuming upon the Negligence and Weakneſs of the ſluggiſh

The Myſian *War.*

Branas *uſurps.*

ſluggiſh Emperor, and the Valour and Experience of the *Latins*, who had eſpous'd his Intereſt. Being advanc'd with his Army near the City, he attempted ſeveral Ways to get it into his Hands, but found it as difficult to get an Entrance into it, as 'twas for the Emperor to drive him from before it. The Beſieg'd ſally'd out frequently upon their Enemies, who always drove 'em back not without a conſiderable Loſs on their ſide; ſo that the Uſurper, finding it impoſſible to obtain his Ends by Force, thought it adviſable to try what he could oblige 'em to by Famine, for all the neighbouring Provinces, both on the *Aſiatick* and *Europæan* Side, having declar'd for him, he was able to cut off all Supplies of Proviſions.

In the mean time the Emperor had Recourſe to nothing but his Devotions, 'till he was rous'd by *Conrade*, the Marquis of *Montferrat*, who having been a Penſioner to *Manuel*, the late Emperor, and done him ſignal Services in *Italy*, was now in great Eſteem at *Conſtantinople*. This Man awaken'd the Emperor out of his Religious Lethargy, and ſummon'd him to the Diſcharge of his Imperial Function. He collected all his Forces into one Body, march'd out at the Head of 'em, and preſented *Branas* with Battel. The Diſpute laſted on both Sides with a great Obſtinacy for a conſiderable time, 'till in the end the Emperor's Forces prevail'd, and *Branas* and moſt of his Accomplices were either ſlain or taken Priſoners. The Uſe the Emperor made of this Victory ſhow'd him unworthy of it, for he ſuffer'd his Soldiers to plunder and deſtroy the Poſſeſſions of all ſuch as had revolted to the Uſurper, ſo that all the Buildings in the Suburbs, and upon the *Propontis*, were in a Moment devoured by the Flames; and there was no Villany which the licentious Soldiers did not commit upon that Occaſion with the greateſt Impunity.

This Inſurrection being ſo happily quell'd, the Emperor look'd with a jealous Eye upon the mighty Pre-

Iſaac's Behaviour to the German Emperor.

parations which the renown'd *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperor of *Germany*, was making in the Weſt, deſign'd by him for the Holy-Land, but ſuſpected by the unworthy Prince as directed chiefly againſt him. *Saladin*, the *Turkiſh* Sultan, who had great Reaſon to be terrify'd at the Storm which ſo apparently threaten'd him, had ſo artfully prepar'd *Iſaac*, by the Surrender of ſome Fugitive Traitors, and a Promiſe of reſtoring *Paleſtine* to him, upon Condition that he would obſtruct the Paſſage of the Weſtern Chriſtians, that he equall'd moſt of his Predeceſſors in his Perfidiouſneſs towards 'em. Though he had promis'd to grant *Frederick* free Paſſage through his Territories, and to afford him all manner of Refreſhments and Accommodations for his Army, yet he no ſooner heard of his Arrival upon the Borders, but he ſent his Couſin *Manuel*, the Great Maſter of his Horſe, at the Head of a powerful Army to diſpute the Paſſes with the *Germans*, and to intercept their Proviſions; having ſome time before thrown the Biſhop of *Munſter*, the Earl of *Naſſau*, and Count *Walram*, *Frederick*'s Ambaſſadors, into Priſon, without any Regard had to the Law of Nations, and the high Dignity of their Maſter. The *German* Van-guard, provok'd at *Iſaac*'s Perfidiouſneſs, eaſily forc'd their Way through thoſe who were ſent to oppoſe 'em, and paſſing the Mountains which lead into *Thrace*, the whole Army fell into that Country, where they were ſuffer'd to live at Diſcretion, and to ſeize on the Grain, which they found in great Abundance of all Kinds in the Fields, before the *Greeks* had time to remove it into the fortify'd Towns, according to the Orders they had receiv'd from the Emperor.

Tho' the *Germans* were by this time got into the Heart of *Thrace*, and the *Greeks* had neither Power nor Courage ſufficient to reſtrain 'em, yet did *Iſaac* with an inſupportable Vanity ſend to *Frederick*, to whom he deny'd the Title of Emperor, giving him to under-

ſtand

ſtand that *he knew of but one Emperor, which was himſelf, and that if he would in that Quality acknowledge him as his Lord and Maſter, and give him ſo many Hoſtages as he demanded for his Security, that he would attempt nothing contrary to his Service or Intereſt, but give him a Moiety of whatever he ſhould obtain by Conqueſt from the* Saracens, *then, and upon no other Terms, he was reſolv'd to allow him the Liberty of Paſſage which he deſir'd.*

Whether this was really what *Iſaac* had in ſo inſolent a manner demanded, or the Ambaſſadors had unadviſedly exceeded their Commiſſion, as *Nicetas* our Hiſtorian aſſures us they did, *Frederick* thought fit to conceal his Reſentment 'till he had obtain'd the Releaſe of his Ambaſſadors, and anſwer'd with a diſdainful Smile, that *he truſted too much in the Merits of his Cauſe, and the Courage of thoſe brave Men who attended him, to comply with ſuch diſhonourable Conditions*; that *however, when* Iſaac *had reſtor'd him his Ambaſſadors, whom with ſo much Inhumanity, and Scandal to the Chriſtian Religion, he held in Chains, he ſhould then think himſelf oblig'd to make him ſuch Acknowledgments, as conſiſted with the Honour of God, and of the Empire.* After which he advanc'd, without waiting for an Anſwer, and ſeizing upon all the Places in his Paſſage without any Reſiſtance, he encamp'd on the twenty fifth of *Auguſt* within View of *Philippopolis*, which was ſhortly after quitted by the Inhabitants, who left their Habitations, with a prodigious Plenty of Proviſions, to *Frederick*'s Soldiers. Nicet. p. 257.

This Advantage of the *Germans* highly incens'd *Iſaac* againſt *Manuel*, his General, whom he accus'd of Cowardice, and ſent him expreſs Orders to fight with the Enemy; accordingly he advanc'd within ſix Miles of *Philippopolis*, but was ſo little acquainted with Warlike Affairs, that a Party of *Germans* being abroad to ſcour the Country, and diſcover the Poſture of the Enemy, preſum'd to aſſault his whole Army,

and did it with ſo much Courage and Succeſs, that the degenerate *Greeks* turn'd their Backs, and left a handful of *Germans* Maſters of the Field; who after this found none who had Reſolution enough to oppoſe 'em, but ſeiz'd on *Nicopolis*, *Adrianople*, and all the Cities between the *Egean* and *Euxine* Sea, and enlarg'd their Conqueſts on both Sides to the very Gates of *Conſtantinople*.

Iſaac being by this time ſufficiently puniſh'd for his Perfidy, which had brought him to the laſt Extremities, ſet *Frederick*'s Ambaſſadors at Liberty, and in a ſuppliant manner ſu'd for a Peace, offering to ſupply him with whatever Ships were neceſſary to tranſport him into *Aſia*; deſiring at the ſame time that his Paſſage might be as quick as poſſible, and that he might have Hoſtages deliver'd him for his Security. But *Frederick*, who thought it became him to chaſtiſe the Pride of this feeble but preſumptuous Prince, let him know that he look'd on himſelf to be the Rightful Emperor of the *Romans*, and as ſuch anſwer'd the Ambaſſadors, that *it was the Right of the Conquerors to preſcribe Laws to the Vanquiſh'd, and that it belong'd to him, who had conquer'd* Thrace, *to diſpoſe of it at his Pleaſure*; that *therefore he was reſolv'd to winter there with his whole Army, ſince he by his Perfidiouſneſs had retarded his Voyage 'till it was too late in the Year now to attempt it. He order'd him at his Peril to provide him with a ſufficient Number of Ships againſt* Eaſter; *and ſince he had no reaſon to repoſe any Confidence in his Promiſes, he commanded him to ſend him four and twenty of the Principal Officers and Lords of his Court, and eight hundred Perſons of inferior Quality, as Hoſtages for his good Behaviour; which when he had done, he was ready to give him the Aſſurance of his Oath that he had no Deſigns upon his Empire, as he had perſuaded himſelf vainly to imagine, thereby to gain a tolerable Pretence for his perfidious Dealings, and the Violation of his Faith.*

Iſaac

Iſaac, who had before born it with ſo high a Hand, ſufficiently diſcover'd the Meanneſs of his Soul in this Conjuncture; for he with great readineſs accepted of theſe Diſhonourable Conditions, and without Delay ſent the Ratification, with the Hoſtages, and great Preſents, to the Emperor; who winter'd at *Adrianople*, 'till the Spring approach'd, and then he remov'd to *Callipolis*, in Order to paſs the *Helleſpont*, and upon his Arrival found a greater Number of Ships than he had been promis'd by *Iſaac*, who was glad at any Expence to remove thoſe dangerous, troubleſome, and expenſive Gueſts. *Iſaac is forced to ſubmit to the Germans.*

Iſaac, being thus deliver'd from the *Germans*, buſied himſelf in the Settlement of his Family; his eldeſt Daughter was made a Nun, and his youngeſt marry'd to *Tancred*, the King of *Sicily*'s Son, and his Son *Alexius* (of whom we ſhall have Occaſion to ſay more hereafter) was deſign'd for his Succeſſor, tho' he ſtill promis'd himſelf a Reign of thirty-two Years, notwithſtanding that he was hourly alarm'd by daily Conſpiracies, and frequent Uſurpations.

Among the many Pretenders that claim'd a Right to the Imperial Crown, none prov'd at firſt more dangerous than one, who pretending himſelf to be *Alexius*, the Son of *Manuel*, depos'd by *Andronicus*, but not murder'd, as it was falſly reported, plaid his Part with ſo much Addreſs in the Sultan of *Iconium*'s Court, that, by Leave from the Sultan, he in a ſhort time rais'd an Army conſiſting of eight thouſand Men accuſtom'd to Depredations, with which he ſeiz'd moſt of the Cities ſeated on the *Meander*. The Diſaffection of the People in general to *Iſaac* made this Uſurpation more dangerous, for tho' there were very few but miſtruſted what the Impoſtor had ſo confidently affirm'd, yet all wiſhing it had been ſo, they all ſeem'd to believe it. By this means he gain'd Ground daily, and having defeated ſeveral of the Emperor's Generals, he was thought ſo conſiderable at length, that no leſs a Man than the Em- *Frequent Uſurpations.*

peror's own Brother *Alexius* was judg'd the moſt fit to oppoſe him; and *Alexius*, tho' a Man forward and courageous, durſt not venture a Battel with him, but thought he ſhould do a conſiderable Piece of Service if he could preſerve thoſe Towns firm in their Obedience, who had not yet revolted to him. Thus, in all probability, the War might have been prolong'd, to the apparent Hazard of the Emperor's Dignity, and weakning of the Empire, had not God thought fit to remove the Uſurper by the Hands of a Prieſt, who cut off his Head as he lay faſt aſleep, after he had taken a larger Draught of Wine than uſual.

The Fate of this Uſurper did not deter others from the like Attempts; the Contempt they had entertain'd of the preſent Emperor made 'em bold and aſpiring, and tho' none of 'em obtain'd the Crown they aim'd at, they made it ſit uneaſie on his Head that wore it. At the ſame time the *Scythians*, encourag'd by theſe Domeſtick Commotions, renew'd their Incurſions, and haraſs'd the Borders of the Empire. Againſt theſe *Iſaac* thought fit to undertake an Expedition in Perſon, but prepar'd to return before he had effected any thing conſiderable, and loſt the greateſt Part of his Army in his Retreat, he himſelf eſcaping with much Difficulty. This Diſaſter encourag'd the Barbarians, ſo that they ranſack'd the *Roman* Towns at their Pleaſure, deſtroying the Inhabitants, or leading 'em into Captivity.

The Scythians *prevail againſt the Emperor.*

In the mean time *Iſaac* abandon'd all the Care and Trouble of the Empire, firſt to an old doting Eunuch, call'd *Theodorus Caſtamonita*; and after that to ſome young fantaſtical Boy, ſcarcely paſs'd the Diſcipline of a School, who notwithſtanding govern'd both the Emperor and Empire at Pleaſure, whilſt *Iſaac* delighted in nothing but the luxurious Enjoyment of his Riches, expenſive Buildings, and ridiculous Amuſements; for the Support of which he had Recourſe to all manner of exorbitant Exactions, and abſtain'd not from Sacrilege it ſelf: 'Till he was once more rouz'd by the prevail-

Iſaac *neglects the Affairs of State,*

ing

ing Arms of the *Scythians*, who in a late Engagement near *Adrianople* had defeated both *Alexius Guido*, General of the Eaſtern, and *Batatzes Baſilius*, Commander of the Weſtern Forces, the firſt of which with great Difficulty eſcap'd, and the other, having loſt all his Men, was kill'd upon the Spot. For this Reaſon *Iſaac* order'd new Levies to be made, and having hir'd conſiderable Forces from abroad, march'd at the Head of his Army againſt the Barbarians, reſolving never to return 'till he had ſeverely chaſtis'd 'em for theſe Indignities offer'd the Empire; which however was not ſo much in Danger from the open Attempts of Foreign declar'd Enemies, as he was expos'd to the ſecret Machinations of Domeſtick Traitors.

Alexius Angelus, the Emperor's Brother, had in a particular manner been careſs'd and indulg'd by him from the time of his Advancement; and tho' he had receiv'd frequent Intimations, eſpecially towards the latter end of his Reign, of *Alexius* his treacherous Deſigns, and the Danger he was to apprehend from him, yet he ſeverely reprov'd his friendly Admoniſhers, as Men deſirous to create Diſſentions in his Family, and ſow Diviſions in the State, and at the ſame time repos'd a greater Confidence in *Alexius* than ever; ſo fatally blind are thoſe Men to their own Safety, whom God in his infinite Wiſdom has determin'd to deſtroy.

Being arriv'd at *Cypſella*, a Town near the Frontiers, he there halted, 'till the reſt of his Army could join him. He was now grown into a general Diſlike of the Nobility, ſome juſtly abominating him for his many Cruelties, others for his Negligence in the publick Adminiſtration, and not a few uniting in a Conſpiracy againſt him from the Deſire of a Change, and a Proſpect of the Advantages they promis'd themſelves from it; ſo that *Alexius* found enow among 'em ready to eſpouſe his Intereſt, and combine againſt *Iſaac*. Having concerted all things in ſuch a manner as they judg'd ſafe and convenient, the Conſpirators propos'd to put their A. D. 1194.

Deſign

Design in Execution at this Place. One Day, when the Emperor invited his Brother out a Hunting, *Alexius* pretended an Indisposition, and desir'd to be excus'd, and the unhappy *Isaac*, who mistrusted nothing of what follow'd, prepar'd for the Chace without him; where whilst he was diverting himself, the Conspirators, many of whom were nearly ally'd to the Emperor, forc'd *Alexius*, as it had been agreed among 'em before, to the Imperial Pavillion, and with reiterated Acclamations declar'd him Emperor; in which they were follow'd by the whole Army, and even by *Isaac*'s own Servants and Chief Favourites, who join'd with the Croud, wishing *Alexius* a long and auspicious Reign. *Isaac* at the first Alarm turn'd his Horse, and thought by his Presence to divert that Storm, which having been so long gathering, stood now ready to destroy him; which when he too late observ'd, he committed himself to the Divine Protection, and fled with great Precipitation to *Macra*, where he was overtaken by those his Brother had employ'd to apprehend him; who by vertue of the same Order pluck'd out his Eyes, and threw him into Prison, where he liv'd as it were out of the World, condemn'd to perpetual Darkness by an inhuman ungrateful Brother, whom in his Prosperity he had redeem'd for a great Sum of Mony from the *Turks*, for which he was thus unworthily rewarded in the tenth Year of his Reign, and fortieth of his Age, *An. Dom.* 1194.

and is deposed by his Brother ALEXIUS ANGELUS.

Isaac's *Character.*

If we consider rightly the Character of *Isaac Angelus*, the late Emperor, we shall have no great Reason to wonder at the ready Concurrence of the Army, the Senate, and Clergy, in his Destruction. He was a Man who had little either of Courage or generous Resolution, the want of which was abundantly supply'd with Vanity and Presumption, which made those Vices more expos'd, by which Princes render themselves hated, and become despicable to their Subjects; for he was sottish even to downright Folly, inconstant, cowardly,

ardly, effeminate, voluptuous, fooliſhly prodigal, and moſt infamouſly covetous, making no Difficulty to take any thing that pleas'd his Fancy, robbing even Churches of their Jewels, Plate, and Conſecrated Veſſels, which he us'd without any Scruple at his publick Entertainments. He had no Senſe of Honour, nor Regard to his Word, any further than conſiſted with his own Humour or Intereſt. This made him unhappy in his Government, and unpity'd in his Fall, which introduc'd ſuch a Revolution as *Conſtantinople* had not known before, and which was ſhortly after follow'd by the Diſſolution of the Empire.

Alexius, being thus with the general Conſent of the People acknowledg'd Emperor, ſent to acquaint his Wife and Relations, whom he had left behind in the City, with his Advancement: At the ſame time he endeavour'd to reward thoſe who had appear'd moſt forward in his Promotion, and by ſeveral Popular Acts labour'd to confirm the People in their Obedience to that Government, to which they had ſo voluntarily ſubmitted. His publick Reception into the City was attended with many Omens, which ſeem'd to declare the Divine Diſpleaſure, and to denounce the Calamities which afterwards befel the Empire. As he was going to mount an *Arabian* Horſe, which belong'd formerly to his Brother, and was now adorn'd with the Imperial Trappings, as the Solemnity requir'd, the Beaſt diſdaining the Burden rear'd himſelf on his hind Feet, and gave the aſtoniſh'd Beholders evident Signs of his Indignation. When the Aſſiſtants had with much Addreſs mollify'd him, and the new Emperor was mounted, the angry Steed grew more enrag'd than before, as if he had been ignorantly betray'd into that Compliance, and would never be pacify'd 'till he had thrown the unworthy Rider upon the Ground. This, and other Accidents, gave ſome of the moſt Curious an Occaſion of reflecting upon the late Tranſactions, and preſented 'em with a melancholy Proſpect of what was to come. Nicet. p. 294.

Not-

Notwithstanding this the unworthy Emperor polluted the Throne with the same Vices, for which he pretended to have remov'd his Brother. Instead of chastizing the *Mysians*, who continu'd their Depredations, or arming against the *Turks*, who since the Death of the Emperor *Manuel* had taken several strong Towns in the lesser *Asia*, and great Part of *Phrygia* from the Empire, he abandon'd himself to Riot and Luxury, and the Gratification of his sensual Appetites, squandring away with both Hands his Predecessors Treasure, never considering how much he should want it hereafter, and how difficult, if not impossible, it would be to recover it. And as if one Tyrant was not sufficient to afflict a dejected State, he was marry'd to another who equall'd him in all his Extravagances, and in many exceeded him: Her Name was *Euphrosyne*, a Woman of a voluble Tongue and ready Mind, but withal ambitious, immodest, and prodigally luxurious, who imitating her Husband in all his Arbitrary Proceedings, acted with an uncontroul'd Authority, and presum'd sometimes to contradict and rescind what the Emperor himself had ordain'd.

Alexius is as bad as his Brother.

These dissolute Proceedings in the Court gave Encouragement to several Impostors, with which those Times were pregnant, who being countenanc'd and supported secretly by the *Turks*, brought great Calamities upon the Empire; at the same time that the restless implacable *Mysians* continu'd their Hostilities, and destroy'd whole Legions at once, growing arrogant from their frequent Advantages, and entertaining a thorough Contempt of the *Roman* Emperor: Notwithstanding which he had once an Opportunity offer'd him of reducing the whole Country, whilst the *Mysians* were at Variance among themselves, which he either totally neglected, or manag'd with so much Indiscretion, as gave the World Reason to think he had no Sense of the Trust repos'd in him, but that he govern'd for his own sake, and not for the Safety and

Honour

Honour of the Empire, whoſe Fate was unavoidable, and its Deſtruction nigh at hand.

This proceeded in a great Meaſure from the Averſion *Alexius* had to Publick Affairs, and the great Confidence he put in his Favourites, who govern'd all with a mercenary Hand, and made the higheſt Employments of the Empire venal; ſo little regarding the Birth or Abilities of thoſe they preferr'd, that even *Syrians* and *Scythians* enjoy'd Poſts of the greateſt Honour and Profit: So that the Barbarians prevail'd on every ſide, the Emperor being unable to reſiſt 'em when aſſaulted, or manage thoſe Diviſions which often happen'd between 'em to his Advantage. *His Averſion to Publick Affairs fatal to the Empire.*

Thus for ſeven Years together did the State ſuffer under this unhappy Prince's Adminiſtration, 'till the Divine Vengeance at length overtook him, and ſtripp'd him of thoſe Honours he had ſo long uſurp'd, and of which he was ſo highly undeſerving. Tho' at firſt he had us'd his Brother *Iſaac* with the greateſt Barbarity, and having pluck'd out his Eyes caus'd him to be lock'd up in Irons with his young Son *Alexius*, a Prince of about twelve Years of Age, yet by degrees growing fatally ſecure, he began to pity thoſe he had ſtripp'd of the Imperial Ornaments, and ſuffering his Brother to live in an handſome Palace without the City, he receiv'd the young *Alexius* into the Court, where he attended upon his Perſon, and ſhar'd with him in all his Diverſions. A. D. 1202.

However the two injur'd Princes either thought themſelves too highly affronted ever to forgive the Offender, or perceiving how odious the Uſurper render'd himſelf every Day to the People, and into what Calamities he plung'd the State, began to reflect on the Dignity they had loſt, and to conſider how they might recover their former Honours. *Iſaac*, having the Liberty to admit all ſuch as came to viſit him, treated ſo ſecretly with the *Latins*, that by their means he found a way of correſponding with his Daughter *Irene*, at that time the Wife

Wife of *Philip* the *German* Emperor, who promis'd to diſpoſe the Spirit of her Husband to undertake the Protection of the two unfortunate Princes. Whilſt this was in Agitation, the young *Alexius*, who was at Liberty to go where he pleas'd, withdrew ſecretly, and got aboard a Ship belonging to a Merchant of *Piſa*, who undertook to carry him off. The thing was manag'd with ſo much Cunning, that when the Guards the Tyrant upon the News of his Eſcape had ſent to ſearch all the Veſſels, came on Board the *Piſan*, riding then at the Mouth of the *Helleſpont* ready to ſail, and ſearch'd her with more Exactneſs than all the reſt, the Prince diſguis'd like an *Italian* Sailor boldly receiv'd 'em upon the Deck, and undertook himſelf to be their Conductor, leading 'em into the moſt ſecret Places of the Ship, and thus by not being hid eſcap'd the Danger of being found; ſo that the Ship being thereupon diſcharg'd, the Prince landed ſafe in *Sicily*; where having for ſome time conferr'd with his Siſter, he proceeded from thence to *Rome*, to ſollicit the Aſſiſtance of Pope *Innocent*; and from thence he paſs'd with his Retinue by Land into *Germany*. *Philip*, who had an entire Affection for *Irene* the Empreſs, *Alexius* his Siſter, was ſenſibly touch'd with the Misfortunes of his Family, but being at that time oblig'd to diſpute the Empire with *Otho* his Competitor, he had too great Affairs upon his Hands already to attempt the Reſtitution of the Prince himſelf, and therefore advis'd him to engage the *French* and *Venetians* to aſſiſt him, who had then a great Army on Foot in *Dalmatia* for the Conqueſt of the Holy-Land, and to whom it behov'd him to make ſuch advantageous Offers, as would encourage 'em to comply both out of Intereſt, Honour, and the publick Good of Chriſtendom. To this the Prince readily conſented, and agreed to ſuch Terms, upon Condition they would reſtore him, as had he then rightly conſider'd he would have found difficult, if not impoſſible to perform. Having in this manner con-

concerted his Matters with *Philip*, he apply'd himſelf to the Princes by his Ambaſſadors, who had Orders to omit nothing that might oblige the Republick and the *French* to conclude the Treaty: Being admitted to Audience, they told 'em, *They were not come to retard their glorious Enterpriſe for the Conqueſt of the Holy-Land, but to preſent 'em with a Way ſafe, eaſie, and abſolutely neceſſary for the Accompliſhment of it. That whereas they at firſt deſign'd to carry their Arms into* Egypt, *and by that Way to enter into* Paleſtine, *they requeſted they would rather employ thoſe Arms in the Recovery of* Conſtantinople *to the lawful Heir, by which Means they would render themſelves Maſters of it; the Omiſſion of which had heretofore caus'd the Loſs of two ſuch flouriſhing Armies, as might otherwiſe have eaſily triumph'd over all the Eaſt, that great City being the very Key of* Europe *and* Aſia. They repreſented to 'em, *the little Truſt was to be repos'd in the Uſurper, who had barbarouſly affronted both the Emperor and the King of* France; they aſſur'd 'em *of his Cowardice and Inactivity, and how readily his Subjects would renounce their Allegiance to him, when once they beheld the young Prince, whom they ador'd, at the Head of ſo flouriſhing an Army.* They concluded *by engaging for the Prince, that as ſoon as they had eſtabliſh'd him upon the Imperial Throne of* Conſtantinople, *he ſhould pay 'em two hundred thouſand Marks in Silver towards the Expences of the War, maintain ten thouſand Men a whole Year at his own Charges to aſſiſt 'em in the Conqueſt of* Egypt, *and to pay, during his Life, five hundred Knights well arm'd for the Preſervation of the Conqueſts which they ſhould make in the Holy-Land.*

Alexius, *the Son of* Iſaac *engages the* Latins *to reſtore him.*

After ſome Diſputes among the Princes, which were manag'd a while with great Heat, the Major Part inclin'd to theſe Propoſitions, being principally induc'd to it by *Henry Dandolo*, Doge of *Venice*, who being now above fourſcore Years old, tho' neither decrepid in Body nor decay'd in Mind, his great Age render'd him

Henry Dandolo, *Doge of* Venice.

him ſtill more Auguſt and Venerable. He was a great Captain, valiant Soldier, and able Politician, which, beſides his great Thirſt of Glory, which he retain'd even in thoſe Years, made him more ſenſible of the Advantages that would ariſe to the Cruſade from the Agreement propos'd by *Alexius* his Ambaſſadors. Beſides this, he had for a long time cheriſh'd an invincible Hatred to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors, for when about fifty Years before he was employ'd by the Republick as their Ambaſſador at *Conſtantinople*, where he generouſly ſuſtain'd his Character, and boldly maintain'd the Intereſt of his Country, the perfidious Emperor *Manuel*, not accuſtom'd to ſuch an honeſt Freedom, caus'd a red hot Plate of Iron to be held before his Eyes, with which his Sight was not wholly loſt, tho' it mightily impair'd it; the Senſe of which barbarous Outrage, and Violation of the Law of Nations, liv'd in his Memory 'till his dying Day.

The Articles of the Treaty being ratify'd by mutual Oaths on each ſide, Part of the Army embark'd and ſet Sail for *Corfu*, where the whole Navy was appointed to rendezvous, whilſt the Doge and the Marquis of *Montferrat*, who had been choſen Head of the Cruſade, and had the Honour to be ally'd to the young *Alexius*, ſtaid behind in Expectation of that Prince's Arrival, who came in a few Days after very magnificently attended. The Marquis and *Dandolo* having done him all the Honours imaginable, and proteſted they would ſacrifice all for his Service, the Fleet weigh'd Anchor, and for a happy Beginning of the War, as they came before *Dyrrachium*, the Inhabitants being inform'd that the young Prince was on board that Fleet, they preſented him with the Keys of the Place, and ſwore an inviolable Fidelity to him. Encourag'd by this happy Preſage, they continu'd their Courſe a few Days after, and join'd the other Part of the Army, which was already landed upon the Iſland of *Corfu*, where they were ſupply'd with all manner of Neceſſaries for their Refreſh-

Refreſhment, and the young *Alexius*, at his Arrival, was met by the reſt of the Princes, and conducted in a triumphant Manner to the Camp.

Here they continu'd 'till *Whitſon*-Eve, to allay ſome Diſputes that had prevail'd in the Army; after which they embark'd, and having coaſted all *Morea* and *Achaia*, the Fleet came to an Anchor in the *Negropont*; the next Place they anchor'd at was St. *Stephen*'s Port upon the Bank of the *Propontis*, from whence the Wind and Current carry'd 'em Eaſtward along by the Coaſts of the City, whoſe Walls were crouded with the Emperor's Soldiers, and who from thence beheld one of the faireſt and yet moſt terrible Sights in the World, three hundred Veſſels in Order of Battel, with their Standards flying upon their Poops, their Enſigns diſplay'd, and their Flags and Pendants wantoning in the Wind; in which Condition that gallant formidable Navy, bearing with full Sails before the Wind, was carry'd to the Port of *Chalcedon*, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, where the Army made an immediate Deſcent, and march'd by Land in Order of Battel along the *Boſphorus*, whilſt the Fleet was conducted to *Scrutari* or *Chryſopolis*, oppoſite likewiſe to the Imperial City.

The Latins Fleet before Conſtantinople.

In the mean time *Alexius*, the *Roman* Emperor, as the *Greek* Writers ſtill term'd their Princes, tho' he had receiv'd timely Intimation of the great Preparations the *Latins* were forming againſt him, and that they had undertaken to ſettle the young *Alexius* in the Throne, had taken no Care for his own Defence and that of the State, but drowning himſelf in his ſenſual Pleaſures, would ſometimes, in the Jollity of his Entertainments and Heat of Wine, tell his debauch'd Companions, that *a Party of his Guards ſhould go and bring that Handful of Madmen bound faſt in Irons, who being weary of their Lives were come ſo far to receive the Honour of dying by his Commands.* Nor did he recover out of this profound Stupidity, 'till he under-

Alexius his ſenſeleſs Security.

ſtood that the Confederate Army, after the Reduction of *Dyrrachium*, had aſſur'd themſelves of *Corfu*, and then indeed he was perſuaded to give neceſſary Orders for the Defence of *Conſtantinople*, ſummoning all the Soldiers that were quarter'd in the adjacent Parts to march thither. He was able to man out no more than twenty Gallies to guard the Chain, which was drawn from a Tower near *Galata*, and being faſten'd to the *Acropolis* lock'd up the Entrance into the Haven; the Arſenal having been ſo impoveriſh'd by *Michael Stryphnus* his Admiral, who had marry'd his Wife's Siſter, and had ſold the Sails, Cordage, and Anchors, and exchang'd even the Bolts and Iron Nails of his Navy for Gold.

After he had in this manner provided for the Defence of *Conſtantinople*, he drew out his Army, and encamp'd upon the Banks of the *Boſphorus* oppoſite to the Confederates, whoſe Numbers were far inferior to his, who notwithſtanding paſs'd over the *Boſphorus* ſhortly after in admirable Order, and landed in ſight of that great Army, who at firſt pretended to oppoſe 'em with their Arrows and Croſs-bows; but when they ſaw the *French*, without waiting 'till their Horſes were landed, march directly towards 'em with their Swords in their Hands, they fled ſo ſwift away, that nothing but their own Fears was able to overtake 'em.

A. D. 1203. Conſtantinople *Beſieg'd.*

The *French*, being thus happily landed, lodg'd that Night in the *Jews* Quarter upon the *Boſphorus*, and the next Day aſſaulted the Caſtle of *Galata*, which they took after a great Slaughter, at the ſame time that the *Venetians*, being favour'd by an Eaſterly Wind, which bore their Ships up to the Chain, cut it in two with prodigious Sciſſors of Steel, which were open'd and ſhut with an Engine, by which means the whole Fleet enter'd the Port, and all the *Greek* Veſſels were either taken, diſabled, or ſunk. After this they prepar'd to attack the Town in two Places, one by Sea on the Port-ſide, which the *Venetians* undertook, and the other by

by Land, which was committed to the *French*. Having batter'd the Walls for ten Days together, they at length reſolv'd to give a general Aſſault both by Sea and Land, which they did on the ſeventeenth of *July* by Break of Day, at which time the whole Army fell on with all the Courage and Reſolution imaginable. The *Greeks*, being aſſiſted both by their Number, and the Advantage of the Place, defended themſelves at firſt with great Succeſs, 'till *Dandolo* did an Action which has eterniz'd his Memory to all Poſterity, and left him the Reputation of having been one of the greateſt Men in the World: For aged as he was, tranſported with a valiant Impatience, he poſted himſelf on the Forepart of the Admiral Gally with his Sword drawn, and the great Standard of St. *Mark* before him, commanding his Men, upon Peril of their Lives, to uſe their utmoſt Skill and Force to get a-ſhore. This Command, enforc'd with ſo terrible a Menace, was follow'd with ſuch a quick Obedience, that the Gally was in an Inſtant brought to the Shore, and the Doge advanc'd with the Standard to the Walls; by which Example of Heroick Courage he drew all from on board the Fleet after him; for they who were in the other Gallies, fearing they ſhould fall under the Infamy of having abandon'd their General in ſo noble a Danger, row'd with their utmoſt Force, and gain'd the Shore almoſt at the ſame time together, and ran like enraged Lions after their Leader to the Aſſault. The *French* were aſtoniſh'd when they beheld on a ſudden the great Standard of St. *Mark* placed upon one of the Towers, which redoubled their Courage, and animated 'em with freſh Vigour, 'till ſuch time as a terrible Cloud of Duſt, which advanc'd towards 'em, the Sound of Trumpets, the neighing of Horſes, and the Noiſe of an infinite Number of People, oblig'd them to quit the Aſſault, and put themſelves in a Poſture of Defence.

Dandolo's *Bravery.*

For *Alexius* the Emperor, being compell'd by the loud Cries and Murmurs of his People and Soldiers, who

Alexius *ſallying out is repuls'd,*

who openly reproach'd him with his Cowardice, and fearing leſt in the Heat of their Reſentments they ſhould fall upon him and pull him to pieces, had at laſt ſally'd out of the City, with an intent to charge the Army in the Rear, if they continu'd the Aſſault, or give 'em Battel in the open Field if they had the Courage to accept of it; not doubting but he ſhould be able to ſurround 'em and cut 'em in pieces, having above ſixty Battalions of freſh Men ſupported by all his Cavalry, to no more than ſix of theirs, already weary'd with a deſperate Aſſault. As the Princes were drawing up their Troops in the moſt commodious manner to receive him, they receiv'd with an incredible Joy a Reinforcement, which the generous *Dandolo* brought to their Aſſiſtance. *Dandolo* had by this time maſter'd twenty five Towers, part of a hundred built on the Side of the Haven, and hearing now that the Emperor had made a Sally, he caus'd himſelf to be conducted immediately to the Camp, with all the Forces he could rally, to ſuſtain the Shock of the Enemy, who having promis'd themſelves that they ſhould be able to oppreſs the Confederates with Multitude, when they found now they would not be drawn from their Intrenchments, but expected 'em there with a reſolute Courage, they quickly retired into the Town, never daring once to turn Head againſt that Handful of Men, who had the Confidence to follow 'em for ſome time in good Order, diſcharging continually upon their Rear in the open Field, where they might have given 'em Battel.

This ſhameful Retreat was not occaſion'd more by the Cowardice than the Jealouſie of the unworthy *Alexius*, who would not ſuffer his Son-in-Law *Theodorus Laſcaris* to make one in the Sally; for had he commanded, being both a Soldier and Captain, the moſt valiant of his Nation, he would have made better uſe of that infinite Number of Hands, which remain'd wholly unprofitable that Day, by reaſon their Commander had neither

neither Courage nor Skill enough to manage 'em to the beſt Advantage.

Alexius, being thus ſhamefully retir'd into the City, pretended, the better to ſhelter himſelf from the Reproaches of the People, that he had deferr'd the Combat, by reaſon it was late, and that the next Morning he was reſolv'd to attack the Enemies in their Camp, if they had the Courage to expect him; but being purſu'd and terrify'd by his own Conſcience, inſtead of preparing for the Encounter, he ſecretly embark'd himſelf with a few of his Domeſticks, all the Gold, Silver, and the Imperial Ornaments, and fled to *Zagora*, anciently call'd *Debeltus*, a City of *Thrace*, ſtanding at the Foot of Mount *Hæmus*, where, by reaſon of his Guilt, his Cowardice, and the Contempt into which he was fallen, having Cauſe to fear ſome great Revolution in his Fortune, he had beforehand aſſur'd himſelf of a Retreat. *and flies.*

The People had no ſooner diſcover'd the Flight of the Uſurper, but deteſting his infamous Cowardice, and fearing leſt the *Latins* ſhould in ſo favourable a Conjuncture aſſault the City a ſecond time, and take it by Force, ran to the Priſon, where the Tyrant, after the young *Alexius* his Eſcape, had caus'd *Iſaac* to be detain'd, and knock'd off the Manacles of the poor Prince, who had been ſo barbarouſly treated by his own Brother, and having placed him on the Imperial Throne, from which, about eight Years before, he had been ſo violently driven, they ſent Deputies to the Princes, to give them an Account of the Flight of the Uſurper, and the Re-eſtabliſhment of the Emperor *Iſaac*, and to invite the young Prince to ſhare the Empire with his Father. The Princes were agreeably ſurpriz'd at ſo unexpected a Revolution, but being grown from long Experience diſtruſtful of the *Greeks*, they the next Morning, at the Head of their Army, which they had drawn up in Battalia, acquainted the young *Alexius*, that they expected an Aſſurance of the Per- *Iſaac is reſtor'd with his Son Alexius,*

formance of the Treaty, and to have it ratify'd by the Emperor, his Father; whereupon two Lords of *France* and two *Venetian* Noblemen were diſpatch'd to that Prince, who receiv'd 'em with all manner of Honour and Magnificence, and tho' he found the Articles very hard, yet, over-joy'd at his Re-eſtabliſhment, and fearful of loſing his Empire a ſecond time, ſhould he by a Refuſal provoke his Deliverers, he inſtantly ratify'd 'em, and oblig'd himſelf with ſolemn Oaths to an inviolable Performance: After which the young Prince was conducted by the Confederate Lords in great Triumph to *Conſtantinople*, where he was aſſociated with his Father in the Empire, and Crown'd the firſt of *Auguſt*, with all Magnificence and Solemnity, *A. D.* 1203.

who is Crown'd in Conſtantinople.

Among other things that *Alexius* had oblig'd himſelf to perform, he promis'd to renounce the Schiſm of his Anceſtors, and ſubject the *Greek* Church to the See of *Rome*; wherefore, that he might ſatisfie the Princes in ſo important an Article, he writ a handſome Letter to Pope *Innocent*, whom he acknowledg'd to be Chriſt's Vicar upon Earth, and Supream Head of the Univerſal Church; promiſing to render him and his Succeſſors that filial Obedience which was their Due, and to employ all his Power to re-unite the *Greek* Church to the Head. Theſe Letters and Promiſes coſt him nothing, but he found it more difficult to anſwer the other Parts of his Engagement, to pay the Mony he had promis'd, and furniſh the Troops he had oblig'd himſelf to maintain in the Holy-War. Wherefore having laid down a conſiderable Part of the Mony he ow'd 'em, he perſuaded the Princes to ſtay for the reſt, and defer their Departure 'till the next Spring, without which it would be impoſſible for him to furniſh 'em with the Shipping and Troops he had promis'd; for that he was not firmly eſtabliſh'd in his Empire, ſince his Uncle was ſtill in *Thrace*, ſupported by a ſtrong Party who continu'd in their Duty to him, and *Theodorus Laſcaris* had

had a great Body of Troops on the other ſide the *Boſphorus* in *Bithynia*. He therefore deſir'd 'em to perfect the Work they had ſo happily begun, and fix that Throne in Safety, on which they had plac'd him with ſo much Generoſity; promiſing in the mean time plentifully to furniſh 'em with whatever was neceſſary for the Subſiſtance of their Army, and pay the *Venetians* all their Charges in maintaining their Fleet during the War.

To this the Princes readily agreed, and that the Remainder of the Year might be employ'd to the beſt Advantage, they march'd againſt *Alexius*, who had ſeiz'd on *Adrianople*, from whence they drove him, and forc'd him to ſearch for a more ſecure Retreat elſewhere. After which they reduc'd the greateſt Part of *Thrace*, and the Winter approaching they return'd full of Glory to *Conſtantinople*, which had been reduc'd almoſt to Aſhes in their Abſence, by a terrible Conflagration occaſion'd by ſome *Latin* Soldiers, who in a drunken Fit plunder'd the Houſes and a Moſque of the *Saracens*, which the late Emperor had ſcandalouſly allow'd 'em to build in the Imperial City. The *Saracens*, ſupported by the *Greeks*, the ſworn Enemies of the *Latins*, flew upon this ſmall Number of diſorderly Soldiers, and preſs'd 'em ſo hard, that ſome of 'em, more deſperately bruti ſh than the reſt, ſet Fire to a Row of wooden Houſes that ſtood upon the Key the better to favour their Eſcape. It is impoſſible to expreſs the horrible Ravage this dreadful Fire made, for expanding its Flames in an inſtant in thoſe Tinder Buildings, it ran on in a Train like Wildfire from Street to Street, 'till it grew maſterleſs, and conſum'd the moſt ſtately Edifices, the magnificent Palaces, and capacious Store-houſes of that opulent City. *A dreadful Conflagration.*

This horrible Conflagration ſeem'd a certain Preſage of the approaching Ruin of the *Grecian* Empire, which God thought fit to puniſh for their many infamous Treaſons committed againſt the firſt Adventurers in the Holy-War, and to tranſlate it to the *French*, as he did

ſhortly after, and that at a time when it ſeem'd ready to recover part of its ancient Beauty and Vigour. The Manner was as follows.

There was at that time at *Conſtantinople* one of the Illuſtrious Houſe of *Ducas*, whoſe Name was *Alexius*, and commonly call'd *Murtzuphle*, by reaſon his Eye-brows join'd and hung very thick over his Eyes, which was always conſider'd as a Mark of an ill Man; and indeed Hiſtory can hardly afford one who had a blacker Soul, or more ſavage Nature, or who would attempt more abominable Treaſons for the Accompliſhment of his own Ends. Following the Example of the late Uſurper, whom he had ſerv'd againſt *Iſaac*, he thought it no difficult Matter to make himſelf Maſter of the Empire, eſpecially at ſo happy a Conjuncture, when *Iſaac* the old Emperor, who could not endure ſo ſudden and unexpected a Change, was juſt deceas'd, and *Alexius* had render'd himſelf obnoxious to the People by his great Familiarity and Friendſhip ſhown to the *Latins*: He rightly concluded that his firſt Step was by Popularity, to ingratiate himſelf with the diſcontented Multitude; he therefore ſeem'd to lament the hard Condition of the Empire, engag'd by a Boy to a covetous and proud Nation, their implacable Enemies; he ſaid *Alexius had already given 'em the rich Iſland of* Crete, *and oblig'd the* Greek *Church to yield to the See of* Rome, *and was now preparing new Exactions to ſatisfie the inſatiable* Latins.

A. D. 1204. A Remonſtrance of this Nature, urg'd by a Man of *Murtzuphle*'s Quality, had its deſir'd Effect upon the unconſtant *Greeks*, who could not hear the Name of a *Latin* without Grief and Horror, eſteeming them the Cauſe of all their Miſeries, eſpecially of the late Deſolation of their City. When this was done, he, being a Man of a moſt ſupple and ſmooth Converſation, preſently convey'd himſelf into the Eſteem and Affections of *Alexius*, who being weak and unexperienc'd made this Traitor his only Confident. Having thus by a double

double Artifice impos'd both upon the Prince and the People, he firſt perſuaded the miſerable *Alexius*, who acted wholly by his Councils, and eſteem'd him as an Oracle, to diſoblige the Princes; and when they, who were juſtly provok'd at his unhandſome Behaviour, began to puniſh him with Acts of Hoſtility, he then procur'd a Deputation for himſelf to go to the Marquis of *Montferrat*, to whom he promis'd, in Behalf of the deluded Prince, and by his Order, to deliver to him the Palace and Fortreſs of *Blaquerneſs*, as a Pawn of his Fidelity, provided the Princes would forgive what was paſt, and he would come and deliver him from the impatient Populace, who had by this time proclaim'd another Emperor in his room. The Marquis, not doubting the Concurrence of the other Princes, readily accepted the Propoſition; but the Perfidious *Murtzuphle*, immediately upon his Return the Night following, advertis'd the principal Perſons of the City and of the Militia of this Treaty, and by his Agents inſtructed for that purpoſe rais'd a Tumult in the City, which, he ſaid, *Alexius* had ſold to the *Latins*. When he had rais'd the Storm up to the Height he deſir'd, he then ruſh'd at Midnight into the Bed-Chamber, where the unhappy Prince was faſt aſleep, and having awaken'd him, with a trembling Voice and repeated Sighs he told him that all was loſt, that the Commonalty, Nobility, and Gentry, with the Guards, were all ready to fall upon the Palace and cut him in pieces, upon an Intimation that he deſign'd to deliver up the City to the *Latins:* Whereupon the amaz'd Prince, wholly abandoning himſelf to the Conduct of *Murtzuphle*, that perfidious Villain, who preſs'd him to ſave himſelf, threw about him a Morning Gown, carry'd him through many Windings into the remoteſt and moſt obſcure Part of the Palace, from whence ſome of his Inſtruments, plac'd there for that purpoſe, dragg'd him to a loathſom Dungeon, where he liv'd in great Miſery for a few Days, 'till the Tyrant, who had attempted

Murtzuphle *murders the young Emperor, and Uſurps.*

tempted his Life ſeveral times unſucceſsfully by Poiſon, went himſelf to the Priſon, and cruelly ſtrangled him with his own Hands, the better to ſecure to himſelf the Crown, which he immediately Uſurp'd.

For having thus diſpos'd of *Alexius*, he inſtantly preſented himſelf to the People, to whom he gave an Account of what he had done for the Security of their Liberties, and earneſtly exhorted 'em to aſſiſt him in the Preſervation of 'em, and to make Choice of an Emperor who had Courage enough to defend 'em againſt the *Latins*, that were ready to oppreſs and enſlave 'em. Hereupon the Guards, and all thoſe of his Faction, with mighty Acclamations ſaluted him Emperor, in which they were follow'd by the People, who are apt in all Popular Tumults blindly to take thoſe Impreſſions which are firſt given 'em.

When this abominable Paricide was diſcover'd to the Princes, they for the preſent deferr'd the Enterprize of the Holy-Land, and reſolv'd to turn their Arms againſt the Uſurper, as well to revenge the horrible Murder committed upon the Perſon of him they had made Emperor, as to make themſelves Maſters of *Conſtantinople*, a thing the moſt neceſſary for the Conqueſt of the Holy-Land, as had been too evident in all the other Cruſades; ſo that the War began once more both by Sea and Land.

The Tyrant, who had been bred a Soldier, and knew his Safety entirely depended upon a vigorous Defence, fail'd not of giving all neceſſary Orders for it. Notwithſtanding which the Princes, who were not much concern'd at his Preparations, reſolv'd upon a general Aſſault, which they made on the eighth of *April*; and tho', animated by an ardent Deſire which they had, and a certain Hope of taking that Day the richeſt City in the World, the Soldiers did Miracles upon that Occaſion, yet the Number of the Defendants being infinite in Compariſon of the Aſſailants, they were forc'd to retreat about three in the Afternoon, after

Conſtantinople *beſieg'd by the Princes,*

after they had loſt ſeveral brave Men, and a great many Engines of Battery. Notwithſtanding which the ſame Night in a Council of War they reſolv'd upon a ſecond Aſſault, concluding that the *French* ſhould be intermix'd with the *Venetians* both by Sea and Land, that ſo the two Nations might not lay the Blame of a Miſcarriage, if any ſhould happen, upon one another: Upon *Monday* therefore, the twelfth of *April*, they renew'd the Aſſault with greater Vigour, and after many deſperate Attacks and frequent Repulſes, ſome *Frenchmen* planted their Enſigns upon one of the Towers adjoining to a Hill where the Tyrant was poſted, and iſſu'd out his neceſſary Orders for the Defence; which when the reſt beheld, as well they who fought on Shore, as thoſe who were on the Gallies to ſupport 'em, were ſo aſham'd to ſee themſelves behind hand, that ſome of 'em throwing themſelves with Precipitation aſhore, whilſt others planted the Ladders againſt the Walls, they all mounted in Shoals, and killing thoſe who in this horrible Diſorder made any Reſiſtance, they quickly made themſelves Maſters of four other Towers, where they likewiſe planted their victorious Enſigns.

Whilſt this was doing, others, who fought upon the Key, enrag'd to think they ſhould be the laſt in taking *Conſtantinople*, with their Rams broke three of the Gates open, and they who were got into the Town over the Walls open'd ſome others that were between the Towers they had taken, ſo that the whole Army enter'd, and drew up in Order within the Walls, where they continu'd in a Condition regularly to attack any that ſhould be commanded to oppoſe 'em; 'till finding the Tyrant poſted with full ſpeed into the great Palace, which had one Gate upon the *Propontis*, and that the reſt following that Example ran in a dreadful Diſorder through the Streets to gain their Houſes, then the Victors overthrew and kill'd all they could reach in their firſt Fury, as it is uſual in taking a City by Storm, and made

and taken,

made a moſt dreadful Slaughter among thoſe miſerable People.

The Night put a Stop to the Current of this Fury, and the Princes having ſounded a Retreat diſtributed their Men into three Quarters, where they had Orders to fortifie themſelves, not doubting but there was ſtill ſomething more remaining to be done before they gain'd the reſt of the City; but the next Morning they found all their Precautions unneceſſary, for inſtead of being encounter'd with at leaſt an hundred thouſand Enemies, as they expected, they were met with nothing but Proceſſions, which from all Quarters of the City came before 'em, bearing the Croſſes, the Banners, and Images of their Saints, to implore the Clemency of the Victors.

For whilſt the Princes had been diſtributing their Forces, as was before obſerv'd, *Murtzuphle*, following the Example of the Tyrant *Alexius*, as well in this as his Uſurpation, tho' he at firſt threaten'd to attack the Princes in their Quarters, yet he made his Eſcape by Night upon a Ship provided for that purpoſe, taking with him the Empreſs *Euphroſyne*, the old Uſurper's Wife, and her Daughter, the Princeſs *Eudoxia*, with whom he was ſo deſperately in Love, that he choſe rather to loſe his Honour and Dignity than hazard the Loſs of her, whom he was reſolv'd to enjoy, coſt what it would, and for whoſe ſake he abandon'd his lawful Wife.

The Princes, ſurpriz'd to find Suppliants where they expected Enemies, promis'd them their Lives, their Honour, their Liberty, and one Part of their Eſtates, which they knew by the Laws of War belong'd all to the Conquerors; and having commanded 'em to retire to their Houſes, they gave the Soldiers the Plunder of the City for that Day, but with a ſtrict Charge to ſhed no Blood, and to preſerve the Honour of the Women; they alſo commanded 'em to bring all the Spoils into common Repoſitories, to the end a juſt Diſtribution

and plunder'd for a whole Day together.

bution might be made, according to the Merit and Quality of every Perſon.

From hence we may judge of the mighty Riches of this Imperial City; for though the *Greeks* had Time enough, during the Night after the Aſſault, to hide, as they did, their moſt valuable Effects, which they afterwards peaceably enjoy'd; notwithſtanding the Fire muſt needs be ſuppos'd to have conſum'd an infinite deal of Goods and Treaſure, beſides that the Emperors, and moſt eminent Perſons of the Empire, who had made their Eſcape both by Sea and Land, had carry'd with them what was moſt portable and precious; without accounting the Moveables, the Statues, the Pictures, the Jewels, and other Things of mighty Value, and that Part of the Booty which moſt of the Soldiers reſerv'd to themſelves, notwithſtanding all the Prohibitions to the contrary, yet the *French* had diſtributed among them above four hundred thouſand Marks in Silver, after the *Venetians*, who had half of the Spoil, had receiv'd their Share, and a fourth Part of the whole had been reſerv'd for him who ſhould be choſen Emperor; ſo that both the Officers and Soldiers, who were before reduc'd to an extream Neceſſity of all Things, became that Day rich, and in an Inſtant exchang'd their Want for a moſt prodigious Plenty.

Thus the City of *Conſtantinople*, the moſt famous in the Eaſt, the Seat and Glory of the Eaſtern Empire, through the miſerable Diſſention of the *Greeks* for Sovereignty, fell under the Power of the *Latins*, eight hundred ſeventy our Years after the Removal of the Imperial Seat from *Rome* thither by *Conſtantine* the Great; ſeven hundred twenty eight after the Failure of the Weſtern Empire in *Auguſtulus*; four hundred and four after the Re-eſtabliſhment of it by *Charles*, the Great; one hundred and ſix from the firſt Expedition of the Princes for the Recovery of the Holy-Land; the twenty fifth of *Philip Auguſtus*, King

King of *France*; and fifth of *John*, King of *England*; *An. Dom.* 1204.

CHAP. V.

From the Expulsion of the Greek *Emperors out of* Constantinople, *'till their Restoration.*

Containing the Space of Sixty Years.

I. THO' the *Latins* had in this manner expell'd the *Greeks*, and made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*, yet the *Byzantine* Empire was not thereby dissolv'd, but divided; for *Theodorus Lascaris*, having escap'd during the general Confusion to *Adrianople*, fled afterwards into *Bithynia*, where he was joyfully receiv'd by the Inhabitants, not only of that Country, but of *Phrygia*, *Misia*, *Ionia*, and *Lidia*, from the Windings of the River *Maander* Southward to the *Euxine* Sea. At the same time *David* and *Alexius Comneni*, the late Tyrant *Andronicus*'s Grand-Children, seizing on the more Eastern Provinces of *Pontus*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*, founded a new Empire, and fix'd their Imperial Seat at *Trapezus*, or *Trapezond*, where their Posterity flourish'd, and maintain'd the Honour and Majesty of the Empire in an higher Degree than the *Constantinopolitans* themselves; 'till the Time of *David* the last Emperor, in whose Reign it was abolish'd by *Mahomet* the Great, who led the poor Prince Prisoner to *Constantinople*, where he was cruelly murder'd.

But to return to *Constantinople*, where the Princes, after some Debates, proceeded to the Election of a new Emperor; for which Purpose twelve Electors had formerly been nam'd, at the same time that they had resolv'd

reſolv'd to beſiege the City, ſix of which were *Venetians*, and ſix *French*. After ſome Deliberation the Choice fell upon *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, a Prince who had all thoſe admirable Qualities requiſite to an Emperor, which never fail to attract the Eſteem, Veneration, Love and Affections of his Subjects, and who was accordingly Crown'd in the Church of *Sancta Sophia*, with all the Magnificence uſual at the Coronation of the Emperors, and with the Applauſe and Acclamations of the *Latins* and *Greeks*. To him the Princes aſſign'd, with the Imperial City of *Conſtantinople*, all the Country of *Thrace*, and a limited Sovereignty over the reſt; after which they proceeded to a Diviſion and Diſtribution of the other Lands and Provinces of the Empire: *Theſſaly* was erected into a Kingdom, for *Boniface*, Marquis of *Montferrat*; the *Venetians* had the Iſles of the *Archipelago*, great Part of *Peloponneſus*, with many Cities upon the Coaſts of the *Helleſpont* and *Phrygia*, together with the Iſle of *Crete*, or *Candia*, which they purchas'd from the Marquis of *Montferrat*, to whom it had been given by the young *Alexius*. Liberal Shares were allotted to the other Adventurers, proportionable to the Charges they had been at in the Expedition.

Baldwin, *Earl of* Flanders, *choſen Emperor of* Conſtantinople *by the Princes.*

A. D. 1206.

This mighty Alteration in the *Conſtantinoplitan* Empire, was attended with ſuch Conſequences as uſually accompany all violent Mutations. The *Greeks*, who bore with Impatience the *Latin* Yoke, took all Opportunities of aſſerting their Liberties; and when *Baldwin*, the new Emperor, had reduc'd all *Thrace* except *Adrianople*, thither the better ſort of the diſcontented *Greeks* fled as to a Sanctuary and Refuge, from the prevailing Power of the *Latins*. On the other ſide *Baldwin*, who knew of what Conſequence a Place ſo conſiderable as that was would be to him, thought it proper to reduce it whilſt his Friends were near to aſſiſt him, and therefore cloſely beſieg'd it. Thoſe within defended themſelves with a Reſolution hardly to be equall'd, whilſt others

Baldwin *beſieges* Adrianople.

others of their Nation, who had withdrawn into *Bulgaria*, ſollicited *John*, the King of that Country, to relieve 'em; and *John*, being aſſiſted by the *Scythians*, readily embark'd himſelf in their Quarrel. Wherefore marching at the Head of a gallant Army to their Relief, as he approach'd the City he detach'd a Party of *Scythians*, who were well acquainted with a Service of that Nature, to draw the Emperor, if poſſible, out of his Intrenchments, and by a pretended Flight intice him into a Place among Woods and Mountains, where the King had planted himſelf and the reſt of his Army in order to entrap him. This Deſign was attended with the Succeſs deſir'd, the whole Army was overthrown with a great Slaughter, and *Baldwin* himſelf taken Priſoner, by which means the City was reliev'd: But the *Bulgarians*, after this Victory, greedily purſu'd their good Fortune, and with an inhuman Barbarity over-ran all the open Country, laying all the wealthy Cities of *Thrace* waſte and deſolate, except *Adrianople* and *Didymothicum*, which were valiantly defended by the *Greeks* and *Latins* who had eſcap'd this Fury of the Barbarians; ſo dangerous is it for a People, even in the laſt Extremity, to call Foreigners into their Aſſiſtance, who uſually pay themſelves for their Service at the Expence of thoſe they have preſerv'd: As for the unhappy Emperor himſelf, he was ſent bound to *Ternova*, or *Ernoe*, the Capital of *Bulgaria*, where ſhortly after, having his Hands and Feet firſt cut off by the King's Command, he was thrown into a Valley, where he lay in exceſſive Miſery for three Days together, at the End of which he dy'd, and was devour'd by the Wild Beaſts and Birds of Prey.

and is put to a cruel Death.

This was the unhappy End of *Baldwin*, the firſt Emperor of the *Latins* in *Conſtantinople*, whoſe Reign was not more ſhort and troubleſome, than his Death was cruel, and beyond all Imagination terrible. He was a Prince whom the *Greek* Hiſtorian himſelf, who we may imagine was not over partial to his Memory, allows to have

Nicetas.

have been of an exemplary Piety towards God, of admirable Charity and Goodneſs towards his Subjects, eſpecially the poor and miſerable; a great Lover of Juſtice, and ſo nicely Chaſte, that as he never beſtow'd any amorous Glances upon any other Woman but his own Wife, ſo did he forbid, by publick Proclamation twice every Week, thoſe who had in any manner violated the Laws of Chaſtity to continue in his Court. His extraordinary Temperance had ſo well manag'd his Conſtitution, that he was able with great Chearfulneſs to ſupport all the Fatigues of War, and Inconveniences of Life.

In the mean time *Laſcaris* found it no eaſie matter to ſettle and ſecure himſelf in his new Empire at *Nice*; it was long before the People would allow him the Imperial Title, and even after he was declar'd Emperor, he found many of his own Nation who pretended as juſt a Right to that Dignity, and endeavour'd to deprive him of it; tho' none appear'd more dangerous than his own Father-in-Law, the late Uſurper *Alexius*: Who having, ſhortly after the Reduction of *Conſtantinople*, been taken Priſoner by *Boniface*, who ſent him under a ſtrong Guard into *Montferrat*, found Means to eſcape from thence, and paſſing over into *Aſia*, the perfidious Dotard ſtirr'd up the *Turks* againſt the new Emperor, tho' he had marry'd his own Daughter; and the *Turks*, pretending what they did was in Vindication of *Alexius* the rightful Emperor, grievouſly infeſted the Territories of this new Empire, and added ſeveral Places of great Strength to their own Dominions. Whereupon the Emperor march'd at the Head of two thouſand Men, the moſt he was able in that Exigence to raiſe, to the Relief of *Antioch* upon the *Maander*, which ſtanding upon that great River, the Boundary of his Empire, would open a Way for the *Turks* into the Heart of his Dominions, ſhould he ſuffer it to fall into their Hands. In a Battel which was here fought between 'em, *Jathatines*, the Sultan of

Iconium, was ſlain by the Emperor's own Hand, as ſome have written, and *Alexius* was taken and clapp'd up into a Monaſtery, where he had Time to reflect on the Miſeries with which he had involv'd his Country, and to finiſh his Life in Repentance.

Laſcaris, having thus overthrown the *Turks*, concluded a Peace with them, and had Time to ſettle his State, and ſecure his Dominions againſt *Henry*, the Brother of the late Emperor *Baldwin*, and his Succeſſor at *Conſtantinople*. The War was continu'd between 'em with various Succeſs for ſeveral Years, being both Princes of great Courage and Sagacity, as indeed the State of both their Empires ſeem'd at that time particularly to require.

For during the Confuſions which immediately enſu'd the Loſs of *Conſtantinople*, ſeveral Princes of the Imperial Family erected to themſelves independant Principalities, where they exercis'd a Sovereign Power, and treated not only the *Latins*, but the *Greeks* as their Enemies, who would not acknowledge their Subjection; by which means this miſerable Nation, being divided in it ſelf, was the leſs able to oppoſe the *Latins*, who confirm'd themſelves in their Dominion under the Adminiſtration of this Emperor *Henry*, and oblig'd *Laſcaris* at laſt to own their Authority, and conclude a Peace with them.

Nor was *Laſcaris* the only Enemy *Henry* had to contend with during his Reign; for *Michael Angelus*, a Prince nearly related to the late Emperors, having ſeiz'd on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*, of which he declar'd himſelf Deſpot, was ſucceeded by his Brother *Theodorus*, who was a Man of great Deſigns, and impatiently bore the Domination of the *Latins*, with whom he conſtantly warr'd, and took ſeveral Towns from 'em on that ſide, which he added to his own Dominions.

Henry, *the* Latin *Emperor, embaraſs'd in his Affairs.*

This War continu'd during the whole Reign of this Emperor, who was at that time buſy'd with Affairs of the greateſt Importance at home. The *Latins*, having made

made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*, did not only declare *Baldwin* Emperor, but promoted *Thomas Moresini*, a *Venetian*, to the Patriarchate, whose Creation being shortly after authoriz'd by Pope *Innocent*, the *Greek* Church was by that means re-united to the *Latin*; but this was done so much against the Inclination of the *Greek* Ecclesiasticks, that they omitted no Opportunity of declaring how far they were from complying with it; and when *Pelagius* was sent from *Rome* to receive their Submission in the Pope's Name, they oppos'd him so resolutely, that the angry Legate caus'd several of 'em to be clapp'd up in Prison, which threw all *Constantinople* into an Uproar. The Monks in a Remonstrance to *Henry* told him, *That in Things Temporal they had willingly subjected themselves to him, and were ready to obey him; but in Things Spiritual they had a Sovereign Pontiff of their own, who exacted their Obedience, and for that Reason they could not submit themselves to the Bishop of* Rome. *Henry* was naturally of a pacifick Temper, and was unwilling to oppress those whom by his Office he was bound to protect; so that, tho' he had great Veneration for the Pope's Authority, yet he chose rather at present to oppose the Legate, than run the Hazard of a popular Insurrection; wherefore he releas'd such as had been committed, which appeas'd the Tumult, but could not put an end to the Contests and Divisions that continu'd for a long time after.

In the mean time *Lascaris*, having concluded a Peace, as is before observ'd, with the *Latin* Emperor at *Constantinople*, not only fortify'd his chief Cities against the Invasion of his Enemies, as well *Turks* as *Latins*, but endeavour'd to secure himself by such Alliances as he thought would prove most serviceable to the present Face of his Affairs. He had three Daughters by his first Wife *Ann*, one of which he had marry'd to the King of *Hungary*, and *Irene*, who was the Eldest, having bury'd her first Husband *Andronicus Palæologus*,

Lascaris *appoints his Successor,* John Ducas Vatacis.

was now marry'd to *John Ducas*, surnam'd *Batatzes*, or *Vataces*, a Man of great Authority and no less Merit in his Court, whom he design'd for his Successor; for tho' he had a Son by his second Wife, who was an *Armenian* by Birth, yet he being an Infant was judg'd unable to sit at the Helm of State in such Times of Danger, and that when the Empire it self was in its Infancy.

After this we meet with little memorable during the Reign of this Emperor, but we ought not to conclude it 'till we have given the Reader a brief Account of the Fortunes of the *Latin* Princes, that reign'd in his Time in *Constantinople*. To *Baldwin*, the first of those Emperors, succeeded *Henry* of *Heinault*, as has been before observ'd, who maintain'd the Empire with great Glory and Success for ten Years together, and dy'd a Conqueror; after his Death, *Peter* of *Auxerre*, who had marry'd his Sister, and signaliz'd himself upon several extraordinary Occasions, was unanimously chosen to succeed him. This Prince arriving at *Rome* in his Way to *Constantinople*, was solemnly crown'd there together with his Wife, by Pope *Honorius* III. in the Beginning of *April*, *An.* 1217. and having sent his Wife and Children before him by Sea, he enter'd into a Treaty with the *Venetians*, pursuant to which he march'd by the Way of *Thessaly* and *Epirus*, and laid Siege to *Dyrrachium*, which was then in the Possession of *Theodorus Comnenus*, Prince of *Epire*, and in whose Behalf it was vigorously defended by the Garrison that was in it. So that being forc'd to raise the Siege, he came to an Agreement with *Theodorus*, who promis'd him a safe Passage to *Constantinople*, but set suddenly upon him in *Macedonia*, took him and the Principal Officers of his Court Prisoners, and put him to Death in the Year following. The *Greek* Writers, who are partial to their Countrymen, vary from this Account in some Particulars, and tell us that he was slain in an

Peter, *the Latin Emperor, put to Death by* Theodorus Comnenus.

Engage

Engagement, and endeavour by that means to vindicate *Theodorus* from the Treachery imputed to him by the *Latins*, who however seem to have a better Authority for what they have written.

The Affairs of the *Latins* in *Constantinople* became so embaras's'd by the untimely Death of this Prince, that *Philip*, Count of *Namour*, his eldest Son, refus'd the Succession; so that *Robert* of *Courtnay*, his second Son, was in a manner courted to accept of the Imperial Purple, and had the Misfortune to see the Empire miserably dismember'd in his Time, losing whatever his Predecessors had been Masters of on the other side the *Bosphorus* and *Hellespont* to *John Ducas Batatza*, of whom mention has been made already, and who succeeded *Theodorus Lascaris* at *Nice*.

Lascaris had govern'd that Part of the Empire the *Greeks* retain'd in *Asia* with great Success for eighteen Years together, during which he acquitted himself with great Reputation in all those Difficulties which usually attend new States surrounded with potent Enemies. He had frequent and signal Advantages over the *Turks*, the *Latins*, and *Bulgarians*, by which he exceedingly strengthen'd the Empire, which he may in a great measure be said to have founded. This made him universally belov'd by his Subjects, who, in Imitation of their Prince, profited in the School of Adversity, and attempted not only to recover the Dominions of their Ancestors, but to revive their Glory and Military Discipline. Before his Death he took care to leave such a Successor behind him, as might be able to preserve the Reliques of the old *Roman* Empire, by him collected into one Body, and for that reason put by not only his own Son, but his two Brothers, *Alexius* and *Isaac*, therein preferring the publick Weal before his own private Affections, or the aggrandizing of his Family. As he was a Man of many Virtues, so was he subject to some Vices; being fiery and impatient, and most abominably addicted to the Love of Women.

His Liberality and Expences exceeded the Income of his narrow Estate, which made him frequently oppress his Subjects with heavy Taxations; who observing in how higher a degree their Neighbours on every side were harass'd and impoverish'd, submitted chearfully, and oftentimes supply'd him with their voluntary Contributions. He dy'd before he was full forty eight Years of Age, and after he had reign'd about eighteen, in the first of *Robert* Emperor of the *Latins* in *Constantinople*, the tenth of *Frederick* Emperor of *Germany*, and fifth of *Henry* III. King of *England*, *A. D.* 1221.

A. D. 1221. *Lascaris* being dead, *John Ducas* was crown'd by the Hands of *Manuel*, Patriarch of the *Greek* Church at *Nice*: Being a Man of Spirit, slow in resolving, but indefatigable in the Execution of what he had once resolv'd, the Eyes and Expectations of all his Subjects were fix'd upon him; and upon Experience they found, that the Erection of their new Empire was owing to the Activity of *Lascaris*, but to support it requir'd the deliberate Care, Prudence and Circumspection of his Successor *Ducas*.

This new Emperor, immediately after his Coronation, began to enquire into the State of his Army, and beheld with Regret the narrow Limits of his Empire, which he prepar'd with great Industry to enlarge; he rais'd new Levies, augmented his Legions, and invited such Officers into his Service as he judg'd would be of use to him. Having no less a Design in view than the Recovery of *Constantinople* it self, and whatever the *Latins* held in *Greece* or *Thrace*, which he knew could not be done without a powerful Navy, he built a great Number of Gallies in the several Ports of *Asia*, and mann'd out a strong Fleet, with which in the Course of his Wars he took in most of the Islands in the *Ægean* Sea, and passing the *Hellespont* he invaded the *Chersonese*, and afterwards pierc'd up even to the Gates of *Constantinople*, to the great Terror of the *Latins*, who gave an unhappy Beginning to the War themselves: For *Alexius* and

John Ducas his Success against the Latins.

and *Iſaac*, the late Emperor's Brothers, offended at the Preference of *John*, withdrew to *Conſtantinople*, where they earneſtly ſollicited Aid from the *Latins* againſt him, whom they conſider'd as no other than an Uſurper. *Robert*, the *Latin* Emperor, readily undertook their Protection, and having rais'd a formidable Army, committed it to their Conduct: In the mean time *John*, who had been inform'd of their Deſigns, prepar'd for their Reception, and engaging with 'em at a Place call'd *Poemanenum*, got the Advantage after a long and bloody Diſpute, cut off the Flower of the Army, and took the two Brethren Priſoners, who ſhortly after loſt their Eyes by his Command. The Loſs of this Victory prov'd a great Stroke to the Affairs of the *Latins* in the Eaſt, as on the other hand it ſerv'd to exhilerate and revive the afflicted *Greeks*, who receiv'd new Courage from this Succeſs, and conſider'd it as a Pledge of their future Proſperities. A. D. 1224.

Aſſan, or *Azen*, the King of *Bulgaria*, who had for ſome time been equally terrible both to the *Latins* and *Greeks*, was ſo touch'd with the Reputation of this Prince's Exploits, that he made a voluntary Offer of his Daughter *Helena* in Marriage to *Theodore*, the Emperor's Son, which was readily embrac'd by *John*; for he knew of what Conſequence the Alliance of ſo powerful a Prince would be, who otherwiſe was able effectually to ſtop him in the Courſe of his Victories, and aſſiſt his Enemies againſt him; ſo that the Matter was quickly concluded, and the Nuptials celebrated with great Solemnity, tho' neither the Bride or Bridegroom were at that time much above ten Years of Age, *He marries his Son to the King of* Bulgaria's *Daughter.*

This advantageous Alliance was no ſooner eſtabliſh'd, but the Sultan of *Iconium* ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Nice*, to confirm and prolong the Truce between the two Crowns. The Sultan was at this time grievouſly ſtraiten'd by the *Tartars*, who having driven the *Turks* out of *Perſia*, and the more Eaſtern Provinces, began now to preſs hard upon 'em in the leſſer *Aſia*; and the Sul- *and concludes a Peace with the* Turks.

tan fearing leſt he ſhould be Aſſaulted by the *Greeks* at a time when all his Forces were oppos'd to ſo potent an Enemy, earneſtly courted the Emperor to a Peace; to which *John*, upon weighty Conſiderations, readily inclin'd: For he not only knew how difficult it would be for him to contend with the *Turks* in *Aſia*, at the ſame time that he was engag'd with the *Latins* in *Europe*, but he was alſo willing to preſerve the former, as a Barrier to his Dominions, againſt the more prevailing Power of the *Tartars*.

Theodore, Prince of Epire, *preſſes hard upon the* Latins.

About this Time, whilſt the Emperor *John Ducas* diſtreſs'd the *Latins* on one ſide, *Theodorus Comnenus*, Prince or Deſpot of *Epire*, preſs'd 'em with equal Vigour and Succeſs on the other. He took from 'em all *Theſſaly*, and *Thrace*, and ſo far enlarg'd his Dominions, that diſdaining a more moderate Title, he aſſum'd that of Emperor, and was crown'd by the Hands of *Demetrius*, Arch-Biſhop of *Bulgaria*, with which both the Pope and the *Greek* Patriarch were highly offended, whilſt *Vataces* rather ſilently permitted, than approv'd or condemn'd what had been done. But *Theodorus* his Succeſs had tranſported him beyond all Prudence and Moderation, and render'd him ſo arrogant and preſumptuous, that tho' he had lately concluded a perpetual Peace with *John*, the Son of *Azen*, King of *Bulgaria*, and marry'd his Brother *Manuel* to that Prince's Daughter, yet this reſtleſs, haughty, imperious Spirit, impatient of Reſtraint, broke through all, and in Defiance of the Peace lately confirm'd, declar'd War againſt *John*, whom he conſider'd as a petty Prince, unable to oppoſe ſo renown'd a Conqueror. Having rais'd a powerful Army, conſiſting of *Latins* as well as *Greeks*, he enter'd *Bulgaria*, where he receiv'd an entire Defeat, loſt the moſt experienc'd Officers of his Army, and was himſelf taken Priſoner by the Conqueror, who order'd him to be blinded, as a juſt Reward for his Perfidiouſneſs and Ambition.

but is overthrown and blinded by the Bulgarians.

By

By this time the Emperor *John Vataces* had ſo effectually weaken'd the *Latins*, during the Reign of their unactive Prince *Robert*, that they were glad to ſue for a Peace, which upon advantageous Conditions was granted 'em; and the Subjects of the Empire being now deliver'd from a long and bloody War, continu'd for ſeveral Years, ſometimes with the *Turks* at others with the Chriſtians, apply'd themſelves with great Induſtry to the fruitful Arts of Peace, in which the Emperor himſelf became a moſt remarkable Example, and earneſtly encourag'd all his Subjects to follow it. He not only ſupply'd his own Houſhold with the Fruits of his Husbandry, but daily reliev'd the Poor, and ſtock'd great Store-houſes with the Overplus. From him this commendable Induſtry deriv'd it ſelf, as from a Fountain to the reſt, ſo that in a few Years every Granery was ſtor'd with Corn, every Cellar fill'd with Wine, and a general Plenty ſhin'd throughout the Land; and this at a time when the *Turks* were pinch'd with a grievous Famine, who therefore had Recourſe to the Emperor's Territories for Proviſions, which they purchas'd at whatever Price the Chriſtians thought fit to demand for 'em; this in a ſhort time fill'd the Countrymens Houſes with the Wealth of the *Turks*, and ſtor'd the Emperor's Coffers with their Treaſure, for they were forc'd in that Extremity to part not only with their Gold and Silver, but their Jewels, and whatever elſe they had of a more precious Value. And it is not a Matter the leaſt remarkable during this Emperor's Reign, that ſo much Mony was collected in a ſhort time by the Sale of Eggs, as ſerv'd to make the Empreſs an Imperial Crown of Gold adorn'd with Oriental Pearl and Jewels of an ineſtimable Value.

The Effects of Peace.

About this time dy'd *Robert*, Emperor of the *Latins* in *Conſtantinople*, after an unfortunate Reign of Seven Years, during which he ſaw his Countrymen weaken'd and diſtreſs'd more than ever they had been before. He dy'd in *Achaia*, as he was returning from *Rome*, where

A. D. 1228. Robert, *the Emperor of* Conſtantinople, *dies.*

where he had been to be Crown'd in a more ſolemn manner by the Pope, as ſome have written; tho' others ſay his Buſineſs there was to complain of a barbarous Outrage committed upon his beautiful Empreſs by a *Burgundian* Lord, to whom ſhe had been contracted formerly, but had deſerted him at the Inſtigation of her Mother, who was charm'd with the Honour of the Imperial Bed: For this Reaſon the incens'd Lover cut off her Noſe and Ears, and threw her ambitious Mother into the Sea. Tho' this Account be true in Subſtance, yet 'tis moſt probable this Barbarity was committed during the Abſence of the Emperor, whoſe Power and Authority, had he been preſent, might have been ſufficient to have protected the unhappy Princeſs from ſo inhuman a Treatment. However it were, the Senſe of it ſtruck ſo deep into his Mind, that it haſten'd his Death, and left the *Burgundian* to triumph unpuniſh'd in his bloody Revenge.

A barbarous Outrage committed upon the Perſon of the Empreſs.

Baldwin II. *ſucceeds.*

Robert being dead, *Baldwin*, the ſecond of that Name, ſucceeded him, being his Son, as moſt the of *Latin* Writers will have it, or rather his Brother, as we learn from more Authentick Accounts. This Prince was, at *Robert*'s Death, no more than eight Years of Age, for which Reaſon 'twas judg'd neceſſary to marry him to ſome Lady, an Alliance with whoſe Family might prove a Support to his tender Years and the declining Empire.

From the time that the *Latins* had driven the *Greeks* out of *Conſtantinople*, an Emulation and Enmity had been preſerv'd between the two Imperial Families at *Nice* and *Trabezond*, which animated 'em to ſo high a degree, that nothing but the common Fear they had of the *Latins* reſtrain'd 'em from open Acts of Hoſtility; ſo that upon this Occaſion *Comnenus*, the Emperor of *Trabezond*, earneſtly deſir'd to marry his Daughter to *Baldwin*, promiſing no leſs than the utter Ruin of *John Vatates* from ſuch an Alliance. This Offer had undoubtedly been embrac'd by thoſe at *Conſtantinople*,

nople, had they not ſtill, upon good Grounds, diſtruſted the Sincerity of the *Greeks*: This Conſideration made 'em reject the Propoſal, and incline to *John de Brienne*, at that time General of the Pope's Armies in the Weſt, whoſe Eldeſt Daughter *Jolante* had been formerly marry'd to *Frederick*, the Weſtern Emperor, who depriv'd him of the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, to which he had been advanc'd in Right of his Wife *Mary*, Daughter of *Iſabella* the former Queen. *John* was at that time, according to the *Greek* Writers, near eighty Years of Age, of an eſtabliſh'd Reputation in Arms, being eſteem'd one of the greateſt Captains in his Time, and an exact Obſerver of his Word. Him the Lords at *Conſtantinople* ſent to deſire of the Pope for their Emperor, aſſuring him that after his Death the Succeſſion ſhould return to *Baldwin*, who was to marry the Princeſs *Mary*, or *Martha*, his Daughter, whom he had by his ſecond Wife *Berengaria*, the Daughter of *Alphonſo* King of *Caſtile*. By this means *John*, whoſe extraordinary Merits had rais'd him firſt to the Royalty from a private State, and at length advanc'd him to the Imperial Dignity, was receiv'd with great Solemnity at *Conſtantinople*: Some ſay he declin'd the Name of Emperor, contenting himſelf with that of *Ceſar*, and Guardian of the Empire; however, ſince he acted with an Imperial Authority, he is by ſome added to the Catalogue of their Emperors.

John de Brienne *Guardian at* Conſtantinople,

Whilſt *John de Brienne* was applying himſelf in ſome meaſure to re-eſtabliſh the Affairs of his miſerable Empire, the *Greek* Emperor, in Conjunction with *John Azen*, King of *Bulgaria*, exceedingly haraſs'd the *Latins*, and having recover'd ſeveral Towns from the *Venetians*, as well as the *French*, they fell with their confederated Forces upon *John*, who behav'd himſelf with a Courage and Magnanimity equal to his former Reputation, but was not attended with his uſual Succeſs. At firſt Fortune ſeem'd to countenance his Labours, for with an handful of Men he overthrew a powerful Army,

Army, which had laid close Siege to *Constantinople* both by Sea and Land; but the continu'd Wars with those two Princes had in time so weaken'd and diminish'd his Forces, that he had no more left than were necessary for the Defence of *Constantinople*, when he was attack'd with two potent Armies on both Sides, which oblig'd him to shut himself up in the Imperial City, and send the young Emperor *Baldwin* to sollicit in Person Assistance from the Pope, and the Princes in the West, which was at this time miserably distracted by different Factions, especially by the *Guelphs* and the *Gibelins*, who laid waste all the Provinces, and, to satiate their Revenge, bury'd one another under the Ruins of their miserable Country.

A. D. 1237. *where he dies.*

This made *Baldwin* meet with many Difficulties in his Negotiation, which he zealously pursu'd in *Rome*, in *France*, and *England*; but *John*, his Father-in-Law, dy'd during these Transactions at *Constantinople*, after he had receiv'd the Satisfaction of seeing his Enemies defeated by the *Venetians*, and when he had govern'd as Administrator of the Empire seven Years, according to some, tho' others make it ten, and some extend it even to twenty. The Loss of this Great Man would without doubt have prov'd fatal to the *Latins* in *Constantinople*, had not some unhappy Divisions interrupted the Friendship that had been confirm'd between *Vataces* and *Azen*, who, in Defiance of all former Oaths and Obligations, cunningly recover'd his Daughter he had marry'd to the Emperor's Son, and confederated himself against him with the *Latins*; which prov'd of ill Consequence to *Vataces* his Affairs, and would in all probability have recover'd from the *Greeks* all they held in *Europe*, and shaken their Empire it self in *Asia*, if some unfortunate Attempts had not alarm'd the Conscience of the unconstant *Azen*, and reconcil'd him to his former Engagements.

Shortly after this, *Azen*, having lost his former Wife, who was an *Hungarian* by Birth, marry'd *Irene*, the Daughter

Daughter of *Theodorus Angelus*, who had formerly uſurp'd the Imperial Honours, and having been overthrown by *Azen*, loſt his Eyes by his Order, as we obſerv'd before, and was now kept in honourable Reſtraint. This unexpected and advantageous Alliance produc'd a wonderful Alteration in his Fortune, for *Azen* not only releas'd him, but aſſiſted him in the Recovery of *Theſſalonica*, and all the adjacent Territories, out of which he drove his Brother *Manuel*, who had govern'd for ſome time with an independent Authority in thoſe Parts. Being by theſe Means in a great meaſure reſtor'd to his former Power, the blind Prince declin'd the Imperial Title himſelf, but conferr'd it on his Son *John*, whom he caus'd to be acknowledg'd and honour'd as Emperor.

The Emperor *John Vataces* beheld theſe Tranſactions with a jealous Eye, but foraſmuch as *Theodorus* was ſupported by the King of *Bulgaria*, who was likewiſe his Allie, he thought he could not at preſent reſent it as he ought, and therefore deferr'd it to a more favourable Opportunity, which ſhortly after was preſented him: For *Azen* dying, left the Kingdom of *Bulgaria* to *Callimanus*, a Son by his former Wife, who being but a Boy was eaſily perſuaded by thoſe of his Court, who were *Vataces* his Penſioners, to renew the Alliance with the Emperor, and to ſit ſtill whilſt he ſaw *Vataces* ſtrip *Theodorus's* Son of thoſe Honours with which his Father had inveſted him. By a wonderful Dexterity he prevail'd with *Theodorus* to abandon his own Son, and having engag'd the *Scythians*, who not long before had piere'd through *Bulgaria* and ſettled themſelves in *Macedon*, to eſpouſe his Quarrel, he paſt over into *Thrace*, where he recover'd ſuch Towns as were in the Poſſeſſion of the Mock-Emperor, and forc'd him to abjure his Title, and be contented with that of Deſpot.

By theſe Means *Vataces* recover'd ſeveral Places of great Conſequence, and enlarg'd his Dominions in thoſe

Parts;

Parts; and the young King of *Bulgaria* dying ſhortly
A.D. after, he extended his Conqueſts yet farther, and grew
1255. almoſt as powerful in *Europe*, as he was in *Aſia*.

The reſt of this active Emperor's Reign was ſpent in the Settlement of his new Conqueſts, and in frequent Expeditions againſt thoſe, who having once own'd his Authority perfidiouſly renounc'd it, and took up Arms againſt him; in which he was attended with his uſual Succeſs, ſeldom or never attempting any thing which he did not effect. At length, being full of Years, as well as Honours, he paid the laſt Debt to Nature, after a glorious Reign of thirty three Years, and when he had liv'd upwards of ſixty, leaving the Character of a great Soldier, a vigilant Prince, and conſummate Stateſman, behind him, as appears by his frequent Victories and ſucceſsful Negotiations. 'Tis obſervable of him, that in the Beginning of his Reign he was affable, and eaſie of Acceſs; but having been once alarm'd by a Conſpiracy form'd againſt him, he grew more difficult and reſerv'd, to which he was inſtigated by *Irene* the Empreſs, a Woman of a Temper manly and imperious. Tho' he was an indulgent Maſter, yet was he more liberal to Strangers and Ambaſſadors than his own Subjects and Servants, as deſiring to be renown'd for his Magnificence abroad rather than at home. After the Death of *Irene*, who dy'd ſeveral Years before him, he marry'd *Ann*, the King of *Sicily*'s Siſter, who had in her Service a Lady of an uncommon Beauty, call'd *Marceſina*, with whoſe Love the Emperor grew ſo much enſnar'd that ſhe became abſolute in his Affections. Whilſt he was in the Poſſeſſion of this Dotage, the fair Favourite reign'd with almoſt an unlimitted Authority, equalling the Empreſs in State and Magnificence, and by far exceeding her in her Followers and Attendants; 'till ſtraining her Power too far, the aged Emperor at length became aſham'd of his Folly, and his Miſtreſs fell into Diſgrace. *Vatazes* dy'd in the twenty eighth Year of *Baldwin* II. the twentieth

Vatazes dies.

His Character.

twentieth of *Lewis* IX. King of *France*, and thirty eighth of *Henry* III. King of *England*, *A. D.* 1255.

THEODORUS LASCARIS II.

John Ducas Vataces being dead, his Son *Theodorus Laſcaris*, who was about thirty three Years of Age, ſucceeded him in the Empire. The Beginning of this Prince's Reign was remarkable for the Treaty renew'd between him and the Sultan of *Iconium*; to which he more readily inclin'd, becauſe he was inform'd that his Brother-in-Law, the King of *Bulgaria*, and *Michael Angelus* the Deſpot, hearing of his Father's Death, had rais'd new Troubles in *Macedonia* and *Thrace*, not without Hope at length of joining what the Emperor held in *Europe* to their own Territories. Whereupon having firſt provided for the Security of his Affairs in *Aſia*, he paſs'd the *Helleſpont* with a powerful Army, and acted with ſo much Courage and Succeſs, that thoſe Princes were glad to accept of a Peace upon his own Terms, and reſtore whatever they had taken from him. Whilſt he lay at *Theſſalonica* he receiv'd Letters from *Nice*, informing him that *Michael Palæologus*, whom he had left for his Lieutenant in *Aſia* during his Abſence, had ſecretly withdrawn to the *Turks*; with which he was the more concern'd, becauſe he knew *Michael* was a Man of great Intereſt and Authority, being deſcended from no leſs than five Imperial Families, and well vers'd in the Arts both of Peace and War.

Michael Palæologus *withdraws to the* Turks.

Whilſt the Emperor was dreading the Conſequences of ſuch a Revolt, he was inform'd that *Michael* had declar'd that what he did proceeded not from any Diſaffection to the Emperor, or Ill-will towards him, but that he had devoted himſelf to a voluntary Exile, to avoid thoſe Dangers with which he was threaten'd by the implacable Malice of his Enemies, who fill'd the Emperor's Ears with odious Complaints againſt him, and render'd him ſuſpected to his Maſter.

Palæologus was receiv'd with an hearty Welcome by the *Turks* at *Iconium*, where he found the Sultan buſy'd in

in his Preparations againſt the *Tartars*, who having driven the *Turks* out of *Perſia*, purſu'd their Fortune, and by their continual Incurſions haraſs'd their Territories in the leſſer *Aſia*, lying now with a formidable Army at *Axara*, a Town not far from *Iconium*. *Palæologus* had the Command of ſuch *Greeks* as had enter'd into the Sultan's Pay, with which he did ſuch Service in the Battel that was fought ſhortly after, that the *Tartars* had been abſolutely defeated, if a *Turkiſh* Officer, who had a principal Command in the Army, and was nearly related to the Sultan, had not revolted in the Heat of the Action, and turn'd the Fortune of the Day. After this the *Tartars* rov'd up and down without Control, plundering and deſtroying all the Provinces belonging to the *Turks*, whilſt no one had the Strength or Courage to oppoſe 'em. In this Extremity the Sultan fled for Aid to *Theodorus* the Emperor, who granted him ſuch Supplies as he could well ſpare; notwithſtanding which the *Tartars* ſtill prevail'd in all Parts, 'till at length they forc'd the *Turks* to accept of a diſhonourable Peace, and become Tributaries to 'em.

The Turks *tributary to the* Tartars.

Palæologus had acquir'd ſo extraordinary a Reputation in theſe Wars, that the Emperor earneſtly deſir'd to recover ſo deſerving a Servant, and by kind and gracious Letters, attended with moſt ſolemn Promiſes for his Security, invited him home. Whereupon *Palæologus*, having firſt taken an Oath of Obedience and Fidelity to the Emperor and his Son, and oblig'd himſelf never to aſpire after the Empire, or encourage any Innovations, return'd with great Joy home, where he was reſtor'd to the Emperor's Favour, and all his former Honours and Employments.

Palæologus *recall'd home.*

Theodorus had great reaſon to exact that Oath from *Palæologus*, whoſe Ambition was almoſt equal to the Intereſt he had in the Empire. The Emperor himſelf declin'd daily in his Health, and his Son was not then ſix Years of Age, which were Temptations ſufficient to

to try the Temper of a Man leſs aſpiring than *Palæologus*, who made it appear ſhortly after how difficult it is for Men to be reſtrain'd by Oaths, tho' never ſo ſolemnly made, when they oppoſe them in their Purſuit to Empire.

The Emperor, perceiving that Death approach'd, recommended the Care of the young Prince his Son, and of the Empire, to his chief Favourite *Muzalo*, and *Arſenius* the Patriarch; exacting at the ſame time an Oath of Fidelity from the Nobility and Principal Officers in his Army. When this was done, he dy'd, full of Prophetick Fears of what follow'd afterwards, when he had reign'd not three Years compleat, according to ſome, or as others will have it, upwards of four. Some time before his Death he took the Monaſtick Habit, diſpos'd great Sums of Mony to the Poor, and ſincerely apply'd himſelf to Acts of Devotion. His Death was uſher'd in by a remarkable Eclipſe of the Sun, which was ſo great that Stars appear'd at Noon-Day. He dy'd in the thirty third of *Lewis* IX. King of *France*, forty third of *Henry* III. King of *England*, *A. D.* 1259.

The Emperor dies.

MICHAEL PALÆOLOGUS.

Man often by his Prudence can foreſee, what it is not in his Power with all his Care to prevent. *Theodorus*, before his Death, made that Proviſion for the Security of his Son and the State, as became a Father and an Emperor, but the Will of God was otherwiſe, and all his Precautions were ineffectual.

Muzalo, one of the young Prince's Guardians, was a Perſon of obſcure Birth, but having been educated in the Court from his Youth with the late Emperor, he was ſo entirely affected to him, that he did nothing without firſt conſulting his faithful Favourite, who was a diligent Obſerver of his Will, a ready Miniſter of his Affairs, and the uncorrupted Partner of all his Secrets. This Man, tho' he worthily deſerv'd the Truſt the Emperor had repos'd in him, was however envy'd by the Nobility, who preſuming upon their high

Muzalo, *Guardian to the young Prince, envy'd by the Nobility,*

high Birth, thought the Care and Tuition of the young Prince belong'd more properly to ſome of Them. This kindled in 'em an irreconcileable Hatred to *Muzalo*, and that was follow'd ſhortly after by an Averſion to the unhappy young Prince himſelf. *Muzalo*, who was a Man of a juſt and ready Apprehenſion, ſoon perceiv'd how diſagreeable he was to the diſcontented Nobility; whom therefore having ſummoned together, he in a ſet Speech repreſented to 'em the great Truſt had been repos'd in him by the late Emperor, how difficult he found the Execution of that Truſt to be, and how ready he was to reſign it to ſuch of them as they ſhould in their Prudence think fit to appoint for the Execution of it. Tho' this was what all of 'em deſir'd, yet none among 'em appearing ready to accept of it, they unanimouſly agreed no one was ſo worthy of that Charge as himſelf, and therefore they reſolv'd it ſhould be continu'd to him. *Muzalo*, who ſincerely deſir'd to retire to a private Life, and withdraw himſelf from the Dangers with which he ſaw he was threaten'd, oppos'd 'em at firſt with great Reſolution; but when all he could ſay or do was to no purpoſe, he then once more receiv'd a ſolemn Oath from 'em, and ſuffer'd himſelf to be confirm'd in his Charge, every one ſwearing to defend and obey the young Emperor to the utmoſt of their Power, and ſupport and protect *Muzalo* in the Tuition of him, and the Adminiſtration of the Empire.

Notwithſtanding all theſe repeated Aſſeverations, they grew in a Moment forgetful of whatever they had ſworn, and reſolv'd upon the Death of him whom they had juſt before declar'd Protector of the Emperor and Empire. The Day appointed for this Sacrifice to their Envy and Diſcontents was that which had been deſign'd for the Obſequies of the late Emperor, at which time the Conſpirators repair'd to the Abby of *Soſandra*, where *Theodorus* was to be interr'd, mixing themſelves among an infinite Multitude of People, who had reſor-

ted

ted thither, as it is uſual at ſuch Solemnities; and in the midſt of the Holy Office, at a Word given, they with their drawn Swords purſu'd *Muzalo*, who, with his two Brothers, *Andronicus* and *Theodorus*, had fled for Refuge to the Altar, where they were moſt inhumanly maſſacred: And tho' the Matrons appointed for Mourners fled away in great Confuſion, yet theſe Butchers forc'd the Monks, who were flying with the reſt, to return and finiſh the Bloody Obſequies. *and is murder'd.*

Muzalo being thus barbarouſly remov'd, *Arſenius* was left ſole Guardian to the young Prince. This Prelate was a Perſon of great Learning and Integrity, but having from his Youth led a retir'd contemplative Life, was a Stranger to State-Affairs, and the Management of an headſtrong ungovernable People; wherefore he call'd thoſe very Perſons to Council, who had complotted the Death of his Collegue, with whom he conſulted what was to be done in that Exigency.

In this Council it manifeſtly appear'd of how much Power *Palæologus* was among 'em; to him they directed all their Diſcourſes, and fix'd their Eyes on him, as a Man the moſt proper, for his Wiſdom and Experience, to be entruſted with the Care of the young Prince, and the Management of the State. The Patriarch had ſome time before made him Pay-maſter of the Army, by vertue of which Truſt he had a mighty Treaſure at Command, and was by that means able to oblige ſuch as he thought would prove the fitteſt for his Purpoſe, and with the firſt Opportunity favour his ambitious Deſigns. He was therefore upon this Occaſion unanimouſly declar'd Protector of the Prince and Empire, and by that means inveſted with ſo large a Power, that he wanted nothing but the Title of Emperor. *Palæologus aſpires,* *and is declar'd Protector.*

This extraordinary good Fortune might have ſatisfy'd any Man of leſs aſpiring Thoughts than *Palæologus*. That the World might ſee how worthy he was of thoſe Honours to which he was advanc'd, by a timely Care he check'd the Inſolence of *Michael Angelus*, De-

ſpot of *Epirus*, who preſuming upon the Diſtractions of the State after the Death of the late Emperor, and being ſupported by the King of *Sicily* and ſome other of his Allies, had enter'd with a powerful Army into *Macedonia* and *Thrace*, burning and deſtroying all before him. *Palæologus* ſent his Brother *John* at the Head of a conſiderable Body of Forces againſt him, who was attended with ſo much Succeſs, that *Michael*, after a great Loſs, was forc'd to retire into his own Territories, leaving the Flower of his Army dead behind him.

The Reputation of this conſiderable Service ſtrengthen'd the Authority of *Palæologus*, who apply'd all to the perfecting his own ambitious Deſigns. He had by this time ſo far prevail'd upon the good Opinion of the People, eſpecially ſome of the moſt powerful among the Nobility and Clergy, that he was with a general Applauſe ſaluted Emperor; and tho' the Patriarch *Arſenius* was in no manner conſenting to what had been done, but threaten'd at firſt to Excommunicate both *Palæologus* and his Adherents, yet was he at length either perſuaded or terrify'd into a Compliance, and having firſt exacted an Oath of Reſignation when the young Emperor ſhould be of Age, he condeſcended to Crown *Michael*, whom he would have the World eſteem as Emperor only in Truſt, and as a Guardian accountable to another, ſo ſoon as he ſhould be in a Capacity of demanding that Account from him.

and crowned Emperor.

A. D. 1260.

Whatever the good Patriarch's Deſigns were, *Palæologus* made it appear, in the Event, that he had other things in View, and that he intended to enjoy that as his own, which *Arſenius* would be thought to have conferr'd upon him only as a Proxy. Being thus ſettled and confirm'd in his new Authority, he apply'd himſelf not only to the Security of his preſent Dominions, but to the Recovery of ſuch others as had formerly belong'd to his Predeceſſors. Among thoſe who had been taken Priſoners by his Brother *John* in *Macedonia*

donia was the Prince of *Peloponneſus* and *Achaia*, who having marry'd *Michael Angelo*'s Daughter, was by vertue of that Alliance drawn into his Quarrel; this Prince was brought Priſoner to *Nice*, immediately after the Coronation of *Palæologus*, and that Emperor would not be prevail'd upon to releaſe him, 'till he had deliver'd up to him *Sparta* and two other Cities of great Conſequence in *Peloponneſus*; all which being eſteem'd very ſerviceable to his future Deſigns, were committed to the Care of his Brother *Conſtantine*, a vigilant and experienc'd Officer, who ſhortly after recover'd ſeveral other Towns from the *Latins*, and by degrees reduc'd the greateſt Part of *Peloponneſus*. When this was done, the Emperor in Perſon paſs'd with a great Army over into *Thrace*, with a deſign to lay Siege to *Conſtantinople* it ſelf; which when he perceiv'd it was a thing too extraordinary to be at that time attempted, he laid Siege to the Caſtle of *Pera*, the Conqueſt of which he knew would prove of dangerous Conſequence to the Town it ſelf. Here he met with ſo vigorous a Reſiſtance, that after he had been ſeveral times repuls'd, he found himſelf oblig'd to retire; but before he return'd home, he took Care ſo effectually to diſpoſe his Soldiers in Garriſon up and down in thoſe Parts, that *Conſtantinople* was in a manner block'd up, and the Inhabitants ſo reſtrain'd by the Incurſions which *Palæologus*'s Soldiers made up to the very Gates of the City, that in a ſhort time they were reduc'd to the greateſt Extremities, being, among other Neceſſities oblig'd to burn ſome of the moſt beautiful Houſes in the City for want of Fewel. *Palæologus*, in the mean time, return'd to *Nice*, where he continu'd forming new Deſigns, 'till *Michael Angelo* rais'd freſh Troubles in the Weſt, and Chance preſented him with an Opportunity of obtaining what with all his Care he had not been able to effect. A. D. 1261.

Alexius Strategopulus *ſent againſt the Deſpot of* Epire.

Palæologus made Choice of *Alexius Strategopulus*, a Man of great Nobility, and who, for his extraordinary Services, had been dignify'd with the Title of *Ceſar*, to command againſt the Deſpot, ſending with him no more than eight hundred *Bythinian* Soldiers, but gave him a Commiſſion to raiſe more in his March, and Orders, as ſoon as he had paſs'd the *Streights*, to take his Way through the Suburbs of *Conſtantinople*, on purpoſe to terrifie the *Latins*, whom he was willing to confine, if poſſible, within their Walls, and by frequent Alarms to keep 'em ſtill upon their Duty.

The fortunate *Alexius* encamp'd with his handful of Men at a Place call'd *Regium*, not far from *Conſtantinople*, where he accidentally met with ſome poor Labourers, *Greeks* by Nation, by whom he was inform'd of the Condition the City was in, that a great Body of the *Latins* were gone under the Conduct of a young *Venetian* Nobleman to the Siege of *Daphnuſia*, a Town lying upon the *Euxine* Sea, that the Garriſon was very weak and ill provided, and that it would be no difficult Matter to ſurprize it, offering themſelves at the ſame time to be his Guides. Theſe Men liv'd within the City cloſe to one of the Gates, near which was an old Mine, which afforded a ſecret unſuſpected Entrance, unknown to all but themſelves: Here they promis'd *Alexius* to receive in fifty of his Soldiers by Night, who having firſt ſecur'd the Watch, might force open the Gate, and prepare an Entrance for the reſt of his Army, engaging at the ſame time to provide a powerful Aſſiſtance for 'em among their Friends in the City. The Thing appear'd ſo reaſonable, that *Alexius* promis'd himſelf an undoubted Succeſs; having therefore highly commended the Men for their honeſt Zeal in the Service of their Country, he diſmiſs'd 'em with liberal Gifts, and encourag'd 'em with large Promiſes of what they were to expect hereafter, and immediately prepar'd to put that Deſign in Execution, which had been ſo happily concerted.

'Tis

'Tis wonderful to conſider in what fatal Security *Baldwin*, the *Latin* Emperor, liv'd at that time in *Conſtantinople*, tho' he was ſurrounded with Enemies, who had diſmember'd his little Empire, and left him Maſter hardly of any thing but the Imperial City it ſelf. His Poverty was equal to his Security, for it had reduc'd him to the Neceſſity of ſelling the publick Ornaments of the City, and pawning his own Son to ſome Merchants of *Bruges*, for the Support and Maintenance of his State. We may add to all this, that he was a Man of little Courage and leſs Authority, contemn'd as well by the *Latins* as the *Greeks*, all which contributed to the Revolution that immediately follow'd.

The Night appointed by the poor *Greeks* being come, *Alexius* choſe out fifty of his moſt reſolute Soldiers, who, according to the Agreement between 'em, were admitted by their faithful Guides into the City, where having ſlain the Watch, who were in no manner prepar'd for ſuch an Encounter, they forc'd the Gate open, at which *Alexius* enter'd with all his Army, and a little before Day caus'd the City to be fir'd in four ſeveral Places at once, to the great Terror and Amazement of the *Latins*; who concluding the Numbers of their Enemies to be much greater than indeed they were, had no Courage either to extinguiſh the Flames, or oppoſe the *Greeks*, who being join'd by their Countrymen within the Walls, fill'd every Street with Blood and Slaughter. In this general Confuſion the defenceleſs Emperor, perceiving the Hand of Fate againſt him, fled with *Juſtinian*, the *Latin* Patriarch, and ſome other of his Friends, by Sea, firſt to *Eubæa*, and afterwards to *Venice*, quitting the Imperial City to the *Greeks*, after it had been ſixty Years in the Hands of the *Latins*, by whom it was purchas'd with leſs Honour than it was loſt with Infamy. This happen'd in the ſecond Year of the Emperor *Michael Palæologus*, the thirty fifth of *Lewis* IX. of *France*, and forty fifth of *Henry* III. King of *England*, *A. D.* 1261.

He ſurprizes Conſtantinople *and expels the* Latins.

CHAP. VI.

From the Reſtitution of the Empire to the Greeks, *'till the Total Subjection of it by the* Turks *under* Mahomet *the Great.*

Containing the Space of 193 *Years.*

A. D. 1261. THE Reduction of *Conſtantinople* was an Event ſo conſiderable, and at the ſame time ſo little expected by *Palæologus*, that he gave no Credit to him who brought the firſt Expreſs of it; but when frequent Meſſengers arriv'd with Diſpatches to the ſame purpoſe, and he had receiv'd Letters from *Alexius* himſelf, with a particular Account of it, then he entertain'd it with a Satisfaction ſuitable to the Occaſion, and order'd publick Thanks to be return'd to God; in which the Emperor himſelf, the Senate, the Clergy, and the People, aſſiſted with great Solemnity and Devotion.

The Emperor removes with his Court to Conſtantinople.

When this was done, he prepar'd to remove with his whole Court to *Conſtantinople*, and to reſtore the exil'd Majeſty of the ancient *Byzantine* Empire to the Place of its Nativity; accordingly having ſettled his Affairs at *Nice*, he ſet forward with his Empreſs, and *Andronicus* his Son, at that time but two Years of Age, and being arriv'd near the City, he march'd as in ſolemn Proceſſion, and enter'd it on Foot by the Golden Gate, where he again return'd publick Thanks to God; which being ended, he diligently ſurvey'd the Imperial City, and beheld in it the tyrannical Marks of a long and miſerable Captivity. The Magnificent Palaces of his Predeceſſors, the ſtately Dwellings of the greateſt among the *Byzantine* Emperors, lay now in Ruins, neglected and defac'd. Time had devour'd many of the capacious Buildings, and the Fire, and other unavoidable Accidents of War, had deſtroy'd

ſtroy'd more. Theſe Objects allay'd in the Emperor the Senſe of his preſent good Fortune, and kindled in him a Deſire of re-edifying that City, which had been formerly the glorious Miſtreſs of the Eaſt.

But neither this nor any other Thoughts could divert him from paying the Honour due to Virtue and Deſert; he look'd on *Alexius* as the Reſtorer and Redeemer of his Country; wherefore having cloath'd him with Robes of Honour, and plac'd a Crown, little inferior to that he wore himſelf, upon his Head, he order'd him in a ſolemn and pompous Triumph to be conducted through the City; and made a Decree, that for the Year next enſuing *Alexius*'s Name ſhould be join'd with that of the Emperor in all Hymns, and Prayers of Thankſgiving. And that he might perpetuate the Memory of ſo great and glorious an Action, he commanded his Statue to be erected on a beautiful Marble Pillar before the great Church of the Holy Apoſtles, that Poſterity might know what *Alexius* had done for the Delivery of his Country.

His next Care was to cleanſe the City, and remove from it thoſe Hills of Rubbiſh which choak'd up the Streets, and lay like Monuments of its Diſgrace, and the Triumph of its Enemies; and knowing that, tho' the chief of the *Latins* were gone with their Emperor, yet the greateſt Part of the Merchants and Artificers remain'd behind, whoſe Induſtry might prove beneficial and advantageous to the State, he aſſign'd unto 'em the City of *Galata*, now call'd *Pera*, together with ſeveral peculiar Privileges, which encourag'd 'em to be eaſie and chearful under his Government; as for the Imperial City it ſelf, he ſuffer'd very few to ſettle in it but what were natural *Greeks*.

which he repeoples with Greek *Inhabitants.*

Hitherto *Palæologus*'s Reign had been attended with ſuch a Succeſs as might in ſome meaſure deſerve the Title of Great, which was afterwards conferr'd upon him; and as yet he had done nothing that could blacken his Reputation ſince his Advancement, but the Means

by

by which he had attain'd unto it. But Jealouſie is too often the inſeparable Companion of Uſurpation, as it now appear'd evidently in *Palæologus*; who tho' he had attain'd to a greater Degree of Happineſs than ever he could reaſonably have expected, tho' he was too powerful to fear any Competitor, and reign'd univerſally in the Hearts of his Subjects, yet was he continually awaken'd with Fears and Apprehenſions, forming Dangers where none could ariſe, and dreading thoſe Calamities, his guilty Conſcience ſuggeſted to him he had deſerv'd.

This Temper in *Palæologus* forc'd him upon ſuch Meaſures as very much ſully'd that Character which otherwiſe would have appear'd more beautiful and lovely. *Theodorus Laſcaris*, the late Emperor, had four Daughters, the two eldeſt of whom were marry'd to *Michael*, Deſpot of *Epire*, and *Conſtantine*, King of *Bulgaria*; who having, in the Beginning of his Adminiſtration, appear'd diſaffected to him, in his Opinion juſtify'd his Suſpicions: Wherefore he thought it prudent ſo to diſpoſe of the other two, as that they might adminiſter no Cauſe of Diſtruſt to him; accordingly he marry'd 'em to two *Latins*, Men of no Birth or Intereſt, and who conſequently were unable to create him any Trouble. When this was done, the diſtruſtful Uſurper, forgetful of all former Obligations, and an utter Stranger to Nature and Humanity, the better to ſecure to himſelf and his Poſterity the Sovereignty of the Empire, being unwilling or afraid to kill him, cruelly caus'd the young Prince's Eyes to be put out, whom he at firſt had honour'd as his Sovereign, and afterwards reſpected as his Collegue.

He puts out the Eyes of the young Emperor.

This bloody Fact, which *Palæologus* deſign'd for his Security, expos'd him to many Dangers and Calamities: For *Theodora*, Siſter to the young Prince, and the King of *Bulgaria*'s Wife, ceas'd not with her Sighs, her Tears and Prayers, to incite her Husband to Revenge; and he, being ſupported with above twenty thouſand

Tartars,

Tartars, who lay then upon the *Iſter*, broke ſuddenly into the Emperor's Territories, and over-ran all *Thrace* with ſo great Violence, that the whole Country was in a manner deſtroy'd before *Palæologus* could be inform'd of their Preparations. He was at that time engag'd in a War againſt the Deſpot of *Epirus* in *Theſſaly*, and had unavoidably been taken by the *Bulgarians* as he was returning home, had he not eſcap'd in a Veſſel that accidentally put in to Water, and landed him ſafe at *Conſtantinople*; where tho' he publickly preſum'd to return Thanks for his Deliverance, yet his late Barbarity had provok'd the Divine Vengeance, and in time involv'd him in ſuch Difficulties as hardly any of his Predeceſſors had been expos'd to before him.

He look'd on the Prince of *Epire*, and King of *Bulgaria*, as his irreconcilable Enemies; he was no leſs afraid of *Charles*, King of *Sicily*, a Prince of great Power and Reputation, whoſe Son having marry'd the Daughter of *Baldwin*, late Emperor of the *Latins* in *Conſtantinople*, was continually ſollicited by that Prince for his Reſtoration: He knew how unable he was, without ſome Foreign Aſſiſtance, to oppoſe theſe Powers, ſhould they unite againſt him; and having obtain'd the Empire by indirect unlawful Means, he was every Hour afraid of loſing it.

And that nothing might be wanting to aggravate the Diſcontents of this Emperor, *Arſenius*, the Patriarch, was ſo worthily incens'd againſt him for his Treaſon and Barbarity, that he had the Courage to Excommunicate him, and all thoſe who had been his Accomplices in his late Cruelty to the young Prince; and tho' *Palæologus* earneſtly petition'd him for ſeveral Days together to have the Excommunication taken off, yet the Patriarch perſiſted with ſo much Courage, that the Emperor found himſelf oblig'd to call a Synod of Biſhops, where *Arſenius* was ſummon'd to appear, to anſwer ſome pretended Crimes the Emperor had to alledge againſt him; and when the undaunted Prelate refus'd to

for which he is excommunicated by the Patriarch.

anſwer

anſwer the Summons, he was formally depos'd, and *Germanus*, Arch-Biſhop of *Adrianople*, was ſubſtituted in his Place; of which in a ſhort time he grew ſo weary, that he voluntarily reſign'd, and made way for the Advancement of another, who prov'd more Complaiſant to the perplex'd Emperor.

Shortly after this the *Venetians* rigg'd out a powerful Fleet for the Recovery of thoſe Iſlands in the *Ægean* Sea, which *Palæologus* had ſeiz'd immediately after the Reduction of *Conſtantinople*; whereupon a War commenc'd, and was continu'd between them and the Emperor for ſeveral Years together, during which the *Venetians* prevail'd ſo mightily againſt him, that had not the *Genoeſe* been perſuaded to aſſiſt him, he had been oblig'd to quit the Imperial City, for which the Pope was ſo offended at the *Genoeſe*, that he proceeded to an Excommunication againſt 'em.

and plung'd into innumerable Troubles.

Theſe Difficulties, with which he ſaw himſelf ſurrounded on every ſide, made *Palæologus* have Recourſe to a Remedy which in the End prov'd fatal to him and the Empire, which like an old diſeas'd Body haſten'd now to a Diſſolution. That he might the better divert thoſe Troubles which threaten'd him from the Weſt, where the Pope, the late Emperor *Baldwin*, the King of *Sicily*, and the *Venetians*, were combin'd againſt him, he ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Urban* IV. then Pope of *Rome*, offering to ſubmit himſelf and all his Dominions to the *Latin* Church, provided the Pope would undertake to ſhelter him from the Storm which ſeem'd ready to diſcharge it ſelf upon him. Purſuant to which, in the Council of *Lyons*, which was celebrated in the Year 1276. either in Perſon, as ſome have written, or rather by his Ambaſſadors, he made a formal Submiſſion, admitted the *Latin* Ceremonies into the Churches of *Greece*, and acknowledg'd the Supremacy of the Pope. But when he undertook to introduce and ſettle this Reformation in his Dominions, *Joſeph* the Patriarch quitted his Poſt, and forſaking the City retir'd into a Monaſtery

A. D. 1276.

His Innovations in Religion cauſe a Perſecution in the Greek Church.

naſtery near the *Boſphorus*, and the reſt of the Clergy offended at theſe Innovations, openly inveigh'd againſt 'em in their Sermons, and put both the City and Country into ſuch a Ferment, that *Palæologus* found he had rais'd ſuch Troubles at home, as were equal or more dangerous than thoſe of which he had been apprehenſive from abroad; which provok'd him to proceed with great Severity againſt thoſe who appear'd the moſt obſtinate, impriſoning ſome, baniſhing others, and torturing the reſt; whereupon the Refuſe of the People ran in great Numbers into *Peloponneſus*, *Theſſaly*, *Achaia*, and even as far as *Colchos*, and where-ever elſe their Fears drove, or their Humours led 'em; where they diſgrac'd that Religion for which they pretended they were perſecuted, diſagreeing among themſelves, adhering ſome to *Arſenius*, ſome to *Joſeph*, and others, who grew the Heads of Sects, deceiv'd themſelves and deceiving their Followers.

This threw the Empire into a ſort of Convulſion, and the Emperor was ſo encumber'd with his Domeſtick Troubles, that he had not leiſure to provide for the Tempeſt ariſing out of the Eaſt, where he ſuffer'd the *Turks* to gain Ground daily upon him, whilſt his whole Care was apply'd to the reſtraining his Subjects in their due Obedience at home.

And yet, notwithſtanding he had in ſo ſolemn a manner united himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, and by the Troubles that enſu'd thereupon ſeem'd to deſerve the Favour and Protection of that See, yet was he, a little before his Death, excommunicated by the Pope, for having contributed to the Maſſacre in *Sicily*, call'd the *Sicilian Veſpers*; to which he was induc'd by his ancient Hatred to *Charles*, King of that Iſland, and therefore join'd againſt him with *Peter* of *Arragon*, his Competitor; *Palæologus* thinking all Means lawful that ſerv'd to diſarm an Enemy, and preſerve to himſelf that Authority, the maintaining of which had thrown him upon ſo many unwarrantable Courſes.

A. D. 1281. *He is excommunicated by the Pope.*

At

and dies. At length, broken by Age, and oppreſs'd with Cares, he finiſh'd his unhappy Life, and more unfortunate Reign, not far from *Liſimachia*, as he was arming againſt *John*, the Prince of *Theſſaly*, who by his frequent Rebellions and ſiniſter Practices had given him no ſmall Trouble during his Reign. Having ask'd the Name of the Place he was at when firſt he was taken ill, and receiving for anſwer that it was call'd *Pachomium*, he with a deep Sigh declar'd God's Judgments were juſt againſt him, for that he had not long before put an innocent Man of that Name to Death, becauſe he had been inform'd that one *Pachomius* was to be his Succeſſor.

His Character. Tho' this Prince was nobly born, tho' he was of a Majeſtick Preſence, an obliging Temper, and a great Encourager of Learning; tho' he was Maſter of all the Qualities requiſite in a compleat Soldier, and finiſh'd Stateſman, yet was he but in one thing truly happy during the whole Courſe of his Reign, which was the Recovery of *Conſtantinople:* In other Matters he was as unhappy as moſt of his Predeceſſors, if we conſider either his private Troubles, or the Calamities he brought upon the Empire; the Divine Vengeance ſeeming to purſue him with an inflexible Severity, for his execrable Treaſon and Barbarity. His uncommon Magnificence and Liberality gain'd him at firſt the Love and Eſteem of all his Subjects, but his ſhameful Submiſſion to the See of *Rome*, and the Perſecution that afterwards enſu'd thereupon, render'd him ſo deteſted by 'em, that *Andronicus*, his Son and Succeſſor, thought he could not in the Beginning of his Reign recommend himſelf by a more popular Act to his Subjects, than by denying his Father not only thoſe Funeral Honours due to deceas'd Princes, but even the Rites of Chriſtian Burial. It may be ſaid of this Emperor, that as hardly any of his Predeceſſors involv'd themſelves in greater Troubles, ſo none of them ſupported 'em with a greater Courage and Preſence of Mind, even then enlarging

larging the Borders of his Dominions when he was labouring under almoſt inſuperable Difficulties. *Palæologus* dy'd in the twentieth fourth Year of his Reign and fifty eighth of his Age, the thirteenth of *Philip* ſirnam'd the Bold, King of *France*, and the eleventh of *Edward* I. King of *England*, *An. Dom.* 1283. A. D. 1283.

Michael Palæologus being dead, his eldeſt Son, *Andronicus*, ſucceeded him in the Empire, which he held longer and govern'd more unfortunately than his Father, laying a Foundation in the Beginning of his Reign for thoſe innumerable Calamities which befel him afterwards. His Father left two Sons more behind him, the Elder of which was call'd *Conſtantine*, and the Youngeſt *Theodorus*; *Conſtantine* was furniſh'd with all thoſe Gifts of Nature which beautifie a deſerving Prince, and by his courteous obliging Behaviour had render'd himſelf the Darling of the People. This made him better belov'd than his Brother by the late Emperor, who once thought of preferring him to the Succeſſion; and when the Conſideration of Birth-right had prevail'd with him to the contrary, he then propos'd to diſmember great Part of *Theſſaly* and *Macedonia* from the Empire, and declare him Prince of it with an abſolute independent Authority. This 'tis thought he would effectually have done, had not Death prevented him; however he aſſign'd him ſuch large Revenues as anſwer'd the Greatneſs of his Mind, and enabled him with an unlimited Bounty to oblige his Favourites, Followers and Dependants; all which concurr'd to render him at firſt ungracious, and afterwards ſuſpected to his Brother. This ill Diſpoſition in the Emperor towards him being obſerv'd by his flattering Courtiers, they endeavour'd to improve it, by repreſenting to him the Dangers he ought to apprehend from a Perſon ſo popular, whoſe great Bounty was a manifeſt Argument of his ambitious Deſigns. *Conſtantine* was then in *Aſia*, where he had in many Battels overthrown the *Turks*, and courageouſly defended

ANDRONICUS II.

the

the Frontiers of the Empire. This alſo was alleg'd againſt him by his Enemies at Court, who by their perverſe Inſinuations miſapply'd his Virtues to his Ruin, and by degrees repreſented him ſo dangerous to the Emperor, that *Andronicus* thought it conſiſted with his Safety to paſs over in Perſon into *Aſia*, and oppreſs him before he could be provided for his own Security. This was effected according as the Emperor had deſign'd it, for the unhappy Prince was ſuddenly ſeiz'd, and thrown into Priſon, with all his chief Favourites, among whom was *Michael Strategopulus*, the Son of that famous *Alexius* who recover'd *Conſtantinople* from the *Latins* in the laſt Reign, and was for that Reaſon deſervedly eſteem'd by the late Emperor, a Man inferior to none throughout the Empire for Wealth, Honour and noble Exploits.

Jealous of his Brother.

The Misfortune of theſe brave Men prov'd that of the Empire, for now the Soldiers, having none left to command 'em, neglected their Duty, and left the Frontiers as a Prey to the *Turks*, againſt whom the Emperor ſent *Alexius Philanthropenus* and *Libadarius*, who were to ſupply the Place of his Brother and *Strategopulus*. *Philanthropenus* was then in the Flower of his Youth, and had been a fortunate Captain, but he was vain and ambitious; *Libadarius* was an old experienc'd Soldier, but jealous of his Honour, deſigning and revengeful. Tho' they were both Men of Parts, and fit for the Truſt the Emperor had repos'd in 'em, yet an unhappy Miſunderſtanding that aroſe between 'em prov'd fatal to the Empire. *Libadarius* had the Government of the Cities of *Ionia* committed to him, and the other the Charge of the Frontiers upon the Banks of the *Meander*, where his frequent and ſucceſsful Engagements with the *Turks* highly improved the Reputation he had before acquir'd in Arms, which ſerv'd only to make him more bountiful and courteous to all thoſe who had Occaſion to apply to him. This made him popular, and inſpir'd him with pernicious Thoughts, which in the

the Iſſue proved his Deſtruction. He had a good Number of *Candiot* Soldiers that ſerv'd in his Army, who knowing the aſpiring Temper of their General, and hoping to raiſe their Fortunes by his Advancement, ſuggeſted ſtrange Matters to him, and repreſenting to him the jealous Fears of the Emperor, which had been the Deſtruction of his own Brother and *Strategopulus*, and the private Practices of *Libadarius* againſt him, perſuaded him that it indiſpenſably conſiſted with his Safety to aſſume the Imperial Purple; which, after ſeveral Conflicts with himſelf, he was prevail'd upon to do. Philanthropenus *uſurps*,

Libadarius, who had a vigilant Eye over him, acquainted the Emperor with his Proceedings, who immediately commanded him to uſe all poſſible Means to ſuppreſs him, declaring him a Traitor, and ſetting a Price upon his Head. Had *Alexius* mov'd directly againſt *Libadarius*, he had in all probability been too ſtrong for him; but he imprudently directed his Arms againſt *Theodorus*, the Emperor's Brother, who being inſtructed by his Brother *Conſtantine*'s Misfortunes, liv'd a private but pleaſant Life in *Lydia*, far from the Ambition of the Court, and ſo unable to have created the Uſurper any Diverſion. In the mean time *Libadarius*, being ſupply'd with a conſiderable Sum of Mony which he rais'd in thoſe Parts, recruited his Army, which in time grew more powerful than that of *Alexius*; and when all things were ripe for an Engagement between 'em, he ſo far prevail'd with the mercenary *Candiots*, to whom he made bountiful Preſents, and large Promiſes of future Preferments, that juſt as the Battel was joining they deliver'd *Alexius* bound to *Libadarius*, who put out his Eyes, and kept him in Priſon, 'till the Emperor's farther Pleaſure were known. *and is ſuppreſs'd.*

Tho' this prov'd of a moſt unhappy Conſequence to the Empire, as will appear hereafter, yet were other Actions of this Emperor in the Beginning of his Reign no leſs prejudicial to it. He thought to allay the Trou-

bles of the Church by revoking whatever his Father had done, and reducing all to the ancient Forms; but they who had before conform'd to the late Emperor's Pleaſure, and receiv'd the *Latin* Cuſtoms, ſtill defended the ſame with great Obſtinacy againſt the contrary Faction, who being now countenanc'd by the Emperor, arrogantly inſulted thoſe whom they accounted fond of Innovations. This reviv'd the Schiſm in the Church, and created great Animoſities in the State, whilſt the *Turks* in the mean time prevail'd on every ſide, and not only extended their Territories in *Aſia*, but conquer'd ſeveral of the Iſlands in the Mediterranean. For *Andronicus*, by an unſeaſonable Piece of good Husbandry, had diſcharg'd all his Seamen, who now receiv'd Pay from his Enemies, and laid up his Ships; being perſuaded by his flattering Courtiers, that the Maintenance of his Fleet created a needleſs Expence, and that the Mony might be apply'd to other Uſes of more Benefit to the Publick: By which means the *Turks* grew abſolute Maſters at Sea, and the Pirates infeſted the Coaſts, to the utter Ruin of Trade and Commerce. So that every thing concurr'd to haſten the Deſtruction of the Empire, which began now to be unavoidable.

The *Turks* prevailing every Day more and more in *Aſia*, the Emperor found it neceſſary to maintain a ſtrong Army againſt 'em, but ſince the Rebellion of *Philanthropenus* he grew ſo jealous of his own Subjects, that he repos'd a greater Truſt in Strangers, whom he encourag'd and entertain'd in his Service, to the great Detriment of the State. Among theſe was *Ronzerius*, Captain of a ſtrong Body of *Spaniards*, who having ſerv'd formerly in the Wars between the Kings of *Sicily* and *Naples*, offer'd now his Mercenary Troops to the Emperor, who gladly receiv'd him, and gave him his Niece in Marriage, and ſhortly after honour'd him with the Title of *Caſar*, ſending him to the Relief of *Philadelphia*, at that time cloſely beſieg'd by the *Turks*.

Ronzerius, a Spaniard.

This

This Service he perform'd with great Succeſs, for beſides his own *Spaniards*, he had the beſt of the *Greek* Soldiers under his Command, and no leſs than ten thouſand *Maſſagetes*, who having been driven from home by their Neighbours, the *European Tartars*, were ſuffer'd to paſs the *Iſter* with their Wives and Children, and receiv'd the Emperor's Pay.

When *Ronzerius* had perform'd this conſiderable Service, and the *Greeks* and *Maſſagetes* were return'd home, he rov'd up and down the Emperor's Territories in *Aſia*, which he waſted at his Pleaſure, and directed his Forces againſt thoſe he had been ſent to relieve; alledging that he was oblig'd to let his Troops live at Diſcretion, 'till they had receiv'd the great Arrears due to 'em from the Emperor: Upon this Pretence the poor People were barbarouſly treated every where, the Men were tortur'd 'till they diſcover'd their hid Treaſure, their Wives and Daughters raviſh'd, and all was ſubject to the Rage and Luſt of thoſe diſſolute Vagabonds; at which the Emperor was highly incens'd, and beheld his Subjects Calamities with an ineffectual Pity, for his Coffers being empty, he was unable to redreſs 'em.

When *Ronzerius* had thus pillag'd the Territories in *Aſia*, and ſcatter'd Deſolation all around him, he return'd with all his Forces into *Europe*, and quartering the reſt of his Army at *Callipolis*, he march'd with two hundred of his Men to *Michael*, the Emperor's Eldeſt Son, whom he had lately aſſociated with him in the Empire, lying then at *Oreſtias* in *Thrace*, to demand his Pay, or rather extort it from him with Threats. *Michael* had been juſtly provok'd at his Behaviour in *Aſia*, and was now ſo incens'd at his inſolent Carriage, that his Guard ſlew him, and moſt of his Followers, the reſt flying with the News of what had been done to their Fellows at *Callipolis*, who were ſo enrag'd at the Death of their General, that they firſt ſlew all the *ſlain by the young Emperor's Orders.*

Citizens, and then fortify'd the City, breathing nothing but Blood and Defiance.

The Miſchiefs that enſu'd hereupon are incredible, for part of 'em manning out eight Gallies robbed all the Merchant-Ships in the Streights, and had reduc'd *Conſtantinople* it ſelf to the laſt Extremity, if they had not been encounter'd and deſtroy'd by a Fleet of *Genoeſe*. In the mean time thoſe who had been left behind in the City, finding themſelves hard preſs'd, and expecting every Moment to be aſſaulted by the young Emperor *Michael*, reſolv'd upon a thing the moſt fatal that could happen to the Empire, for they call'd the *Turks* into their Aſſiſtance, and, together with them, deſtroy'd all the adjacent Country, bringing in whole Herds of Cattle at a time, together with their Keepers.

The Turks firſt call'd into Europe

This was the firſt time the *Turks* were call'd into *Europe*, and gave a Beginning to thoſe endleſs Miſeries with which Chriſtendom has been afflicted ever ſince, and is one of the moſt fatally memorable Events that happen'd during this Emperor's Reign.

These Miſcreants grew at length ſo confident as to venture a pitch'd Battel with the young Emperor *Michael*, which, after he had perform'd in Perſon all that could be expected from an experienc'd Captain and valiant Soldier, having his Horſe ſlain under him, he loſt, and was entirely routed: For the *Maſſagetes*, and ſome other Auxiliaries that were in his Army, upon the firſt Charge retir'd and ſtood at a Diſtance, as idle Spectators. *Michael* himſelf eſcap'd with much Difficulty to *Dydimothicum*, where the Emperor then lay, who receiv'd him very graciouſly, but check'd him for expoſing himſelf, and adventuring his Perſon ſo far.

The Emperor defeated.

The *Spaniards*, after this Victory, with their continual Inroads infeſted not only the Sea-Coaſts, but the Inland Country of *Thrace*, laying all waſte before 'em.

'em. When they had, like Locuſts, devoured the Fat of the Land, and found it impoſſible for 'em to ſubſiſt any longer in thoſe Parts, perceiving the Emperor had ſhut 'em out of *Macedonia*, where they had lately winter'd, and whither they prepar'd to return, they paſs'd the prodigious Mountains of *Olympus*, *Pelion* and *Oſſa*, and pierc'd into the Plains of *Theſſaly*, and at length, after long Marches and bloody Conflicts, they ſeated themſelves in *Attica*, having brought innumerable Calamities upon the Empire, and firſt taught the *Turks* the Way into *Europe*.

The Turk deſtroy the Emperor's Provinces.

At the ſame time that the *Spaniards* prepar'd to invade *Theſſaly* thoſe *Turks* ſeparated from 'em, and being then about one thouſand three hundred Foot, and eight hundred Horſe, they offer'd the Emperor to depart quietly home, provided they might be tranſported with all their Subſtance into *Aſia*; to which *Andronicus*, who reflected on the great Miſchiefs they had already done his Provinces, and willing to be eas'd of ſo troubleſome a Burden, readily condeſcended, and gave Orders for their Tranſportation accordingly. But the Imperial Officers and Soldiers, obſerving the great Spoil they had gather'd in the Emperor's Provinces, and were now going to tranſport into *Aſia*, to the eternal Infamy, as they thought, of the *Roman* Name, they undertook a thing neither honourable in it ſelf, *Andronicus* having given his Word to the contrary, nor eaſily to be effected; for, allur'd with the Hopes of ſo rich a Booty, they neither made the neceſſary Proviſions for 'em in their March, nor provided 'em with Ships when they came to the *Helleſpont*, but prepar'd to fall ſuddenly upon 'em, and deſtroy 'em. The Matter was not manag'd with ſo much Secrecy but the *Turks* had timely Intimation of it, wherefore ſeizing on a ſtrong Caſtle that ſtood in thoſe Parts, they prepar'd vigorouſly to make it good againſt thoſe who had contriv'd their Deſtruction, and ſent immediately over for Aſſiſtance from their Countrymen in *Aſia*,

which was accordingly ſent 'em. When this was done they waſted the Country all about by their frequent Excurſions, and grew too powerful for the Officers that commanded in that Country.

When the young Emperor *Michael* was informed of theſe Proceedings he rais'd a ſtrong Army, which encreas'd by Multitudes of Country People, who flock'd to him with their Spades, Mattocks, and other Ruſtick Inſtruments, with which he cloſely beſieg'd 'em. The *Turks* were at firſt ſo terrify'd at his Approach, that they look'd on their Deſtruction as inevitable; but when they beheld the Diſorders of the *Greeks*, who obſerv'd no Diſcipline, but in Confidence of their own Strength had already divided the Spoils of their Enemies, then, having ſecur'd their Wealth and Women, with whatever elſe they judg'd unneceſſary in the Fight, they ſally'd out with no more than eight hundred choſen Horſe, and ſo aſtoniſh'd the unwary *Greeks*, eſpecially the rude undiſciplin'd Boors, that they fled in great Diſorder, and were follow'd by the reſt of the Army, who left the Emperor's Treaſure, the Imperial Enſigns, and all their Baggage behind 'em.

This Defeat reduc'd the Emperor to the laſt Extremity; for the inſolent *Turks* laid all *Thrace* waſte, and grew ſo powerful in that Country, that the Inhabitants for two Years together were confin'd within their wall'd Towns, not daring to ſtir out to Till their Ground, and ſo labour'd under all the Calamities that Divine Juſtice often inflicts upon a guilty Nation. The Emperor in the mean time found himſelf unable to protect 'em, and tho' he earneſtly ſollicited *Crales* Prince of *Servia*, his Son-in-Law, to aſſiſt him, yet that Prince expreſs'd ſo great an Indifference in the Cauſe, that their Miſeries grew inexpreſſible. At length *Philes Paleologus*, a Man nearly related to the Emperor, highly provok'd at the inſolent Barbarities of the *Turks*, deſir'd he might have leave to chaſtiſe 'em. This Man ſeem'd choſen by

by God himſelf for that purpoſe; he had from his Youth been bred up at Court, and was conſequently a Stranger to the Arts of War, and was moreover of a weak Conſtitution, ſickly, and infirm: On the other hand, he was exemplarily remarkable for his upright Dealing, and Integrity of Life; and was withal ſo devout, that he often ſpent the greateſt Part of the Day in his Prayers at Church. With theſe Qualifications *Philes* undertook the Defence of his Country, and having rais'd a ſmall Army he took care in the firſt Place to eſtabliſh a good Diſcipline among his Soldiers, whom he earneſtly exhorted to Temperance and Sobriety; he allur'd 'em by frequent Donatives, encourag'd 'em by pathetick Speeches, and us'd all means neceſſary to prepare 'em for the Service to which they were deſign'd. When he thought he had model'd 'em according to his own Deſires, he march'd at the Head of this cheatful Army againſt the *Turks*, and encamp'd on a large Plain near a little River call'd *Xerogipſum*, being inform'd that a great Body of the Enemy were to return that way from Foraging. He had not lain here two Days before he receiv'd Advice that the Enemies, laden with Spoil, were approaching, and that, having diſpos'd of their Captives and the rich Booty they had taken among their Carriages, they were preparing for an Engagement. *Philes*, having marſhall'd his Men, gave the Word, and the Fight began with great Fury on both ſides, the *Turks* fighting for the Preſervation of what they had been purchaſing, and the Chriſtians engaging not only for the Recovery of what they had loſt, but for their Religion, their Liberties, and future Security. The Chriſtians at firſt had the Advantage, 'till he who commanded the Right Wing of the Army had his Horſe kill'd under him, which forc'd him to retire out of the Battel, to the great Amazement of the Chriſtians, who thereupon began to give Ground to the *Turks* that preſs'd with redoubled Fury upon 'em. *Philes* in the mean time urg'd his Men to renew the Charge,

and are overthrown by Philes Palæologus

and with earneſt Prayers invok'd the Divine Aſſiſtance; as did the Captives, who were divided between Hope and Fear, and lay expecting the Event of the Battel. At length *Philes*, follow'd by the moſt reſolute of his Men, wheel'd about, and in a manner ſurrounded the Barbarian Horſe, whilſt the Foot broke in upon the main Body, and put 'em to a ſhameful Rout. The Chriſtians purſu'd their fugitive Enemies to the Entrance of the *Cherſoneſe*, where *Philes* encamp'd, and with five Gallies ſent him by the Emperor, and eight which the *Genoeſe* of *Pera* brought to his Aſſiſtance, kept the *Streights* ſo ſecurely guarded, that 'twas impoſſible for the *Turks* to receive any Aſſiſtance out of *Aſia*. About the ſame time *Philes* his Army was ſtrengthen'd with two thouſand Horſe out of *Servia*, by which means the *Turks* were ſhut up both by Sea and Land, having nothing to recur to but their uſual Valour, and were ſo weaken'd by frequent Actions, that they began utterly to deſpair. Wherefore caſting away their Arms in the dead of Night, and taking with them all their Gold and Silver, which they had in great Plenty among 'em, they made down towards the Sea-ſide, with a Deſign of yielding themſelves up to the *Genoeſe*, from whom they expected more Mercy than from the Imperialiſts, becauſe they had never been provok'd by 'em. Notwithſtanding their Precaution, many of 'em, in the Confuſion of the Night, fell unawares among the *Greeks*, who ſlew 'em all without any Compaſſion. The *Genoeſe* kill'd ſuch as brought the Mony with them, leſt if they were ſuffer'd to live they might in time diſcover it to the *Greeks*; the reſt they bound in Chains, ſending ſome to the Emperor, and reſerving thoſe remaining as Slaves for themſelves. By this means *Europe* was for the preſent deliver'd from the *Turks*, to *Philes* his great Commendation, and no leſs Joy of the Emperor.

A. D. 1321. After this the Court enjoy'd a ſhort Repoſe, and the Subjects of the Empire began again to taſte the Delights

Delights of Peace; but *Andronicus*, who had been ſo long exercis'd in Foreign Troubles, became involv'd about this time in Domeſtick Embroilments, which purſu'd him to his Grave. *Michael*, his Eldeſt Son, who was his Companion in the Empire, had two Sons, *Andronicus* and *Manuel*, and as many Daughters, the Eldeſt of which was marry'd to the Prince of *Epire*, and her Siſter to the Prince of *Bulgaria*. The Prince *Andronicus*, tho' exceedingly belov'd by the old Emperor, was a Youth diſſolute and intractable, provoking both his Father and Grand-father by a thouſand Extravagances to reprove him almoſt every Day. Among other Frolicks, he frequently viſited, in the Silence of the Night, a Lady, the Infamy of whoſe Life highly diſgrac'd the Dignity of her Birth, and who being likewiſe admir'd by another Gallant, the Prince imagining him to be the greater Favourite had reſolv'd to remove him, and therefore appointed ſome Ruffians to watch him as he was going to viſit his Miſtreſs, and to diſpatch him. It happen'd that *Manuel*, *Andronicus*'s Brother, went that way that very Night, with little or no Attendance, in queſt of him, and was miſtaken in the Dark by thoſe Murderers, who gave him two or three mortal Wounds, of which he dy'd in a few Days after. This bloody Outrage exceedingly afflicted the old Emperor, who foreſaw, from the preſent Temper of the Prince, what was like to follow; and when the Report of it was brought to his Father, who lay then at *Theſſalonica*, he dy'd of Grief.

Andronicus the younger his diſſolute Practices.

The Sorrow the Emperor conceiv'd at theſe heavy Misfortunes were much improv'd by the Behaviour of the young Prince, who grew every Day more extravagant and dangerous; aſſociating himſelf with Men of factious unruly Spirits, who ſought nothing more than to improve the Diſtempers of the State. Among theſe was *Syrgiannes*, a Man politick and powerful, who having been formerly impriſon'd by the Emperor for ſome ambitious Deſigns, tho' he was now reconcil'd

and

and entruſted by him, yet he preſerv'd in his Memory the Senſe of his Diſgrace, and retain'd a deep Reſentment of it. With him was join'd *John Cantacuzenus*, *Theodorus Synadenus*, and *Alexius Apocaucus*; the two firſt, Men of great Honour and Credit with the Emperor, to whom they had long profeſs'd an inviolable Friendſhip; the other inferior to the reſt in Quality, but equal to 'em in a Largeneſs of Underſtanding, and a conſummate Experience in Affairs of State. Theſe Men found the young Prince a Subject proper for their Deſigns, whom they inſpir'd with a Thirſt of Power, and by frequent Remonſtrances endeavour'd to render him diſaffected to his Grand-father. They prevail'd by their Arts ſo effectually upon him, that at length they drew him into an avow'd Rebellion againſt the aged Emperor. *Cantacuzenus*, in the Hiſtory he has left us, endeavours to juſtifie this Proceeding in the young Prince; but he is to be read with Caution, for he is allow'd on all Hands to be notoriouſly partial. If the Emperor deſign'd to deprive him of the Succeſſion, 'twas no more than his licentious Youth had deſerv'd; and no Provocation whatever could juſtifie his taking up Arms againſt his Soveraign. *Cantacuzenus* and *Syrgiannes* had procur'd to themſelves the Government of ſuch Towns and Provinces as they judg'd would be moſt conducive to their Deſigns, where they muſter'd Soldiers, provided Armour, entertain'd Strangers, and appointed thoſe Men to the Government of the Cities, who they knew would be moſt faithful to 'em. All this was colour'd with the Popular Pretence of providing for the Security of their Country againſt the Irruptions of the *Tartars*, and the Deſigns of the *Turks*, for which their generous Care they were highly applauded even by the unwary Emperor himſelf; who having heap'd many Obligations upon 'em thought they could not be ſuch Villains as to betray him. In the mean time the young Prince was privately inform'd of all their Proceedings, and adviſ'd what Meaſures he was to

He is drawn into a Rebellion againſt his Grand-father.

so take, that he might under-hand act in Conjunction with them.

His Faction in the City improv'd every Day, and there were some Hot-spurs among 'em, that made him entertain Thoughts against the very Life of his Grandfather; who perceiving that he was become irreclaimable, resolv'd, as the last Remedy, to reprove him openly before the Patriarch and the Chief of the Nobility and Clergy; and if he found he persisted still in his Contumacy, then to have him committed to Prison, and by that means prevent any dangerous Attempts for the future.

Of this the young Prince receiv'd private Information, and therefore when he was sent for to the Palace, he went attended with a great Number of his Followers and Favourites, who were for the most part privately arm'd, between whom it was agreed, that if the Emperor appear'd too severe in his Reproofs, or offer'd any Violence to his Grand-son, that then upon a Signal given they should rush in with their Swords drawn, and having kill'd the Emperor, place the young Prince in the Imperial Seat. When the Patriarch, the Nobility and Clergy were met, and the young *Andronicus* appear'd according to his Summons, the aged Emperor mix'd so much of the Father with his grave Reprehensions, and reprov'd him in so tender affectionate a manner, that he drew Tears from all that were present, and wrought so powerfully upon the Prince himself, that he appear'd asham'd of his Follies, fell at his Grandfather's Feet, who rais'd him with a Kiss, and promis'd an entire Submission for the future. After which, the Prince having engag'd to attempt nothing hereafter against the Emperor, and the Emperor promis'd that he would appoint no other to succeed him in the Empire, they both parted with all the visible Demonstrations of a sincere Reconciliation. But when the Prince came out to his Accomplices, who plainly foresaw that an Union betwixt him and his Grand-father would be their

their Ruin, they exclaim'd againſt him in moſt bitter Terms, as one who had betray'd his faithful Friends, and expos'd 'em to the Fury of an incens'd Prince, who was become their Enemy for no other Reaſon but their Love and Fidelity to him. Hereupon the Prince, who, among other Matters, had promis'd the Emperor to diſcover the Names of his evil Counſellors, ſent for *Theodorus Metochita*, the Emperor's chief Miniſter, and inſtead of performing what he had undertaken, urg'd him to do the ſame good Offices with the Emperor for them, as he had done before for him; which when that Miniſter refus'd, but adjur'd him to withdraw himſelf from the Society of thoſe Men, who having broken their Faith given before to the Emperor would likewiſe in time betray him, he thruſt him from him with Indignation, and falling in a Moment from his former Reſolution, he again ſuffer'd the old Companions of his Follies to reſort to him, and entertain'd the ſame pernicious Thoughts he had done before: Of which when the Emperor was inform'd, he at length reſolv'd to ſuppreſs him before he grew too powerful, communicating his Reſolutions to none but *Geraſimus* the Patriarch, who inſtantly inform'd the Prince of it, and he fled, with his Accomplices, the Night before he was to have been apprehended, and eſcap'd to *Adrianople*. *Cantacuzenus* takes no notice of this Treaſon in the Patriarch, but aſſigns ſome other Circumſtances, which induc'd the young Prince to fly, whom he takes Care on all Occaſions to vindicate and excuſe.

He flies into Thrace.

It was a fatal Overſight in the Emperor, that he not only ſuffer'd, but forc'd thoſe Great Men who were of the Prince's Party out of the City, upon Pretence of ſending them to their Governments abroad; whereas had he ſecur'd 'em, as he had juſt Reaſon ſo to do, the young *Andronicus* would not have met with that Aſſiſtance he afterwards found from *Syrgiannes*, *Cantacuzenus*, and the reſt, who lay with a ſtrong Body of Forces at *Adrianople* ready to receive him.

The

The old Emperor, being advertis'd of the Prince's Flight, commanded him immediately to be proclaim'd Traitor, proſcrib'd him and all his Adherents, and requir'd a new Oath of Allegiance from the Inhabitants of *Conſtantinople*: Whilſt, on the other ſide, the Prince, finding himſelf at the Head of a powerful Army, ſo effectually manag'd the leading Men in *Thrace*, that the whole Country in a ſhort time revolted to him; by which means his Forces receiv'd ſo conſiderable an Increaſe, that in a few Days he was able to detach a ſufficient Number of Horſe and Foot, under the Conduct of *Syrgiannes*, who were to attempt *Conſtantinople* before the Emperor had recover'd himſelf, and whilſt the Citizens lay under a general Conſternation. *Syrgiannes* march'd with ſo much Expedition, and the Emperor found himſelf ſo unable to oppoſe him that he was perſuaded to endeavour at an Accommodation, and therefore ſent *Theoleptus*, Biſhop of *Philadelphia*, a Man of extraordinary Reputation for Wiſdom and Sanctity, to the young Prince, together with *Syrgiannes* his Mother, who, like another *Volumnia*, was to deprecate her Son's Indignation, and avert the Storm with which he threaten'd his Country. *Syrgiannes* receiv'd both the Biſhop and his Mother with a Reſpect that was due to the one and the other, and waited on 'em to the young Prince lying at *Oreſtias*; where, after ſeveral Diſputes on both ſides, it was at length agreed, "That the Empire "ſhould be divided, that the Prince ſhould have all "*Thrace* from *Chritſopolis* to *Rhegium*, and the Suburbs "of *Conſtantinople* for his Share; that his Followers "ſhould enjoy without Moleſtation ſuch Lands as he "had conferr'd upon 'em in *Macedonia*: And that, on "the other hand, the Emperor ſhould retain all the "reſt of the Imperial Dominions, having the Honour "of receiving Ambaſſadors, and treating with Foreign "Princes. *Cantacuzenus* ſaith that this Treaty met with many Difficulties, that all the young Prince's Friends diſſuaded him from any Agreement with the Em-

Greg. *which revolts to him*

An Agreement between the Emperor and the Prince

Emperor, and that the Army was hardly restrain'd from assaulting *Constantinople*. Certain it is the young Prince's Interest was very great, not only in the Army, where he was absolute, but even in the Imperial City it self, where several Persons of a factious uneasie Spirit were desirous of a Revolution. Thus was the *Roman* Empire, as our Authors still had the Vanity to call it, divided between the two Princes, tho' at that time it contain'd no more in *Europe* than *Thrace*, *Macedon*, *Thessaly*, *Attica*, *Bœotia*, *Acarnania*, with the Islands in *Peloponnesus*, *Lemnos*, *Chios*, *Lesbos*, and some others. As for the Territories in *Asia*, they were for the most part during these Divisions swallow'd up by the *Turks*, who in the Year 1327, took from the *Romans* the City of *Prusa* in *Bithynia*, under the Conduct of *Ottoman*, who about that time took upon himself the Title of Sultan, or King, from which 'till then he had abstain'd, and laid the Foundation of that stupendous Greatness to which his Successors afterwards attain'd.

This Agreement between the two Princes was of no long Continuance; for *Syrgiannes* observing that, notwithstanding his many Services, and extraordinary Zeal for the young Prince, he had not that Interest in him he expected, but that he was entirely govern'd by *Cantacuzenus*, who rul'd with almost an absolute Authority, he began to consider how he might be reveng'd on the ungrateful Prince, by whom he thought himself so ill rewarded for all his former Services. Wherefore having first by Letters full of Submission prepar'd for his Reception at *Constantinople*, he fled thither, and reconcil'd himself to the Emperor. This renew'd the War on both sides, and brought fresh Troubles upon the Empire; for the Emperor sent his Son *Constantine* by Sea to *Thessalonica*, where he took upon him the Government of *Macedon*, from whence he was order'd to Invade the Prince on one side, whilst *Syrgiannes* at the Head of some *Turks*, who had enter'd themselves into the Emperor's Pay, assaulted him on the other.

brought to nothing.

The

The Prince, ſeeing himſelf in a manner inclos'd, ſent *Synadenus* to defend the Frontiers of his Empire towards *Conſtantinople*, undertaking in Perſon to encounter or circumvent his Uncle. *Conſtantine* in his Paſſage had ſeiz'd on *Xene* the Prince's Mother, whom he ſent Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*; at which the Prince was highly exaſperated againſt him, and ſet a Price upon his Head, promiſing a great Reward to thoſe who ſhould bring him, alive or dead, into his Preſence. At the ſame time he order'd a Report induſtriouſly to be ſpread abroad of his Grand-father's Death, and ſome there were who had the Confidence to relate that he was ſlain in a Tumult at *Conſtantinople*, of which they were Eye-witneſſes. This Report, and the Proſcriptions that were out againſt him, ſo alarm'd *Conſtantine* that he broke up, and retir'd in great Conſternation to *Theſſalonica*, where he receiv'd Letters from the Emperor, with Orders to apprehend five and twenty of the chief Citizens, and ſend 'em Priſoners to *Conſtantinople*. Tho' theſe Letters were deliver'd with great Secrecy, yet the Perſons concern'd receiv'd timely Intimation of the Danger they were in, and ſtirr'd up the Inhabitants to their Aſſiſtance; whereupon the whole City was in an Uproar, and the Mob ſeizing on *Conſtantine* carry'd him Priſoner to the young Prince his Nephew, who with much Difficulty preſerv'd him from the Violence of his Soldiers, and ſav'd his Life, tho' he ſhortly after committed him to a Priſon more inſupportable than Death it ſelf.

Shortly after this the *Turks*, who ſerv'd under *Syrgiannes*, being either terrify'd at the young Prince's Succeſs, and the Reputation he had in thoſe Parts, or privately prevail'd upon by him ſo to do, quitted the Service and retir'd home, at the ſame time that the Iſle of *Lemnos* revolted to him; with which, and his Son's Misfortunes, the Emperor was ſo touch'd, that he deſir'd nothing more than Peace. Wherefore having releas'd *Xene*, he ſent her to the young Prince her Son at *Rhegium*,

A Peace renew'd.

Rhegium, with Propoſals for an Accommodation; and that Princeſs acquitted her ſelf ſo happily of her Commiſſion, that the Peace was in a few Days reſtor'd, and her Son went to meet his Grand-father before the Gates of the City, where there were many high Expreſſions of Duty and Reſpect on the one ſide, and of Tenderneſs and Affection on the other. After which the Prince went frequently into the City to viſit his Grand-father, and an entire Confidence ſeem'd to be eſtabliſh'd between 'em.

How ſincere the young Prince was in this Pacification he made appear by his future Practices, which *Cantacuzenus* endeavours to juſtifie by the Provocations he affirms he receiv'd from his Grand-father. However it were, tho' the old Emperor had granted him all he demanded, tho' he had ſuffer'd him to be crown'd with himſelf in the Temple of St. *Sophia*, and allow'd *Ann* of *Savoy*, whom he had lately marry'd upon the Death of his firſt Wife *Irene*, to be crown'd likewiſe ſhortly after, yet the ambitious Prince, impatient of a Rival, reſolv'd at length to remove his aged Grand-father, that he might reign without a Partner. In order to which he enter'd into a Treaty with *Michael* Prince of *Bulgaria*, his Brother-in-Law, who was to make a Diverſion in *Servia*, if that Prince ſhould move to the Emperor's Aſſiſtance; in Conſideration of which the young *Andronicus* was to pay him a conſiderable Sum of Mony, and deliver up to him ſeveral Cities bordering upon his Territories, ſo ſoon as he had recover'd the Empire.

Gregor.

The young Prince takes up Arms again.

When this was done, the Prince ſeiz'd on the Publick Revenue in *Thrace*, and being encourag'd by frequent Meſſages from ſome of the principal Inhabitants of *Conſtantinople*, he march'd towards it, pretending it was to ſee his Ambaſſadors, that he was ſending to the Sultan of *Egypt*, embark with a Retinue ſuitable to their Character, at that Place. In the mean time the old Emperor receiv'd an Information of all Proceedings and Deſigns, from one who, in Deteſtation of ſo foul a Trea-

Treaſon, had deſerted the young Prince, and fled over to the Grand-father. He thereupon ſent Meſſengers to him, forbidding him to enter the City, accuſing him of manifeſt Treaſons, and his Breach of the late Peace ſo ſolemnly ſworn to, and confirm'd on both ſides. After this he ſent and deſir'd the Aſſiſtance of *Crales*, Prince of *Servia*, and gave Orders to his Lieutenants in *Macedonia*, as ſoon as they had receiv'd the Supplies to be ſent 'em by that Prince, to march againſt the young Emperor; who, on the other ſide, iſſu'd out his Edicts in all Parts of the Empire, even in *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, wherein he proclaim'd a general Releaſe of all Taxes and Impoſitions, and promis'd an Augmentation of the Soldiers Pay, by which means he exceedingly ſtrengthen'd his Party; and arriving at *Rhegium*, requeſted by his Ambaſſadors from the old Emperor, either that he might have Leave to come into the City, according to the League that was between 'em, or that he would ſend out to him ſome of the Inhabitants of the greateſt Reputation for their Wiſdom and Authority, to whom he might freely deliver what he had to offer, both to his Grand-father and the People; at the ſame time he deſired the Emperor not to give Credit to thoſe Court-Sycophants, who incens'd him with their malicious Lies and Informations againſt him. The Emperor was exceedingly perplex'd at this Demand; he knew his Preſence in the City, where the People were ſo generally well inclin'd to him, would endanger a Revolt; and if any were ſuffer'd to go out to him, he was afraid they in the end would create a Tumult and Sedition, for he was ſenſible his Grandſon would do all he could firſt to gain them, and by them the reſt of the Citizens. However, after ſome Cantac. Deliberation, he thought the latter Propoſal had the leaſt of Danger in it, ſo that four and twenty of the principal Inhabitants, to whom ſome others were join'd afterwards, were diſmiſs'd to *Rhegium*, to hear what the young Emperor had to ſay in his own Vindication,

and alledge againſt his Grand-father. Theſe Men were very graciouſly receiv'd by *Andronicus*, who having firſt allow'd 'em ſome time to repoſe themſelves, told 'em in a publick Aſſembly ſummon'd for that purpoſe, *That had not his Grand-father been prepoſſeſs'd to his Prejudice, there would never have been that Difference there was at that Day between 'em, nor ſhould he have had ſo juſt an Occaſion of Complaint againſt him.* Then he proceeded to recount *how carefully he had obſerv'd the Agreement that had been made between 'em, and, on the contrary, in how many things his Grand-father had infring'd it*; in Confirmation of which he produc'd ſeveral Letters written by the old Emperor to *Crales* Prince of *Servia*, and others, which he had intercepted, and now urg'd as convincing Arguments againſt him. His whole Speech was manag'd with ſo much Art, that they who were ſent in the Emperor's Name to accuſe and reprove him, abſolv'd him in their own private Opinions, and recommended to him the Care of the Publick. After this he diſcours'd with 'em ſeparately in private, and omitted nothing whereby he might gain 'em to be his Advocates, not only with the Emperor, but, what he more earneſtly deſir'd, with the People. Accordingly at their Return they highly commended his generous Behaviour, his Inclinations to Peace, and his Readineſs to comply in any thing reaſonable with the Emperor.

The Behaviour of the People hereupon convinc'd the Emperor how juſt he had been in his Conjectures; for they could not now be reſtrain'd from declaring openly their Inclinations to him, and railing at the preſent Miniſtry, hardly ſparing the unhappy Emperor himſelf; who dreading the tragical Effects of a popular Fury, ſummon'd the Patriarch and the reſt of the Clergy, to conſult with 'em what was to be done in that Exigency. When they were aſſembled he told 'em, *he was ready to quit the Empire, if he could be perſuaded it might be done with his own Safety, and the Good*

of

of the Publick; but that he had great Reaſon to diſtruſt both the good Nature and Capacity of the young Emperor, whom he had tenderly lov'd from his Youth, had endeavour'd to endear him by innumerable Favours and Royal Conceſſions, and yet, notwithſtanding all, he perſiſted in his Obſtinacy and Rebellion: Wherefore he deſir'd 'em, in Deteſtation of his Wickedneſs, to endeavour to reclaim him by their Eccleſiaſtical Cenſures, to pronounce him unworthy of the Empire, and exclude him from the Communion of the Faithful. To this moſt of the Biſhops preſent conſented, and agreed that he ſhould be no more nam'd in the Prayers of the Church, 'till he had learn'd to conform himſelf more ſubmiſſively to the Pleaſure of the Emperor. The Patriarch and ſome others, who ſecretly favour'd the young Prince, ſeemingly conſented, but after ſeveral private Meetings among themſelves, the Patriarch, ſummoning the People together by the Sound of the Bells, pronounc'd the Sentence of Excommunication againſt all ſuch as preſum'd to omit the Name of the young Emperor in their publick Prayers, or robb'd him of the Honours due to the Imperial Dignity: For which unwarrantable Act, and rebellious Proceeding in the Patriarch, he was, by the Emperor's Order, confin'd to the Monaſtery of *Mangana*.

The Patriarch confined by the old Emperor.

When the young Emperor, lying at *Rheginum*, was inform'd of what had paſs'd by Letters from his Friends in the City, he march'd towards it at the Head of thirteen hundred choice Men, and being come within ſight of the Walls commanded his Army to halt; whilſt he, attended by *Cantacuzenus*, and about thirty Soldiers, rode up to one of the Gates to be admitted, and deſir'd to have a Conference with his Grand-father. They who ſtood as a Guard upon the Walls return'd him no other Anſwer, but that it was the Emperor's Pleaſure he ſhould depart, as abhorring all Converſation with a Rebel and Traitor. Some proceeded yet farther, and having revil'd him with moſt bitter Language, drove him with Stones from the Walls; up-

on which proteſting his own Innocence, he charg'd his Grand-father with all the Calamities that were to follow, and march'd back with his Army to *Selybria*, a Town upon the *Propontick*, and from thence into *Macedonia*, where his Forces took in moſt of the ſtrong Towns and Caſtles, together with the Wives, Children and Treaſure of thoſe who ſtill continu'd faithful to the old Emperor; they themſelves ſhortly after falling into the ſame Hands, were confin'd to ſeveral Priſons in thoſe Provinces. In the mean time the young Emperor, being advertis'd from his Friends in *Theſſalonica*, that there wanted nothing but his Preſence to reduce the City to his Obedience, the People being generally inclin'd to him, he march'd with great Expedition at the Head of ſuch a Number of his Forces as he judg'd ſufficient for his Purpoſe; and tho' he who commanded for the old Emperor did all he could to preſerve the Place in its Obedience to him, yet he was hardly inform'd of his Approach, before his Friends beheld his Enſigns from the Walls, and forc'd thoſe who were prepar'd to oppoſe him to retire into the Caſtle, out of which the young Emperor, who was immediately receiv'd into the City, drove 'em, after a very vigorous Reſiſtance.

Cantac.

who is aſſiſted by the Bulgarians,

This wonderful Progreſs in the young Emperor's Affairs exceedingly perplex'd his Grand-father, who once thought of courting his Grand-ſon to a Peace, and was preparing his Ambaſſadors accordingly, when he receiv'd a Meſſage from *Michael*, Prince of *Bulgaria*, with Offers of Aid againſt the young Emperor his Nephew, which *Andronicus* readily accepted, and the Matter was tranſacted with ſo much Secrecy, that the Management of it was entruſted to no more than two or three of his moſt experienc'd Friends and Confidents; notwithſtanding which the young Prince had Intimation of it, and having defeated a Body of the Emperor's Forces near the River *Melanes*, he march'd in great Haſte towards *Conſtantinople*, to prevent, if poſſible,

Παρὰ τὸν Μέλανα Ποταμὸν. Cantac.

poſſible, the coming of the *Bulgarians:* For he was upon juſt Grounds afraid, leſt they, finding the City in a weak defenceleſs Condition, ſhould either kill the old Emperor and ſeize it themſelves, or, what he thought altogether as bad, ſhould bring him ſo powerful an Aſſiſtance, as might enable his Grand-father to keep him out. He ſent a Meſſenger with Letters to the old Emperor, in which he offer'd him all imaginable Submiſſion, told him how much Reaſon he had to fear thoſe foreign Troops, and adviſ'd him to be cautious how he rely'd upon 'em, leſt he put it into their Power to ſubvert the State, and attempt ſomething prejudicial to both their Lives and Dignities. This Remonſtrance came too late, for three thouſand *Bulgarian* Horſe-men were arriv'd, to the great Joy of *Andronicus,* who however remembring what he had formerly ſuffer'd from foreign Troops, admitted no more than the General and ſome of his Friends to come into the City, but quarter'd the reſt in the Suburbs.

A. D. 1328.

When the young Prince ſaw he could not prevail with the Emperor to diſmiſs 'em, he endeavour'd himſelf to draw 'em off, and prevail'd ſo effectually with his Preſents to their General, that they enclin'd to his Propoſals; and after their chief Officers had been magnificently entertain'd by him, they broke up, and return'd into their own Country. *Cantacuzenus* ſaith they were recall'd home by their Prince, who having been ſeverely reprov'd by the young Emperor, for arming his Subjects againſt his Friend and Allie, and hearing that Prince's Army was under the Walls of *Conſtantinople,* iſſu'd out his Orders immediately for their Return.

who depart at the young Emperor's Solicitations.

The young Emperor, having thus remov'd the *Bulgarians,* was intent upon what other Meaſures he was to take, when two Watch-men of the City fled ſecretly to him, and undertook to betray it into his Hands, provided they receiv'd the Rewards they propos'd for their Encouragement; which being readily granted, and the Hour for the Performance prefix'd, they who

were appointed to that Service provided themſelves with Ladders of Ropes, which when the Time appointed came, the Traitors, having firſt made their Companions upon the Watch drunk, drew up about Midnight, and faſten'd to the Top of the Battlements, by which eighteen Soldiers, or rather more, according to *Cantacuzenus*, well arm'd mounted the Wall, and broke open that which was call'd the *Roman* Gate, and ſo open'd an Entrance for the young Emperor, who inſtead of meeting with any Oppoſition from the Inhabitants, was with repeated Acclamations ſaluted Emperor. Tho' *Gregoras* his Hiſtory appears no great Friend to the young Emperor, as having been bred up in his Grandfather's Court, yet upon this Occaſion he highly commends his Moderation and Humanity; he tells us that the Prince, aſcribing the Victory in the firſt place to God, gave ſtrict Orders to all his Officers and Soldiers, at the Peril of their Lives, to abſtain from violating in the leaſt either by Word or Deed the Majeſty of the old Emperor, his Grand-father: And when that unfortunate Prince made him a lamentable Speech, which ſavour'd more of the Calamities to which he was reduc'd, than the Greatneſs of Mind becoming an Emperor, he was ſo touch'd with it, that he hardly abſtain'd from Tears; entring into the Palace he fell at his Feet, embrac'd him, and with Words full of Duty and Affection endeavour'd to comfort him. After this he went and return'd Thanks to God for his Succeſs, and lodg'd in an Apartment near the Imperial Palace, quartering a ſmall Part of his Army in the City, and commanding the reſt to encamp without.

and he takes Conſtantinople.

ANDRONICUS III.

Andronicus, having in this manner render'd himſelf Maſter of the Imperial City, was univerſally obey'd as Emperor. His firſt Care was to redreſs thoſe Diſorders that had crept into the State during the Civil Wars, and to reward ſuch as had ſuffer'd on his Account. He recall'd the Patriarch, whom his Grand-father had confin'd, to his former Dignity, and at the ſame time interceded with him in Behalf of thoſe Eccleſiaſticks who

who had join'd with the late Emperor againſt him; but the offended Prelate, who had ſo often injoin'd that Goſpel Virtue of Forgiveneſs to others, found it a difficult Task to put it in Practice himſelf.

After this the *Bulgarians* began to threaten the Empire with a War, and having form'd a powerful Army made an Irruption into *Thrace*; and the *Romans*, on the other ſide, carry'd the War into *Bulgaria*, which was manag'd for ſome time with various Succeſs; 'till both Parties at length grown weary, a Peace was once more eſtabliſh'd between 'em.

The Death of Othoman, *firſt King of the* Turks.

Some time before this dy'd *Othoman*, the firſt King of the *Turks*, who laid the Foundation of the *Turkiſh* Empire in *Bithynia*, and is ſaid never to have attempted any Town in vain but *Nice* and *Philadelphia*. The Domeſtick Quarrels among the *Greeks* in his time greatly contributed to his Succeſs, tho' he was a wiſe, valiant, and generous Prince, but deceitful, deſigning, and ambitious. His Reign was long and glorious; he dy'd in the Year 1326, when he had liv'd ſixty nine Years, and reign'd upwards of twenty eight. Beginning his Conqueſts with an handful of Vagabond Rebels, he ſubdu'd many Provinces in the leſſer *Aſia*, and ſeveral Sultans of his Nation, leaving his Son *Orchanes* Maſter of great Part of *Cappadocia*, and *Bithynia*, to which he afterwards added other Conqueſts of no leſs Conſideration.

Othoman being dead, the Chriſtians recover'd ſeveral Forts and Caſtles from the *Turks* in *Aſia*, in which he had not Time to eſtabliſh a regular Government before his Death. Of which when *Orchanes* was advertis'd, having ſecur'd to himſelf the Succeſſion, and happily compos'd his Affairs at home, he march'd with his Forces againſt the Chriſtians, and driving 'em out of their late Conqueſts, inveſted the City of *Nice*, for the Relief of which the Emperor paſs'd over into *Aſia*, and engaging with the *Turks* receiv'd a Defeat from 'em, and was himſelf wounded in the Foot, which prov'd afterwards the Occaſion of a ſhameful Retreat. For *Orchanes* having in the late Engagement made Tri-

The Chriſtians defeated by the Turks.

al of the Christians Strength and Courage, left three hundred Horse to watch their Motions, whilst he retir'd farther into the Country with the rest of his Army, to seize on such Places from whence he might the better incommode the Enemy during their March. That Night the Emperor remov'd to a little Town near the Camp call'd *Philocrene*, there to be cured of his Wound; whereupon some of the old Emperor's Friends who were then in the Army confidently reported that he was fled, whilst others proceeded farther, and said he was dead of his Wound. At which the Soldiers, who thought themselves left as a Prey to the *Turks*, provided every Man for his own Safety; so that the three hundred *Turks*, perceiving the shameful Flight of the Christians in the Morning, possess'd themselves of their Camp, which some plunder'd, whilst others pursu'd their fugitive Enemies, and slew great Numbers of them, before they were able to convey themselves into any Place of Safety. The Emperor seeing his Army thus overthrown and broken, as by an invisible Power, took shipping, and return'd in great Anxeity to *Constantinople*. The *Turks* took all their Tents, many of their Horses, among whom were some belonging to the Emperor's own Stable, together with his Plate and other Furniture of great Value.

A shameful Flight.

A. D. 1329. After this the *Turks* seiz'd on many of the Sea-port Towns in *Bithynia*, and rais'd Contributions from the whole Country, once more threatning the City of *Nice*, the Garrison of which Place the Emperor had upon his Departure promis'd to reinforce with a thousand Horse. When *Orchanes* was inform'd of this, he arm'd eight hundred of his own Horse after the manner of the *Romans*, and fetching a great Compass march'd 'em into the high Road that leads from *Constantinople*; at the same time he detach'd three hundred more, arm'd like *Turks*, whom he order'd to forage and destroy the Country as near they could and within View of the City, whilst he with the eight hundred Horse pursu'd 'em in an hostile manner, and put 'em to Flight, in

Nice surpriz'd by the Turks.

fight

ſight of many of the Citizens, who from the Walls beheld the Action. When this was done they march'd directly to *Nice*, where they were gladly receiv'd by the Inhabitants, who took 'em for *Romans*; but being got within the Gates, and in an Inſtant join'd by the other three hundred, who were return'd from their pretended Flight, they quickly kill'd the Garriſon, and maſter'd the City.

The young Emperor being in great Danger of Death

The Imperial Miniſters at *Conſtantinople* were about that time in too great a Confuſion to find a Remedy for that unſpeakable Misfortune. The young Emperor had been ſeiz'd with ſo violent a Fit of Sickneſs at *Didymothicum*, occaſion'd by a great Cold he had taken in Bathing, that his Life was deſpair'd of, and all thoſe who had been inſtrumental in the late Revolution conſider'd with Horror the Condition they muſt be reduc'd to in caſe he dy'd, and the old Emperor was reſtor'd to his Power and Authority. The two Hiſtorians, *Gregoras* and *Cantacuzenus*, differ in nothing more throughout their Hiſtories, than the Account they have given us of the Behaviour of thoſe Miniſters upon this Occaſion. *Gregoras* ſaith, that *Cantacuzenus* and the other Favourites were ſo fearful of the old Emperor, tho' now grown Blind by Age and Misfortunes, for he had a long time mingled his Drink with Tears, and eaten the Bread of Sorrow, that they firſt thought of putting him to Death, and when they could not all agree upon that, they unanimouſly reſolv'd to force the Habit upon him, and make him become Monk; and that nothing might be wanting to render their Perſecution effectual, *Synadenus*, a Man of all others the moſt diſagreeable to the aged Prince, was choſen to execute this their Will and Pleaſure. *Synadenus* perform'd his Commiſſion with the inexorable Cruelty they deſir'd, and forc'd the unwilling Emperor at once to change his Condition and his Name, impoſing upon him that of *Antony*. On the other ſide *Cantacuzenus* ſaith, that the Emperor, fearing a ſeverer Uſage from his Proſecutors after the Death of his Nephew, voluntarily renounc'd

his Grandfather is forc'd to turn Monk,

nounc'd the World, and took the Habit upon him; adding, That the young Emperor upon his Recovery was much afflicted at it, as being desirous to restore the Imperial Authority to him, and that in the midst of his Sickness, when he despair'd of a Recovery, he earnestly desir'd to turn Monk himself; which if it be true, 'tis highly probable he was severely sensible of the notorious Injustice he had done his Grand-father, and thought, according to the Superstition of those Times, he might with more Impunity appear in that Habit before the last dreadful Tribunal. Whatever he design'd, he continu'd in the Empire, and his Grand-father dy'd not long after in a Monastery, in the seventy second, or as some will have it in the seventy fourth Year of his Age, just so many Days after a famous Eclipse of the Sun, which happen'd the thirtieth of *November* before, but did not continue so many, as *Gregoras* would have us imagine, or rather as others have imagin'd for him. He was, in the Beginning of his Reign, a slothful unthinking Prince, by which he suffer'd the *Turks* to gain several Advantages over him; nor was he throughly awaken'd towards the latter End, tho' continually alarm'd by his Domestick Calamities, seldom or never appearing in any great Enterprize himself, but executing all by his Ministers and Lieutenants. The greatest Enemy he had was him whom he had nourish'd in his Bosom, and indulg'd with too much Excess. It is not easie to determine who was the most to be condemn'd, he or his Grand-son, since neither *Gregoras* nor *Cantacuzenus* can be consider'd as impartial disinterested Writers. *Gregoras* was miss-led by his blind Obedience to the first, and *Cantacuzenus* by his avow'd Friendship to the latter. Tho' after all, that Man who has any Sense of Duty or Loyalty must conclude, if the one was faulty, the other was inexcusable. *Andronicus* dy'd in the fifth Year of *Philip* the Fair of *France*, the nineteenth of *Lewis* the *Bavarian* Emperor in the West, and seventh of *Edward* the Third of *England*,

A. D. 1332. *and dies.*

His Character.

A. D. 1332. In

In the mean time the *Turks* purſu'd their Conqueſts in *Aſia*, and the Emperor found himſelf ſo unable to contend with 'em, that by *Cantacuzenus* his Advice a Peace was concluded between the two Princes, by virtue of which the *Turks* were to remain in Poſſeſſion of all their late Conqueſts, and leave to the *Romans* the peaceable Enjoyment of what they had not yet wreſted from 'em. The *Turks* being by this means render'd Allies to the Empire, readily aſſiſted *Andronicus* in the Recovery of *Mytilene* and *Phocæa* from the *Genoeſe*, who were by this time grown ſo powerful at Sea, as to diſpute the Empire of it with the *Romans*.

Shortly after the *Theſſalians* revolted, and took up ſo much of this Emperor's Time in the Reduction of them, that the *Turks*, who obſerv'd the Peace no longer than it conduc'd to their Intereſt, firſt made a Deſcent into *Europe*, with a Deſign to ſettle there, without being ſo warily obſerv'd as they ought to have been by *Andronicus*; ſo that during this Emperor's Reign, and that of his Son, they exceedingly enlarg'd their Conqueſts, and in time left the Emperor no more of the Dominions of his Anceſtors than the City of *Conſtantinople*.

The Emperor was buſy'd in theſe Commotions, and ſome Diſputes in the Church, 'till the time of his Death, which happen'd in the thirteenth Year after the Expulſion of his Grand-father, the ninth after his Death, and forty fifth of his own Age, *A. D.* 1341. He was a Prince condemn'd by the generality of Hiſtorians of Ingratitude and Ambition, knowing better how to obtain an Empire by his Artifices, than govern it as he ought when obtain'd. However he is as much to be commended for his extraordinary Friendſhip to his faithful Servant and Counſellor *Cantacuzenus*, as he is worthily condemn'd for his unnatural Rebellion againſt his Grand-father, which in ſome meaſure may be owing, rather to the Inſtigation of others, than his own Inclinations. Tho' after the Death of his Father he found

Andronicus III. *dies* A. D. 1341.

His Character.

found himſelf unavoidably engag'd in the greateſt Affairs of State, yet is he ſaid to have been ſo much addicted to Hunting, and other Rural Exerciſes, that he conſtantly maintain'd no leſs than fifteen hundred Dogs, and above a thouſand Hawks, for his own Recreations.

Phranz. l. 1. c. 12.

JOHN PALÆOLOGUS.

The late Emperor had two Sons by his laſt Wife *Ann*, the Eldeſt of which, call'd *John*, being at his Death little more than nine Years of Age, *Cantacuzenus* was declar'd his Guardian during his Minority, and Protector of the Empire; tho' much againſt the Will and Approbation of the Patriarch, who thought himſelf more worthy that honourable Charge, which gave occaſion to many Factions in the Court, and introduc'd new Troubles in the Empire. The deceas'd Emperor being bury'd with the uſual Solemnity, *Cantacuzenus* earneſtly endeavour'd to reſtrain the great Officers within the Bounds of their Duty, and diligently provided for the Security of the Provinces: But he was in nothing more ſedulous than his Court to the Empreſs, and his Care of the young Emperor and his Brother. Notwithſtanding which the Patriarch, who was a proud ambitious Prelate, omitted no Opportunity of rendring him ſuſpected to the Princeſs, and by that means ſtudy'd to make him weary of his Charge. He repreſented him as a Man of dangerous Deſigns, who had nothing leſs than the Imperial Dignity in view, at the ſame time that he pretended a profound Veneration for the Memory of the deceas'd Prince, and an entire Submiſſion to the Empreſs and her Children. *Cantacuzenus* either thought the buſie Patriarch would prove too great an Obſtacle to his ſecret Deſigns, or was ſo ſenſibly offended at his unjuſt Calumnies, that he once thought of quitting the State, and retiring to a private Life; nor could the Empreſs reconcile him to the Court, 'till he had obtain'd a Promiſe from her, that for the future ſhe would reſt fully ſatisfy'd of his Integrity, and keep her Ears ſhut to the malicious Informations of his Ene-

The Patriarch an Enemy to Cantacuzenus.

mies,

mies. This the Empreſs readily promis'd, tho' even then thoſe two great Perſons began to entertain mutual Diſtruſts of each other, which gave Birth to thoſe Miſchiefs which follow'd ſhortly after. For the Factions in Court encreas'd every Day, and the Patriarch endeavour'd to foment the Diviſions, by recommending ſuch to the Empreſs's Favour and Service, as he knew were diſaffected to *Cantacuzenus*, and would be ready on all Occaſions to engage againſt him. Theſe Perſons continually alarm'd the Princeſs with the Dangers ſhe was to apprehend from the Protector, how careful ſhe ought to be of her own Safety and that of her Children, and with Tears conjur'd her to provide for their mutual Security; 'till at length they wrought ſo powerfully upon her, who being a Woman was naturally timerous and diſtruſtful, that in *Cantacuzenus* his Abſence, who was then at *Didymothicum*, ſhe order'd his Mother and ſome of his deareſt Friends and Relations to be confin'd, and proceeded to a Confiſcation of their Eſtates, behaving her ſelf like one who look'd on *Cantacuzenus* as her mortal Enemy, and left no room for a Reconciliation. She firſt commanded him to reſign his Office, which when he refus'd, ſhe declar'd him an Enemy to the State, and proclaim'd him Traitor.

occaſions a Civil War.

Cantacuzenus was highly incens'd at theſe Proceedings; and perceiving his Enemies aim'd at nothing leſs than his Life, that a War was unavoidable, and that therefore he ought to provide for his own Defence, he liſten'd to the Perſuaſions of thoſe who told him he would do a great piece of Service to the Publick, and bring the War to a ſpeedy Iſſue, if he ſuffer'd himſelf to be adorn'd with the Imperial Purple. He had at that time with him ſeveral Perſons of the greateſt Authority in the Empire, and ſaw himſelf at the Head of a powerful Army, which he had rais'd to chaſtiſe the *Servians*, who ſince the Death of the late Emperor had broken the Peace, and infeſted the Borders, and there-

Cantacuzenus *declar'd Emperor.*

fore

fore made no doubt but he ſhould be able to maintain himſelf in that Dignity, to which his own Ambition did not ſo much invite him, as the Perſecution of his Enemies forc'd him to aſſume.

When the News of this was brought to *Conſtantinople*, the Patriarch and his Adherents exceedingly valu'd themſelves for their extraordinary Foreſight. *Cantacuzenus* his Mother was committed to a more ſevere Reſtraint, his Eſtate was confiſcated, and his Wealthy Subſtance apply'd to the Maintenance of that War which now became unavoidable. This is the Account *Cantacuzenus* has given us of this Affair himſelf, with which other Hiſtorians agree in Subſtance, and rather accuſe his Enemies of that Uſurpation, to which they forc'd him, than himſelf.

Cantacuzenus, having thus aſſum'd the Imperial Ornaments, endeavour'd to vindicate himſelf from the Aſperſion of his Enemies, in a long Speech to the chief of the Nobility and Officers in the Army. He gave ſuch Soldiers Leave to depart as had their Families in the Towns and Cities ſubject to thoſe againſt whom he was now engag'd in a War, leſt they ſhould be ill treated for his ſake, and then proceeded to new model and form the reſt of his Army, and prepare for his Defence. *Adrianople* was the firſt City in thoſe Parts which refuſs'd to acknowledge him for Emperor, the Inhabitants of which Place, having laid hold on ſuch as they knew were affected to him, ſent 'em bound to *Conſtantinople*, and call'd the *Bulgarians* in to their Aſſiſtance; at whoſe Approach moſt of the Cities that had before declar'd for him ſhifted Parties, and ſided with *Paleologus*, which prov'd of great Prejudice to his Affairs. Whereupon, the better to ſupport himſelf, he enter'd into a Treaty with the *Turks* and *Myſians*, which prov'd of great Uſe to him in the Courſe of the War. And that nothing might be wanting to put a Stop to the Miſeries of the State, he ſent a Letter to *John* the Patriarch full of Chriſtian Exhortations to Peace; but his

his Meſſenger was ſo ill receiv'd at *Conſtantinople* that they threw him into Priſon, and kept ſo vigilant an Eye over the Empreſs that ſhe had not the Power left to accommodate Matters, tho' upon good Grounds ſhe earneſtly deſir'd it. Having proceeded thus far, they Crown'd the young Emperor with great Pomp at *Conſtantinople*, and the Patriarch in a ſolemn Aſſembly excommunicated *Cantacuzenus*, and all his Adherents. Thoſe of his Relations who had not the good Fortune to eſcape at the Beginning of the War were cruelly murder'd by *Apocauchus*, who had for a long time profeſs'd an Enmity to *Cantacuzenus*, for no other Reaſon but becauſe he was a Man of greater Power, and better affected to the State than himſelf. This Man at firſt behav'd himſelf with ſome Moderation, but when he found the Breach widen'd, and the Faction confirm'd againſt *Cantacuzenus*, he then pull'd off the Mask, and appear'd the Head of the Party. That he might ſhow the World what they were to expect from him, he us'd *Cantacuzenus* his Mother with the greateſt Barbarity, tho' ſhe was a Woman of Illuſtrious Birth, and as deſerving as any of her Sex. He appointed her Keepers the moſt diſſolute, and void of all Humanity, who were continually railing at her Son in her Hearing during the War; pretending ſometimes an Account was brought that he was taken Priſoner, at others that an Expreſs came with Advice of his being kill'd in Fight, that his Head was ſent to Court, of which the Villains promis'd to make her a Preſent. Having by this Uſage, and other Cruelties, thrown her into a violent Feaver, *Apocauchus* would ſuffer no Phyſician to adminiſter to her; and when the Empreſs, hearing of the Danger ſhe was in, order'd her own Phyſician to attend her, the Patriarch and his Accomplices, having firſt terrify'd him with bitter Menaces, made him ſolemny ſwear he would preſcribe nothing ſhould do her any good. By theſe Practices the unhappy Lady dy'd ſhortly after for want of Help: Of which when the

His Offers for a Peace rejected;

and the young Emperor crowned at Conſtantinople A. D. 1350.

Empreſs

Empreſs was inform'd, and of the great Miſeries ſhe had undergone, ſhe ſeverely reprov'd 'em for their Barbarity, but had not the Power to reſent it as ſhe ought, for they govern'd all with an abſolute Authority; and when by her repeated Importunities ſhe would have forc'd 'em to ſend to *Cantacuzenus*, and make ſome Overtures for an Accommodation, they diſpatch'd Creatures of their own, who returning reported *Cantacuzenus* was ſo far from liſtning to any Terms for a Peace, that he had declar'd, if he prevail'd in the War he would puniſh the Empreſs and her Children indeed no farther than by putting 'em immediately to Death; but as for the Patriarch and his Aſſociates, he would firſt have 'em whip'd like Vagabonds round his Camp, and when he had loaden 'em with all the Indignities his Wrongs could ſuggeſt, he would then make 'em end their Days under moſt inſufferable Torments. By this Device they were able to juſtifie the War which they proſecuted with ſo much Vigour; and *Apocauchus* having made *Andronicus* and *Thomas Palæologi* Generals of the Land-Forces, at a prodigious Expence mann'd out a Fleet of ſixty Ships, the Command of which he took upon himſelf, and very much embarraſs'd *Cantacuzenus* his Affairs, for he prevented his Reception into *Theſſalonica*, where *Cantacuzenus* had a Party that endeavour'd to betray the Town into his Hands, and frighten'd others from expreſſing their Affections to him.

Cantac. After this the *Zealots*, for ſo our Author calls thoſe that continu'd firm to the young Emperor *Palæologus*, prevail'd on every ſide, and *Cantacuzenus* was reduc'd to the laſt Extremity, and forc'd to fly to *Crales*, Prince of the lower *Myſia*, for Aid, who receiv'd him with much Honour, admir'd him for the Greatneſs of his Soul, and Patience in his Calamities, and gave him the Aſſiſtance he deſir'd; after which his Party recover'd Strength, and the Heads of the contrary Faction were greatly diſcourag'd; this made way for Propoſals for a Peace, to which *Cantacuzenus* always declar'd himſelf well

well inclin'd, and once offer'd to quit the Imperial Purple upon such Conditions as they ought gladly to have embrac'd, had not their own Guilt and Enmity to him out-weigh'd all other Considerations.

After this he gain'd several other extraordinary Advantages over 'em, and grew in time so considerable, that *Orchanes*, the *Turkish* Sultan, desir'd his Daughter in Marriage, to which after some Deliberation *Cantacuzenus* condescended, which ty'd the *Turks* firmer to his Service, and render'd him more terrible to his Enemies. In the mean time the Chief of the *Zealots*, perceiving they were unable to suppress him by open Force, had Recourse to Treachery, and prevail'd with *Monomachus*, a *Constantinopolitan*, who upon the Assurance of a considerable Reward undertook to Poison him. Accordingly he went to *Cantacuzenus*, lying then at *Selybria*, and with a feign'd Compunction confess'd what he had undertaken against him, but that being touch'd with the Horror of the Fact, he came to assure him his Life for the future should be as dear to him as his own; and to manifest the Truth of what he asserted, he produc'd the Poison he was to have administer'd to him. *Cantacuzenus* was highly pleas'd at the Freeness of his Confession, and gave him several rich Presents, to encourage him to be his Friend for the future. By this means *Monomachus* obtain'd such a degree of his Favour and Trust, that he had infallibly poison'd him with another Drug conceal'd for that purpose, had not *Cantacuzenus* his Friends at *Constantinople* privately advertis'd him of the Danger he was in.

Orchanes *the* Turk *marries* Cantacuzenus *his Daughter.*

Cantacuzenus having thus narrowly escap'd the Snare, was inform'd not long after that several of his Friends were contriving how to admit him into *Constantinople*, among whom were some of those who had join'd with the *Zealots*, and acted with the greatest Vigour against him, but perceiving the Heads of the Party had private sinister Designs in all they did, that they were no longer able to carry on the War effectually against *Canta-*

A. D. 1347.

cuzenus, and yet would by no means be perſuaded to embrace a Peace, they thought the readieſt way to put an End to the Calamities of their Country, was to aboliſh the Authority of thoſe Men, which would quickly determine if *Cantacuzenus* could be receiv'd for Emperor in *Conſtantinople*; for by this time moſt of the other Cities, which had not yet been conquer'd by the *Turks*, had ſubmitted to him. Wherefore they diſpatch'd a Perſon, who for his Experience and Fidelity was fit to be entruſted with a Buſineſs of that Moment, who inform'd *Cantacuzenus* of what was in Agitation within the City for his Service, and inſtructed him how he was to aſſiſt his Friends, by a Conformity to their Deſigns without; and he, when he had been ſufficiently inſtructed by that faithful Agent, broke up from *Selybria*, and retir'd to *Adrianople*, that thoſe of the contrary Faction might have no Cauſe to ſuſpect what was tranſacting among 'em in his Behalf. It happen'd about the ſame time that the *Zealots* were at Variance among themſelves, which may chiefly be attributed to the cruel, imperious Humour of the Patriarch, by which he had diſoblig'd the Empreſs her ſelf, whoſe Zeal for the Peace and Welfare of the Church was upon all Occaſions very remarkable, eſpecially at this time, when ſeveral Diſorders had crept into it, during theſe popular Tumults and civil Combuſtions. Whereupon the Empreſs ſummon'd a Synod of Biſhops, in order to enquire into the Patriarch's Conduct, and call him to an Account for his late illegal and tyrannical Proceedings againſt the Biſhops and Monks. 'Twas in that Conjuncture that the Empreſs was inform'd of *Cantacuzenus* his Deſigns upon the City, to which ſhe gave little Credit, as conceiving 'twas only a Report rais'd by the Patriarch's Friends on purpoſe to defeat the Inquiſition form'd againſt him. This contributed very much to *Cantacuzenus* his Admiſſion, and he was receiv'd by his Friends at the Time appointed, who in the Night forc'd open one of the Gates, and, being ſhortly after join'd by the Generality of the People,

Cantacuzenus *receiv'd into* Conſtantinople.

People, with an universal Shout saluted him Emperor. The Empress at first secur'd her self very strongly in the Palace, and refus'd to admit of any Accommodation, 'till the young Emperor himself, who had an Understanding uncommon to one of his Years, perceiving that they who pretended to be his Friends and Protectors disagreed among themselves, and that neither he nor his Mother could long be safe from the Fury of the Mob, if they did not comply, earnestly entreated her to trust to the Generosity of *Cantacuzenus*, rather than expose her self to the incens'd Multitude; whereupon both Sides came to an Agreement, by virtue of which *Cantacuzenus* was confirm'd *Palæologus* his Colleague in the Empire, and had the sole Administration of Affairs conferred upon him for ten Years, the young Emperor being then but fifteen Years of Age, after which he was to be equal in Authority with him. An Act of Oblivion pass'd on all sides, and they both agreed to be common Fathers of their People. *A Peace concluded.*

This happy Agreement put an end to a War which had rag'd for five Years within the Bowels of what remain'd to the *Roman* Empire, occasion'd the Loss of much Blood and Treasure, and gave the *Turks* an Opportunity in the mean time of settling themselves in *Europe*, and laid the Foundation of those unexpressible Calamities, with which all Christendom at length was visited.

Cantacuzenus, having been formerly Crown'd at *Adrianople*, was again Crown'd with much Solemnity by the Hands of *Isidore*, the new Patriarch of *Constantinople*. And to the end a perfect Union might be settled between him and the House of the *Palæologi*, he gave his Daughter *Helena* within a few Days after to the young Emperor, and order'd her to be Crown'd likewise. Tho' he did all that his long Experience and Conversation in the Affairs of State could suggest to him, for the Establishment of himself and his Family in the Authority, to which with so much Difficulty *The young Emperor marries* Cantacuzenus *his Daughter.*

he had attain'd, yet the Cares of illegal Power ſate heavy upon him, and at length entirely oppreſs'd him. During the late War he had been extraordinarily aſſiſted by *Orchanes* the *Turk*, who had a high Eſteem for him, had marry'd one of his Daughters, and now came to viſit him. This ſtrict Alliance, and unuſual Intimacy between two Princes of a different Faith, appear'd very ſcandalous to the Pope, and other Chriſtian Princes: At this *Cantacuzenus* was much concern'd, and by his Ambaſſadors ſent to *Clement* VI. at that time Biſhop of *Rome*, made ſo handſom an Excuſe, ſhow'd himſelf ſo ready to engage in a War againſt the Infidels, and willing to reconcile himſelf to the *Romiſh* Communion, that the Pope highly commended him, and ſeem'd entirely ſatisfy'd with his Conduct. About this time he fell dangerouſly ill at *Didymothicum*, and the *Genoeſe* of *Galata*, having frequently deſir'd to enlarge their City, and been as often repuls'd, upon Suſpicion that their chief Deſign was, under that Pretence, to ſecure themſelves by a Wall, and defie the Emperor's Subjects, for whom they were already too ſtrong at Sea, took this Opportunity, and having ſet Fire to ſeveral Buildings in the Suburbs of *Conſtantinople*, they ſeiz'd on all the Emperor's Ships that rode then in the Harbour; after which they gain'd ſeveral Advantages over him at Sea, and in the end prov'd the moſt dangerous Enemies *Cantacuzenus* had to contend withal. For ſhortly after the young Emperor, who was retir'd with his Mother to *Conſtantinople*, began to liſten to the Inſinuations of thoſe about him, who repreſented to him *the inſatiable Ambition of* Cantacuzenus, *who, having left him no more than the Name of Emperor, and uſurp'd the Supream Power to himſelf, was now labouring to tranſmit it down to his Poſterity.* They bid him *reflect on his preſent Condition, how he liv'd like an Exile, expos'd either to the Incurſions of the Barbarians, who in a manner had all* Thrace *at their Devotions, or the Dangers of popular Inſurrections.* They advis'd him *to remember*

The young Emperor perſuaded to renew the War.

member he was an Emperor, and to assert the Honours of his House; concluding that *the longer he sate patient under his Injuries, the more insupportable they would grow, and the less unable would he be to remove 'em.*

These Men had undertaken this Office at the Instigation of *Orales*, who having broken the League concluded betwixt him and *Cantacuzenus*, had entertain'd and irreconcileable Aversion to him, and promis'd these his Pensioners in the young Emperor's Court liberal Rewards, if by their Artifices they could renew the War between the two Princes; and *Palæologus*, whose native Simplicity and incorrupted Innocence made him judge of other Mens Integrity by his own, was too easily seduc'd by their crafty Insinuations. The principal Actors in this Affair were Men who heretofore had profess'd an inviolable Friendship to *Cantacuzenus*, which obtain'd 'em the easier Credit with the young Emperor, who upon that Consideration highly applauded 'em for their Loyalty to him. This Disaffection in *Palæologus* broke out shortly after into an open War, which was not throughly extinguish'd, 'till the young Emperor, assisted by the *Genoese*, *Cantacuzenus* his inveterate Enemies, had forc'd his Father-in-Law to quit the Imperial Dignity, which he did generously, and retire into a Monastery at the Foot of the Mountain *Athos*, where he took the Habit, and liv'd for several Years remov'd from the Noise and Vexations of the World, leaving behind him the History of his own Times, yielding in Beauty to none of the modern *Greeks*; tho' having had so large a Share in the Affairs of that Age himself, it is not to be wonder'd at if sometimes he disguis'd the Truth.

Cantacuzenus *turns Monk.* A. D. 1355.

He was undoubtedly a Man of a great Capacity, and unweary'd Application to publick Affairs, but had more of the Statesman than the Christian in him; as appears by his Alliance with the *Turks*, the profess'd Enemies to Christianity, who, according to the Historians of that Nation, first settled themselves in *Europe* during

the Diſputes between him and his Pupil *Palæologus*. He had a great Command over his Paſſions, and knew how to accommodate himſelf upon all Occaſions. His Wars were many, and for the moſt part fortunate, tho' not always juſt and honourable. By his Writings it appears that he knew how to render himſelf conſiderable either in a publick or a private Life, and that he loſt nothing of the Greatneſs of his Mind in his Retirement.

John Palæologus having thus remov'd his Competitor liberally rewarded the *Genoeſe*, who had been his great Friends and Confederates, marrying his Siſter to *Cateluſius*, or *Gateluz*, their General, and confirming 'em in the Poſſeſſion of the Iſle of *Lesbos*, to which they laid ſome Pretenſions, and made good whatever elſe had been at firſt concerted and agreed between 'em.

The Turks firſt Settlement in Europe.

About this time dy'd *Orchanes*, the ſecond King of the *Turks*, whoſe Son *Solyman*, a generous, valiant Prince, laid the firſt Foundations of their future Empire in *Europe*, ſeizing firſt on *Coiridocaſtron*, a ſmall Caſtle but ſtrongly ſituated, and purſu'd his Deſigns with ſo good Succeſs, that having ſpoil'd the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*, he at length ſeiz'd on *Gallipolis*, which he garriſon'd with a ſtrong Body of *Turks*, who there form'd their Preparations for their future Conqueſts; but *Solyman*'s Death, which happen'd not long after, haſten'd that of his Father, who dy'd in the Year 1356, and left his Son *Amurath* for his Succeſſor, who paſſing with a ſtrong Army over into *Europe*, and landing at *Gallipolis*, march'd from thence and took in moſt of the Towns of Conſequence in that Part of *Thrace*, call'd at preſent *Rumilia*, and at length conquer'd *Adrianople* it ſelf. Having thus with a prodigious Progreſs in a manner maſter'd all *Thrace*, he made *Adrianople* the Seat of his Empire in *Europe*, as the moſt proper for his farther Invaſions, and the Enlargement of his Dominions. *Palæologus*, in the mean time, was ſo far from attempting to oppoſe this victorious Invader, that he was glad

glad at laſt to receive a Peace from him, whilſt *Amurath* in the Pride of his Proſperity conſider'd the *Greek* Emperor as little other than his Vaſſal, as it appear'd at length by his Behaviour to him. For *Andronicus*, the Emperor's Eldeſt Son, having contracted an intimate Friendſhip with *Saux*, one of *Amurath*'s Sons, and being both impatient of Subjection, and ambitious above meaſure, they mutually conſpir'd the Death of their Fathers, as the only Means to ſecure and haſten their own Advancement. When this was diſcover'd to *Amurath*, he, after diligent Enquiry into the Matter, and plain Proof made againſt 'em, order'd his own Son's Eyes to be pluck'd out, and by Letters requir'd the Emperor to inflict the ſame Puniſhment on his Son, threatning if he refus'd, to oblige him to it by Force; with which the Emperor was ſo terrify'd, that he inſtantly obey'd, either for that he conſider'd he was unable to withſtand *Amurath*'s Forces, and therefore thought it imprudent to provoke him; or that he was afraid of a War, which of Neceſſity would divert him from his uſual Intemperance: For the Hiſtorian repreſents him as a Prince ſtupid and unactive, applying all his Time to amorous Amuſements, and glorying more in the Conqueſt of a beautiful Woman, than the Defence of his Subjects, and the Security of the State. *Andronicus*, together with his Son an Infant, being thus blinded by ſcalding Vinegar, was by the Emperor's Order thrown into Priſon, where he continu'd for two Years, at the end of which he made his Eſcape, and by the Aſſiſtance, as ſome ſay, of *Amurath* himſelf, but more probably, according to others, of the *Genoeſe* in *Galata*, he rais'd a War againſt his Father, whom he overthrew, and having forc'd his Way into *Conſtantinople*, caus'd himſelf to be proclaim'd Emperor, and threw his Father and two Brothers, *Manuel* and *Theodorus*, into Priſon; where they likewiſe continu'd for two Years, and then found Means of eſcaping to *Scutari*; Of which when *Andronicus* was inform'd, Ducas.

that Prince, abhorring the Calamities of a Civil War, under which the *Romans* had ſo lately groan'd, and of which he would now be eſteem'd the Author, ſent for his Father, and having receiv'd from him an Oath for his own Security, reſtor'd him to his Throne, and retir'd with his Wife and Son to *Selybria*, where the Emperor ſuffer'd him to reſide in Safety, and allow'd him a reaſonable Revenue for his Maintenance. Others ſay *Manuel*, *Andronicus* his Brother, made his Eſcape to *Bajazet*, who had lately ſucceeded his Father, with whom he contracted to hold the Empire as tributary to him, provided he would expel his Brother, and confirm him in the Succeſſion. This is contradicted as well by thoſe who make *Amurath* to have receiv'd *John Palæologus*, as by *Ducas*, from whom we learn that he dy'd ſome time before him, and that *Bajazet* held ſo hard a Hand over him, and impos'd ſuch diſhonourable Conditions upon him, that the helpleſs Emperor, who had a long time been afflicted with the Gout, which his diſordely Life had brought upon him, dy'd thro' Grief, leaving no Son living behind him but *Manuel*, who was then in *Bajazet*'s Court. The Truth is, the Accounts we have of the few following Emperors, and their Actions, are like the Words of dying Men, broken and imperfect, as if they ſimpathiz'd with the preſent Condition of the Empire, which began now to labour under its laſt Agonies.

The Death of John Palæologus A. D. 1387.

MANUEL PALÆOLOGUS.

Manuel, hearing of his Father's Death, poſted away immediately for *Conſtantinople*, without taking his Leave of *Bajazet*, or acquainting him with the Reaſons that call'd him ſo haſtily away: Of which when the Tyrant was inform'd, he ſeverely puniſh'd thoſe Officers that ſuffer'd him to eſcape, and paſſing with great Expedition out of *Bithynia* into *Thrace*, he deſtroy'd all the Cities and Towns adjoining to *Conſtantinople*; and having over-ran all *Theſſaly*, *Macedon*, and *Bulgaria*, he ſate down before the Imperial City, which he cloſely beſieg'd both by Sea and Land. This Torrent of Succeſs

Conſtantinople *beſieged by* Bajazet.

ceſs provok'd the Chriſtian Princes in the Weſt to enter into a League againſt him, and *Sigiſmond* King of *Hungary* paſs'd the *Danube* at the Head of more than one hundred and thirty thouſand Men, and falling into the *Turkiſh* Dominions, recover'd *Vidine*, with other Places of Conſequence in *Bulgaria*, after which they laid cloſe Siege to *Nicopolis*. When *Bajazet* was inform'd of this, and the Danger *Nicopolis* was in, he inſtantly rais'd the Siege, and having join'd all his Forces, march'd with wonderful Expedition, and gave the Chriſtians Battel, killing or taking Priſoners moſt of that numerous Army, and then return'd to renew the Siege of *Conſtantinople*. When he had lain before it for ſome time, and perceiv'd that tho' the Citizens labour'd under all the Difficulties which uſually attend a Siege, they continu'd reſolute to hold it out to the laſt, he hop'd to maſter the Town by ſowing Sedition among the Inhabitants. *John*, the Son of *Andronicus*, of whom we had Occaſion to make Mention before, ſtill reſided at *Selybria*, whom *Bajazet* thought a proper Inſtrument, if he could make him ſubſervient to his Deſigns. Wherefore having enter'd into a private Agreement with him, he declar'd him Emperor, as being the Son of *Andronicus*, *Manuel*'s Elder Brother, propoſing to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, that provided they would drive *Manuel* out of the City, and receive his Nephew *John*, he would then withdraw his Army, and abſtain from all Hoſtilities. This created a Diviſion among the Inhabitants, who began to murmur and complain of the Hardſhips they ſuffer'd; which when *Manuel* obſerv'd, and that ſome demanded in high Terms for the Admiſſion of *John*, he writ to his Nephew, being at that time in the *Turkiſh* Camp, and promis'd to open the Gates, and relinquiſh the Sovereignty to him, upon Condition he might have Liberty to depart with his Wife and two Sons, and be tranſported in a Veſſel provided for that purpoſe to whatever Place he ſhould think fit; for being a Prince of a tender compaſſionate

His Deſigns upon the City

Tem-

Temper, he thought it prudent to give way to Neceſſity, and for the preſent eaſe his Subjects of the Calamities under which they groan'd, and leave the reſt to Providence, concluding that he might be better able to provide for the Safety of the City, which he ſaw ready to be devoured by the *Turks*, in his Abſence, than if he ſtaid in Perſon to defend it. Wherefore having receiv'd the Security he expected from *John*, he reſign'd the Imperial Crown to him, and departed firſt to *Venice*, and from thence to ſeveral other Courts in *Europe*, to ſollicit Aid againſt the *Turks*, whoſe growing Power began now to be a Terror to all Chriſtendom.

John, among other Things, had agreed to reſign *Conſtantinople* to *Bajazet*, in Conſideration whereof he was to have *Peloponneſus* granted to him with an independent Authority, and a perpetual Peace was concluded between him and the *Turks*. When *Manuel* was departed, and *Bajazet* ſent to demand a Performance of this Agreement from *John*, the Citizens of *Conſtantinople*, who had in the mean time receiv'd a ſeaſonable Supply of Proviſions and other Neceſſaries, abſolutely refus'd to comply; whereupon *Bajazet* prepar'd to force 'em to a Submiſſion, when he receiv'd Advice that *Tamerlane*, the victorious *Tartarian*, was threatning his Dominions in *Aſia* with an Invaſion. For the A. D. 1402. Princes of *Aſia*, being provok'd at *Bajazet*'s Cruelties, with which he had render'd himſelf deteſtable to all Mankind, apply'd themſelves to *Tamerlane* for a Redreſs; and that Prince having conquer'd *Parthia*, and made all the Eaſt to tremble, turn'd his Arms againſt *Bajazet*, and was now breaking into *Syria*, which diverted the Tyrant from his intended Deſigns againſt *Conſtantinople*, and call'd him to the Security of his own Dominions. Wherefore tranſporting himſelf with all Expedition to *Pruſa*, he there muſter'd his Forces, which were drawn thither in prodigious Numbers, as well out of the Eaſt as Weſt; with theſe he march'd againſt

baffled by Tamerlane *the* Tartar,

againſt *Tamerlane*, who gave him Battel in the Plains of *Angoria* in *Galatia*, on *Friday*, *July* 28, 1402, and having taken him Priſoner, led him through his Army on a Mule, as a Puniſhment for his exceſſive Pride, and then confin'd him like a wild Beaſt in a Cage, againſt which he daſh'd his Brains out the Year following; teaching all arrogant tyrannical Princes, how vainly they pride themſelves in the Confidence of their own Strength, and how much the Hand of Fate is above 'em.

who defeats him.

The Death of Bajazet.

When *Manuel* the Emperor, who lay then at *Methone*, was inform'd of the Death of *Bajazet*, who fell ſudden, as a Star ſeems to ſhoot from the Firmament, he remov'd from thence and return'd to *Conſtantinople*, where he was receiv'd with the univerſal Acclamations of the People, who being offended at *John*'s ſervile Compliance with the *Turks*, thruſt him from the Empire, and reſtor'd his Uncle.

Manuel, immediately upon his Reſtoration, hearing *Tamerlane* was coming to *Pruſa*, the Seat Royal of the *Othoman* Princes in *Aſia*, and Repoſitory of their immenſe Treaſures, the Spoils of almoſt half the Earth, he ſent his Ambaſſadors to wait his coming, and in his Name to thank him for the mighty Deliverance he had receiv'd by his means, and offer'd to ſubject himſelf and all his Dominions to his Deliverer and Protector. *Tamerlane* at his Arrival receiv'd the Ambaſſadors very graciouſly, but refus'd the Preſent, declaring he came not ſo far to Conquer, but to Reſtore, and that he deſir'd no other Reward for the Service he had the Happineſs to do their Maſter, but to be remember'd with Honour for it by Poſterity. After this theſe two Princes mutually viſited each other at *Pruſa* and *Conſtantinople*, where all the Expreſſions of Love, Friendſhip, Gratitude, and Reſpect paſs'd between 'em.

This great Overthrow of the *Turks* had like to have produc'd a total Diſſolution of their Kingdom, both in *Aſia* and *Europe*; for beſides thoſe Provinces which fell into the Hands of *Tamerlane* and his Captains, the reſt were

The diſtracted Condition of the Turks *Affairs.*

were dismember'd by several Competitors, who laid Claim to the Sovereignty; and tho' *Mahomet*, the first of that Name, was at length acknowledg'd King, yet his other Brothers, the Sons of *Bajazet*, pretending separately an equal Right to what all would enjoy, the War was continu'd with great Fury between 'em for ten Years together, during which *Manuel* the Emperor had time to breathe, and give some Ease to his distemper'd State, and so wisely manag'd the Divisions between the *Turks*, that they made their Court by turns to him, and gave him several Advantages. And tho' *Mahomet*, after much Blood shed on all sides, and the Death of his Brothers *Isa*, *Solyman*, and *Musa*, who lost their Lives in the Quarrel, made himself sole Monarch of the *Turks*, and at his Death left it to his Son *Amurath*; yet *Manuel*, assisted by other Princes of his Nation, supported an Impostor that call'd himself *Mustapha* the Son of *Bajazet*, who had been slain many Years before in the Wars with *Tamerlane*, by which means he was able to maintain his Quarrel for a considerable Time, and gave no small Trouble to *Amurath*; at which that haughty Prince was so provok'd, that having after much Difficulty suppress'd the Impostor, he in Revenge of the Affront laid close Siege to *Constantinople*; and the Emperor, to divert the Tyrant, in Conjunction with the King of *Caramania*, whose Sons had marry'd three of *Amurath*'s Sisters, countenanc'd another *Mustapha*, sirnam'd the Little, his younger Brother, who besieging *Nice* took it, together with several other Places in *Asia*, whither *Amurath* was forc'd to pass over to oppose him.

A. D. 1417, or 1419.

The Death of Manuel.

Shortly after this *Manuel* the Emperor dy'd, after a Reign of thirty Years, during which he had been Witness of many Revolutions, and struggled under a multitude of Difficulties, but at length enjoy'd a Tranquility, whilst his Neighbours were engag'd in Wars round about him. Towards the latter end of his Reign he was so broken with Age, that the Administration of publick

publick Affairs was committed to his Son *John*, who ſucceeded him in the Empire.

From the ſmall Account left us of this Emperor, we find that he was patient in Adverſity, and humble in Proſperity, exceeding grateful to his Friends, and no leſs generous to his Enemies whenever they fell into his Power. He was both a prudent and politick Prince, and like a skilful Phyſician at leaſt mitigated the Rigour of that Diſeaſe, which it was not in the Power of Art to cure. Some ſay he reſign'd the Empire to his Son *John Palæologus* in 1419, and aſſuming the Name of *Anthony*, took upon him the Religious Habit, living in a Monaſtery 'till the Year 1425. *His Character.* Onuphr.

John VI. ſirnam'd *Palæologus*, found the *Turks* ſo powerful, that he was glad to accept of ſuch a Peace as *Amurath* would condeſcend to give him: He not only quitted to him all the Towns lying upon the *Pontic*, *Meſembria*, *Derci*, and a few others which were able to withſtand the Force of the Conqueror's Arms excepted, but engag'd to pay him a Tribute of three hundred thouſand Aſpers yearly; a great Price for the peaceable Enjoyment of the poor Remains of the *Roman* Empire, which now contain'd little more than *Conſtantinople* it ſelf. JOHN VI.

Mannel, the late Emperor, had two Sons beſides *John*, the Elder of which was call'd *Theodorus*, who dy'd of the Plague, and the other *Andronicus*, whom he had made Governor or Deſpot of *Theſſalonica*, to which *Amurath* laid Claim, as having been formerly conquer'd by *Bajazet*; after whoſe Death it relaps'd again to the former Proprietors; who perceiving they were not able to maintain it againſt the invincible Power of the *Othomans*, deliver'd it up to the *Venetians*, which occaſion'd a long expenſive War betwixt them and the *Turks*, 'till in the end *Amurath* took it by Storm, in the Year 1429, or 1431, having firſt promis'd his Soldiers the Spoil of that capacious City, and the Inhabitants, Men, Women, and Children, for their Slaves. A. D. 1431. Theſſalonica *taken by the* Turks.

Nothing

Nothing could exceed the Calamities of this City, but thoſe that follow'd ſome Years after at *Conſtantinople*, which ſeem'd to be prefigur'd by theſe. The Holy Virgins, devoted to a Recluſe Life, became ſubject to the Luſt of the moſt libidinous Conquerors, and the noble Matrons fell a Prey to inſolent Vagabonds, and undiſtinguiſh'd Slaves. The declar'd Enemies of Jeſus Chriſt profan'd the Altar, robb'd the Churches of their ſacred Ornaments, and blaſphem'd God in the Sanctuary. Miſeries 'till then unheard of, and not now to be expreſs'd, fell like a Torrent upon the Head of a guilty impenitent People, whoſe obſtinate Iniquities and daily Provocations had forc'd the Divine Vengeance down to overwhelm 'em. When *Amurath* had thus, with the Inſolence of a victorious implacable Enemy, ſacrific'd the miſerable Inhabitants of *Theſſalonica* to his brutiſh Barbarity, and repeopled it with Subjects of his own Nation, he return'd to *Adrianople*, where he gave Audience to the *Venetian* Ambaſſadors, who, weary of the War, and afraid leſt he ſhould in the end tranſlate it into *Eubœa*, made Propoſals for a Peace, recommended with ſuch Conceſſions on their Parts that *Amurath* at length diſdain'd not to condeſcend to it, tho' he inſtantly directed his reſtleſs Arms againſt other Chriſtian Princes, by the Fertility of whoſe Countries he was allur'd, or enrag'd at their generous Love of Liberty.

A Peace concluded betwixt them and the Venetians.

A. D. 1438. This amazing Progreſs of the *Turks* gave *John* the Emperor great Reaſon to fear, that his petty Empire would at length become their Prey, unleſs he receiv'd timely Aſſiſtance from the *Latins*, in whom all his Hopes of Succours reſted, which made him ſeriouſly deſire the Union of the *Greek* and *Latin* Churches, as the only Means to effect it. Wherefore hearing a Council was to be celebrated at *Ferrara*, and being invited to it by *Eugenius* IV. Pope of *Rome*, he went thither in Perſon, attended by the Patriarch, the Clergy, and a long Train of *Gracian* Princes, and was magnificently receiv'd by the Weſtern Princes. At *Florence*,

to

to which, by reaſon of the Plague that rag'd at *Ferrara*, the Council was afterwards remov'd, the Union between the two Churches was effected, and ſubſcrib'd to by the Patriarch and the reſt of the Biſhops, who gain'd more by it than the Emperor, for they had liberal Penſions allow'd 'em for their Support, whereas he receiv'd nothing but uncertain Promiſes of Aſſiſtance hereafter, and had little Reaſon to expect the Performance.

Upon his Return he found his People little ſatisfy'd with what had been done, eſpecially when they heard that ſome of their Biſhops refus'd to ſubſcribe to the Decrees of their Council, 'till they had receiv'd the Mony they had bargain'd for before-hand, by that means publickly proſtituting their own Conſciences, their Religion, and the Truſt repos'd in 'em, for Gain. This Uneaſineſs in his Subjects, the Loſs of his Empreſs *Deſpina*, who dy'd during his Abſence in *Italy*, and the daily Encroachments of the *Turks*, were Calamities too inſupportable to one already broken with Age and the Gout, and haſten'd him to his Grave, after he had reign'd twenty four Years, and beheld the unavoidable Ruin of the Empire gathering at a Diſtance, and like Waves in a tempeſtuous Sea rolling on with an impetuous Courſe, ſtrengthning and enlarging it ſelf in its Approach. Tho' moſt Authors agree upon the Time that he reign'd, yet they differ as to the Year in which he dy'd, ſome placing his Death in the Year 1444, or 45, and others in 1448. He left the Shadow of the Empire, and the Cares that attend it, to his Brother *Conſtantine*, but the Subſtance was gone long before. His Dominions were almoſt included within the Walls of *Conſtantinople*, whither the Imperial Power and Authority retir'd, ſhining with a languid imperfect Light; as Life and Heat are driven frequently from the Members to the Head, of which at length they are diſpoſſeſs'd by Death.

John *the Emperor dies.*

CONSTANTINUS PALÆOLOGUS.

Amurath,

Amurath *dying is ſucceeded by* Mahomet *the Great.*

Amurath, the *Turkiſh* Sultan, did not long ſurvive the Emperor, but dying in the Year 1450, left his large Dominions to his Eldeſt Son *Mahomet*, whoſe Mother being the Prince of *Servia*'s Daughter, and a Chriſtian, the Chriſtians promis'd themſelves at firſt mighty Advantages from the Death of *Amurath*, but quickly found how much their Hopes had deceiv'd 'em. For *Mahomet* outwardly profeſs'd the Superſtitions of his Fathers, and declar'd himſelf an Enemy to Chriſtianity, tho' in reality he was of no Religion at all, but derided the Simplicity of thoſe who thought God concern'd himſelf with the Affairs of the World; and to give Mankind a terrible Inſtance of what they were to expect from him, he was no ſooner confirm'd in the Throne but he put his Brethren to Death. At firſt he enter'd into a League with the Emperor *Conſtantine*, but ſo ſoon as he had finiſh'd the *Caramanian* War, which detain'd him for ſome time in *Aſia*, he then paſs'd over into *Europe*; and having built a Fort, call'd by the *Greeks Naocaſtrum*, oppoſite to another in *Aſia* call'd *Aſprocaſtron*, or the White Caſtle, by which means he had a perfect Command of thoſe Streights, and was able to curb *Conſtantinople*, from whence this Caſtle was but five Miles diſtant, and interrupt the Trade which the Merchants of *Venice*, *Genoa*, and *Conſtantinople* drove at *Corfu*, he then thought it in his Power to take that City, ſo often attempted by his Predeceſſors, who after long Sieges had been forc'd to riſe from it with Diſhonour.

The Citizens of *Conſtantinople* were exceedingly concern'd at this Undertaking, conceiving, upon good grounds, that it was deſign'd for their Deſtruction; wherefore the Emperor ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Mahomet* to expoſtulate the Matter with him, to repreſent to him the Injuſtice of the Attempt, and if poſſible to divert him from it. But the arrogant Tyrant was ſo far from complying, that he threaten'd to pull his Skin over the Ears of any other that ſhould be ſent to him upon that

that Errand, and proceeded on in the Work, which in the Beginning of the Spring was finiſh'd; after which he ſent his Troops abroad, who ſcour'd the Country up to the very Gates of the City, which the Emperor by a provident Care had before ſupply'd with Plenty of Proviſions, and other Neceſſaries requiſite to a Siege. And at the ſame time he ſent to deſire Aid from the Pope, and the other Chriſtian Princes, who notwithſtanding, miſs-led by a ſtrange Infatuation, ſuffer'd the City to become a Prey to the *Turks*, whilſt they ſate ſtill as idle Spectators, or were wholly employ'd in petty Quarrels among themſelves.

In the Beginning of the Year 1453, a Year fatally memorable to all Chriſtendom, *Mahomet* march'd from *Adrianople* at the Head of three hundred thouſand Men, *Bulgarians*, *Servians*, *Macedonians*, *Germans*, *Bohemians*, *Hungarians*, and even *Greeks* having liſted themſelves under him; it being always the Policy of the *Mahometan* Princes to allure Chriſtians to fight againſt their Brethren, and to turn their unnatural Arms againſt themſelves. To theſe were added his effeminate Soldiers of *Aſia*, his natural *Turks* and *Janizaries*, in Number fewer, in Quality inferior, and yet they commanded all the reſt. With this Army, well appointed with all warlike Proviſion, *Mahomet* came, and on the ninth of *April* encamp'd before *Conſtantinople*, covering with his numerous Troops all the main Land before the City, from the ſide of the *Boſphorus* to the Haven, which the River, running far up into the Land, makes between *Pera* and *Conſtantinople*. The *Aſiaticks* were plac'd on the Right Hand towards the *Boſphorus*; the *Europeans* lay on the Left, extending to the Haven, and the Sultan himſelf was planted with fifteen thouſand *Janizaries* and other Guards over-againſt the Heart of the City, and in the Middle between both. His Admiral at the ſame time brought a Fleet conſiſting of thirty Gallies, two hundred ſmall Ships, and other leſſer Veſſels mann'd with *Turkiſh* Archers, who were more

A. D. 1453.

who lays Siege to Conſtantinople.

The Strength of the Besieg'd.

for Shew than Service. The Emperor on the other side had no more than Seven great Ships belonging to the *Genoese*, with three *Cretan* Gallies, as many from *Venice*, and two Galliots, and a few other small Vessels of *Chios*, all which came thither upon the Account of Trade, and by Chance rather than upon any Design of Service, for which they were not well provided. Besides the *Greeks* arm'd by the Emperor for the Defence of the City, he had entertain'd in his Service *Joannes Justinianus*, a *Genoese* Adventurer, who having been scouring those Seas came about that time to *Constantinople*, with two tall Ships, and four hundred bold, hardy, and experienc'd Soldiers. This Man, being of noble Descent, receiv'd a hearty Welcome from the Emperor, who made him Lieutenant-General of all his Forces, consisting of no more than six thousand *Greeks*, and three thousand Strangers, upon whose courageous Defence the Fate of his Empire depended.

The Progress of the Besiegers.

When *Mahomet* had assign'd each Part of his Army their several Quarters, and had in a manner surrounded the City both by Sea and Land, he planted his Batteries as near the Walls as possible, and rais'd great Mounts in several Places as high as the Walls themselves, from whence the Defendants were sorely gaul'd by the *Turkish* Shot. He had in his Camp a Piece of Ord'nance of a prodigious Size, drawn with much Difficulty by a hundred and fifty Yoke of Oxen from *Adrianople*, where it had been cast by an *Hungarian* Founder, who had formerly offer'd his Service to *Constantine*, from whom he met with so small Encouragement, that he fled over to *Mahomet* whilst he was busy'd in building his new Castle, who assign'd him so liberal a Pension, that for a Quarter of it he would have continu'd firm in the Emperor's Service. With this vast Piece *Mahomet* terribly shook the Walls, and made such Breaches, that the Defendants, who omitted no Part of their Duty, found it almost impossible to repair 'em. At the same time his Pioneers, directed by some fugitive Christians,

Chriſtians, had brought their Works to ſuch Perfection, that part of the Wall and a great Tower ſtanding upon it were entirely undermin'd, and there wanted nothing but the Tyrant's Direction for the blowing it up, when a *German* Captain call'd *Grandis*, a Man of great Experience in Services of that Nature, ſuſpecting the Enemies Deſigns, wrought a Countermine, and ſav'd the City for the preſent. This, and the vigorous Reſiſtance of the Defendants, prolong'd the Siege, and threw the Tyrant into a great Rage, which was aggravated when he beheld from Shore his whole Fleet worſted by four *Genoeſe* Ships laden with Men and Ammunition from *Chios*, and one belonging to the Emperor, freighted with Corn from *Sicily*. The *Turkiſh* Admiral at the firſt Sight of 'em was order'd to take 'em if poſſible, or at leaſt to prevent their joining the reſt of the Fleet which lay croſs the Haven, over which the Emperor had drawn a Chain from *Pera* to *Conſtantinople*, and plac'd the Fleet within it for the Security of the Harbour: But the *Turkiſh* Gallies being low built, their Crew, when ever they boarded one of thoſe tall Ships, fought with a mighty Diſadvantage; for the Chriſtians from on high thunder'd their Shot down upon 'em, and made a bloody Havock among 'em. *Mahomet* all the while beheld the whole Action from aſhore, and perceiving the unequal Fight, and prodigious Slaughter of his Men, he tore his Hair, blaſphem'd God, and with a blind headſtrong Fury ruſh'd into the Sea, as if the Waters were bound to bear him and his Horſe to his Fleet, and he by his ſingle Preſence was able to turn the Fortune of the Day; 'till inſtructed better by his Danger, he turn'd back, and fill'd the Air with loud Outcries, and direful Execrations. At length his Fleet, weary and diſabled, for they are ſaid to have loſt above ten thouſand Men, retir'd with Diſhonour, and all the Chriſtian Ships, except one which was ſunk, got ſafe into the Harbour; which when *Mahomet* perceiv'd to be ſo ſtrongly defended, that he could not

The Turkiſh Fleet worſted by five Chriſtian Ships.

Mahomet's inſolent Rage.

poſſibly force it, nor conſequently aſſault the City on that ſide, he enter'd upon a bold extravagant Deſign, of which none but a Soul large as his own could be capable. For having commanded all the Wood from behind *Pera* to the Haven of *Conſtantinople* to be fell'd, and the Ways mended as well as the Nature of the Ground would admit, he contriv'd certain Engines by the Aſſiſtance of a Renegado Chriſtian, who had ſeen ſomething like it practis'd before by the *Venetians* in the Lake of *Benaco*, with which he convey'd Eighty of his Ships with all their Sails flying, to the Admiration of thoſe who ſaw it, over Land, the Space of eight Miles, into the Haven of *Conſtantinople*, where the Chriſtian Gallies attempted to have burnt thoſe Veſſels, as they were launching 'em; but *Mahomet* had before planted ſeveral Pieces of great Ord'nance for their Defence, with which he ſunk the foremoſt of the Gallies, and forc'd the reſt to retire. Having thus got Poſſeſſion of the Haven, he caus'd a Bridge to be built over it with wonderful Labour and Expedition, by which means that Part of his Army which lay encamp'd near *Pera*, could paſs over to the Walls of *Conſtantinople*, and aſſault it on that ſide alſo.

who conveys 80 of his Ships 8 Miles over Land into the Haven.

The Behaviour of the Beſieg'd.

In the mean time the City was not in more Danger from her Enemies without, than her own Citizens, who were miſerably divided with Factions within; and 'tis wonderful to conſider how far that unhappy People were tranſported with a blind *Zeal* for Religion, at a time when they were ſurrounded with Dangers, and Deſtruction ſtood waiting at their Doors to devour 'em. The Diſputes relating to the Union with the *Latins* were grown by this time ſo high, that ſome of principal Authority in the City made no Scruple of declaring, they had rather ſee a *Turk*'s Turban than a Cardinal's Cap at *Conſtantinople*; by that means ſacrificing all that was dear to 'em, their Duty to their Country, their Intereſt, their Liberty, and that very Religion about which they with ſo much Heat contended, to their pri-

Duc. cap. 38.

vate

vate Animoſities, and ill-grounded Opinions: A ſtrange Infatuation, and a manifeſt Token that God in his Diſpleaſure had forſaken 'em.

During theſe Diſputes and Contentions, the Auxiliary Soldiers mutiny'd for want of Pay, and the Inhabitants refus'd to go upon the Walls, declaring they had no Courage to fight againſt the *Turks* in the Breaches, whilſt their Families ſtarved at home for want of Suſtenance. To remedy theſe two great Evils, after the poor Emperor had firſt with Tears in vain requeſted of his covetous Subjects to lend their Mony for the Defence of the City, and they affirm'd with Oaths that they had none, but were reduc'd to extream Poverty for want of Trade, he was forc'd to convert the Plate and Jewels of the Church into Mony to ſatisfie his Soldiers, and commanded a View to be taken of all the Corn in the City, which upon diligent Search was found in great Abundance in private Mens Hands, who conceal'd it on purpoſe to make an unreaſonable Advantage of it; which however the Emperor now caus'd to be divided proportionably to every Family at a reaſonable Price, and ſilenc'd the Complaints of the People, who were by that means ſupply'd with more than the Time alloted 'em by Fate would ſuffer 'em to conſume.

Mahomet prepares for a general Storm.

For *Mahomet* having now prepar'd all Things neceſſary for a general Aſſault, the fatal Hour was approaching. The Report of the great Preparations the Princes were making in the Weſt for the Relief of the City, made it debated in a Council of War, whether the Siege was to be continu'd or rais'd. Some were of Opinion that the Army ought to break up and depart, without running the Hazard of a Defeat from the Chriſtians; but the Arguments of thoſe who were for the Continuance of the Siege agreed beſt with *Mahomet*'s Humour, whereupon the Day was appointed for a general Aſſault. *Haly Baſſa*, who had formerly been *Mahomet*'s Tutor, and was of the other Opinion, diſdaining

to have his Council rejected, and inwardly well inclin'd to the Christians, secretly advertis"d the Emperor of it; for which he was afterwards seiz'd by the Tyrant's Order, and carry'd in Bonds to *Adrianople*, where he was forc'd by exquisite Tortures to discover his Treasure, after which he was in his extream old Age put to Death.

The Emperor, fore-warn'd by this friendly Admonition, first recommended the Care of himself and the City to the Divine Protection, and then appointed every Man to his Post, for the Defence of the Walls; but because the City was so large that all Parts could not equally be defended by so small a Number as were the Besieg'd, the greatest Strength was plac'd for the Defence of the outer Wall, where a considerable Breach had been made by the Piece of Ord'nance before-mention'd. This *Justinian*, with three hundred *Genoese*, and a select Body of *Greeks*, undertook to defend, and the Emperor himself, with another Body well arm'd, was posted near him. Here they lay all Night, waiting for the Time when the Assault was to be given, and hearing with Astonishment a great Noise in the *Turkish* Camp, who were making Preparations for it. *Mahomet* had some time before offer'd 'em a Peace, but upon such Terms as he knew they would not accept, which was done either to try if they had Courage to hold out to the last Extremity, or to justifie all the Barbarities he was resolv'd to exercise against 'em, when he had master'd the City.

Early on the twenty ninth of *May Mahomet* detach'd a great Number of such as were least regarded by him to begin the Assault, who were design'd for no other purpose but to weary the Christians, before the Attack was begun by his more vigorous Assailants, who were twice or thrice repuls'd by the Besieg'd, but with fresh Courage they renew'd the Assault. During the Conflict *Justinian* receiv'd a Wound in his Arm, at which when he perceiv'd he bled apace, he with-

Justinian, the Emperor's General, wounded, retires;

withdrew from his Charge, without leaving any to command in his Room, and cauſing the *Roman* Gate to be open'd, which had been ſhut with the reſt by the Emperor's Order, that his Soldiers, obſerving there was no Way left for 'em to eſcape, might fight with a more deſperate Courage, he retir'd firſt into the City, and getting from thence to *Pera* he took Ship and ſail'd to *Chios*, where he finiſh'd his Life with more Ignominy, than he could have loſt it with Honour under the Walls of *Conſtantinople*.

The Soldiers, diſmay'd at their General's Retreat, and furiouſly aſſaulted by the *Janizaries*, quitted their Poſts in great Confuſion, and fled too, ſtriving to follow him in at the ſame Gate; whither they preſs'd in ſuch great Multitudes that eight hundred of 'em were trodden under foot, among whom was the Emperor himſelf, who, perceiving that neither his Words or Example could remove the Panick Fear which had ſeiz'd his Soldiers, fled with the reſt for Safety, and was preſs'd to Death.

and occaſions the Loſs of the City.

In the mean time the *Turks*, being animated with the Flight of the Chriſtians, advanc'd their Enſigns, and repeating with reiterated Shouts the joyful Sounds of Victory, ruſh'd in at the Breach, and like a Flood whoſe Fury had been long reſtrained, bore down all before 'em, killing ſuch as came in their Way, whether they ſubmitted, fled from 'em, or had the Courage to reſiſt. For conceiving, by the vigorous Defence they had made, there had been many thouſands more in the Place than there really were, they gave no Quarter, but fill'd the Streets with Blood and Horror. The Miſeries that hereupon enſu'd were ſuch as Eye hath not ſeen, nor Ear heard, neither has it enter'd into the Heart of Man to conceive, exceeding even thoſe *Jeruſalem* once felt, which are ſo lively repreſented by the diſconſolate Prophet, and to which all other Deſcriptions would be infinitely inferior. During the Heats which aroſe upon the Account of Religion, thoſe who

Duc. oppos'd a Conformity to the *Romiſh* Communion abſented from the great Church, as diſdaining to communicate with their Adverſaries; but now their Fears drove 'em, whither their Charity could not before lead or invite 'em. They ruſh'd thither in promiſcuous Crouds as to an *Aſylum*, but the Holy Sanctuary could afford no Protection to thoſe, who had forſaken God, and for that Reaſon were forſaken by him; for they were all ſlain without Pity, except ſome few reſerv'd by the barbarous Conquerors to Purpoſes more grievous than Death it ſelf. Whilſt ſome were buſy'd in profaning the Churches, and with impious Hands tore down and defac'd their Holy Ornaments, others equally barbarous forc'd their miſerable Captives, and with Torments 'till then uninvented, to diſcover the Treaſures thoſe unhappy Wretches had hid from the Emperor during the Siege, and which now appear'd ſo great that the *Turks* wonder'd at their Wealth, and at the ſame time derided their Folly, that poſſeſſing ſo much they beſtow'd ſo little in Defence of themſelves and their Country; and at this very Day, when a Man is obſerv'd to grow rich on a ſudden, the *Turks* ſay by way of Proverb, *He has been at the Sack of* Conſtantinople.

The Death of the Emperor.

Some ſay the Emperor was not preſs'd to Death, but that he, being accompany'd with *Theophilus Palæologus*, *Francis Comnenus*, *Demetrius Cantacuzenus*, and the reſt of the ſtouteſt among the Nobility, did more than could be well expected of a Man, to oppoſe the Inundation of the Barbarians, 'till he was forc'd to yield to their infinite Number; and when he ſaw all his Compa-

Duc. cap. 39.

nions kill'd, he cry'd out in a lamentable Tone, *What, is there no Chriſtian near me to cut off my Head?* And that one of the Enemy, who did not know him, wounded him in the Face, whilſt another came behind him, and ſtruck him dead; and that *Mahomet*, to honour the Courage of ſo great a Prince, commanded that all the Funeral Honours due to Emperors ſhould be paid him.

Thus

Thus dy'd *Conſtantine Palæologus*, the laſt Emperor of the *Greeks* in *Conſtantinople*, and had the unfortunate Honour of being accompany'd by the Empire in his Fall, after he had liv'd forty nine Years, and reign'd almoſt ten. He dy'd, as ſome of his Predeceſſors deſir'd to die, in Action, fighting with his Sword in his Hand for the Defence of his Country; like a ſecond *Moſes* ſtanding in the Gap, and endeavouring to avert the Divine Judgments from his People, but the Meaſure of their Iniquities was compleat, and the deſtroying Angel was ſent out againſt 'em. To refer private Calamities to the Sins of thoſe on whom they are inflicted is juſtly eſteem'd bold and uncharitable, but when God's Judgments are diſcharg'd in general upon a whole Nation, when the Upright periſh with the Wicked, and the Innocent with the Guilty, then it is lawful for us humbly to enquire what it was that forc'd the Divine Indignation down upon 'em, and to juſtifie the Decrees of Providence; and ſure the *Greeks* are equally an Inſtance to us of God's Mercies, and his Judgments. He had forborn 'em long, tho' they daily provok'd him by their Pride, their Impiety, and Uncharitableneſs; 'till at length he rais'd barbarous Nations up, who were firſt permitted to chaſtiſe, and when they ſtill continu'd in their Impenitency, then were they at laſt commanded to deſtroy 'em. They who reaſon thus upon this Diſſolution of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire, which has ſince prov'd ſo fatal to all Chriſtendom, are more to be commended than thoſe who aſcribe it to Cauſes, which ſavour more of Human Policy, and derogate from the Reſpect due to Divine Providence. This great Revolution happen'd in the ſeventh Year of *Nicholas* the Fifth, Pope of *Rome*; the thirty ſecond of *Charles* the Seventh of *France*, and thirty third of *Henry* the Sixth, King of *England*, *A. D.* 1453.

INDEX.

Duc. oppos'd a Conformity to the *Romiſh* Communion abſented from the great Church, as diſdaining to communicate with their Adverſaries; but now their Fears drove 'em, whither their Charity could not before lead or invite 'em. They ruſh'd thither in promiſcuous Crouds as to an *Aſylum*, but the Holy Sanctuary could afford no Protection to thoſe, who had forſaken God, and for that Reaſon were forſaken by him; for they were all ſlain without Pity, except ſome few reſerv'd by the barbarous Conquerors to Purpoſes more grievous than Death it ſelf. Whilſt ſome were buſy'd in profaning the Churches, and with impious Hands tore down and defac'd their Holy Ornaments, others equally barbarous forc'd their miſerable Captives, and with Torments 'till then uninvented, to diſcover the Treaſures thoſe unhappy Wretches had hid from the Emperor during the Siege, and which now appear'd ſo great that the *Turks* wonder'd at their Wealth, and at the ſame time derided their Folly, that poſſeſſing ſo much they beſtow'd ſo little in Defence of themſelves and their Country; and at this very Day, when a Man is obſerv'd to grow rich on a ſudden, the *Turks* ſay by way of Proverb, *He has been at the Sack of* Conſtantinople.

The Death of the Emperor.

Some ſay the Emperor was not preſs'd to Death, but that he, being accompany'd with *Theophilus Palæologus*, *Francis Comnenus*, *Demetrius Cantacuzenus*, and the reſt of the ſtouteſt among the Nobility, did more than could be well expected of a Man, to oppoſe the Inundation of the Barbarians, 'till he was forc'd to yield to their infinite Number; and when he ſaw all his Compa-

Duc. cap. 39. nions kill'd, he cry'd out in a lamentable Tone, *What, is there no Chriſtian near me to cut off my Head?* And that one of the Enemy, who did not know him, wounded him in the Face, whilſt another came behind him, and ſtruck him dead; and that *Mahomet*, to honour the Courage of ſo great a Prince, commanded that all the Funeral Honours due to Emperors ſhould be paid him.

Thus

Thus dy'd *Conſtantine Palæologus*, the laſt Emperor of the *Greeks* in *Conſtantinople*, and had the unfortunate Honour of being accompany'd by the Empire in his Fall, after he had liv'd forty nine Years, and reign'd almoſt ten. He dy'd, as ſome of his Predeceſſors deſir'd to die, in Action, fighting with his Sword in his Hand for the Defence of his Country; like a ſecond *Moſes* ſtanding in the Gap, and endeavouring to avert the Divine Judgments from his People, but the Meaſure of their Iniquities was compleat, and the deſtroying Angel was ſent out againſt 'em. To refer private Calamities to the Sins of thoſe on whom they are inflicted is juſtly eſteem'd bold and uncharitable, but when God's Judgments are diſcharg'd in general upon a whole Nation, when the Upright periſh with the Wicked, and the Innocent with the Guilty, then it is lawful for us humbly to enquire what it was that forc'd the Divine Indignation down upon 'em, and to juſtifie the Decrees of Providence; and ſure the *Greeks* are equally an Inſtance to us of God's Mercies, and his Judgments. He had forborn 'em long, tho' they daily provok'd him by their Pride, their Impiety, and Uncharitableneſs; 'till at length he rais'd barbarous Nations up, who were firſt permitted to chaſtiſe, and when they ſtill continu'd in their Impenitency, then were they at laſt commanded to deſtroy 'em. They who reaſon thus upon this Diſſolution of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire, which has ſince prov'd ſo fatal to all Chriſtendom, are more to be commended than thoſe who aſcribe it to Cauſes, which ſavour more of Human Policy, and derogate from the Reſpect due to Divine Providence. This great Revolution happen'd in the ſeventh Year of *Nicholas* the Fifth, Pope of *Rome*; the thirty ſecond of *Charles* the Seventh of *France*, and thirty third of *Henry* the Sixth, King of *England*, *A. D.* 1453.

INDEX.

INDEX.

A

ACacius, *Biſhop of* Amida, *his extraordinary Charity*, Vol. 3. Pag. 309

Actium, *ſee* Battel.

Adaulfus, *Brother to* Alarich, *defeated in* Italy, Vol. 3. p. 289. *made King of the* Goths, 297. *marries* Placidia, *Siſter to* Honorius, ibid. *makes* Attalus *Emperor a ſecond time*, 301. *ſlain by his own Subjects*, 302

Adrian *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 303, *his great Moderation*, 307. *perſecutes the Chriſtians*, 308. *his Journey*, 309. *his Exploits in* Britain, 310. *his Death*, 320

Æmilian *proclaim'd Emperor by the Soldiers*, Vol 2 p. 391. *his Death*, 392

Æmilius Paulus *his Actions in the ſecond* Macedonian *War*, Vol. 1. p. 228, 229

Æneas *his Arrival, and Settlement in* Italy, Vol. 1. p. 3

Ætius *eſpouſes the Intereſt of* John *the Uſurper*, Vol. 3. p. 313. *reconcil'd to* Placidia, 315. *impoſes upon her*, 316. *fights* Boniface, 319. *his Services in* Gaul, 326, 332. *fruſtrates the Deſigns of* Attila, 339. *relieves* Orleance, 341. *ſlain by* Valentinian's *Order*, 348

——*An Eunuch, his ambitious Practices againſt* Irene, Vol. 5. p. 3

Africk *conquer'd by the* Vandals, Vol. 3. p. 318

Afranius *and* Petreius, *their Wars againſt* Julius Cæſar, *and their Loſſes*, Vol. 1. p. 329, 330. *their Deaths*, 358

Agricola *his Exploits in* Britain, Vol. 2. p. 240, 241, 251. *his diſhonourable Reception by* Domitian, *and Retirement to a private Life*, 255

Agrippa Menenius, *ſee* Menenius.

Agrippa Vipſanius *beats young* Pompey, Vol. 1. p. 410. *and* Antony's *Forces at* Actium, 424. *his Speech to* Octavius *about laying down the Empire*, 440. *marries* Julia, Auguſtus's *Daughter*, Vol. 2. p. 16. *compleats the Conqueſt of* Spain, 19. *refuſes a Triumph*, 25. *his Death*, 26.

Agrippina *marry'd to the Emperor* Claudius, Vol. 2. p. 123. *her Deſigns for her Son* Nero, 127. *poiſons her Husband*, 129. *in Diſgrace with her Son*, 133. *ſhe is murder'd by his Order*, ibid.

Aigulf *choſen King of the* Lombards, Vol. 4. p. 249

Alacaſeus *his advantageous Stratagem*, Vol. 5. p. 235

Alani *makes an Irruption into the Empire*, Vol. 2. p. 223. *fix in* Spain, Vol. 3. p. 277

Alarich *prepares to invade* Italy, Vol. 3. p. 257. *beſieges* Honorius, 260. *defeated by* Stilicho, 261, 262. *makes a Peace with* Honorius, 263. *raiſes new Troubles*, 279. *lays Siege to* Rome, 287. *enters it*, 291. *takes* Rome *by Force*, 294. *dies at* Conſentia, 297

INDEX.

Alavivus *leads the* Goths *into* Thrace, Vol. 3. p. 167. *begins a War with the Empire*, 173

Albinus *created* Cæſar, Vol. 2. p 396. *his Overthrow and Death*, 401

Alboin, *King of the* Lombards, *enters* Italy, Vol. 4. p. 213. *where he is proclaim'd King*, 215. *takes* Pavia, 219. *aſſaſſinated*, 220

Alexander *created* Cæſar, Vol. 2. p. 441, *declar'd Emperor*, 444. *his Expedition into the Eaſt*, 451. *his Conqueſts*, 453, *his Death*, 456

Alexander, *the Son of* Baſilius, *ſucceeds* Leo *the Philoſopher*, Vol. 5. p. 69. *his degenerate Reign*, 70. *and Death*, 71

Alexius Comnenus *ſent againſt* Ruſelius, Vol. 5. p. 201. *and ſuppreſſes him*. 202. *he commands againſt* Bryennius, 205. *whom he takes Priſoner*, ibid. *his Stratagem by which he defeats* Baſilacius, 207. *revolts from the Emperor* Nicephorus III. 209. *and is declar'd Emperor by the Officers of the Army*, 210. *he takes* Conſtantinople, 211. *and depoſes* Botoniates, 212. *his Actions againſt the* Turks, 216. *whom he forces to a Peace*, ibid. *defeated by* Robert, 221. *reduc'd to great Neceſſities*, 222. *his Artifice*, 224. *overthrown by the* Scythians, 227. *his great Victory over 'em*, 228. *his ſecond War with the* Turks, ibid. *he again overthrows the* Scythians, 235. *his Behaviour to the Cruſade*, 243, & ſequ. *his Artifice*, 256. *his Death*, 260. *and Character*, 261

Alexius II. *a Child, left Emperor*, Vol. 5. p. 289. *depos'd, and ſtrangled by* Andronicus, 297

Alexius Angelus *depoſes his Brother* Iſaac, Vol. 5. p. 314. *his ominous Reception into the City*, 315. *his Averſion to publick Affairs*, 317. *his ſenſeleſs Security*, 321. *flies from* Conſtantinople, 325. *ſollicits the* Turks *againſt his Son-in-Law* Theodorus Laſcaris, 337. *who confines him to a Monaſtery*, 338

Alexius, *the Son of* Iſaac, *releas'd by his Uncle*, Vol. 5. p. 340. *flies into the Weſt*, 341. *ſollicits the* Latins *for his Reſtoration*, 342. *and comes to their Army*, 344. *crown'd Emperor*, 349. *murder'd by* Murtzuphle, 353

Allobrogick *War*. Vol. 1. p. 251, 252

Aluſianus *a* Bulgarian, *his Fortunes*, Vol. 5. p. 166, & deinceps

Ambroſe, *Biſhop of* Milan, *his Embaſſy to the Uſurper* Maximus, Vol. 3. p. 201. *his Death*, 244. *his doctrinal Errors*, ibid.

Amalaſont *declar'd Regent by the* Goths *in* Italy, Vol. 4. p. 51. *murder'd by* Theodatus, 91

Amida *beſieg'd by* Sapor, Vol. 3. p. 46. *taken*, 48. *reſtor'd to the* Roman *Army for Mony*, Vol. 4. p. 32

Ammianus Marcellinus, *the Hiſtorian, his narrow Eſcape out of* Amida, Vol. 3. p. 49

Amphilochius, *Biſhop of* Iconium, *his ſeaſonable Anſwer to* Theodoſius *the Great*, Vol. 3. p. 202

Anaſtaſius *declar'd Emperor*, Vol 4. p. 15. *reigns well at firſt*, 16. *a profeſs'd Heretick and impious Perſecutor*, 22, 26. *his Cruelty*, 28. *excommunicated by the Pope*, 29. *his Death*, 42

Ancus Martius, *the fourth King of* Rome, *his Reign*, Vol. 1. p. 30 *to* 34

Andragathius *murders* Gratian, Vol. 3. p. 199. *is made Admiral of the Uſurper* Maximus *his Fleet*, 210. *drowns himſelf*. 211

Andronicus *his ambitious Deſigns*, Vol. 5. p. 276. *marches towards* Conſtantinople, 291. *enters the City*, 293. *his Cruelties*, 294. *orders the Empreſs to be ſtrangled*, 296. *declar'd Emperor*, ibid. *ſtrangles* Alexius, 297. *his great Tyranny*, 298. *flies, and is apprehended*, 301, 302. *murder'd*, 303, *his Character*, ibid.

Anna Comnena, *Daughter of* Alexius *the Emperor, her Deſigns againſt her Brother* John, 281. *by whom ſhe is pardon'd*, 282
Annibal, *the* Carthaginian *General, ſee* Hannibal.
Annibal, *the* Carthaginian *Admiral, his ill Succeſſes and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 184, 185
Annibalianus *made Governor of* Cappadocia *and* Armenia *the Leſs*, Vol. 3. p. 5. *ſlain by* Conſtantius, 8
Anthemius, *Emperor of the Weſt*, Vol. 3. p. 359. *his Death*, 366
Antiochian *War, or the War of* Antiochus, *King of* Syria, Vol. 1. p. 221, 224
Antiochians *offend* Julian, Vol. 3. p. 74. *raiſe a Sedition*, 205
Antioch *taken by the Cruſade*, Vol. 5. p. 269
Antoninus Pius *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 321. *his Clemency*, 328. *his Death*, 331
Antonini Philoſophus, *and* Verus, *Emperors*, Vol. 2. p. 332. Verus *his Expedition into the Eaſt*, 337. *marries the Daughter of* Philoſophus, 338. *his Death*, 342. Philoſophus *obtains a miraculous Victory*, 347. *his Speech and Death*, 357, 358
Antonius Caius, *the Conſul, defeats* Cataline, Vol. 1. p. 288
Antonius Marcus *his Management upon* Julius Cæſar's *Death*, Vol. 1. p. 375 *to* 378. *his Attempts of raiſing himſelf*, 379, 380, 381. *beaten at* Mutina, 382 *joins in the ſecond Triumvirate*, 384, 385. *his Acts againſt* Brutus *and* Caſſius, 391, 392. *his Eaſtern Journey*, 396, 397. *falls in Love with* Cleopatra, 399. *his luxurious and prodigal Life with her*, 403, 404, 416, 419. *his Marriage with* Octavia, 405. *his ill Succeſs againſt the* Parthians, 414. *falls out with* Octavius, 417, &c. *challengeth* Octavius *twice*, 421, 429. *beaten by him at* Actium, 424, 425 *treats with* Octavius, 427. *his Deſpair, Death and Character*, 430, 431, 432
Antonius Lucius, *his Brother, raiſes a War againſt* Octavius, *and is worſted*, Vol. 1. p. 401, 402, 403
Apodemius *inſtrumental in the Death of* Gallus, Vol. 3. p. 24. *put to Death by* Julian, 67
Appius, *one of the Decemvirate, his ambitious Deſigns*, Vol. 1. p. 111. 112. *his Tyranny, Luſt and Death*, 116 *to* 119
Arbetio *ſent againſt the* Germans, Vol. 3. p. 27. *defeated by 'em*, 28. *a corrupt Judge*, 49. *provok'd by* Procopius, 113. *declares for* Valens, 114
Arbogaſtes *procures* Valentinian II. *to be murder'd*, Vol. 3. p. 220. *kills himſelf*, 226
Arcadius *declar'd Emperor*, Vol. 3. p. 196. *marries* Eudoxia, 235. *his Remiſneſs*, 246. *perſecutes St.* Chryſoſtome, 264. *his Death*, 274
Archimedes *his famous Works and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 209
Ariſtobulus, *King of* Judæa, *conquer'd by* Ptolomy, Vol. 1. p. 282, 283
Arſaces, *King of* Armenia, *aſſiſts* Julian *in his Wars againſt the* Perſians, Vol. 3. p. 79. *deſerted by* Jovian, 93. *murder'd by* Sapor, 130
Arſenius *made Tutor to* Arcadius, Vol. 3. p. 196. *retires into* Egypt, 197
Artabanes *his great Service to* Juſtinian *in* Africk, Vol. 4. p. 86. *againſt whom he conſpires, and is pardon'd*, 159
Aſpar *ſeizes on the Uſurper* John, Vol. 3. p. 314. *defeated in* Africk, 319. *ſlain with his Sons*, 363
Aſſan, *King of* Bulgaria, Vol. 5. p. 343. *overthrows the Prince of* Epire, 344.
Athalarick, *King of the* Goths *in* Italy, Vol. 4. 51. *diſobedient to his Mother*, 88. *his Death*, 89

INDEX.

Athanaſius, *Biſhop of* Alexandria, *baniſh'd*, Vol. 3. p. 3. *highly eſteem'd by* Jovian, 100

Attalus *made Emperor by* Alarich, Vol. 3. p. 291. *degraded*, 293. *once more made Emperor by* Adolph, 301. *taken and confin'd to the Iſland of* Lipare, 302, 303

Attila *invades the Empire*, Vol. 3. p. 328. *ſells a Peace to* Theodoſius, 331. *breaks out again*, 335. *invades* Gaul, 339. *overthrown by* Ætius, 341. *enters* Italy, 343. *his Death*, 346

Auguſtus Cæſar, *ſee* Octavius.

Auguſtulus *proclaim'd Emperor*, Vol. 3. p. 375. *dethron'd*, 379

Avitus *made Emperor in* Gaul, Vol. 3. p. 353. *dethron'd*, 354

Aurelian *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 514. *kill'd*, 524

Autharis *choſen King of the* Lombards, Vol. 4. p. 236. *and turns Chriſtian*, 237

B

Baldwin, *Earl of* Flanders, *choſen Emperor of* Conſtantinople *by the* Latins, Vol. 5. p. 335. *beſieges* Adrianople, ibid. *and is cruelly put to Death*, 336. *his Character*, 337

Baldwin II. *ſucceeds* Robert, *Emperor of* Conſtantinople, 346. *ſollicits the Aſſiſtance of the Princes in the Weſt*, 348. *his great Security and Poverty*, 359. *loſes* Conſtantinople, ibid. *his Endeavours to have him reſtor'd*, 364

Barbaroſſa's *Preparation for the Holy War*, Vol. 5. p. 308. *obſtructed by* Iſaacius Angelus, ibid. *his Anſwer to* Iſaacius *his Ambaſſadors*, 309. *his ſecond Anſwer*, 310. *he forces* Iſaac *to ſubmit*, 311

Barbatio *ſent to diſpatch* Gallus, Vol. 3. p. 24. *oppoſes* Julian, 38. *beheaded*, 44

Bardanes *declar'd Emperor by the Army in the Eaſt*, Vol. 5. p. 6. *his Eyes pluck'd out by Order of* Nicephorus I. 7

Bardas, *Brother to the Empreſs* Theodora, *his Intrigues with the young Emperor* Michael III. Vol. 5. p. 42, 43. *his great Authority*, 44. *created* Cæſar, 45. *murder'd*, 47

Bardas Phocas *uſurps*, Vol. 5. p. 103. *and is ſuppreſs'd*, 104. *declar'd General againſt* Sclerus, 122. *whom he overthrows*, 124. *proclaim'd Emperor by the Male-contents*, 126. *and dies of Poiſon*, 129

Bardas Sclerus *uſurps*, Vol. 5. p. 117. *overthrows the Emperor's Forces*, 119. *his Generals defeated*, 120. *over-reach'd by* Manuel, *the Emperor's Lieutenant*, 122. *beats* Phocas, 123. *overthrown*, 124. *impriſon'd at* Babylon, ibid. *releas'd, and returns into the Empire*. 127. *impriſon'd by* Phocas, 129. *ſet at Liberty*, 130. *and reconcil'd to the Emperor*, ibid.

Baſilacius *uſurps*, Vol. 5. p. 206. *defeated by* Alexius, *and taken Priſoner*, 207, 208

Baſilius Macedo *his Parentage*, Vol. 5. p. 47. *declar'd* Cæſar, ibid. *murders the Emperor* Michael, 48. *breaks the Power of the* Manichees, 49. *his ſucceſsful Stratagem*, 50. *addicted to Magick*, 51. *impos'd on by a Monk*, ibid. *his Death and Character*, 53

Baſilius II. *ſucceeds* John Zimiſces, Vol. 5. p. 116. *enters* Bulgaria, 125. *but returns with Diſhonour*, ibid. *his Wars with the* Bulgarians, 131. *his Succeſs*, 133. *he forces 'em to ſubmit*, 134. *his Death and Character*, 138

Beliſarius *appeaſes a Mutiny at* Conſtantinople, Vol. 4. p. 65. *lands with an Army in* Africk, 68. *defeats* Gelimer, 69. *triumphs at* Conſtantinople, 76. *reduces* Sicily, *beſieges* Naples, *and takes it*,

it, 95, 96. enters Rome, 99. which he valiantly defends againſt the Goths, 107, &c. to 116. refuſes the Empire of the Weſt, 129. recall'd out of Italy, 130. ſent into Perſia, 134. he returns into Italy, 149. his ill Succeſs there, 151, &c. recovers Rome, 157. being envy'd at Court he falls into Diſgrace, 196, 197

Boetius *in Diſgrace with* Theodorick, Vol. 4. p. 48. *is put to Death*, 50.

Bohemond *defeated at Sea by the* Venetians, Vol. 5. p. 219. *joins with the other Princes in the Cruſade*, 238. *in great Danger*, 247. *defeats the* Turks, 248. *his Practices with a Citizen of* Antioch, 250. *his Stratagem*, 254. *beſieges* Dyrrachium, 256. *his Death and Character*, 258

Boniface, *Governor of* Africk, Vol. 3. p. 310. *calls in the* Vandals, 317. *and endeavours, when it's too late, to ſend 'em back*, 318. *returns into* Italy, *and challenges* Ætius, 319. *dies*, 320

Boniface, *Marquis of* Montferat, *created King of* Theſſaly *by the* Latins, Vol. 5. p. 335. *takes* Alexius *the Uſurper Priſoner*, 337

Britain *reduc'd by the* Romans, Vol. 2. p. 254. *the* Britains *rebel, and ſet up a new Emperor*, Vol. 3. p. 272.

Britannicus *poiſon'd by* Nero, Vol. 2. p. 134

Brutus Decimus, *one of the Conſpirators with* M. Brutus *againſt* Cæſar, *his Actions and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 381, 382

Brutus Lucius Junius *his politick Deſigns*, Vol. 1. p. 49, 50. *he overthrows the Kingdom of* Rome, 52 *to* 55. *cauſes the Execution of his own Sons*, 62, 63. *his Death*, 64

Brutus Marcus *joins with* Pompey, Vol. 1. p. 332. *conſpires with* Caſſius *againſt* Cæſar, *and kills him*, 370 *to* 373. *his Succeſs in the Eaſt*, 389, 390. *ſees a Ghoſt, and his Diſcourſe with* Caſſius *concerning it*, 390, 391. *another Diſcourſe with him before the Battel of* Philippi, 391, 392. *both their Defeats and Deaths*, 392, 393, 394

Branas *uſurps*, Vol. 5. p. 306. *and is ſlain*, 307

Bryennius *uſurps in the Eaſt*, Vol. 5. p. 204. *and is taken Priſoner*, 205

Bulgarians *beaten by the* Romans, Vol. 5. p. 16. *their Wars with the Empire*, 56. *beaten by the* Hungarians, 57. *invade the Empire* 69. *ſubmit themſelves to* Baſilius, 134

C

Cæſar, *ſee* Julius Octavius.

Caligula *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 85. *his Expedition*, 103. *his exceeding Cruelty*, 101. *his Death*, 108

Calocerus *ſets up for himſelf in* Cyprus, Vol. 3. p. 4. *taken and burnt alive*, ibid.

Calo-Joannes *ſucceeds his Father* Alexius, Vol. 5. p. 261. *his Wars with the* Turks, 263. *and the* Scythians, 264. *his Conqueſts in* Armenia, 265. *his Reconciliation with his Brother and Siſter*, 262, 265. *his Progreſs into the Eaſt*, 267. *wounded by a Boar*, 268. *his Speech before his Death*, ibid. *his Death and Character*, 269

Calpurnia, *Wife to* Julius Cæſar, *her Dream*, Vol. 1. p. 372

Calpurnius Flemma *his great Valour*, Vol. 1. p. 185

Camillus Furius *takes the City of* Veii, Vol. 1. p. 132, 133. *his extraordinary Generoſity at* Falerii, 134. *his Baniſhment*, 135. *he ſaves his Country*, 141, 142. *his after Acts both at home and abroad*, 142 *to* 149

Capitolinus, *ſee* Manlius.

Caracalla *made* Cæſar, Vol. 2. p. 400. *made*

made Emperor with his Brother Geta, 412. *kills his Brother*, 416. *and marries his Mother*, 413. *his Death*, 414

Carbeas, *a* Manichee, *revolts to the* Saracens, Vol. 5. p. 41

Carus *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 536. *his Death*, 538

Carthaginian *War*, *ſee* Punick *War*.

Caſſius, *the Conſul, his ambitious Deſigns and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 95, 96

Caſſius, *the Prator, ſurrenders his Fleet to* Julius Cæſar, Vol. 1. p. 350. *For his other Actions ſee* Brutus Marcus.

Caſtinus *ſent into* Spain, Vol. 3. p. 310. *defeated by the* Vandals, 311. *made General by* John *the Uſurper*, 313. *taken Priſoner in* Africk, 315

Cataline *his Conſpiracy againſt the State*, Vol. 1. p. 283, 284. *is reprimanded by* Cicero, *and leaves the City*, 285. *defeated and ſlain*, 288

Cato Porcius *the elder, his Behaviour towards the Women and his Soldiers*, Vol. 1. p. 221. *and towards* Scipio Africanus, 225. *his great Enmity to* Carthage, 230

Cato Porcius *the younger, his Grandſon, his Management in* Cataline's *Conſpiracy*, Vol. 1. p. 287, 288. *oppoſes* Pompey, 291. *and* Julius Cæſar, 292. *his Opinion concerning Bribery*, 296. *he is ſent from* Rome *by* Clodius *his means*, 300. *his nice Advice in* Pompey's *Camp*, 332, 333. *his remarkable Death*, 358, 359

Caudium, *the diſhonourable Treaty, and its Effects*, Vol. 1. p. 164, 165

Cenſors, *the laſt private Perſons that bore that Office*, Vol. 2. p. 14

Chæreas *conſpires againſt* Caligula, Vol. 2. p. 107. *put to Death by* Claudius, 111

Charles *the Great, King of* France, *prepares to conquer* Italy, Vol. 4. p. 377. *where he aboliſhes the* Lombardian *Kingdom*, 379. *declared Emperor by the Pope*, 400.

Choſroes I. *invades the* Roman *Territories*, Vol. 4. p. 132. *lays Siege to* Edeſſa, *which he is forc'd to raiſe*, 166, 168. *defeated by the* Romans, *and dies*, 224, 225

Choſroes II. *murders his Father*, Vol. 4. p. 248. *is dethron'd, and flies to the Emperor*, ibid. *by whom he is reſtor'd*, 249. *he takes the City of* Jeruſalem, 271. *his Inſolence and Blaſphemy*, 272. *his Cruelty towards the Chriſtians*, 279. *murder'd by his Son*, 285

Chriſt, when born, Vol. 2. p. 36. *when crucify'd*, 78

Chryſoſtome, *St. his Chriſtian Courage*, Vol. 3. p. 253. *perſecuted*, 263. *dies*, 266

Church, the State of it in Conſtantius *his Reign*, Vol. 3. p. 56. *in that of* Valens, 119. *oppreſs'd by the Donatiſts in* Africk, 270. *depreſs'd by the* Goths, 368. *a Schiſm in it*, Vol. 4. p. 21. *the State of it under* Juſtinian, 100. *perſecuted, ſee Perſecution.*

Cicero, *the renown'd Orator, procures* Pompey *his firſt great Authority*, Vol. 1. p. 277. *his skilful Management in* Cataline's *Conſpiracy*, 284 *to* 288. *his Baniſhment*, 299, 300. *his Reſtoration*, 303, 304. *pleads for* Milo *in vain*, 314. *deſires a Triumph without Succeſs*, 319, 320. *procures* Anthony *to be declar'd Enemy to the State*, 381. *his Death by the ſecond Triumvirate, and Character*, 385, 386

Cimbrian *War*, Vol. 1. p. 251, 252

Cincinnatus Quintius *is choſen Conſul and Dictator, both times from the Plough*, Vol. 1. p. 105, 106

Cinna, *the Conſul, joins with* Marius, *and acts in the firſt Civil War*, Vol. 1. p. 259, &c. *his Death*, 263

Cinna, Pompey's *Grandſon, engages in a Conſpiracy againſt* Auguſtus, *by whom he is pardon'd, and declar'd Conſul*, Vol. 2. p. 42, 43
Ciſalpine Gallick *War*, Vol. 1. p. 195, 196
Civil Wars in Rome; *the firſt was between* Marius *and* Sylla, Vol. 1. p. 258 *to* 271. *the ſecond between* Julius Cæſar *and* Pompey, 321 *to* 348. *continu'd by* Cato *and* Pompey's *Sons*, 357 *to* 364. *the third between the ſecond Triumvirate, and* Brutus *and* Caſſius, 389 *to* 394. *the fourth between* Octavius Cæſar *and* M. Anthony, 420 *to* 432
Claudius *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 111. *governs well at firſt*, 112. *his Expedition*, 114. *and Triumph*, 115. *his great Fear*, 118. *marries his Niece* Agrippina, 123. *by whom he is poiſon'd*, 129
Clelia, *her great Bravery*, Vol. 1. p. 68, 69
Cleopatra, *Queen of* Ægypt, *her Enterview with* Julius Cæſar, Vol. 1. p. 325. *the Favours ſhe receiv'd from him*, 355. *her Character and famous Enterview with* M. Anthony, 397, 398, 399. *her Management of him*, 403, 404, 415. *treats with* Octavius, 427. *ſhe retires to the Temple of* Iſis, 428. *her Carriage towards* Octavius, 434, 435. *her Lamentations over* Anthony's *Tomb, and Death*, 436, 437
Clizaſthlan *his Entertainment at* Conſtantinople, Vol. 5. p. 278. *his treacherous dealing*, 279. *aſſiſted by the* Perſians, 281. *overthrows* Manuel, 282. *his Behaviour upon his Advantage*, 284, 285
Clodius *his Attempts upon* Julius Cæſar's *Wife*, Vol. 1. p. 289. *his Tribuneſhip*, 298, 299, 300. *his Death by* Milo, 358, 359
Cocles Horatius, *his extraordinary Valour*, Vol. 1. p. 67
Commodus *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 360. *narrowly eſcapes a Conſpiracy form'd againſt him*, 365. *his Cruelties*, 367. *and Luxury*, &c. 369, 370, & ſequ. *his Death*, 372
Conrade, *Emperor of* Germany, *undertakes the Cruſade*, Vol. 5. p. 271. *betray'd by* Manuel Comnenus, 293
Conſtans I. *created* Cæſar, Vol. 3. p. 4. *his Share at the Diviſion of the Empire*, 8. *his Wars in* Gaul, 9. *murder'd by* Gaiſo, 10
Conſtans II. *declar'd Emperor*, Vol. 4. p. 299. *murders his Brother*, 305. *his Expedition into* Italy, 309. *ſlain at* Syracuſe, 313.
Conſtantine *the Great made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 557. *his Expedition againſt* Maxentius, 562. *whom he defeats*, 564. *ſummons the firſt General Council at* Nice, 571. *puts his Son* Criſpus *and the Empreſs* Fauſta *to death*, 572. *removes the Imperial Seat to* Byzantium, 574. *which he repairs, and calls* Conſtantinople, Vol. 3. p. 2. *divides the Government of the Empire*, 4. *is Baptis'd*, 5. *his Death and Character*, 6
Conſtantine, jun. *made Governor in* Gaul, &c. Vol. 3. p. 4. *ſlain near* Aquileia, 8
Conſtantine III. *ſucceeds in the Empire*, Vol. 4. p. 315. *concludes a Peace with the* Saracens, 318. *calls the Sixth General Council at* Conſtantinople, 321. *his Death and Character*, 324
Conſtantinus Copronimus *declar'd Emperor*, Vol. 4. p. 356. *overthrows the* Bulgarians, 370. *dies*, 382
Conſtantine V. *is made Emperor*, Vol. 4. p. 387. *confin'd by his Mother* Irene, 391. *whom he thruſts out of the Government*, ibid. *and recals her*, 392. *he is overthrown by the* Bulgarians, ibid. *and murder'd by his Mother's Orders*, 396
Conſtantine VI. *ſucceeds* Alexander, Vol.

Vol. 5. p. 66. *marries* Romanus Lacopenus *his Daughter*, 73. *ſuffers* Romanus *to be crown'd Emperor*, 74. *whom he procures to be remov'd*, 82. *by which means he is reſtor'd to his former Dignity*, 83. *poiſon'd by his Son*, 87. *his Character*, ibid.

Conſtantine VII. *ſucceeds* Zimiſces, *with his Brother* Baſilius II. Vol. 5. p. 116. *his Management when ſole Emperor*, 139. *his Death*, 141

Conſtantinus Monomachus *ſucceeds* Michael V. Vol. 5. p. 160. *reduces* Maniaces, 161. *and overthrows the* Ruſſians, 162. *and ſuppreſſes* Tornicius, 164. *his great Profuſeneſs*, 173. *his Death*, 177

Conſtantinus Ducas *ſucceeds* Iſaacius Comnenus. Vol. 5. p. 186. *his Death and Character*, 189

Conſtantine *uſurps in* Britain. Vol. 3. p. 272. *his Progreſs in* Gaul, 277. *made Partner in the Empire by* Honorius, 288. *but acts againſt him*, 298. *and is put to Death*, 299

Conſtantinople *beſieg'd by the* Latins, Vol. 5. p. 322. *burnt*, 327. *beſieged a ſecond time and taken*, 330, 331. *and plunder'd for a whole Day together*, 332. *taken by* Mahomet, 455

Conſtantius Chlorus *made* Cæſar, Vol. 2. p. 543. *his Expedition*, ibid. *made Emperor with* Galerius, 553. *with whom he divides the Empire*, 554. *his Death*, 557

Conſtantina *marry'd to* Gallus. Vol. 3. p. 14. *her extravagant Behaviour*, 19. *her Death*, 23

Conſtantius *marry'd to* Euſebia. Vol. 3. p. 4. *murders his Relations*, 8. *creates* Gallus, Cæſar, 14 *overthrows* Magnentius, 15. *reſolves to deſtroy* Gallus, 23. *grows cruel and jealous*, 25. *his Vanity*, 27. *he defeats the* Germans, 28. *his Ingratitude*, 31. *makes* Julian Cæſar, 33. *takes a Progreſs to* Rome, 36. *ſuppreſſes the* Quadi, 41. *grows jealous of* Julian, 50. *protects the* Arians, 57. *his Death*, 64

Conſtantius, *a Noble* Roman, Vol. 3. p. 298. *made Lieutenant-General by* Honorius, ibid. *grants a Peace to the* Burgundians, 301. *marries* Placidia, 303. *declar'd* Auguſtus, 306. *dies at* Ravenna, ibid.

Coriolanus Marcius, *his great Valour*, Vol. 1. p. 86, 87. *his Behaviour exaſperates the People*, 88. *his Trial and Baniſhment*, 89, 90. *turns againſt his Country with great Succeſs* 91, 92, 93. *is perſuaded by his Mother to deſiſt, and is afterwards ſlain*, 94

Corvus, *or* Corvinus, *ſee* Valerius Corvus.

Craſſus *ſuppreſſes* Spartacus, Vol. 1. p. 272. *joins in the firſt Triumvirate*, 293. *gains the Conſulſhip with* Pompey *by Force*, 305. *his Eaſtern Expedition, Overthrow and Death*, 311, 312

Cruſade, the Princes of it, Vol. 5. p. 238. *they beſiege* Nice, 245. *and* Antioch, 248. *and take it*, 250. *they take* Jeruſalem, 253

Curiatii, *ſee* Horatii *and* Curiatii.

Curio *his ſerviceable Aſſiſtance to* Julius Cæſar, Vol. 1. p. 318, 319. *his Death*, 331

Curius Denatus *overthrows* Cyrrhus. Vol. 1. p. 177, 178

Curſor, *ſee* Papyrius Curſor.

Curtius *his incredible Bravery*, Vol. 1. p. 150.

Cyrill, *Biſhop of* Alexandria, Vol. 3. p. 304. *juſtly condemn'd*, 305. *procures the third General Council to be ſummon'd at* Epheſus, 322. *accus'd to the Emperor, impriſon'd and releas'd*, 323, 324

D.

Dacia *conquer'd by* Trajan, *and made a Province*, Vol. 2. p. 286.

Dagalaiphus *his bold Anſwer to* Valentinian, Vol. 3. p. 103. *ſent againſt the* Germans, 105
Dandolo, (Henry) *Doge of* Venice, *his Character*, Vol. 5. p. 319. *his Bravery*, 323
Decabalus, *King of* Dacia, *ſubdu'd by* Trajan, Vol. 2. p. 283.
Decius *made Emperor by the Army againſt his Will*, Vol. 2. p. 482. *raiſes the ſeventh general Perſecution*, 485. *the manner of his Death*, 488.
Decius Mus, *the Father and the Son, die for their Country*, Vol. 1. p. 158, *and* 168
Dentatus, *ſee* Curius Dentatus, *and* Siccius Dentatus.
Diocleſian, *choſen Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 539. *makes* Maximian *his Companion in the Empire*, 542. *his Expedition*, 544. *and Reſignation of the Empire*, 551
Dolianus *proclaim'd King of* Hungary, Vol. 5. p. 153. *he is blinded*, 156.
Domitian *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 285. *his extravagant Pride*, 257. *and Cruelty*, 258. *murder'd*, 267
Druſus, *the Tribune, his unfortunate Attempts, and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 254
Druſus, *the Brother of* Tiberius, *ſaluted by the Army with the Title of* Imperator, Vol. 2. p. 27. *ſuppreſs'd the* Germans, 28. *his Death*, 29
Druſus, *the Son of* Tiberius, *quiets a Mutiny in* Pannonia, Vol. 2. p. 57. *poiſon'd by his Wife's means*, 73

E

Encounter, a ſtrange one near Rome, Vol. 4. p. 106.
Erarick *choſen King, and ſlain by the* Goths, Vol. 4. p. 140, 141
Eudocia *marry'd to* Theodoſius II. Vol. 3. p. 307. *her Ingratitude*, 332. *ſhe retires to* Jeruſalem, 336
Eudoxia *calls* Genſerich *into* Italy, Vol. 3. p. 351. *who leads her Captive into* Africk, 352
Eugenius *uſurps*, Vol. 3. p. 221. *turns Heathen*, 223. *engages* Theodoſius, 224. *defeated*, 225. *and beheaded*, 226
Euphemius *declar'd Emperor by the* Saracens, Vol. 5. p. 29. *and is murder'd*, 30
Euſtathius *his deſperate Attempt*, Vol. 5. p. 136. *and Succeſs*, 137
Eutropius *oppoſes* Rufinus, Vol. 3. p. 233. *ſucceeds him in his Power* 239. *his treacherous Practices*, 241. *put to Death*, 250
Eutyches *his Hereſie*, Vol. 3. p. 334

F

Fabii, *their Generoſity, Valour, and Deſtruction*, Vol. 1. p. 98, 99
Fabius Maximus *his cautious Proceedings againſt* Hannibal, Vol. 1. p. 203, 204, 205
Fabricius *his great Steadineſs and Generoſity*, Vol. 1. p. 173, 174, 175
Firmus *revolts in* Africk, Vol. 3. p. 124. *ſubmits himſelf to the* Roman *General*, 143. *his Treachery*, 144. *he flies, and hangs himſelf*, 146, 147
Flemma, *ſee* Calpurnius Flemma.
Frederick, *ſee* Barbaroſſa.
Fritigern, *a* Goth, *his Exploits againſt the Empire*, Vol. 3. p. 171, &c.
Fulvia, Mark Anthony's *Wife, her Hatred to* Cicero, Vol. 1. p. 386. *raiſes a Civil War againſt* Octavius, 401. *her Death*, 405

G

Gabinius, *King of the* Quadi, *treacherouſly murder'd by the* Romans, Vol. 3. p. 131
Gaines *procures* Rufinus *to be ſlain*, Vol. 3. p. 238. *turns Male-content*, 245. *made General in the Eaſt*, 246. *his Treachery*, 248. *and Inſolence*, 252. *reprov'd by St.* Chryſoſtome, 253. *his Deſigns upon* Conſtantinople *fruſtrated*, 254. *his Death*, 256
Galba *declar'd Emperor by the Soldiers in* Spain, Vol. 2. p. 152. *confirm'd Emperor*, 158. *ſlain*, 169 Gal-

Gallienus *made* Cæſar, Vol. 2. p. 492. *and Emperor*, 496. *oppos'd by the Thirty Tyrants*, 497. *ſlain with his Brother* Valerian, 508

Gallus Trebonianus *his Treachery*, Vol. 2. p. 487. *made Emperor*, 489. *revives the Seventh General Perſecution*, 490. *is ſlain with his Son*, 491

Gallus, *the Son of* Conſtantius, *created* Cæſar, Vol. 3. p. 14. *his extravagant Behaviour*, 18. *and Cruelty*, 21. *put to Death*, 25

Gauls, *their principal Wars with the* Romans, Vol. 1. p. 135 *to* 142

Gelimer *makes himſelf King of the* Vandals *in* Africk, Vol. 4. p. 66. *defeated by* Beliſarius, 69. *flies*, 72. *ſurrenders himſelf*, 75. *his Behaviour at* Conſtantinople, 77

Genſerich *call'd by* Boniface *into* Africk, Vol. 3. p. 317. *conquers the Country*, 318. *takes* Hippo, 319. *breaks the Peace*, 326. *his Cruelties*, 327. *ſacks* Rome, 351. *his piratical Excurſions*, 359

George, *the* Arian *Biſhop, his Character*, Vol. 3. p. 75

Germanicus *adopted by his Uncle* Tiberius, Vol. 2. p. 41. *refuſes the Empire offer'd him by the Soldiers in* Germany, 57. *envy'd by* Tiberius, 61. *who recalls him out of* Germany, 63. *his Triumph*, 64. *he is ſent into the Eaſt*, 65. *where he is poiſon'd*, 66

Germanus *declar'd General againſt the* Goths *in* Italy, Vol. 4. p. 162. *his Death*, 164

Gildo *ſerves the* Romans *againſt his Brother*, Vol. 3 p. 142. *Revolts*, 242. *Murders his Brother's Sons*, 243. *Overthrown*, 250. *ſtrangles himſelf*, 251

Godegiſil, *King of the* Vandals, *invades the Empire*, Vol 3. p. 271. *ſettles in* Spain, 277

Godfrey *of* Bulloign, *one of the Princes in the firſt Cruſade*, Vol. 5. p. 238. *arrives with his Army at* Philippopolis, 242. *marches in an Hoſtile manner to* Conſtantinople, 243. *an Agreement betwixt him and the Emperor*, 244

Gordian *with his Son made Emperor in* Africk, Vol. 2. p. 463. *the Father and the Son both ſlain*, 465, 466.

Gordian, junior, *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 472. *his Expedition into the Eaſt*, 475. *murder'd*, 477

Goths *admitted into* Thrace, Vol. 3. p. 167. *defeat the* Romans, 172. *beſiege* Adrianople, 173. *cut off a* Roman *Legion*, 175. *Overthrow* Valens, 181. *great Numbers of 'em deſtroy'd in the Eaſt*, 188. *their Wars with the Emperor*, Vol. 4. p. 95. & deinceps. *finally conquer'd by* Narſes, 189

Gracchus Tiberius *his Laws, ſeditious Attempts, and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 237 *to* 240

Gracchus Caius *his many Attempts and Alterations in the State, and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 241 *to* 246

Gratian, *Son of* Valentinian, *declar'd* Auguſtus, Vol. 3. p. 125. *ſends his Forces to the Aſſiſtance of* Valens, 174. *defeats the* Germans, 176. *marches into the Eaſt*, 177. *makes* Theodoſius *his Partner in the Empire*, 190. *ſlain by* Andragathius, 199

Guiſchard (Robert) *his Expedition againſt* Alexius, Vol. 5. p. 217. *beſieges* Dyrrachium, 219. *his Reſolution*, 220. *defeats the Emperor and takes the Town*, 221. *call'd into* Italy, 222. *his Death*, 224

H

Hannibal, *the* Carthaginian *General, his March over the* Alps, Vol. 1. p. 199, 200. *beats the* Romans *at* Ticenum, *and at* Trebia, 200, 201. *at* Thraſymene, 202, 203. *and at* Cannæ

205, 206. *he declines*, 207 *to* 213. *is entirely beaten by* Scipio, 216, 217. *his after Acts*, 222, 223. *his Death, and Reflections upon the* Romans, 226
Heliogabalus *ſets up for Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 430. *overthrows* Macrinus *and his Son*, 431. *confirm'd Emperor*, 432. *his Effeminacy*, 434, &c. *ſlain by the Soldiers*, 443
Henry, *the ſecond Emperor of the* Latins *in* Conſtantinople, Vol. 5. p. 336. *his Death*, 340
Heraclian *commands for* Honorius *in* Africk, Vol. 3. p. 291. *defeats the Enemy*, 292. *uſurps, and is kill'd*, 300
Heraclius *his Expedition againſt* Phocas, Vol. 4. p. 267. *he is declar'd Emperor*, 269. *ſends Ambaſſadors to* Choſroes, 271. *his Succeſs in the* Perſian *Wars*, 275 *to* 286. *his great Exploits*, 286. *his Progreſs to* Jeruſalem, 287. *turns* Monothelite, 288. *his Death and Character*, 296
Herod, *King of* Judæa, *his Submiſſion to* Octavius, *and Cruelty to his Wife*, Vol. 1. p. 426, 427. *his Death*, Vol. 2. p. 39
Herſilia *her generous Behaviour*, Vol. 1. p. 14
Honorius *declar'd Emperor*, Vol. 3. p. 222. *marry'd to* Stilicho's *Daughter*, 235. *beſieg'd by* Alarich *in* Haſta, 259. *reliev'd by* Stilicho, 261. *makes Peace with* Alarich, 263. *marries his firſt Wife's Siſter*, 278. *grows jealous of* Stilicho, 281. *orders him to be put to Death*, 283. *rejects* Alarich's *Propoſals of a Peace*, 285. *makes* Conſtantine *his Aſſociate in the Empire*, 288. *beſieg'd in* Ravenna, 291. *his Wars with the Barbarians in* Spain, 310. *his Death*, 312
Horatii, *and* Curiatii, *their Combat for their Country*, Vol. 1. p. 27, 28
Horatius Cocles, *ſee* Cocles Horatius.
Hormiſda, *King of* Perſia, *depos'd by his Subjects*, Vol. 4. p. 247. *and murder'd by his Son*, 248
Hortenſia, *her Speech and Behaviour to the ſecond Triumvirate*, Vol. 1. p. 387, 388
Hungarians *defeat the* Scythians, Vol. 5. p. 188. *deſtroy the Van of* Peter *the Hermit's Army*, 240. *aſſiſt the* Servians, 276
Hunns *invade the Empire*, Vol. 3. p. 328. *their ſecond Invaſion*, Vol. 4. p. 195
Hypatia, *Daughter of* Theon *the Philoſopher, maſſacred in an Uproar*, Vol. 3. p. 305

I

James, *a* Syrian, *his great Sanctity*, Vol. 4. p. 30.
Janus, *its Temple built, and ſhut the firſt time by* Numa Pompilius, Vol. 1. p. 21. *a ſecond time*, 193. *a third time by* Octavius, 437, 438. *a fourth time by him*, Vol. 2. p. 11. *a fifth time by the ſame*, 36. *ſhut the ſixth time by* Nero, 143. *the ſeventh by* Veſpaſian, 217
Ibatzes *the* Bulgarian *oppoſes* Baſilius II. Vol. 5. p. 135. *reduc'd by a Stratagem*, 136
Jeruſalem, *its total Deſtruction by* Titus, Vol. 2. p. 215. *rebuilt by* Adrian, 316. *taken by the Chriſtians*, Vol. 5. p. 253
Jews, *their great Miſery*. Vol. 2. p. 206. *their Rebellion, and Calamities under* Trajan, 299. *their laſt great Diſperſion by* Adrian, 217. *their Inſurrection and Barbarity at* Antioch, Vol. 4. p. 267
Ildebald *choſen King of the* Lombards, Vol. 4. p. 138. *and murder'd*, 140
Illyrian *War*, Vol. 1. p. 437, 438
John, *the Pope, his famous Miracles*, Vol. 4. p. 48
John *the Eunuch, Brother to* Michael *the* Paphlagonian, Vol. 5. p. 147. *his Behaviour*, 150. *and great Power*, 151, 153. *his Exactions*, 155
John, *ſee* Xiphilinus.

John, *King of* Bulgaria, *aſſiſts the* Greeks, Vol. 5. p. 336. *and puts* Baldwin *the* Latin *Emperor to Death*, ibid.
John Ducas Vataces *ſucceeds* Laſcaris *at* Nice, Vol. 5 p. 340. *crown'd Emperor*, 342. *his Succeſs againſt the* Latins, ibid. *concludes a Peace with the* Turks, 343. *and enlarges his Dominions*, 349. *his Death and Character*, 350
John de Brienne, *titular King of* Jeruſalem, *Guardian to the young Emperor* Baldwin *at* Conſtantinople, 347. *where he dies*, 348.
Joſephus, *the Hiſtorian, taken Priſoner by* Veſpaſian, *to whom he foretels his future Advancement*, Vol. 2. p. 149
Jovian *elected Emperor*, Vol. 3. p. 90. *concludes a Peace with the* Perſians, 93. *found dead in his Chamber*, 99
Irene *offers her ſelf in Marriage to* Charles *the Great*, Vol. 5. p. 3 *depos'd and baniſh'd*, 4, 5
Iſaacius Comnenus *declar'd Emperor by the Army*, Vol. 5. p. 181. *defeats* Stratioticus *his Forces*, 183. *whom he forces the reſign*, 184. *his Behaviour in the Empire*, ibid. *his Reſignation and Character*, 186
Iſaacius Angelus *takes Sanctuary*, Vol. 5. p. 300. *crown'd Emperor*, 301. *he defeats the* Sicilians, 304 *his Forces defeated by the* Cypriots, 305. *his Behaviour to the* German *Emperor*, 308. *who forces him to ſubmit*, 311. *his Neglect of State-Affairs*, 312. *depos'd by his Brother*, 314. *his Character*, ibid. *reſtor'd by the* Latins, 325. *his Death*, 328
Iſauri, *their Inroads into the Empire*, Vol. 3. p. 20. *their Depredations*, 567
Iſdegerdes *made Gaudian to* Theodoſius II. Vol. 3. p. 274
Italian *War, ſee Social War.*
Jugurthin *War*, Vol. 1. p. 248 *to* 251
Julia, Auguſtus's *Daughter, her firſt Marriage with* Marcellus, Vol. 2. p. 11. *her ſecond with* Agrippa, 16. *her third with* Tiberius, 26. *her Baniſhment*, 35. *and Death*, 58
Julian, *the Apoſtate, created* Cæſar, Vol. 3. p. 33. *his Exploits in* Gaul, 34. *his Victory*, 39. *declar'd Emperor by the mutinous Army*, 52. *enters* Sirmium, 61. *his Reformations after the Death of* Conſtantius, 68. *he opens the Heathen Temples*, 69. *oppreſſes the Chriſtians*, 70. *his Expedition againſt the* Perſians, 72. *his Endeavours to rebuild the Temple of* Jeruſalem, 77. *his great Danger*, 83 *his Obſtinacy and Raſhneſs*, 84. *he defeats the* Perſians, 85. *is wounded and dies*, 86, 87
Julius Cæſar, *his Danger in* Sylla's *Proſcription*, Vol. 1. p. 266. *he favours* Pompey's *firſt great Authority*, 277. *his Behaviour in relation to* Cataline's *Conſpiracy*, 286, 287. *his Riſe, and Acts in* Spain, 288, 289, 290. *he quits his Triumph, and joins with* Pompey *and* Craſſus *in the firſt Triumvirate*, 292, 293. *his Conſulſhip*, 296, 297, 298. *his Expeditions againſt the* Gauls, Germans, Britains, *&c.* 300 *to* 304. *&* 306 *to* 310. *&* 315, 316. *falls out with* Pompey *and the Senate, and becomes Maſter of all* Italy, 320 *to* 327. *his Expedition againſt* Afranius *and* Petreius *in* Spain, 328 *to* 331. *againſt* Pompey *in* Illyricum, 333 *to* 341. *and in* Theſſaly, 342 *to* 348. *his Wars in* Ægypt, *and Love to* Cleopatra, 351 *to* 355. *againſt* Pharnaces *in* Aſia, 356, 357. *againſt* Cato *and others in* Africa, 357, 358, 359. *his magnificent Triumph*, 360, 361. *he regulates the* Roman *Year*, 361, 362. *his Expedition againſt* Pompey's *Sons in* Spain, 362, 363, 364. *his great Honours and Acts at* Rome, 365 *to* 370. *his Death and Character*, 371 *to* 374. *his remarkable Funeral*, 377, 378, 379

Juſtin I. *advanc'd to the Empire,* Vol. 4. p. 43. *his Death,* 56
Juſtin II. *declar'd Emperor,* Vol. 4. p. 204. *recalls* Narſes *out of* Italy, 211. *declares* Tiberius, Cæſar, 222. *dies,* 226
Juſtin, *Martyr, his Apology for the Chriſtians,* Vol. 2. p. 325
Juſtinian *ſucceeds* Juſtin I. *in the Empire,* Vol. 4. p. 57. *overthrows the* Perſians, 59. *reſolves upon the* African *War,* 67. *and the* Italian, 91. *ill ſerv'd by his Officers in* Italy, 141. *makes a Truce with the* Perſians, 193. *makes an ignominious Bargain with the* Hunns, 196. *his Inclinations to Building,* 197. *he embraces ſome Heretical Opinions in his Old Age,* 198. *his Death and Character,* 201

K

Kegenes, *a* Scythian, *revolts to the* Romans, Vol. 5. p. 169. *his Cruelty,* 170. *wounded,* 171. *and murder'd,* 173

L

Lampadias *his bold Saying in the Senate,* Vol. 3. p. 279
Leo I. *elected Emperor at* Conſtantinople, Vol. 3. p. 355. *puts* Aſpar *and his Sons to Death,* 363. *marries his Daughter to* Zeno Iſauricus, 369. *his Death,* 370
Leo II. *crown'd Emperor,* Vol. 4. p. 344. *defeats the* Saracens, 345. *an Enemy to Images,* 347. *upon which account a Tumult is rais'd at* Conſtantinople, 352. *his Taxes,* 355. *his Death,* 356
Leo III. *made Emperor,* Vol. 4. p. 383. *crowns his Son* Conſtantine, 384. *defeats the* Saracens, 385
Leo IV. *declar'd Emperor,* Vol. 5. p. 15. *overthrows the* Bulgarians, 16. *oppoſes Image Worſhip,* 18. *he is murder'd,* 20
Leo V. *in Danger of his Life through the Practices of a Monk,* Vol. 5. p. 52. *ſucceeds his Father* Baſilius, 54. *his Wars with the* Bulgarians, 56. *Conſpiracies againſt him diſcover'd,* 58. *marries his Concubine* Zoe, ibid. *his cauſleſs Jealouſies,* 62. *his Death and Character,* 63
Leo Tornicius *uſurps,* Vol. 5. p. 163. *and is ſuppreſs'd,* 164
Lepidus *joins in the ſecond Triumvirate with* Octavius *and* M. Antony, Vol. 1. p. 384, 385. *confin'd to* Africk *by* Octavius, 406. *and baniſh'd by him,* 411
Libanius, *the Sophiſt,* Julian's *Inſtructor in the Pagan Superſtition,* Vol. 3. p. 70. *his Blaſphemy,* 88
Licinius *created* Cæſar *by* Galerius, Vol. 2. p. 560. *whom he ſucceeds in the Empire,* 561. *his wicked Practices,* 568. *put to Death,* 570
Limigantes Sarmatæ, *their Obſtinacy,* Vol. 3. p. 42. *puniſh'd by the Emperor* Conſtantius, 43
Livia, *the Empreſs, her prudent Advice to* Auguſtus, Vol. 2. p. 42. *perſuades him to adopt her Son* Tiberius, 41. *her Death,* 77
Lombards, *their Original,* Vol. 4. p. 210. *invited by* Narſes *into* Italy, 212. *where they erect a Kingdom,* 215. *they take* Pavia, 219. *the Progreſs of their Arms,* 225. *they take* Ravenna, 349. *the End of their Kingdom in* Italy, 379
Lucius Junius Brutus, *ſee* Brutus Junius Lucius.
Lucretia, *her Rape, and voluntary Death,* Vol. 1. p. 51, 52
Lucullus *his Acts, and Succeſs againſt* Mithridates, Vol. 1. p. 271, &c. *is ſtopp'd in his Progreſs by the Senate,* 274. *falls out with* Pompey, 278
Lupicinus *his corrupt Practices in* Thrace *pernicious to the Empire,* Vol. 3. p. 171

M

Macedonian *War, the first,* Vol. 1. p. 218 *to* 222. *the second,* 226 *to* 229

Macrinus *made Emperor,* Vol. 2. p. 425. *his Death,* 431

Mætius *his popular Design and Death,* Vol. 1. p. 125, 126

Magnentius *rebels in* Gaul, Vol. 3. p. 10. *his Cruelty,* 11. *Overthrow and Death,* 15, 17

Majorianus *declar'd Emperor of the West,* Vol. 3. p. 355. *defeats the* Vandals, 356. *murder'd by* Ricimer, 358

Maniaces *usurps,* Vol. 5. p. 161. *and dies,* 162

Manlius Capitolinus *his Valour in saving the Capitol,* Vol. 1. p. 141. *his Designs, Trial, and Execution,* 143, 144

Manlius Torquatus *his Combat with a* Gaul, Vol. 1. p. 151. *his severe Justice,* 158

Manuel Comnenus *succeeds his Father,* Vol. 5. p 269. *disobliges the People by his Administration,* 271. *his Treachery to the Western Princes,* 272. *his Wars with* Roger, *King of* Sicily, 273. *his Progress to* Antioch, 277. *his Behaviour towards the* Turks, ibid. *his Indiscretion,* 281. *which occasions the Loss of his Army,* 282. *his unexpected Deliverance,* 284. *his Negotiations in the West,* 286. *an ill Divine,* 287. *his Death and Character,* 288

Manuel Palæologus *Emperor,* Vol. 5. p. 408. *besieg'd by* Bajazet, 409. *withdraws from* Constantinople, 410. *restor'd,* 411. *his Interviews with* Tamerlane, ibid. *his Death and Character,* 412, 413

Marcellus *his Success against* Hannibal, Vol. 1. p. 207. *his Acts in* Sicily, 208, 209. *his Death,* 212

Marcellus, *the Son of* Octavia, *marry'd to* Julia, Vol. 2. p. 11. *his Death,* 13

Mariamne, *Wife to* Herod, *King of* Judæa, *her Death,* Vol. 1. p. 426, 427

Marinus *proclaim'd Emperor, and slain,* Vol. 2. p. 481, 482

Marius *his first Rise, and Acts against* Jugurtha, *King of* Numidia, Vol. 1. p. 250, 251. *against the* Cimbrians, 251, 252. *in the Social War,* 256. *occasions the first Civil War, and his Danger,* 257, 258, 259 *his Acts and Cruelties in this War, with his Death,* 259, 260, 261

Marius *the younger, his ill Success in the first Civil War, and his Death,* Vol. 1. p. 264, 265

Martian *declar'd Emperor in the East,* Vol. 3. p. 337. *summons the fourth General Council,* 338 *his Death,* 355

Martian, *the Son of* Anthemius, *rebels against* Zeno, *and is made a Priest,* Vol. 4. p. 6, 7

Masanissa *his remarkable Passion,* Vol. 1. p. 215

Mauritius *his Exploits in* Persia, Vol. 4. p. 230. *advanced to the Empire,* ibid. *enters into an Alliance with* Childebert, *King of the* Franks, 238. *protects* Chosroes, *King of* Persia, 248. *his great Covetousness,* 254. *his Death and Character,* 257, 258

Maximian *made* Diocletian's *Collegue in the Empire,* Vol. 2. p. 542. *his Expedition,* 544. *his Resignation,* 551. *attempts to recover his Authority, and is hang'd,* 559

Maximus *made Emperor,* Vol. 2. p. 457. *his Success and Cruelties,* 462. *his passionate Behaviour,* 464. *his Death,* 468

Maximus, *the Philosopher and Magician,* Vol. 3. p. 72. *put to Death,* 139

Maximus *usurps in* Britain, Vol. 3. p. 197. *his Cruelty,* 200. *and Policy,* 208. *enters* Italy, 209. *defeated and beheaded,* 211

Maximus, *see* Petronius.

Mazezil *opposes his Brother* Gildo *in*

Africk, Vol. 3. p. 243. *drown'd by* Stilicho's *Procurement*, 251
Mecænas *his Speech and Advice to* Octavius, *in relation to his holding the Empire*, Vol. 1. p. 441, 442, 443. *his further Advice to him*, Vol. 2. p. 4. *his politick Suggeſtion*, 16. *his Death and Character*, 31, 32
Menenius Agrippa *his skilful Management of the ſeditious Commons*, Vol. 1. p. 81, 82
Meſſalina *her cruel Artifices*, Vol. 2. p. 118. *her Lewdneſs*, 119. *and Death*, 122
Metullus Numidicus *his Acts againſt King* Jugurtha, Vol. 1. p. 249, 250. *his Troubles and Recovery*, 252, 253
Michael I. *ſucceeds* Nicephorus, Vol. 5. p. 12. *and reſigns*, 15
Michael II. *his Behaviour during the Reign of* Leo IV. Vol. 5. p. 19. *who confines him*, ibid. *but is murder'd by him*, 20. *proclaim'd Emperor*, 21. *his Opinion in Matters of Religion*, 22. *his looſe Life*, 29. *he dies*, 30
Michael III. *ſucceeds his Father* Theophilus, Vol. 5. p. 40. *a degenerate Prince*, 43 *his great Prodigality*, 44. *his Army overthrown by the* Saracens, ibid. *creates his Uncle* Bardas, Cæſar, 45. *commands him to be murder'd*, 47. *and is murder'd by* Baſilius, 48
Michael IV. *marry'd to the Empreſs* Zoe, Vol. 5. p. 149. *and is made Emperor*, ibid. *he quits the Empire, turns Monk, and dies*, 257
Michael V. *made Emperor*, Vol. 5. p. 157. *he depoſes* Zoe, 158. *and is depos'd himſelf*, 160
Michael VI. *declar'd Succeſſor to* Theodora, Vol. 5. p. 178. *his Behaviour*, 180. *raiſes an Army againſt* Iſaac Comnenus, 182. *which is defeated*, 183 *whereupon he reſigns*, 184
Michael Ducas *declar'd Emperor*, Vol. 5. p. 197. *his Avarice gains him the Name of* Parapinaces, 202. *he reſigns*, 203
Michael Palæologus, *withdraws to the* Turks, Vol. 5. p. 351. *recall'd*, 352. *aſpires*, 355. *declar'd Protector of the Empire*, ibid. *and is crown'd Emperor*, 356. *removes with his Court to* Conſtantinople, 360. *which he repeoples with* Greek *Inhabitants*, 361. *he plucks out* John *the young Emperor's Eyes*, 362. *for which he is excommunicated by the Patriarch*, 363. *the Troubles that enſu'd thereupon*, 364. *his Innovations in Religion, and Perſecutions*, ibid. *excommunicated by the Pope*, 365. *his Death and Character*, 366
Milo, *the Tribune, oppoſes* Clodius, Vol. 1. p. 303, 304. *at laſt kills him*, 313. *and is baniſh'd*, 314
Mithridatick *War, the firſt*. Vol. 1. p. 257, 262. *the ſecond*, 268. *the third*, 271 *to* 274, *and* 277 *to* 281. Mithridates *his Death*, 281, 282
Murtzuphle *his treacherous Deſigns*, Vol. 5. p. 328. *murders the young Emperor*, 330. *and flies*, 332
Mus, *ſee* Decius Mus.
Mutiny in the Eaſt by the Coths, Vol. 3. p. 91. *at* Tricinum, 281. *at* Conſtantinople, Vol. 4. p. 63. *in* Africk, 80. *by the whole Army in the Eaſt*, 243
Mutius Scævola, *ſee* Scævola Mutius.
Muzalo *left Guardian to the young Emperor* John, Vol. 5. p. 353. *envy'd by the Nobility*, ibid. *and is murderd*, 355

N

Nævius *his Augury*, Vol. 1. p. 38
Narſes *ſent into* Italy, Vol. 4. p. 117. *oppoſes* Beliſarius *his Deſigns*, 120. *declar'd General in the Weſt*, 165. *his great Succeſs againſt the* Goths, 177 *to* 187. *recall'd out of* Italy, 211. *he invites the* Lombards *into* Italy, 212
Nepos Julius *declar'd Emperor in the Weſt*, Vol. 3. p. 371. *expell'd by* Oreſtes, 375. *murder'd*, Vol. 4. p. 5

Nepotianus *ſets up for himſelf, and is ſlain,* Vol. 3. p. 11
Nero *made Emperor,* Vol. 2. p. 131. *reigns well at firſt,* 132. *offended at his Mother,* 133. *poiſons* Britannicus, 134. *his beaſtly Extravagancies,* 135. *murders his Mother,* 138. *marries* Poppæa, *and kills his firſt Wife* Octavia, 142. *ſets* Rome *on Fire,* 144. *raiſes the firſt General Perſecution,* ibid. *puts* Lucan *and* Seneca *to Death,* 147. *and* Petronius, 148. *and kills himſelf,* 156
Nerva *made Emperor,* Vol. 2. p. 272. *favours the Chriſtians,* 274. *his great Clemency,* 275. *his wholeſom Laws,* 276. *adopts* Trajan, 278. *and dies,* 279
Neſtorius, *Biſhop of* Conſtantinople, *his Hereſie,* Vol. 3. p. 321. *condemned in the Council at* Epheſus, 323. *his miſerable End,* 324
Nice *beſieg'd by the Chriſtians,* Vol. 5. p. 245. *ſurrender'd to* Alexius, 246
Nicephorus *declares againſt the Empreſs* Irene, Vol. 5. p. 4. *declared Emperor,* 5. *overthrown by the* Arabians, 7. *ſlain in* Bulgaria, 11
Nicephorus *the Patriarch baniſh'd by the Emperor* Leo, Vol. 5. p. 18
Nicephorus Callanicus *his Exploits againſt the* Saracens, Vol. 5. p. 89. *triumphs at* Conſtantinople, 91. *ſaluted Emperor in the Eaſt,* 92. *crown'd at* Conſtantinople, ibid. *his Expedition,* 94. *his Behaviour at home,* 96. *ſlain by* Zimiſces, 98. *his Character,* ibid.
Nicephorus Botoniates *aſſiſted by the* Turks, Vol. 5, p. 203. *acknowledg'd Emperor,* 204. *depos'd,* 210
Niger *proclaim'd Emperor in* Syria, Vol. 2. p. 198. *his Overthrow and Death,* 238
Nigrinus *his Loyalty to* Conſtantius, Vol. 3. p. 62. *for which he is put to Death by* Julian, 67
Numa Pompilius, *the ſecond King of* Rome, *his backwardneſs to accept of the Kingdom,* Vol. 1. p. 19, 20. *his Reign,* 21 *to* 24
Numantia, *its Siege,* Vol. 1. p. 235, 236

O

Octavia, *Siſter to* Auguſtus Cæſar, *her Worth, and Marriage to* M. Anthony, Vol. 1. p. 405. *reconciles her Husband and Brother,* 409. *her generous Speech in relation to both Parties,* 417. *her Compliance,* 419. 420. *her Death,* Vol. 2. p. 28
Octavia, Claudius *his Daughter, marry'd to* Nero, Vol. 2. p. 123. *by whom ſhe is kill'd,* 142
Octavius Cæſar *declares himſelf Heir to* Julius Cæſar, *with his Succeſs,* Vol. 1. p. 379, 380, 381. *marches againſt* M. Anthony, 381, 382. *falls out with the Senate,* 383. *joins with* Anthony *and* Lepidus *in the ſecond Triumvirate,* 384, 385. *marches againſt* Brutus *and* Caſſius, *and by* Anthony's *Aſſiſtance overthrows 'em,* 393, 394, 395. *his Cruelties after their Deaths,* 396. *his troubleſome Diviſion of Lands,* 400. *his War with* L. Antonius, *and Succeſs,* 401, 402, 403. *and with* Pompey *the younger,* 408, 410. *his Marriage with* Livia, 408. *choſen perpetual Tribune,* 413. *falls out with* Anthony, 417, &c. *proclaims War againſt him,* 420. *beats him at* Actium, 424, 425. *viſits* Cleopatra, 434, 435. *reduces* Egypt, *and ſhuts the Temple of* Janus, 437, 438. *his Grand Conſultation with* Agrippa *and* Mecænas, 439 *to* 443. *his Ordinances,* 444, 445, 446. *his Speech to the Senate,* 446, 447. *he eſtabliſhes the* Roman *Empire, and takes upon him the Title of* Auguſtus, 448, 449, 450. *the extraordinary Honours decreed him by the Senate,* Vol. 2. p. 2. *ſhuts the Temple of* Janus, 11 & 36. *falls dangerouſly ill,* 12. *refuſes the Dictatorſhip,* 14. *made Conſul for Life,* 19.

ſucceeds

ſucceeds Lepidus *in the Office of* Pontifex Maximus, 25. *reforms the* Roman *Year*, 40. *adopts* Tiberius, 42. *his Speech to the* Equites, 46. *his Death and Character*, 50, 51, 52

Odoacer *invited into* Italy, Vol. 3. p. 376. *ſlays* Oreſtes, 377. *declar'd King of* Italy, 379. *overthrown by* Theodorich, Vol. 4. p. 13, 14, *and* 18. *he is murder'd*, 19

Olybrius, *Emperor in the Weſt*, Vol. 3. p. 366

Olympius *practices againſt* Stilicho, Vol. 3. p. 281. *after ſome Services diſmiſs'd from Court*, 289

Oreſtes *rebels in the Weſt*, Vol. 3. p. 375. *ſlain by* Odoacer, 377

Oſtorius Publius, *his Actions in* Britain, Vol. 2. p. 124

Otho, *his Deſigns upon the Empire*, Vol. 2. p. 67. *made Emperor*, 170. *gains the Affections of the People*, 171. *his Army overthrown*, 177. *he kills himſelf*, 179

Ovid *baniſh'd by* Auguſtus, Vol. 2. p. 47

P

Pacurianus *his Anſwer to* Alexius, Vol. 5. p. 209

Papirius Curſor, *his Acts againſt the* Samnites, Vol. 1. p. 163, 165.

Paras, *King of* Armenia, Vol. 3. p. 132. *deſtroys his two Friends at the Inſtigation of* Sapor, *King of* Perſia, 133. *detain'd Priſoner by the* Romans, 151. *eſcapes into* Armenia, *and is treacherouſly murder'd*, 152, 153

St. Paul *brought Priſoner to* Rome, Vol. 2. p. 135. *put to Death together with St.* Peter, 145

Paulus Æmilius, *ſee* Æmilius Paulus.

Pepin *crown'd King of* France, Vol. 4. p. 363. *his Death*, 374

Perſecution, the ſeveral Perſecutions of the Chriſtians, Vol. 2. p. 144, 261, 290, 340, 406, 460, 485, 490, 493, 523, 549

Pertinax *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 375. *his great Danger in* Britain *and* Africk, 377. *hated by the Soldiers for his ſtrict Diſcipline and Regulations*, 379. *his Clemency*, 380. *his Death*, 383

Peruſian *War*, Vol. 1. p. 401, 402, 403

Peter, *Sirnam'd the* Fuller, *his Hereſie and Inſolence*, Vol. 3. p. 369, & ſequ.

Peter, *the Hermit, the occaſion of the firſt Cruſade*, Vol. 5. p. 236. *his unfortunate Expedition*, 238. *and unhappy Conduct*, 239, *he arrives at* Conſtantinople, 240. *paſſes the* Straits, 141. *and loſes his Army*, 242

Petreius, *ſee* Afranius.

Petronius Caius, *his Behaviour at his Death*, Vol. 2. p. 148

Petronius Maximus *murders* Valentinian III. Vol. 2. p. 348. *uſurps the Empire*, 349. *he is ſlain*, 351

Philip *the* Arabian, *made General*, Vol. 2. p. 476 *puts* Gordian *to Death*, 477. *declar'd Emperor*, 479. *and ſlain*, 483

Philip, *the* German *Emperor, engages the Princes of the Cruſade to aſſiſt his Brother* Alexius, Vol. 5. p. 318

Phocas *declar'd Emperor by the Soldiers*, Vol. 4. p. 256. *his perfidious Cruelty*, 263. *his Death and Character*, 268

Phocas *defeated by the* Bulgarians, Vol. 5. p. 70. *declar'd a Traitor*, 73. *and is blinded*, 74.

Phocas, *ſee* Bardas.

Piſo Lucinianus *adopted by* Galba, Vol. 2. p. 165. *and ſlain*, 170

Placidia, Honorius *his Siſter, marry'd to* Adolph, *King of the* Goths, Vol. 3. p. 297. *and to* Conſtantine, 303. *retires to* Conſtantinople, 311. *made Regent of the Empire*, 315. *her Death*, 335

Plutarch *his Advice to* Trajan, Vol. 2. p. 280

Pompey *the Great, his Acts in the firſt*

firſt Civil War, Vol. 1. p. 164, 165. *in* Africk, 265. *againſt* Sertorius *in* Spain, 269, 270. *againſt the Pyrates*, 275, 276. *againſt* Tigranes, Mithridates, *and other Eaſtern Kings*, 278 *to* 283. *his magnificent Triumph*, 290, 291. *he is oppos'd by the Senate*, 292. *and joins in the firſt Triumvirate*, 293. *aſſiſts* Julius Cæſar *in his Conſulſhip*, 297. *procures* Cicero's *Reſtoration*, 303, 304. *gains the Conſulſhip with* Craſſus *by Force*, 305. *his ſole Conſulſhip*, 314. *falls out with* Julius Cæſar, 320. *abandons* Rome, 323. *and alſo* Italy, 326, 327. *his Wars with* Julius Cæſar, 332, 347. *his Misfortunes, Death and Funeral*, 347 *to* 350

Pompeius Sextus, *his Son, joins with his elder Brother* Cneius *againſt* Julius Cæſar, Vol. 1. p 362, 363, 364. *the great Authority procur'd him by* M. Anthony, 380. *relieves many proſcrib'd Perſons*, 387. *he ſeverely moleſts* Italy, *and comes to a Treaty with* Octavius Cæſar, 405, 406. *his Wars with him after that, and his Death*, 408 *to* 411

Pontius Comimus *his bold Attempt*, Vol. 1. p. 140

Pontius Pilate *kills himſelf at* Vienna *in* Gaul, Vol. 2. p. 88

Poplicola Valerius *his ſeveral Acts and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 61 *to* 70

Poppæa Sabina *her inſolent Advice to* Nero, Vol. 2. p. 137. *marry'd to* Nero, 142

Porcia, *Daughter to* Cato *the Younger, her Courage*, Vol. 1. p. 371. *her ſtrange Death*, 396

Porſena, *King of* Hetruria, *beſieges* Rome, *and ſhows a great Generoſity to the* Romans Vol. 1. p. 66 *to* 69

Probus *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 528. *his Expedition*, 529. *he ſuppreſſes* Saturninus Bonoſus, *and* Proculus, 531, 532. *a remarkable Saying concerning him*, 532

Procopius *conceals himſelf after the Death of* Julian, Vol. 3. p. 98. *uſurps*, 105. *grows Inſolent*, 113. *taken and beheaded*, 115

Proſcription, the firſt by Sylla, *and its Effects*, Vol. 1. p. 266, 267. *the ſecond by the ſecond Triumvirate, and its Effects*, 385 *to* 389

Pulcheria *perſuades* Theodoſius *to marry*, Vol. 3 p. 307. *forc'd to retire from Court*, 333. *marry'd to* Martian, 337

Punick, *or* Carthaginian *War, the firſt*, Vol. 1. p. 181 *to* 191. *the ſecond* 198 *to* 217. *the third*, 230 *to* 233

Pyrrhus, *King of* Epirus, *his Succeſſes againſt the* Romans, *and Civility*, Vol. 1. p. 171 *to* 176. *he is at laſt worſted, and abandons* Italy, 177. 178, 179

Pyrrhus, *an* Antiochian, *betrays the City to the Chriſtians*, Vol. 5. p. 267

Q

Quadi *invade the Empire*, Vol. 3. p. 41. *ſuppreſs'd by* Conſtantius, 42. *inſult the Empire*, 148. *cut off two* Roman *Legions*, 150. *waſte* Illyricum, 155. *ſue for a Peace*, 157

Quintius Cincinnatus, *ſee* Cincinnatus Quintius.

Quintius Flaminius, *his Succeſs againſt King* Philip *in the firſt* Macedonian *War*, Vol. 1. p. 219, 220

R

Radagaiſus *invades* Italy, Vol. 3. p. 268. *defeated and ſlain*, 269, 270

Regulus *his Acts againſt the* Carthaginians, *and Defeat*, Vol. 1. p. 186. *his extraordinary Bravery, and Death*, 189, 190

Remus *falls out with his Brother* Romulus, *and is ſlain*, Vol. 1. p. 6, 7

Revolution, the firſt great Revolution in the Roman *Empire*, Vol. 2. p. 150

Rhæ-

Rhætians, *their Cruelty and barbarous Manners*, Vol. 2. p. 24
Ricimer, *a* Goth, *made General of the* Roman *Army*, Vol. 3. p. 355. *kills* Majorianus, *the Emperor*, 357. *beſieges* Rome, 365. *kills* Anthemius, 366, *and dies*, ibid.
Roger, *King of* Sicily, *his Wars with* Manuel *the* Greek *Emperor*, Vol. 5. p. 273
Romanus *his Tyrannical Government in* Africk, Vol. 3. p. 126. *his Policy*, 129
Romanus Lacopenus *Admiral of the* Roman *Navy*, Vol. 5. p. 71. *crowned Emperor*, 74. *his Speech to the King of* Bulgaria, 76. *depos'd by his own Sons*, 82
Romanus, *the Son of* Conſtantine VI. *his Practices againſt his Father*, Vol. 5. p. 86. *whom he ſucceeds in the Empire*, 88. *his Death*, 90
Romanus II. *his firſt Actions*, Vol. 5. p. 141. *his Expedition againſt the* Saracens, 143. *his great Severity*, 145. *poiſon'd by the Empreſs* Zoe, *and ſtifled in a Bath*, 148, 149. *his Character*, 149
Romanus Diogenes *marries the Empreſs* Eudocia, Vol. 5. p. 192. *his Succeſs againſt the* Turks, ibid. *new models the Army*, 194. *rejects the Peace offer'd by the* Turks, 195. *defeated and taken Priſoner*, 196. *his miſerable End*, 198
Rome *incredibly populous*, Vol. 2. p. 112. *ſack'd by her own Subjects*, 196. *overflown by the* Tiber, Vol. 3. p. 151. *her Inhabitants imitate the* Gothick *Faſhions*, 243. *beſieg'd by* Alarich, 287. *taken by him*, 293 *and by* Genſerich, 351
Romulus *his Birth*, Vol. 1. p. 5. *reinthrones his Grand-father* Numitor, 6. *founds the City of* Rome, 7. *his Reign*, 8 *to* 18
Rufinus *made Tutor to* Arcadius, Vol. 3. p. 223. *his Ambition*, 232. *renders himſelf odious to the People*, 233. *his Cruelty*, 234. *Treachery*, 235. *and Death*, 238

S

Sabinianus, *a decrepit old Man, made General of the* Roman *Army*, Vol. 3. p. 44
Sabinus *his bold Reflection*, Vol. 3. p. 97
Saluſt *made Prafect of* Gaul, Vol. 3. p. 60. *his good Advice to* Julian, 79. *refuſes the Empire*, 89
Samonas *a* Saracen, *Favourite to* Leo V. *his cunning Intrigues*, Vol. 5. p. 60. *his Diſgrace*, 63
Sapor, *King of* Perſia, *his Wars with* Conſtantius, Vol. 3. p. 44. *takes* Amida, 48. *concludes a Peace with* Jovian, 93. *invades* Armenia, 130. *his Artifice*, 132
Saracens *converted to the Chriſtian Faith*, Vol. 3. p. 186. *a ſtrange Action of a* Saracen, 187. *they embrace the Doctrines of* Mahomet, *and conquer* Perſia, Vol. 4. p. 289. *defeat the* Romans, 290. *conquer* Egypt, 291. *their Succeſs in* Africk, 300. *invade the Empire*, Vol. 5. p. 7. *their Succeſs*, 8. *ſettle in* Crete, 29. *overthrow the* Romans, 44. *driven out of* Crete, 49. *their Fleet deſtroy'd*, 50. *defeat the* Romans *in* Sicily, 93. *loſe their Fleet*, 95. Antioch *recover'd from 'em*, ibid. *defeated before the Town*, 100. *revolt*, 142. *their Deſign upon* Edeſſa *prevented*, 152. *conquer'd by the* Turks *in* Perſia, 165
Sarmatæ, *their firſt Irruption into the Empire*, Vol. 2. p. 204. *overthrown by the* Romans, 256
Saturninus *his Sedition and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 252, 253
Scævola Mutius *his extraordinary Courage and Boldneſs*, Vol. 1. p. 67, 68
Sceva *his great Valour*, Vol. 1. p. 338
Scipio Africanus *his firſt Riſe*, Vol. 1. p. 211. *his great Succeſs in* Spain, 213. *and* Africk, 214, 215. *where he*

he at laſt overthrows Hannibal, 216, 217. *goes Lieutenant under his Brother into* Aſia, 223, 224. *his noble Carriage to his Accuſers, with his Retirement and Death*, 225, 226
Scipio Africanus *the younger, or* Æmilianus, *his Encouragement of Learning*, Vol. 1. p. 229. *his Acts againſt* Carthage *in the third* Punick *War*, 231, 232, 233. *and in* Spain, 236. *his Death*, 241, 242
Scipio Aſiaticus, *Brother to the Senior* Africanus, *his Succeſs againſt* Antiochus, Vol. 1. p. 223, 224. *his Diſgrace*, 226
Scythians *break into the Empire*, Vol. 5. p. 169. *their Wars*, 171, 225. *defeated by the* Hungarians, 188. *overthrown by* Alexius, 228. *they renew the War*, 233. *and are overthrown*, 235
Seditions, the Principal, beſides thoſe which caus'd a Separation, were that about Marriages, Vol. 1. p. 121. *that concerning Honours and Dignities*, 145, 146, 147. *that of the elder* Gracchus, 237 *to* 240. *that of the younger* Gracchus, 241 *to* 246. *that of* Saturninus, 252, 253. *that of* Druſus, 254. *a Sedition at* Rome, Vol. 3. p. 120. *at* Conſtantinople, 194
Sejanus *his Riſe*, Vol. 2. p. 72. *his vile Practices*, 74. *his Execution*, 79
Separations between the Patricians and Plebeians, the firſt, Vol. 1. p 80. *the ſecond*, 119. *the third*, 196
Sertorius *his valiant Acts in* Spain, *and Death*, Vol. 1. p. 269, 270
Servius Tullius, *the ſixth King of* Rome *obtain'd the Kingdom by Policy*, Vol. 1. p. 39, 40. *his Reign* 41 *to* 46
Severus *proclaim'd Emperor by the Soldiers in* Germany, Vol. 2. p. 390. *confirm'd in the Empire*, 393. *his Expedition againſt* Niger, 397. *againſt* Albinus, 401. *into the Eaſt*, 404. *into* Britain, 409. *his Death, and Apotheoſis*, 411, 413
Sextus, *Son to the laſt* Tarquin, *his Stratagem*, Vol. 1. p. 48, 49. *raviſhes* Lucretia, 51, 52
Sibyll's *Books, the Story*, Vol. 1. p. 49, 50
Sicilians *their great Cruelties at* Theſſalonica, Vol. 5. p. 299. *defeated by the Emperor* Iſaac Angelus, 304
Siccius Dentalus *his bold Speech*, Vol. 1. p. 108. *his great Valour, and Death*. 116
Social *War, or* Italian *War*, Vol. 1. p. 254 *to* 257
Sophoniſba, *her Tragical Story*, Vol. 1. p. 215
Spartacus *his Rebellion and Superſtition*, Vol. 1. p. 271
Stauratius, Nicephorus *his Son, crowned Emperor*, Vol. 5. p. 7. *marry'd to* Theophania, 9. *forſakes the Palace, and turns Monk*, 12, 13
Stephen, Romanus Lacopenus *his Son, depoſes his Father*, Vol. 5. p. 82. *and is himſelf depos'd*, 83
Stilicho *his Ambition*, Vol. 3. p. 232. *his Exploits in* Rhætia, 260. *defeats* Alarich, *and procures a Peace between him and* Honorius, 261, 262, 263. *defeats* Radagaiſus, 289. *rewarded by the* Romans, 270. *his Power in the Senate*, ibid. *his Death*, 283
Suevi *ſettle in* Spain, Vol. 3. p. 277
Sylla *his firſt Skill in War*, Vol. 1. 251. *his Acts in the* Social *War*, 256, 257. *againſt* Mithridates, 261, 262. *in the Civil War*, 263, 264, 265. *his great Cruelties*, 266. *his perpetual Dictatorſhip*, 267, 268. *his Death*, 269
Syracuſe, *its Siege*, Vol. 1. p. 208, 209

T

Tacitus *made Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 526. *his Death*, 527
Tangrolipix *declar'd Sultan of the* Turks *in* Perſia, Vol. 5. p. 165. *his Actions*, 168, & dein.
Tarpeia *betrays the Capitol, and is ſlain*, Vol. 1. p. 13

Tarquinius Priſcus, *the fifth King of* Rome, *his firſt Settlement in the City*, Vol. 1. p. 33. *his Reign*, 41 *to* 46
Tarquinius Superbus, *the ſeventh and laſt King of* Rome, *he murders his Prince, and obtains the Kingdom by Force*, Vol. 1. p. 45, 46. *his Reign*, 46 *to* 54. *his Baniſhment*, 54, 55. *his firſt Effort to regain his Kingdom*, 60, 61. *his ſecond*, 64. *his third*, 65, &c. *his fourth, and laſt*, 73, &c. *his Death*, 78
Tatius, *King of the* Sabines, *his War againſt* Rome, Vol. 1. p. 13. *is made King of* Rome *with* Romulus, 14. *his Death*, 15
Teichomere *his tragical Story*, Vol. 5. p. 154
Theoctiſtus *appointed Tutor to the young Emperor* Michael III. Vol. 5. p. 40. *by whoſe Order he is put to Death*, 42
Theodatus *made King of the* Goths, Vol. 4. p. 90. *murders* Amalaſont, 91. *his timerous Submiſſion*, 93. *he is depos'd*, 97
Theodora, *the Empreſs, the great Patroneſs of the* Eutychian *Hereticks*, Vol. 4. p. 100, &c.
Theodora, *the Daughter of* Conſtantine VII. *declar'd Empreſs together with her Siſter* Zoe, Vol. 5. p. 159. *is ſole Empreſs*, 177. *her Management and Death*, 177, 178
Theodora, Theophilus *the Emperor's Widow, Regent during her Son's Minority*, Vol. 5. p. 40. *who forces her from Court*, 43
Theodorick, *King of the* Goths, *his Expedition into* Italy, Vol. 4. p. 12. *ſirnam'd* Veronenſis, 13. *beſieges* Ravenna, 17. *declar'd King of* Italy, 20. *his prudent Adminiſtration*, 24. *his Reception and Behaviour at* Rome, 27. *he overthrows the* Bulgarians, 33. *his Death and Character*, 50
Theodorus, *a Monk, his dangerous Craft*, Vol. 5. p. 52. *his Puniſhment*, 54
Theodorus Comnenus, *Prince of* Epire, *his Actions*, Vol. 5. p 338, &c.
Theodorus Laſcaris, *Emperor of the* Greeks *in* Nice, Vol. 5. p. 334. *his Actions*, 336. *appoints his Succeſſor*, 338. *his Death and Character*, 340
Theodorus Laſcaris II. *the Son of* John Ducas, *ſucceeds his Father in the Empire at* Nice, Vol. 5. p. 351. *his Death*, 353
Theodoſius, ſenior, *ſent into* Britain Vol. 3. p. 123. *his Succeſs againſt the* Moors *in* Africk, 142. *he is put to Death*, 147
Theodoſius *the Great declar'd Emperor by* Gratian, Vol. 3. p. 190. *ſummons the ſecond General Council*, 169. *concludes a Peace with the* Perſians, 202. *his Clemency*, 207. *and Moderation*, 212. *he ſhuts up the Heathen Temples in* Rome, 213. *he defeats* Eugenius, 225. *his Death and Character*, 228, 229, 230
Theodoſius, junior, *declar'd* Auguſtus *by his Father*, Vol. 3. p. 263. *his Wars in* Perſia, 308. *he buys a Peace with the* Hunns, 331. *his Death*, 336
Theophilus *ſucceeds his Father* Michael II. Vol. 5. p. 31. *revenges the Emperor* Leo's *Murder*, ibid. *in great Danger*, 33. *his cauſeleſs Jealouſies*, 34. *his Death*, 39. *his Saying before his Death, and his Character*, 40
Theophobus *his Birth and Character*, Vol. 5. p. 32. *declar'd Emperor by the mutinous* Perſians, 36. *murder'd by the Emperor* Theophilus *his Order*, 40
Tiberius I. *marries* Julia, Auguſtus *his Daughter*, Vol. 2. p. 26. *his Retirement*, 34. *his Return to* Rome, 38. *Adopted by* Auguſtus, 41. *his Exploits againſt the* Germans, 44. *made perpetual Tribune*, 49. *takes upon*

upon him the Empire, 56. *his profound Diſſimulation*, 58. *he grows jealous of* Germanicus, 61, &c. *whom he procures to be poiſon'd*, 66. *his State Politicks*, 71. *his Anſwer to the* Trojan *Ambaſſadors*, 73. *his ſecond Retirement*, 75. *his great Favour to the Chriſtians*, 78. *his Cruelty*, 80. *and Death*, 83

Tiberius II. *created* Cæſar, Vol. 4. p. 222. *advanc'd to the Empire*, 226. *his Death*, 232.

Tigranes, *King of* Armenia, *his Pride, and ill Succeſs againſt the* Romans, Vol. 1. p. 273, 274. *refuſes to receive* Mithridates *after his Defeat, and makes a Peace with the* Romans, 279, 280

Titus *his Expedition againſt the* Jews, Vol. 2. p. 206. *his Acts in that War*, 209 *to* 215. *his great Authority during his Father's Reign*, 218. *his Expedition againſt the Barbarians*, 224. *made Emperor*, 233. *the Calumnies rais'd againſt him*, 234. *turn to his Praiſe and Advantage*, 235. *his memorable Apothegm*, 238. *the Calamities during his Reign*, 239. *his Death*, 244

Torquatus, *ſee* Manlius Torquatus.

Totilas *elected King of the* Goths *in* Italy, Vol. 4. p. 141. *his prudent Conduct*, 147. *beſieges* Rome, 151. *which is taken and pillag'd*, 155. *his Embaſſy to the Emperor*, 156. *he recovers* Rome *from* Beliſarius, 161. *his Progreſs in* Sicily, 164. *his Death and Character*, 179

Trajan *adopted by* Nerva, Vol. 2. p. 278. *made Emperor*, 279. *his worthy Adminiſtration*, 281, &c. *his famous Bridge over the* Danube, 285. *his Conqueſt of* Dacia, 286. *his great Aſſurance founded upon his Innocence and Integrity*, 288. *he raiſes the third general Perſecution*, 290. *his great Expedition into the Eaſt, and Conqueſts*, 291 *to* 299. *his Death*, 301

Tullus Hoſtilius, *the third King of* Rome, *his Reign*, Vol. 1. p. 25 *to* 30

Turks *conquer* Perſia, Vol. 5. p. 165. *defeated by the* Romans, 167. *their Succeſs in* Iberia, 174. *their Incurſions into the Empire*, 190. *their Offers for a Peace rejected*, 195. *defeat the* Romans, 199. *an Agreement among themſelves fatal to the Chriſtians*, 200. *conclude a Peace with the Emperor* Alexius, 216. *defeated by the Cruſade*, 248. *ten thouſand ſlain by the Chriſtians at* Smyrna, 252. *become tributary to the* Tartars, 352. *firſt call'd into* Europe, 372. *where they deſtroy the Emperor's Provinces*, 373. *overthrown*, 375. *defeat the Chriſtians*, 391. *ſurprize* Nice, 392. *their firſt Settlement in* Europe, 406. *they take* Theſſalonica, 413. *beſiege* Conſtantinople, 448. *which they take*, 445.

V

Valens *declar'd Emperor by his Brother* Valentinian, Vol. 3. p. 103. *his Cowardice*, 110. *and great Severity*, 116. *a Friend to the* Arians, 120. *his Tyranny*, 136. *he admits the* Goths *into* Thrace, 168. *with whom he engages in Battel, and is defeated and ſlain*, 181, 182, *his Character*, 183

Valentinian I. *elected Emperor*, Vol. 3. p. 101. *his Speech to the Army*, 102. *makes his Son* Gratian, Auguſtus. 125. *his Cruelty*, 126. *his Exploits in* Germany, 134, 135. *his Expedition againſt the* Quadi, 155. *his Death and Character*, 158, 159

Valentinian II. *declar'd Emperor*, Vol. 3. p. 162. *flies to* Theodoſius, 209. *murder'd*, 221

Valentinian III. *made Emperor*, Vol. 3. p. 315. *raviſhes the Wife of* Maximus, *and is ſlain* 347, 348

Valerius Corvus *his remarkable Combat with a* Gaul, Vol. 1. p. 153

Valerian *declar'd Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 492. *led into Captivity by* Sapor. 495

Veii *beſieg'd, and taken after ten Years*, Vol. 1. p. 130 *to* 133

Venice, *when founded*, Vol. 3. p. 343

Veſpaſian *his Expedition againſt the* Jews, Vol. 2. p. 149. *created Emperor by the Eaſtern Legions*, 188. *confirm'd in the Empire*, 199. *he builds a Temple to Peace, and ſhuts up that of* Janus, 217. *his Regulations in the Army*, 218. *his Moderation*, 225. *a great Enemy to vicious Perſons*, 228. *juſtly accus'd of Avarice*, 229. *his Death*, 232

Veturia, *Mother to* Coriolanus, *her generous Care for her Country, and Succeſs*, Vol. 1. p. 93, 94

Virgil *his Death*, Vol. 2. p. 18

Virginia *her Tragical Story*, Vol. 1. p. 116, 117, 118

Vitellius *his Endeavours to make himſelf Emperor*, Vol. 2. p. 164. *declar'd Emperor by the* German *Legions*, 172. *confirm'd in the Empire*, 181. *his formidable Entry into* Rome, 182. *his prodigious Gluttony*, 184. *he offers to reſign the Empire*, 193. *he is ſlain*, 197

Vitiges *proclaim'd King of the* Goths, Vol. 4. p. 97. *marches towards* Rome, 105. *which he beſieges*, 107. *his Stratagems defeated*, 114. *forc'd to raiſe the Siege*, 116. *taken Priſoner, and ſent to* Conſtantinople, 130

Urſicinus *ſent into* Gaul, Vol. 3. p. 29. *procures* Sylvanus *to be murder'd*, 31. *recall'd from his Command*, 44. *oppos'd by* Sabinianus, 47. *accus'd at Court*, 49. *his generous Defence*, 50

X

Xantippus *overthrows the* Romans, *and is murder'd*, Vol. 1. p. 186

Xiphilinus (John) *Patriarch of* Conſtantinople, *over-reach'd by an Eunuch*, Vol. 5. p. 191, 192

Z

Zeno *kills* Aſpar *and his Sons*, Vol. 3. p. 363. *marry'd to* Leo's *Daughter*, 369. *made Emperor in the Eaſt*, 372. *flies into* Iſauria, 374. *he is reſtor'd*, Vol. 4. p. 4. *his Death and Character*, 14

Zenobia *her maſculine Courage and Conduct*, Vol. 2. p. 502. *her extraordinary Virtues*, ibid. *overthrows the* Romans, 503. *is overthrown by* Aurelian, 517. *her haughty Anſwer to him*, 518. *ſhe is at length conquer'd by him*, 519. *and led in Triumph*, 522

Zimiſces, *his Succeſs againſt the* Saracens, Vol. 5. p. 93. *aſpires to the Empire*, 97. *crown'd*, 100. *his Expedition*, 105. *his Succeſs*, ibid. &c. *his Triumph at* Conſtantinople, 113. *poiſon'd*, 115

Zoe, *a great Beauty, marry'd to the Emperor* Leo V. Vol. 5. p. 59. *baniſh'd from Court*, 66. *recall'd*, 67. *remov'd from the Government*, 72. *and forc'd into a Monaſtery*, 74

Zoe, *Daughter of* Conſtantine VII. *marry'd to* Romanus II. Vol. 5. p. 141. *whom ſhe poiſons*, 148. *depos'd by* Michael V. 158. *reſtor'd*, 159. *marry'd to* Conſtantine VIII. 161. *her Death*, 176

Zozimus *his great Partiality*, Vol. 3. p. 191.

FINIS.